



DocuSnap 6.1 - User Manual

English Version

Table of Contents

Part I Welcome	10
1 New Features in Docusnap 6.1	10
Part II Introduction	14
1 About Docusnap	14
2 Conventions	16
3 System Requirements	16
4 Installation	18
5 Getting Started	22
6 Upgrade 6.0 to 6.1	32
7 User Interface	34
Menu Ribbon	35
Inventory	35
Documentation	36
Management	38
Advanced	41
Tools	43
Help	45
Permission Analysis	46
License Management	48
Organization	49
Reporting System	49
IT Relations	51
IT Concept	53
IT Concept Editor	53
Data Explorer	59
Data Explorer	60
IT Documentation	61
Permission Analysis	63
License Management	64
Organization	66
IT Relations	68
IT Concept	69
Main Window	70
Information	70
Data	72
Editor	76
Reports	77
Extensions	79
Documents	79
Permission Analysis	80
Permission Structure	81
Group Policies	83
Structure	83
IT Relations	84
IT Concepts	86
8 Basics Wizards	87
Optional: Scheduling	88
Optional: Import	90
Optional: Export	91



DocuSnap 6.1 - User Manual

9 Filtering.....	92
10 Search.....	96
Part III Inventory	102
1 Network Inventory.....	103
Basic Steps	105
Company Selection.....	105
Authentication.....	106
Summary Page.....	108
Status	109
Summary Page.....	110
Optional: Naming Snapshots	111
Windows	112
Windows Systems.....	113
IP Segments.....	114
Offline Systems	116
Optional: Software Search.....	117
Optional: Additional Tools.....	118
SNMP Systems	119
Linux Systems	122
Mac Systems	123
CIFS	124
Exchange Server	125
VMware Infrastructure	126
Hyper-V	128
Internet Information Service	129
SharePoint	130
SQL Server	130
XenCenter	132
Active Directory	133
DHCP Server	134
DNS Server	135
2 Scripting.....	136
Windows	136
Import Scripts	140
Exchange	141
3 Manual Entries.....	142
Part IV Documentation	146
1 General.....	146
2 Creation of Documentation.....	148
Basic Steps	148
Company Selection.....	149
Domain Selection.....	150
Summary Page.....	151
Status	152
Report Page.....	153
Map Files	154
Network Map.....	155
Topology.....	157
Active Directory.....	159
Exchange Server.....	161
VMware Infrastructure.....	162
Hyper-V.....	162
SQL Server.....	163
DHCP Server	164



DocuSnap 6.1 - User Manual

XenCenter	165
Overview Map	165
System Groups	167
Data Sheets	169
Overviews	171
3 IT Documentation	171
4 Print Documentation	173
Part V Permission Analysis	178
1 Structure	179
2 Menu Ribbon	180
3 Inventory	182
File System	182
Inventory Permissions	183
Online Analysis	187
NTFS Filter	187
SharePoint	189
Exchange	190
4 Analysis	191
Permission Analysis	191
Analysis Diagram	196
Determining the Effective Permissions	198
Part VI License Management	206
1 General	208
2 License Management Wizard	210
Company Selection	210
Category	211
Group	211
Product	212
Product Info	214
Notes	215
Keywords	215
License Types (Expected)	220
System Assignment	222
User Assignment	224
Inventory Determination (Actual)	226
Summary Page	227
3 System Exclusions	228
4 Export Definitions	229
5 Import Definitions	230
6 Evaluations	231
7 Undesired Products	234
8 DocuSnap TS Info	234
Part VII Organization	238
1 Extensions	238
Comments	239
Finances	240
Passwords	241
Contracts	242
Reminders	243
Attachments	244



DocuSnap 6.1 - User Manual

2 Organization.....	245
3 Password Logging.....	248
4 Categories and Permissions.....	249
Part VIII IT Relations	254
1 Create IT Relations.....	254
2 Userdefined Settings.....	258
Part IX IT Concept	262
1 Menu Ribbon.....	262
2 Create Concept.....	268
General	269
IT Concept Editor	270
Text	272
Table of Contents	277
Report	278
Data Element	279
File	281
Map	282
IT Relation	284
Datasheet	285
Placeholder	285
3 Versions.....	287
4 Templates.....	287
5 Designs.....	291
6 Styles.....	292
7 Export and Scheduling.....	293
8 Assignment.....	295
9 Conversion.....	296
Part X IT Assets	298
1 IT Assets Structure.....	298
2 Create IT Assets.....	304
3 Other Inventory.....	304
4 Export.....	305
5 Import.....	305
Part XI DocuSnap Server	308
1 Configuration	309
2 Job Management.....	314
3 Automation.....	316
4 Logging.....	317
Part XII DocuSnap Connect	320
1 Configuration	320
2 Schedule Package.....	324
3 Import and Export.....	330
Part XIII Data Import	332



1 Wizard	332
Part XIV Docusnap Link	338
Part XV Settings	340
1 Options	341
General	341
Licensing	343
Database	344
Wizards	347
Additional Tools	351
Documentation	354
License Management	356
Update	357
2 Designs	357
Designs	358
Report Settings	358
Edit Designs	359
Edit Styles	359
IT Concept	361
3 Company Settings	361
Designs	362
Report Settings	362
Edit Designs	364
Edit Styles	365
4 Management	366
Inventory	366
SNMP Types	367
SNMP Mibs	368
Server Roles	370
Active Directory	370
Software Search	373
License Management	374
Software Categories	375
License Types	377
Maintenance Types	377
Extension Types	378
Financial Types	379
Contract Types	379
Password Types	381
Reminder Types	382
Comment Types	383
User Management	383
Roles	384
Users	385
Categories	386
Permissions	387
Part XVI Data Organization and Analysis	392
1 Comparison	393
2 Snapshot Management	394
3 System Groups	395
4 FaciPlan	397
5 ADS Comparison	398

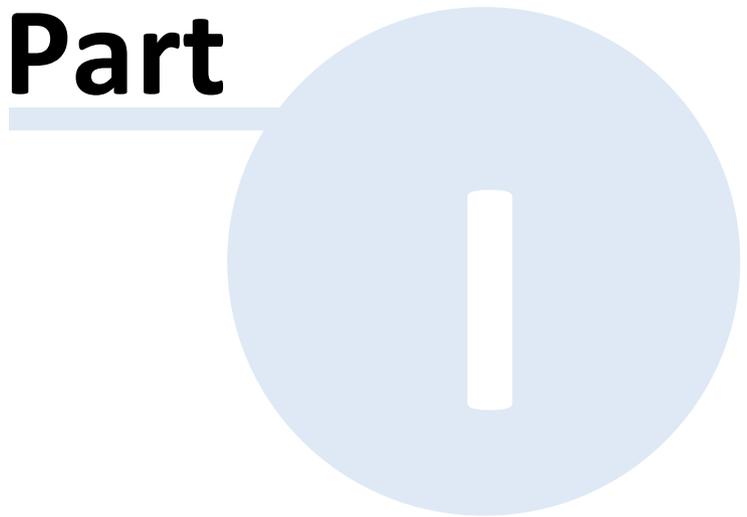


DocuSnap 6.1 - User Manual

6 Database Import.....	401
7 Database Export.....	405
8 Move Systems.....	410
9 Merge Systems.....	412
Part XVII Advanced Topics	416
1 Management Tools.....	416
2 Merge Reports.....	418
3 Notifications.....	420
Define Notifications	420
Notifications	421
4 Report Scheduling.....	424
5 Options Configuration File.....	427
Part XVIII Support & Help	430
1 Update.....	430
2 Problem Resolution.....	431
3 FAQ.....	434



Part



1 Welcome

Welcome to Docusnap 6.1

Thank you very much for purchasing Docusnap 6.1.

In practice, the terms IT documentation and IT analysis are generally restricted to the inventory process and maybe the visualization of existing hardware and software.

Docusnap 6.1 greatly broadens the terms IT documentation and IT analysis by adding significant features:

Building on the process of inventorying the entire IT environment (not just the hardware and software) and the visualization of overview maps using Microsoft Visio, Docusnap 6.1 supports the reporting of the results using several standardized formats (Microsoft Word & Excel, PDF and HTML files, among others).

Docusnap 6.1 generates meaningful and real-world reports and analyses of the most diverse corporate departments.

In no time, Docusnap 6.1 analyzes effective permissions, compares the expected and actual states of installed licenses and provides additional organizational features, such as password and contract management.

Docusnap 6.1 combines optimum usability with maximum flexibility. Wizards guide the user through the intuitive user interface which is similar to Microsoft Office 2007.

Multiple users can work with Docusnap 6.1 concurrently. Customization to individual requirements is also possible.

1.1 New Features in Docusnap 6.1

IT Assets

Using the IT Assets functionality, it is possible to inventory systems which cannot be scanned automatically by Docusnap. This can be done manually or by [data import](#).

Docusnap comes with many predefined IT asset types. They can be extended and added to, as required by creating additional types or classes with minimum effort. Docusnap generates the required data entry screens automatically.

IT Concepts

Docusnap 6.1 allows you to create IT concepts based on inventoried data, existing documentation, and IT relations. This module lets you create concepts independently of any text processing program. The creation of such concepts can

be scheduled using the Docusnap server, if desired.

[Docusnap Connect](#)

With its *Docusnap Connect* interface, Docusnap can be used to make data available to other systems. No in-depth database or SQL knowledge is required to define export formats and transfer them to other systems and formats.

[DocusnapLink](#)

DocusnapLink allows you to quickly and efficiently link to detailed Docusnap data from third-party systems.

[Data Import](#)

To process large data volumes which cannot be inventoried in Docusnap, the data import feature is now available. It allows you to import data which have been stored in a CSV file to Docusnap.

[Permission Analysis of Exchange Mailboxes, Mailbox Folders, and Public Folders](#)

In addition to the permission analysis for directories and shares as well as Microsoft SharePoint, Docusnap 6.1 lets you analyze the permission structure of Microsoft Exchange.

[Inventory of XenCenter](#)

With Docusnap 6.1, you can inventory and document XenCenter data.



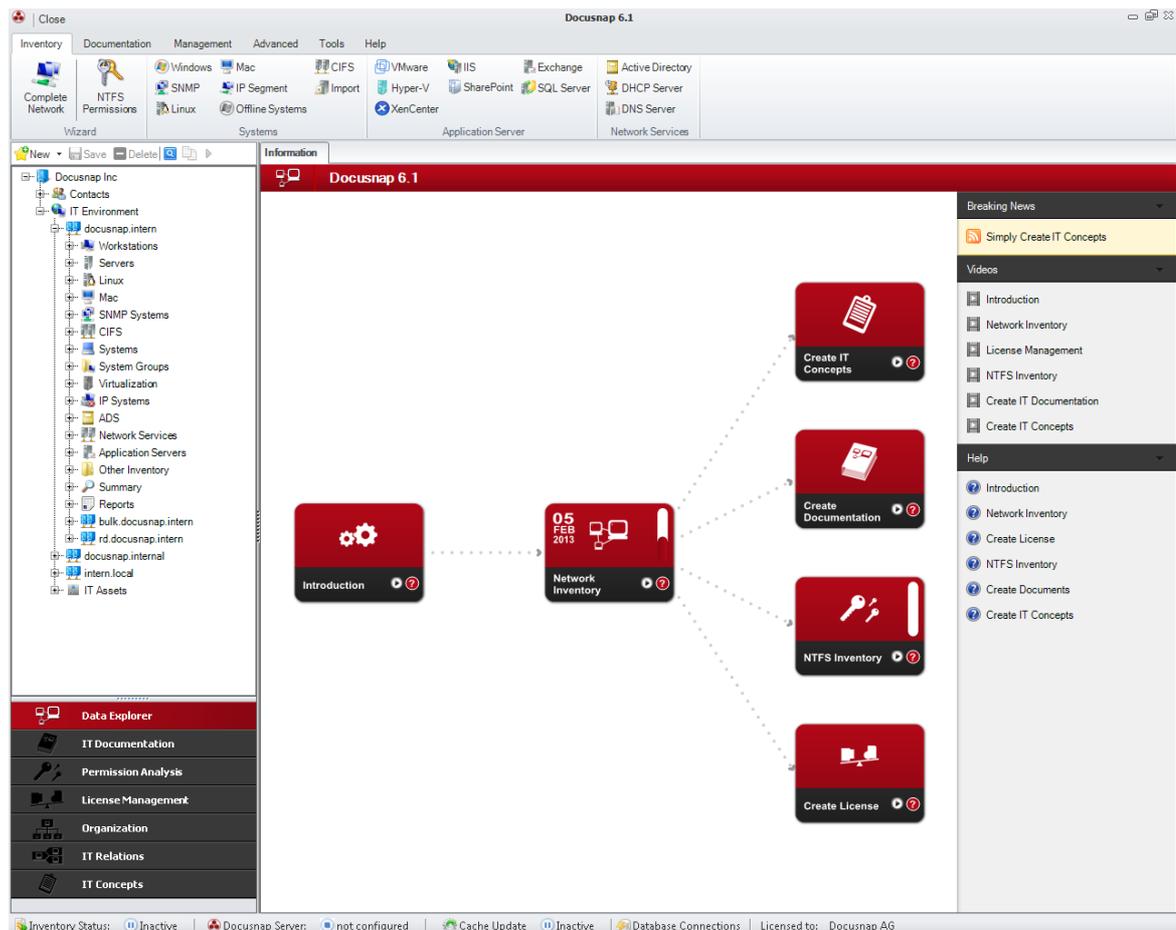
Part



2 Introduction

The Introduction section describes the initial installation of Docusnap and the system requirements. Then, the basic configuration required after the initial installation process will be discussed.

In addition, the essential features and modules of Docusnap will be explained briefly.



2.1 About Docusnap

Docusnap 6.1 captivates through its ideal mixture of many documentation and analysis components. Its focus lies on features that meet the everyday needs of information technology and relieves employees from routine jobs.

Docusnap 6.1 does not use any agents for the inventory process, provides concurrent multi-user capability, and can be upgraded with a multi-license, if required.

Docusnap 6.1 Features

▪ IT Inventory Process

- Automated scanning of the entire IT environment (without agents), assisted by

- standardized network protocols
- Script-based inventory process
- Archiving and version comparison of the individual scans

- **Visualization**
 - Automated preparation and output of values scanned from the IT environment in the form of network maps, data sheets and overview lists in various formats (.pdf, .html, .docx and .xlsx).
 - More than 100 predefined reports
 - Report Designer for creating customized reports

- **Customizing**
 - Visual design of documents and reports in line with your corporate identity
 - Customizing module for adjustment and extension of objects, data structures and the user interface

- **Docusnap Server**
 - Automated, scheduled inventorying and documentation.

- **Organization**
 - Reminder and comments feature
 - Password safe & contract management
 - File attachments

- **Usability**
 - Wizard-based application
 - Intuitive, dual-language (German & English) user interface similar to MS Office 2007

Optional Modules

The core module provides the basic features for scanning Windows systems. Using optional modules, it is possible to adjust and license Docusnap based on the individual needs of our customers.

The following modules are available for Docusnap 6.1:

- **Permission Analysis** Determination and analysis of effective permissions

- **License Management** Comparison of expected and actual states for installed and purchased licenses including contract management

- **Virtualization** Inventory of VMware infrastructures, Hyper-V and virtualized computers



- Exchange Server Inventory and documentation of Microsoft Exchange servers (2003,2007,2010)
- SQL Server Scanning of SQL servers (servers, databases, tables, columns, DTS packages)
- DHCP / DNS Servers Inventory and documentation of DHCP and DNS servers
- SharePoint Inventory and permission analysis of SharePoint systems
- Linux Inventory and documentation of Linux-based systems
- Mac Inventory and documentation of Mac-based systems
- Customizing Adjustment and extension of objects, data structures and the user interface

2.2 Conventions

In order to improve the readability of this document, the following conventions apply:

Normal text uses the Calibri font. Names of buttons, checkboxes, etc. are written in *italics*.

Code samples are formatted in `Courier New`.



Some sections feature tips for using Docusnap. These tips are indicated by a light bulb.



Warning sections are highlighted by a warning sign. Warnings refer to issues that should be taken into consideration when working with Docusnap.



Text that contains additional information is highlighted by an information sign.

2.3 System Requirements

System requirements for the installation of Docusnap 6.1

Introduction

Operating Systems:	Windows XP min. SP 2, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 Server 2003, Server 2008, Server 2008 R2, Server 2012
RAM:	>512 MB, recommended 1 GB
Resolution:	1024 x 768 min., recommended > 1280 x 1024
.Net Framework:	Version 3.5
Windows Installer:	Version 2.0
Database: *	SQL 2005 Express SQL 2005 Standard / Enterprise SQL 2008 Express SQL 2008 Standard / Enterprise 2008 R2, 2012
Microsoft Office: **	Visio 2007 SP1, 2010, 2013

* The installation of Docusnap includes an .mdb database. However, the use of the database systems specified above is recommended.

** Microsoft Office Visio 2007 SP1, Visio 2010 or Visio 2013 is required for the creation of maps.

** No external programs are required for generating documents.

** To view the documents, programs that support the following file formats can be used:

- .docx
- .xlsx
- .html
- .pdf
- .odt

Inventory Process

Operating Systems:	Windows NT, XP, Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 Windows Server NT, 2000, 2003, 2008, 2008 R2, 2012 Linux (32 / 64 Bit) – SuSe, Red Hat, Kubuntu, Ubuntu Mac
--------------------	--

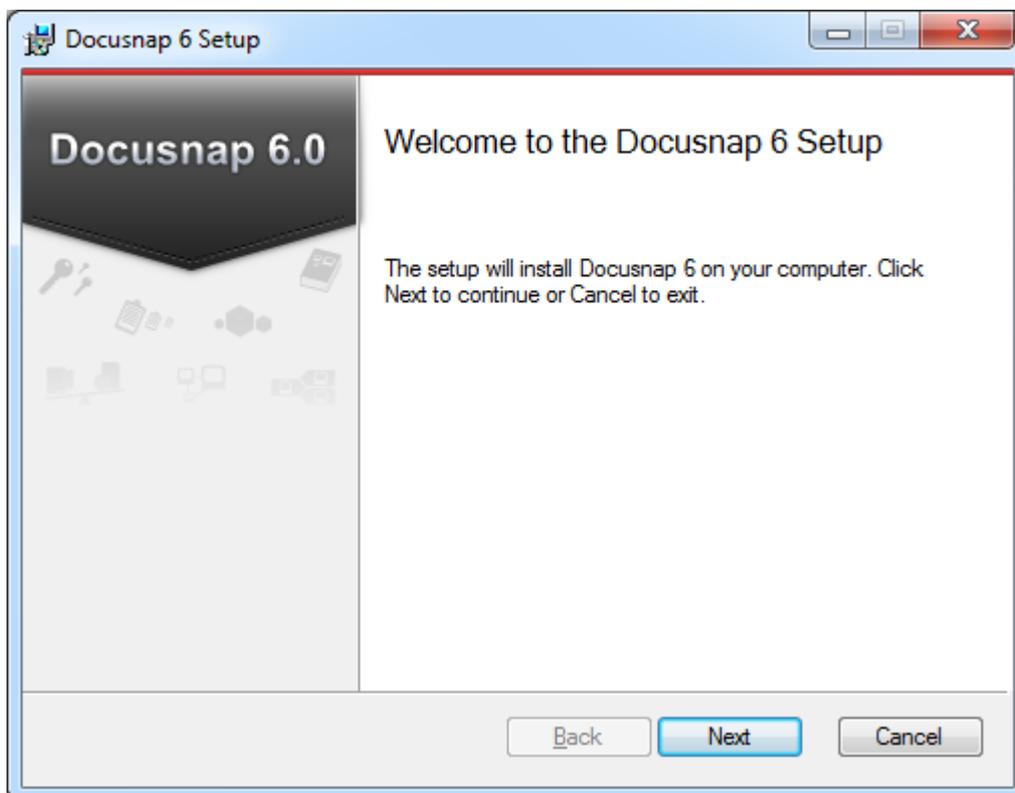


SNMP: Version 1, 2, 3

- Modules:
- Exchange: 2003, 2007, 2010, 2013
 - SQL: 2000, 2005, 2008, 2008 R2, 2012
 - Permission Analysis for Windows Systems or CIFS / SMB emulations, SharePoint installation and Exchange installation
 - VMware: Virtual Center 3.5 / 4.0 / 5.0, ESX Server 3.5 / 4.0 / 5.0 and VMware Server
 - Microsoft Hyper-V
 - XenCenter
 - Microsoft DHCP/DNS
 - Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS): Versionen 6.0, 7.0, 7.5
 - Microsoft SharePoint: SharePoint Server 2007/2010, SharePoint Services 3.0, Microsoft SharePoint Foundation

2.4 Installation

Executing the Docusnap.exe file starts the installation process for Docusnap 6.1.

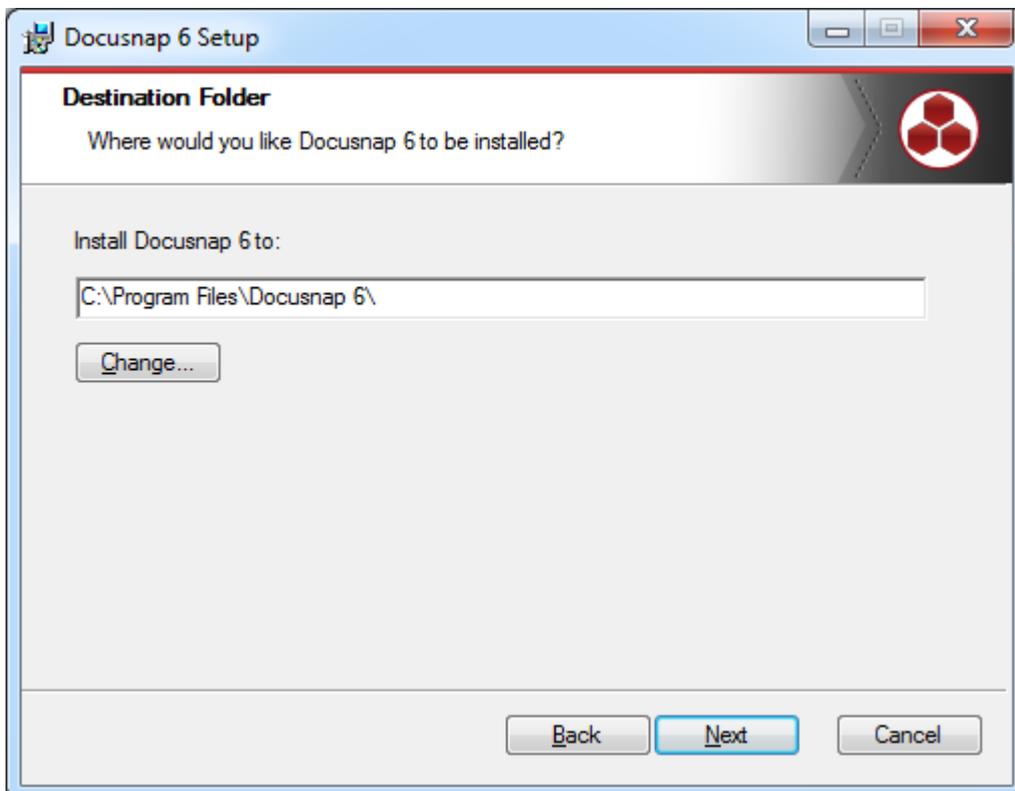


Introduction

The *Next* button will only be enabled after license agreement has been accepted.

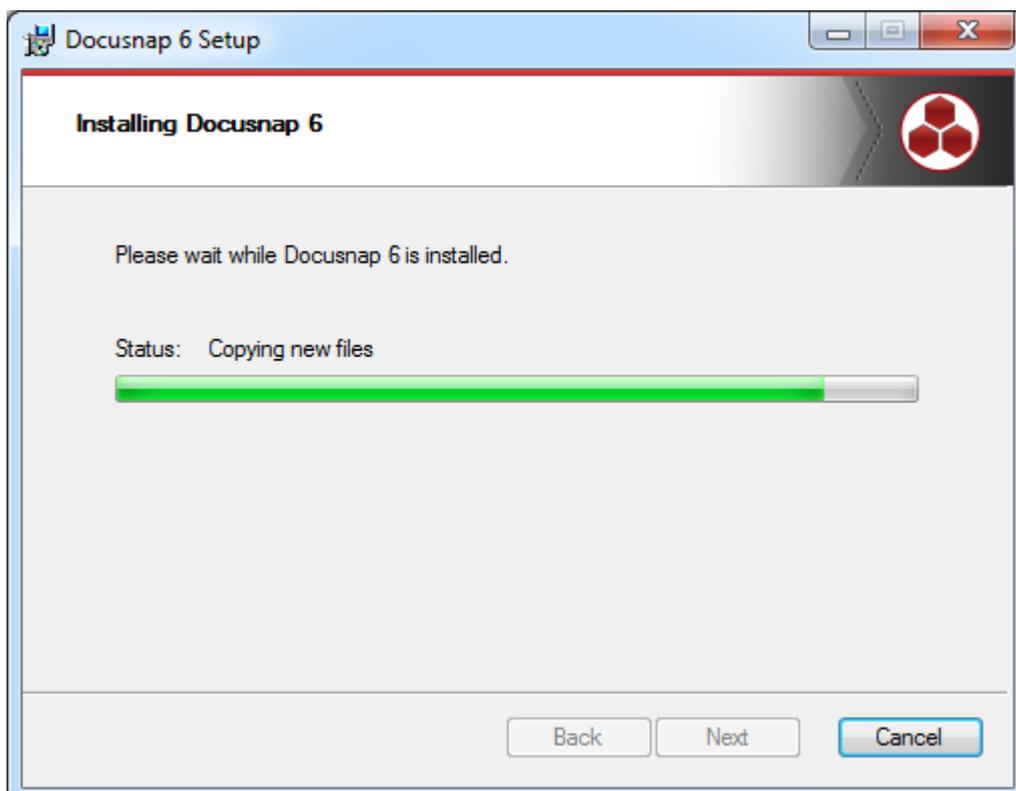
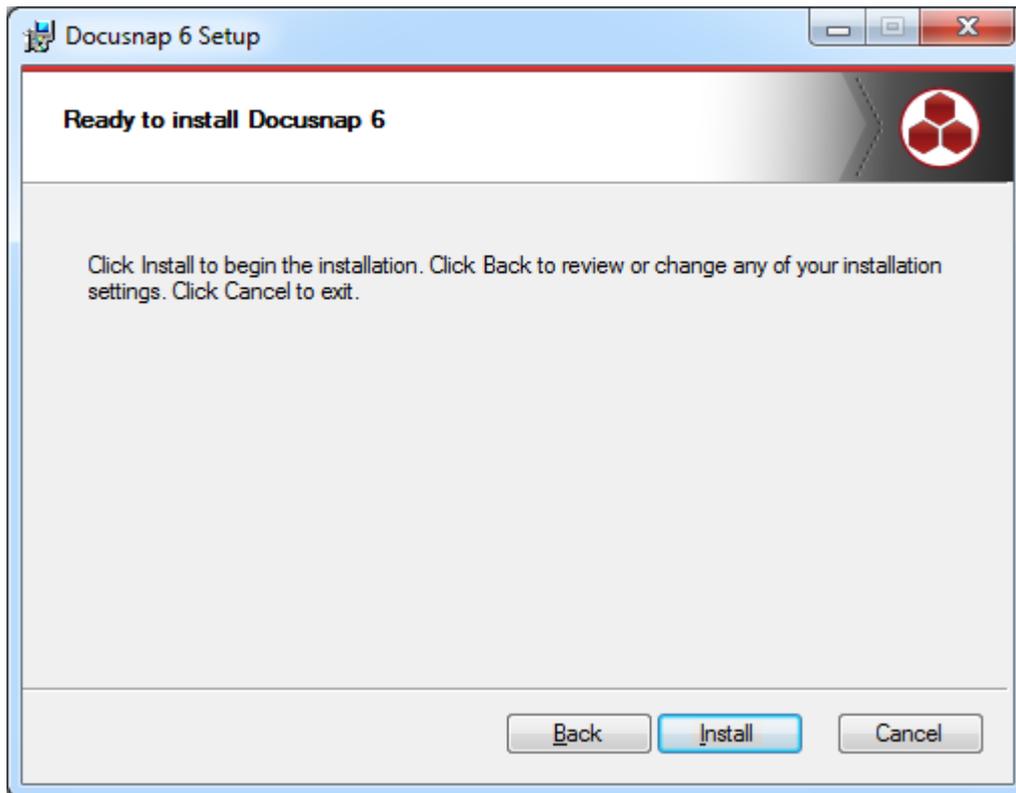


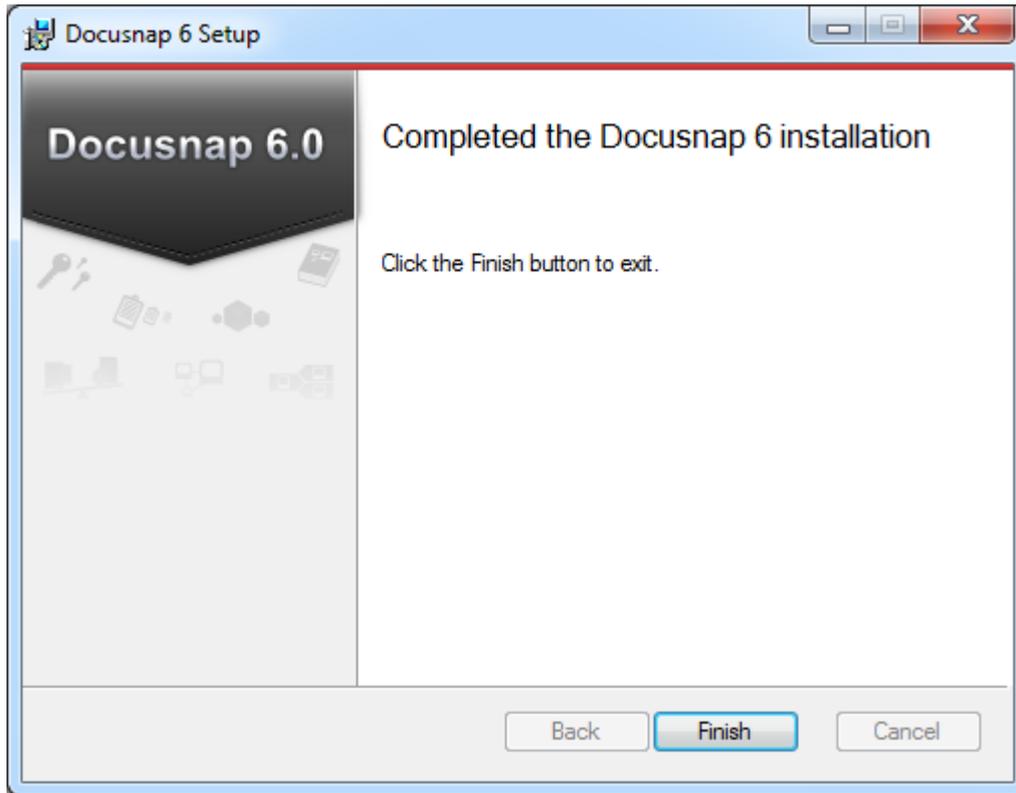
The next step lets you specify the Docusnap installation directory.



After the desired folder has been selected, the installation process can be started.

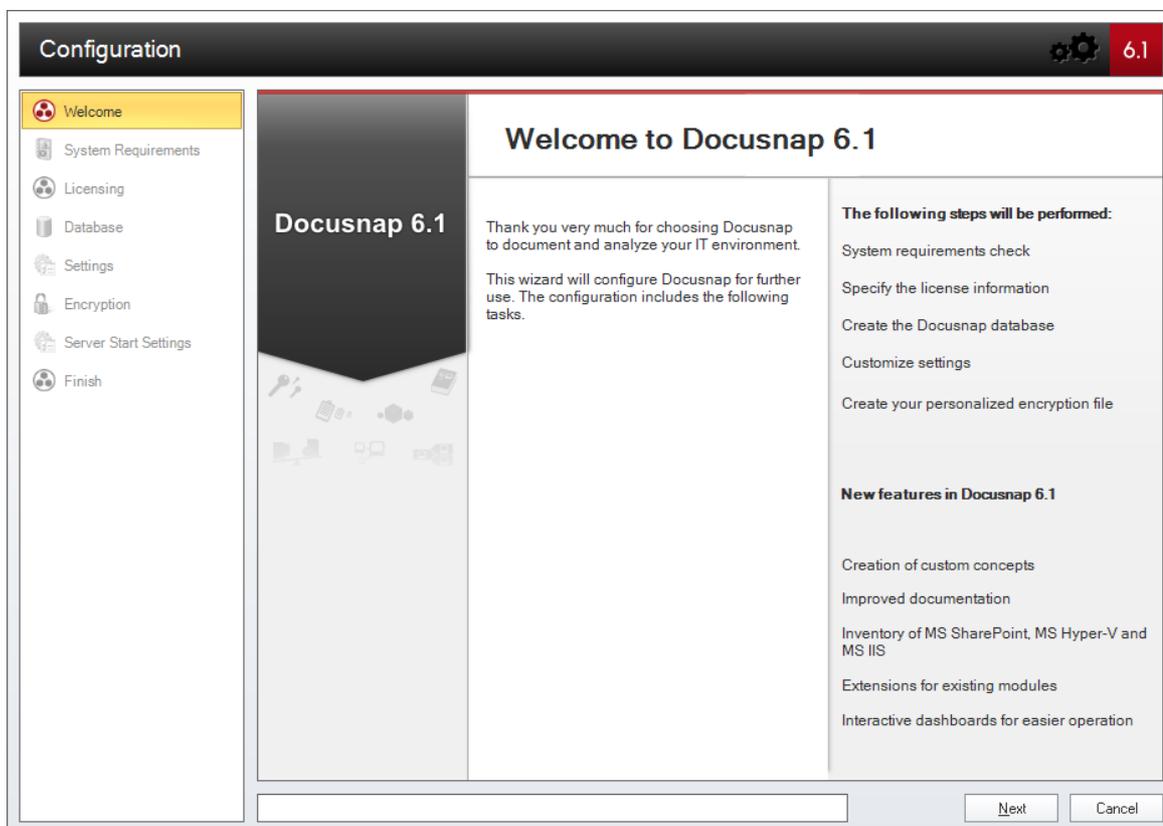






2.5 Getting Started

When you start Docusnap for the first time, the *Docusnap Start Wizard* opens to help you with the configuration of Docusnap for operation.



In the first step, the *system requirements* will be checked. If the system requirements are not met, Docusnap will run anyway, but not to its full capacity.

▪ Required Components

Microsoft Visio is required to create maps.

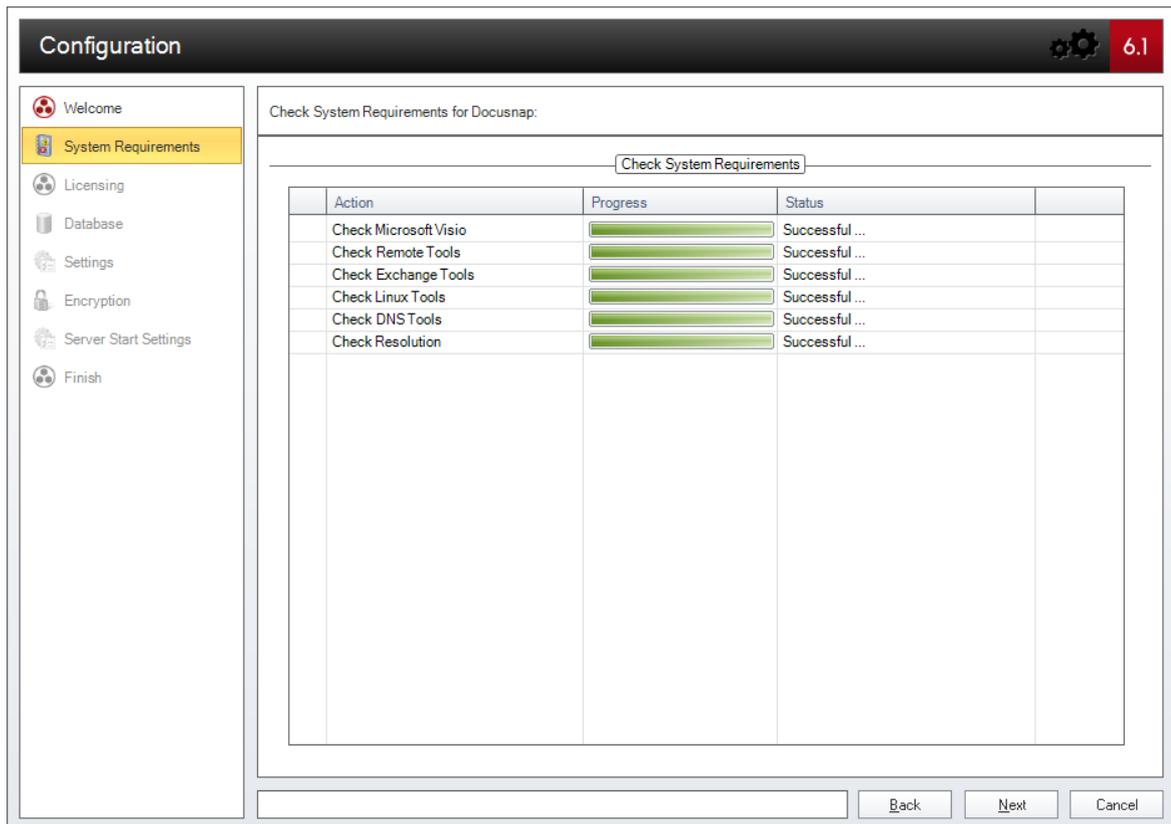
Remote Tools are required to scan DNS, DHCP, and Exchange servers.

Exchange Tools are required to scan the Exchange server.

Linux Tools are required to scan Linux systems.

DNS Tools are required to scan DNS servers.

In the *Resolution check*, the system checks whether the required screen resolution has been set.



The next step consists in selecting the Docusnap license file. Docusnap can only be used with a valid license file. The modules covered by the specified license will be displayed under *Licensed Modules*. Modules not covered by the license will be automatically disabled in Docusnap. To enable disabled modules, you need to purchase a corresponding license.

The *License Mode*, *License Type*, *Company*, and *Address* of the company as well as the number of licensed *Windows*, *Linux* and *Mac* nodes will be displayed next to the list of modules.

Three different *license modes* are available:

- Full Version: License without any time limits.
- Time-limited license: License with time limits.
- Demo Version: Time-limited test version

Two different *license types* are available:

- Multi-license: With this license type, multiple companies can be created.
- Individual license: With this license type, only a single company can be created.



The Number of Windows Systems, Number of Linux Systems, and Number of Macintosh Systems fields indicate how many systems may be scanned using this license.

Configuration 6.1

Welcome
System Requirements
Licensing
Database
Settings
Encryption
Server Start Settings
Finish

Please select your license file:

Select License:

License Information

License Mode: Full Version
License Type: Multi License
Company: DocuSnap AG
Street: Franz-Lärcher-Straße 4
Zip Code: 83088 City: Kieferfelden
Number of Windows Systems: 999999
Number of Linux Systems: 999999
Number of Mac Systems: 999999

Licensed Modules

- ✓ Viewer
- ✓ Basic Module
- ✓ Windows Module
- ✓ Linux Module
- ✓ Mac Module
- ✓ License Management
- ✓ Permission Analysis
- ✓ Exchange Module
- ✓ VMware Module
- ✓ DHCP Module
- ✓ DNS Module
- ✓ SQL Module
- ✓ SharePoint Modul
- ✓ Finance Module
- ✓ Contract Module

✓ License check successful

In the next step, the database for storing the data will be set. Both Microsoft SQL Server databases and Access databases are supported. For reasons of performance and compatibility, we recommend the use of Microsoft SQL Server.

▪ Microsoft SQL Server

Compatibility: SQL Server 2005 or later versions.

In addition to the Microsoft Server retail products (Standard & Enterprise), the Express versions of SQL Server are also supported.

When using SQL Server in the network, make sure that the server has been configured for remote access via TCP/IP and that the permissions for Windows or SQL authentication have been set properly.

▪ Microsoft Access Database

The installation of Microsoft Access as an application is not required for using a Microsoft Access database. DocuSnap uses predefined application interfaces from the .NET framework for communicating with Access. We recommend to use Access databases only locally.

The status of the database connection is represented visually by the following symbols:



Not connected to the database

Successfully connected with the database

Configuration
6.1

- Welcome
- System Requirements
- Licensing
- Database
- Settings
- Encryption
- Server Start Settings
- Finish

Please select a database type: SQL Server Database Access Database

Microsoft SQL Server Database

SQL Server:

Database:

Authentication:

User Name:

Password:

Status

Activity	Progress	Status
Updating database ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	Database updated successfully
Checking Basic Data ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	Basic data updated successfully
Checking Type Data ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	Type data updated successfully
Checking Settings ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	Settings updated successfully
Checking SNMP Schema ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	SNMP Schema updated successfully
Checking ADS Schema ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	ADS Schema updated successfully
Checking Metaschema ...	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #90EE90;"></div>	Metaschema updated successfully

✔
Database opened successfully

The paths for the documentation, the *team settings*, the *local settings* and the storage location of attachments can be defined on the *Settings* page.

- **Documentation:** All of the documents (data sheets, map files, overviews) will be stored in this directory, according to the structure of DocuSnap. When creating the documentation, you have the option to select a different path.
- **Settings:** The Settings page includes *Local Settings* and *Team Settings*. In order to make user-specific data available to multiple users, a shared path must be specified in the *Team Settings* field. If the path entered under *Team Settings* is not available, the path from the *Local Settings* field will be used instead.
- **IT Concept Path:** The [IT concepts](#) you create are saved under the IT Concept path.
- **Check-out path:** When defining [Extensions](#) it is possible to add attachments. These attachments are normally stored in the database. For editing purposes, such attachments will be temporarily stored in the specified directory.



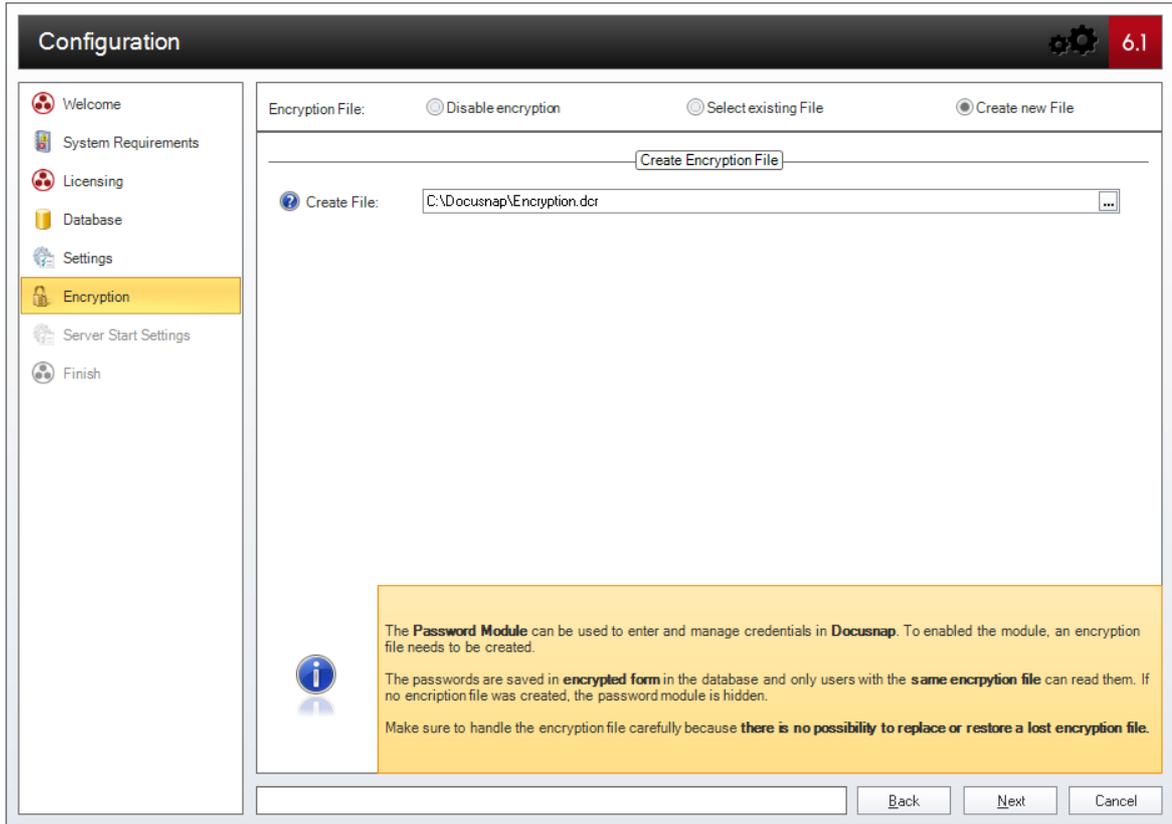
The screenshot shows the 'Configuration' window for Docusnap 6.1. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: Welcome, System Requirements, Licensing, Database, Settings (highlighted), Encryption, Server Start Settings, and Finish. The main area is titled 'Define Docusnap Settings:' and is divided into three sections: 'Documentation', 'Settings', and 'Attachments'. Each section contains one or more configuration fields with a question mark icon and a browse button (three dots).

Section	Field Name	Value
Documentation	Documentation Path:	C:\Docusnap\Docu
Settings	Local Settings:	C:\Docusnap\Settings
	Team Settings:	\\SFILE01\Docusnap
	IT Concept Path:	\\SFILE01\Docusnap\ITConcept
Attachments	Check Out Path:	C:\Docusnap\Check-Out

At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel'.

You need to create an encryption file to enable the *Passwords* module in the main window. Encryption ensures that the passwords will be stored in the database in encrypted form. These passwords can only be read by users who use the same encryption file. If you do not create an encryption file, the *Passwords* module will remain hidden.

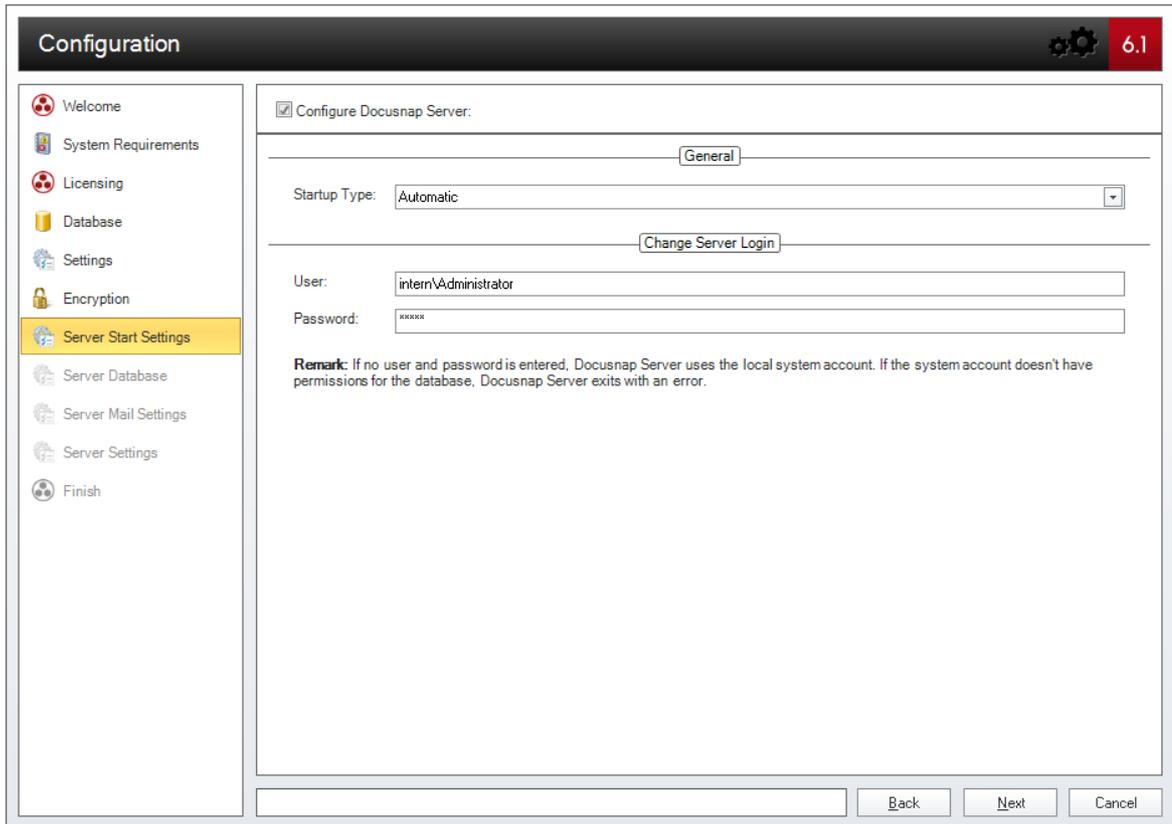
The encryption file should be treated with great care, since it is not possible to replace or re-create this file should it become lost.



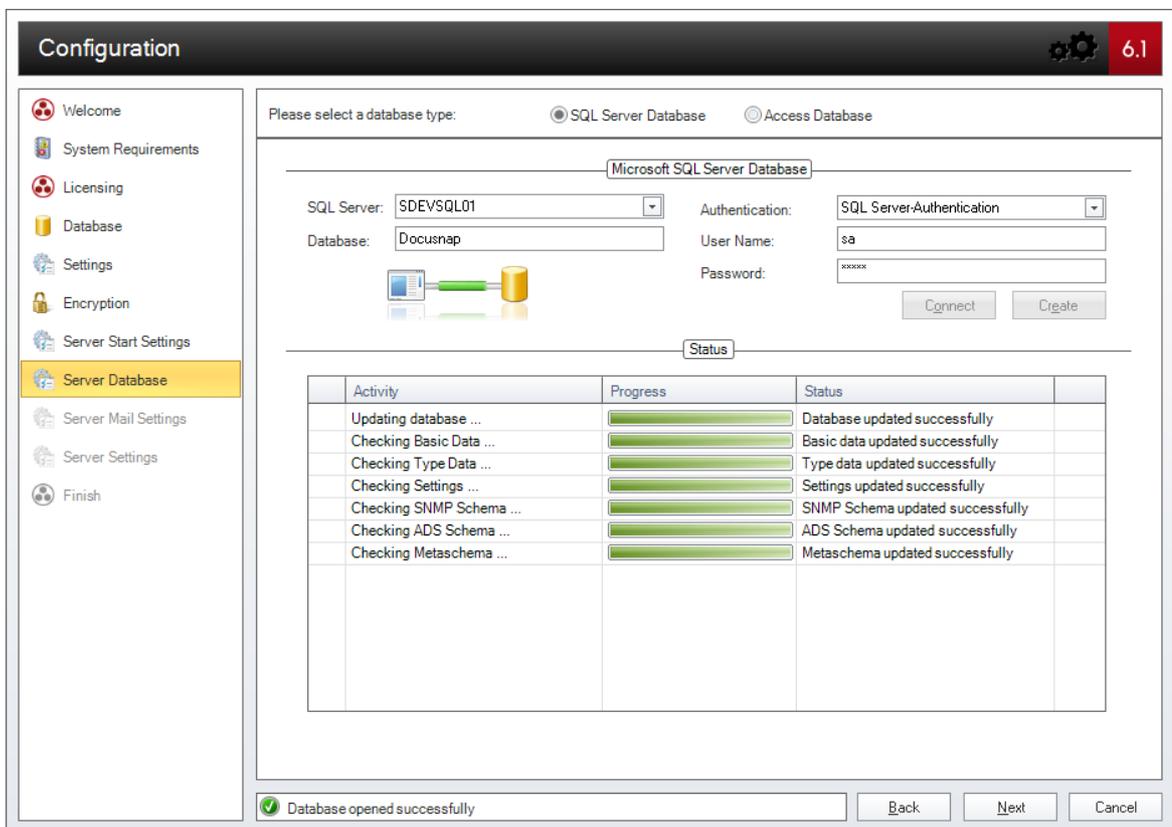
The Startup wizard also allows you to configure Docusnap Server. Enable the *Configure Docusnap Server* checkbox to display the steps for the Docusnap Server configuration.

On the *Server Start Settings* page, you can define a user who has sufficient permissions to start the Docusnap Server.





The Docusnap database is the key element for the completion of jobs. It holds the jobs to be processed by the Docusnap Server.



DocuSnap provides notifications for particular areas, e.g. when a contract has expired. These notifications are sent out by e-mail.

In the SMTP Settings group, you can enter the SMTP server data and select additional options for authentication and SSL encryption. If the SMTP server requires authentication, the *User* and *Password* fields will be enabled so that you can enter the required information.

After you have entered a value in the *SMTP Server* or *User* field, click the *Check Settings* button to send an e-mail to a test recipient to verify the e-mail settings specified here. Only if this test was successful, the *Next* button will be enabled so that you can go to the next step.

If you do not want to use the e-mail settings, leave the text boxes blank or disable this step by removing the checkmark from the *Configure Email Settings* checkbox.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration' window for version 6.1. The left sidebar lists configuration steps: Welcome, System Requirements, Licensing, Database, Settings, Encryption, Server Start Settings, Server Database, **Server Mail Settings**, Server Settings, and Finish. The main content area is titled 'Configure Email Settings' and is checked. It is divided into several sections:

- SMTP Settings:** SMTP Server: eMailServer01.docusnap.intern; Server Requires Authentication: checked; SSL Encryption: unchecked; External Email Provider: unchecked; SMTP Port: 25.
- Authentication:** User: admin; Password: xxxx.
- Sender:** Sender: DocusnapServer@docusnap.com.
- Check Settings:** Test Address: info@docusnap.com.

 At the bottom right, there are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Use the *Documentation Path* field to define the location where the documents (overviews and datasheets) will be stored by the DocuSnap Server. Click the  button to select the folder for storing the documents to be output.

When creating the documentation, DocuSnap uses the system account permissions for executing the service. For this reason, make sure that the system account has a write permission to the selected documentation path. Alternatively, you can specify a user or service account with sufficient permissions for the *DocuSnap Server* Windows service.

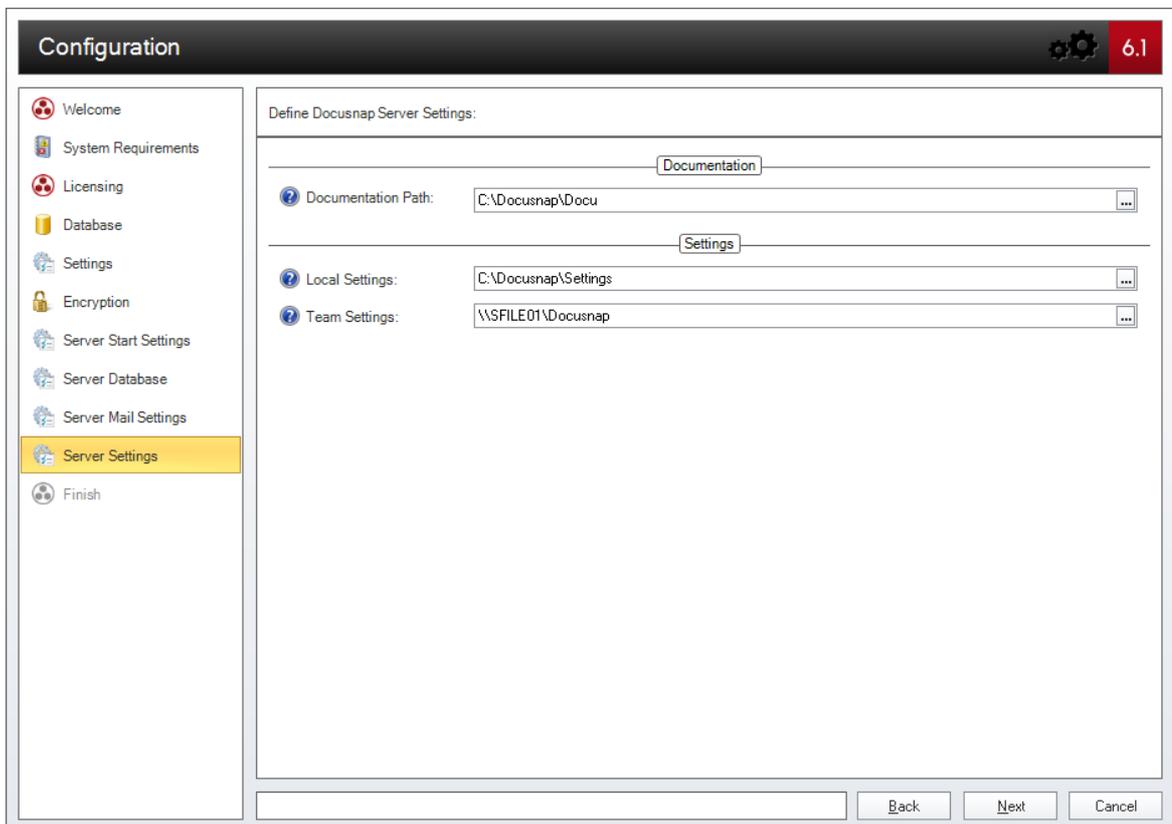
The files and templates used by Docusnap may either be stored on the local hard disk, on a server, or on a different computer in the network. Docusnap will use the path selected for the *Team Settings*, if any. If no path was selected for the *Team Settings* or if that path no longer exists, the path defined for the *Local Settings* will be used.

The [IT concepts](#) you create are saved under the IT Concept path.

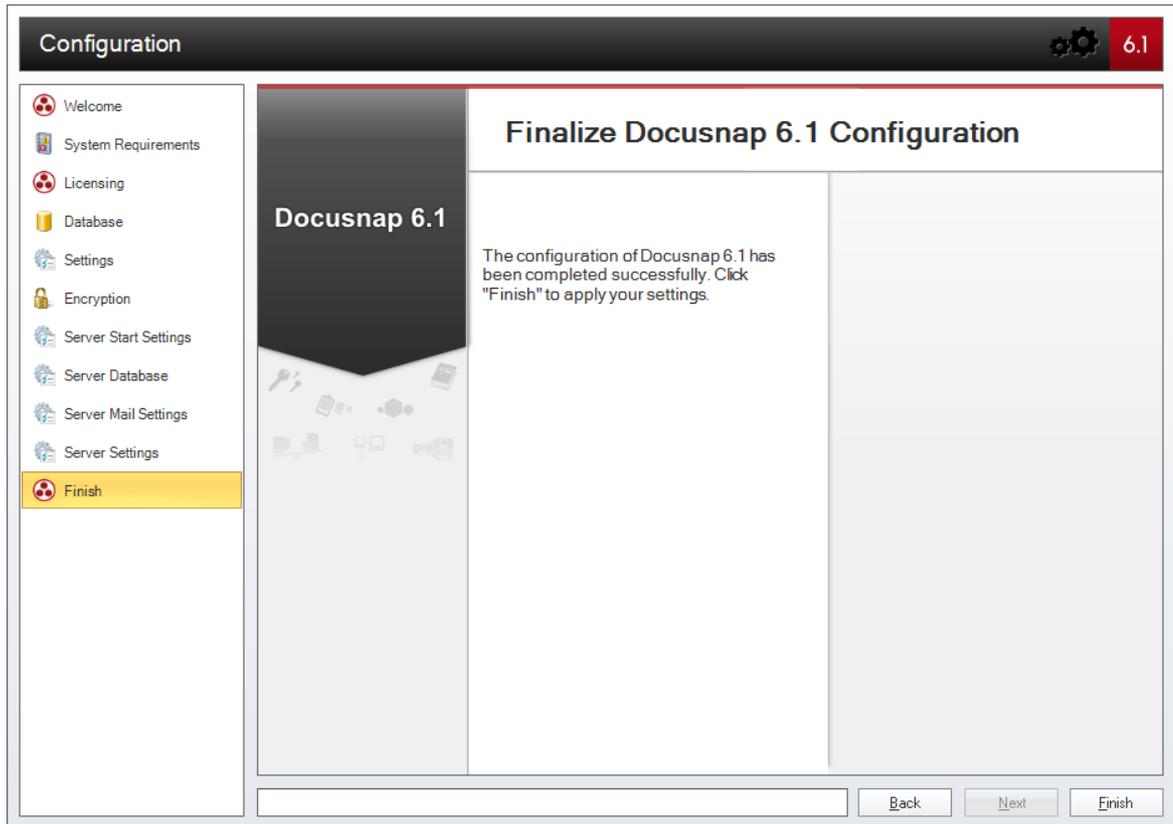


The *Docusnap Server* only supports UNC addresses for the path specifications to be used.

When creating the documentation, Docusnap relies on templates. During the configuration, Docusnap loads these templates into the local or team settings directory. If both paths are not available at the time when the job is processed, Docusnap will use the templates from the program directory.



When all settings have been defined, the configuration is complete.



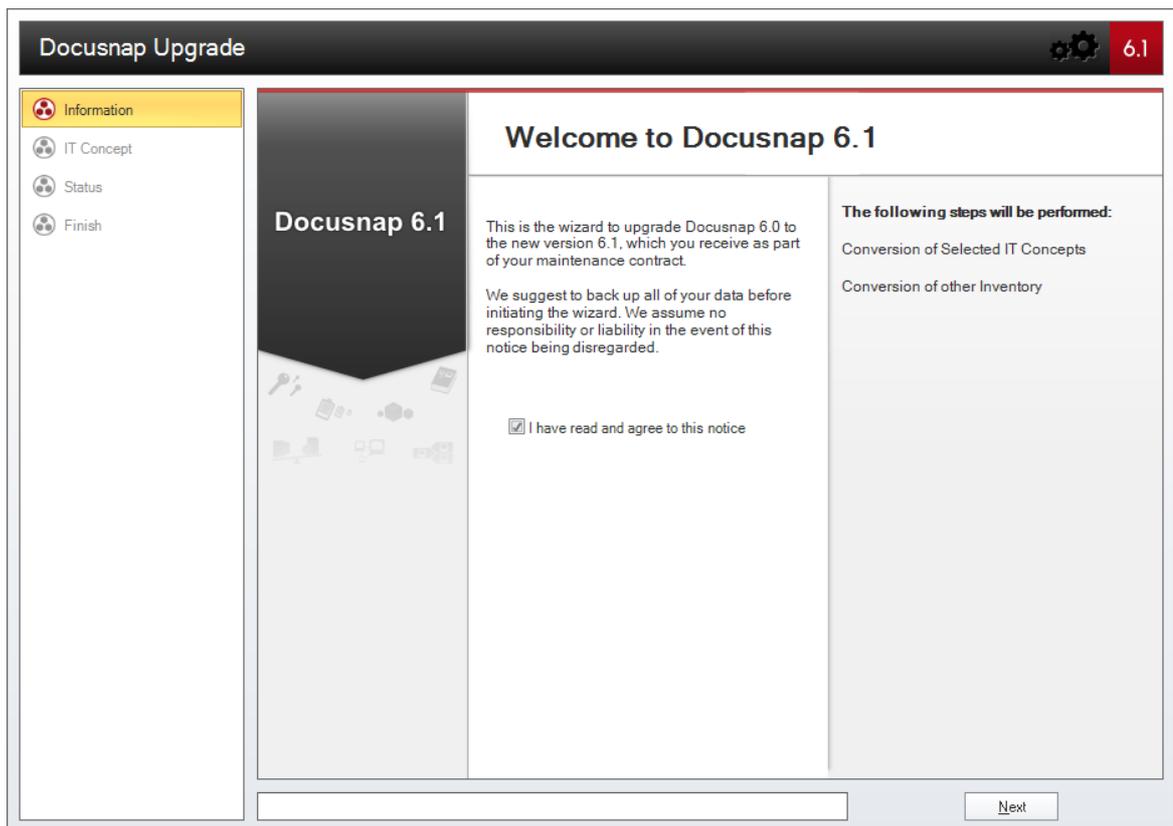
Once you have completed the configuration, Docusnap 6.1 will start automatically.



2.6 Upgrade 6.0 to 6.1

If you open a database in Docusnap 6.1 that was created with Docusnap 6.0, the *Upgrade wizard* will be launched.

The *Upgrade wizard* converts existing Other Inventory (from versions before 6.1) to IT assets. Inventory items created on the Company level are output as IT assets below the *Account Inventory* heading. If inventory was defined on the domain level, a separate heading is created for each domain and the inventory is listed under that heading.

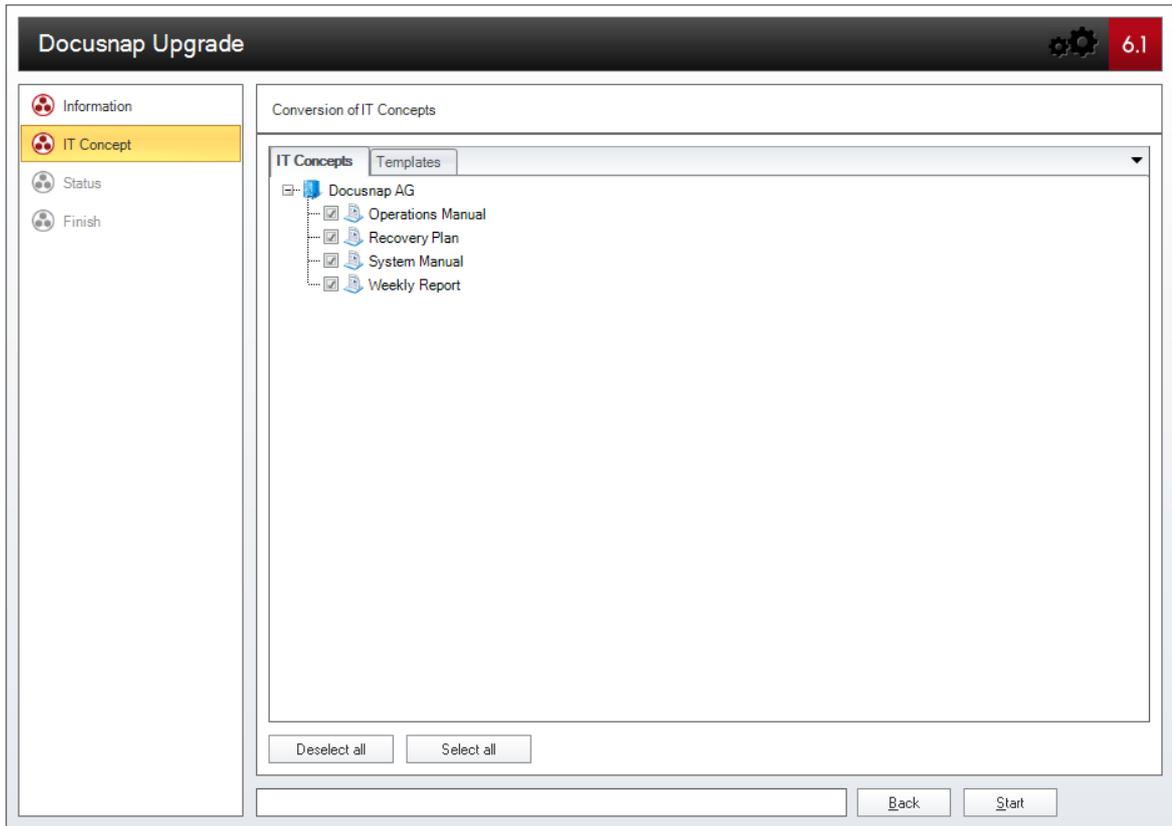


For Docusnap version 6.1, the IT Concept module was redeveloped. To continue using IT concepts created with Docusnap 6.0, you need to convert them. If legacy IT concepts or legacy IT concept templates exist when you start Docusnap, the *Upgrade wizard* suggests to convert them.

On the *IT Concepts* tab, you can select the IT concepts to be converted. On the *Templates* tab, you can select Docusnap 6.0 templates for conversion. The converted IT concepts will be stored in the folder you selected for IT concepts in the Options dialog.

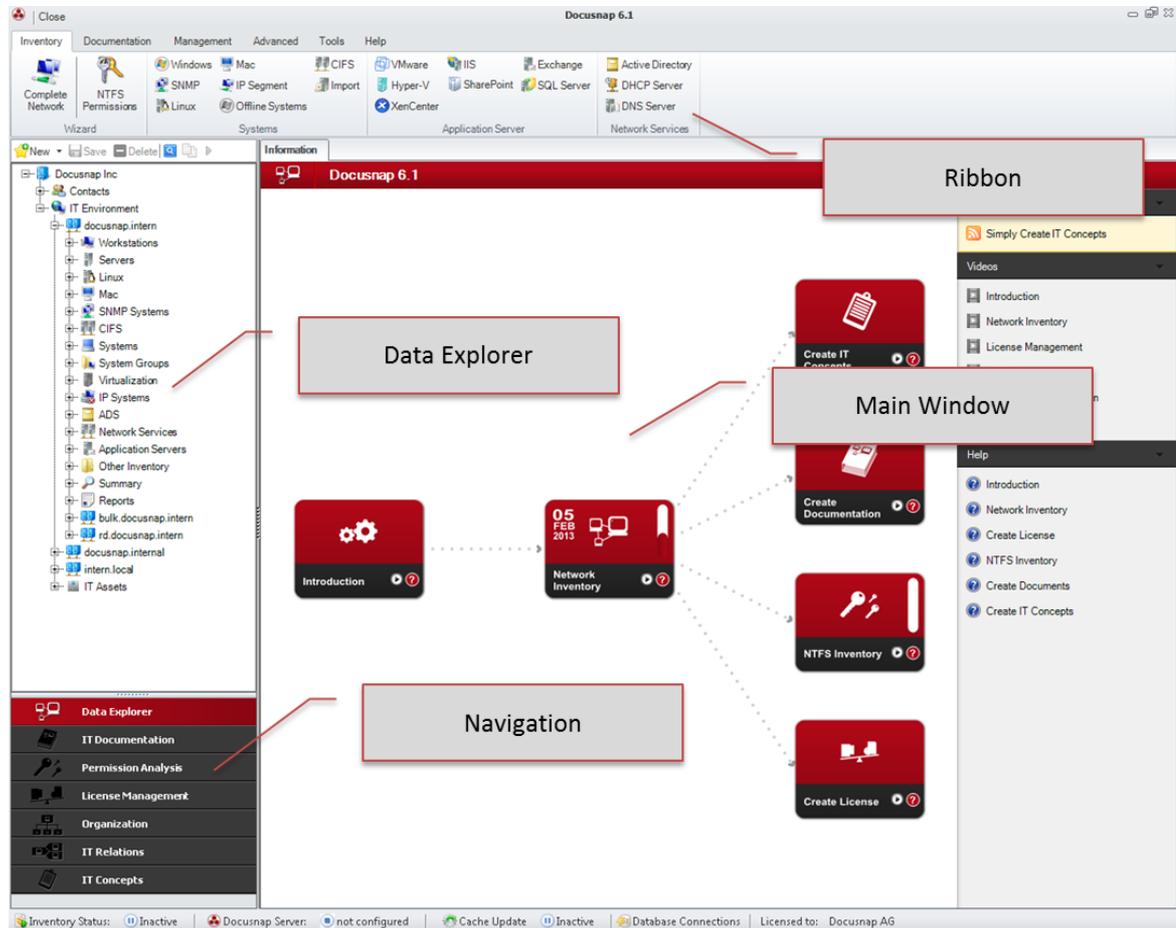
If not all IT concepts have been converted, the IT Concept ribbon displays the *Docusnap 6.0 Migration* button. Using this button, you can restart the IT concept migration.

Click the *Start* button to start the conversion.



2.7 User Interface

The user interface for Docusnap is subdivided into the ribbon, the Data Explorer and the main window.



Ribbon

Docusnap wizards, dialogs and features will generally be accessed from the ribbon. The ribbon is subdivided into several tabs according to functionality.

Data Explorer

In the Data Explorer, information is hierarchically displayed as a tree view. There are seven different tree views. The various tree views can be opened as needed from the navigation pane located below the Data Explorer.

Main Window

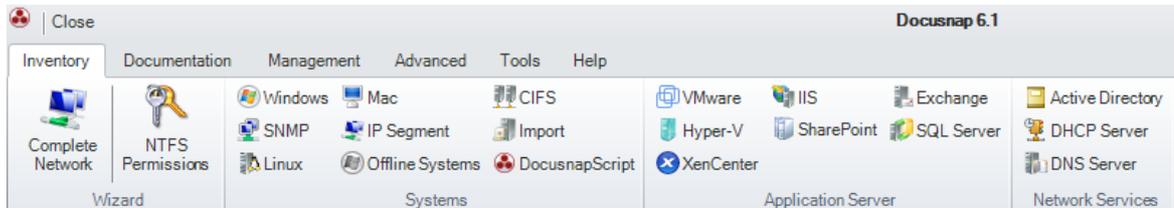
In the main window, information is displayed in various views.

The main window displays data for the objects selected in the Data Explorer. Additional information can be specified using data entry screens in the editor. Comments, financial data, passwords, contracts and reminders can be added by means of extensions. The reports will be executed on their own tab. The

permissions for the folder structure will be analyzed using the Permission Analysis process.

2.7.1 Menu Ribbon

Most Docusnap wizards, dialogs and features will be accessed from the ribbon. The ribbon is subdivided into several tabs according to functionality.



[Inventory](#)

[Documentation](#)

[Management](#)

[Advanced](#)

[Tools](#)

[Help](#)

[Permission Analysis \(optional\)](#)

[License Management \(optional\)](#)

[Organization \(optional\)](#)

[Reporting \(optional\)](#)

[IT Relations \(optional\)](#)

[IT Concept \(optional\)](#)

[IT Concept Editor \(optional\)](#)

2.7.1.1 Inventory

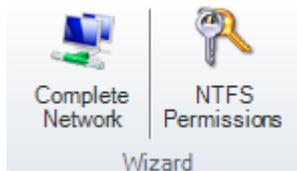
The wizards for starting the inventory process can be accessed from the *Inventory* ribbon. Learn how to use the wizards for the inventory process by reading the [Inventory](#) chapter.

Wizard

To launch the Inventory wizard, click the *Complete Network* button. The analysis of the NTFS permissions can be started by clicking the *NTFS Permissions* button.

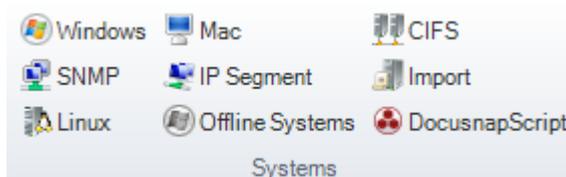


Details on the NTFS analysis will be described in the [Permission Analysis](#) chapter.



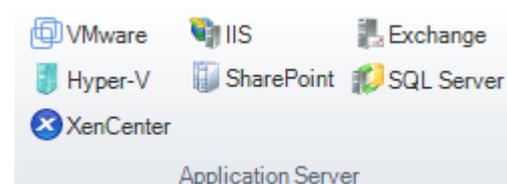
Systems

Depending on the type of system you want to scan, click the associated button in this group. The systems that can be inventoried here are: Windows, SNMP, Linux, Mac, IP Segments, and Offline Systems. CIFS systems (Common Internet File System) can also be scanned. These are systems that simulate a Windows file server (smb, cifs). In addition, you can use the Import button to import script files. When you click the *DocusnapScript* button, a dialog opens where you can select the executable file for creating script files. More information about Docusnap scripts can be found in the [Scripts](#) chapter.



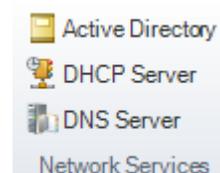
Application Servers

By clicking the buttons from the *Application Server* group, wizards for scanning the *VMware Infrastructure*, *Hyper-V*, *XenCenter*, *IIS*, *SharePoint*, *Exchange Server*, and *SQL Server* environments can be launched.



Network Services

By clicking the buttons in the *Network Services* group, you can start the wizards scanning the Active Directory, DHCP Server, or DNS Server systems.



2.7.1.2 Documentation

Using this ribbon, you can create the required documentation. Documents you can

create include, for example, Visio maps, Excel overviews or Word-based datasheets. Learn how to use the wizard for creating the documents by reading the [Documentation](#) chapter. The *Documentation* ribbon consists of three groups:

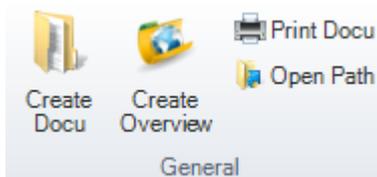
General

Click the *Create Docu* button to launch the wizard which contains the options for creating the various documents. Multiple documents can be created simultaneously using this wizard.

The *Create Overview* button in the ribbon can be used to create a document that references the previously created documents.

By clicking the *Print Docu* button, you can open the [Print Documentation](#) wizard.

Clicking the *Open Path* button takes you to the path where the created documents are saved. You can specify this from the *Options* dialog.

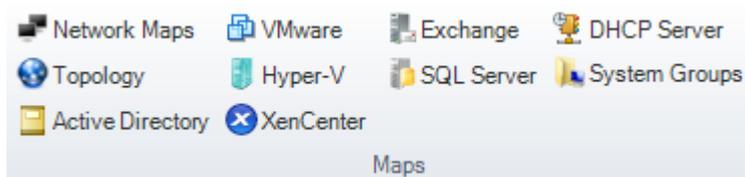


Maps

The following Visio map files can be created:

- Network Maps
- Topology
- Active Directory
- VMware Infrastructure
- Hyper-V
- XenCenter
- Exchange
- SQL Server
- DHCP Server
- System Groups

Different systems located in one domain can be combined into [System Groups](#). Corresponding datasheets and network maps, as well as routing maps, can be created for these system groups.

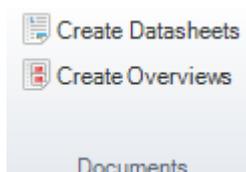


Documents

Use the buttons in the *Documents* group to create datasheets and overviews.

Click the *Create Datasheets* button to open the dialog for creating datasheets.

To generate Excel overviews of the Active Directory system, the Windows computers, and the software, click the *Create Overviews* button.

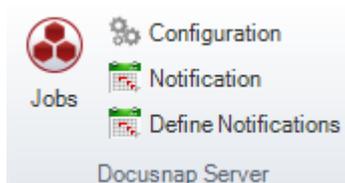


2.7.1.3 Management

Types and status values can be added from the *Management* ribbon. For a detailed explanation, see the [Management](#) chapter. This ribbon consists of four groups.

Docusnap Server

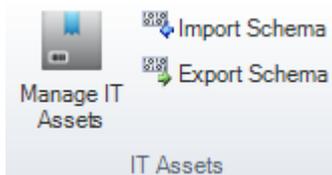
- [Jobs](#): Clicking the *Jobs* button opens a dialog where you can manage jobs scheduled in Docusnap.
- [Configuration](#): Click the *Configuration* button to launch the Docusnap Server configuration wizard.
- [Notification](#): Notifications are used to send e-mail messages automatically if certain conditions or criteria are met. This feature can be used, for example, to notify the user about the expiration of a contract.
- [Define Notification](#): With this feature, you can have Docusnap automatically send an e-Mail when a license becomes invalid or an agreement expires on that day. Corresponding queries can be defined in the *Define Notifications* dialog.



IT Assets

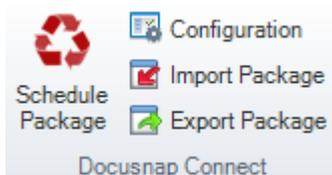
- [Manage IT Assets](#): The Manage IT Assets dialog can be used to create and edit IT assets.

- [Import Schema](#): Click the *Import Schema* button to import IT assets that have been saved in an external file to the database.
- [Export Schema](#): Using the *Export Schema* button, you can save IT assets to an external file.



DocuSnap Connect

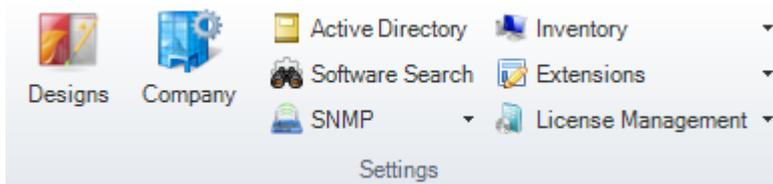
- [Schedule Package](#): Click the *Schedule Package* button to open the *DocuSnap Connect* wizard. This wizard can be used to schedule a timed export of data.
- [Configuration](#): Clicking the *Configuration* button opens a dialog for the configuration of tables for export.
- [Import Package](#): Click the *Import Package* button to import packages that have been saved in an external file to the database.
- [Export Package](#): Using the *Export Package* button, you can save previously created packages to an external file.



Settings

- [Designs](#): Clicking this button opens a dialog where you can customize the design of reports, Visio maps, and IT concepts or create new designs.
- [Customize Company](#): The basic settings for DocuSnap can be specified in the *Options* and *Designs and Styles* dialogs. These settings can be modified individually for each company. This particularly affects the design of the documents to be created and the company logo. The available settings are explained in the Company Settings section.
- [Active Directory](#): Clicking the *Active Directory* button will open the *Manage Active Directory* dialog. This dialog allows you to modify the scope of the ADS inventory process. For detailed explanations of this topic, refer to the Active Directory section.
- [Software Search](#): Clicking the *Software Search* button opens the *Manage Software Search* dialog. From this dialog, you can define software that cannot be

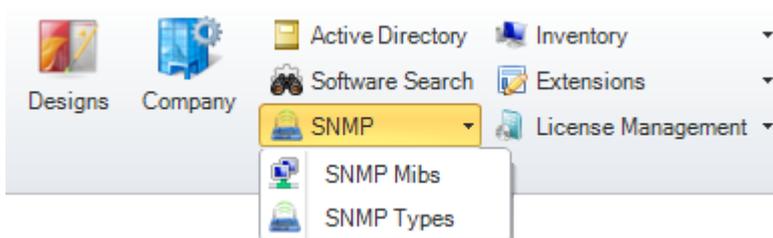
scanned automatically due to a missing registry entry. To learn how the Software Search feature works, refer to the Software Search section.



- **SNMP:**

[SNMP Mibs](#): In the *Manage MIBs* dialog, you can manage your own or third-party MIBs.

[SNMP Types](#): Click the *SNMP Types* button to open the *Manage SNMP Types* dialog. There, you can define additional types for SNMP devices.

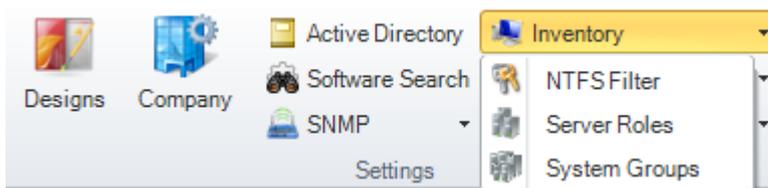


- **Inventory:**

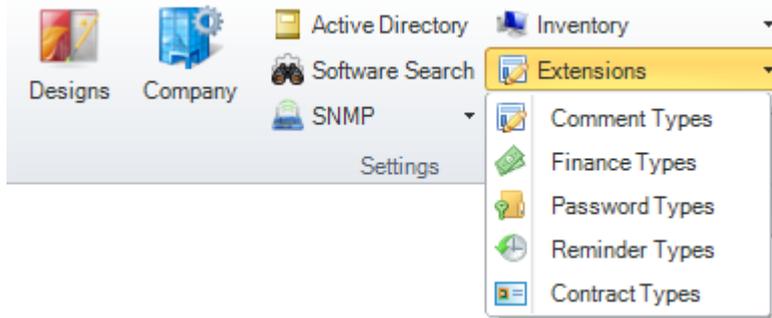
[NTFS Filter](#): Clicking the *NTFS Filter* option opens the *Manage NTFS Filter dialog*. In this dialog, you can specify directories to be excluded from the NTFS analysis. For an explanation of this dialog, refer to the NTFS Filter section.

[Server Roles](#): During the server scanning process, all services that define the roles of the servers will be inventoried. The *Manage Roles* dialog allows you to define which service corresponds to which role. You can open this dialog by clicking the *Server Roles* option.

[System Groups](#): In the *Manage System Groups* dialog, you can create system groups. Systems that have been scanned can be assigned to system groups to define logical groupings. For each group, specific maps can be generated.



- **Extensions:** Extensions provide the ability to store comments, financial data, passwords, contracts and reminders for selected objects in the tree view. Each extension has a type that describe the associated extension. To open the dialog where you can add extension types, click the button for the desired type.

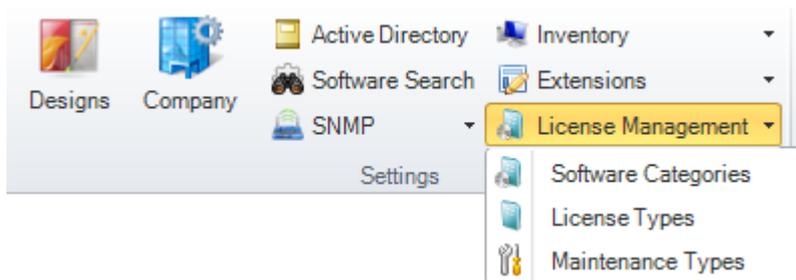


- License Management:

[Software Category](#): Software categories are used to group the software products for license management. Docusnap provides predefined categories.

[License Types](#): Docusnap provides pre-defined license types. If additional types of licenses are needed, you can add and administer them from the *Manage License Types* dialog. Examples of licenses types include: OEM, volume licenses and package licenses.

[MaintenanceTypes](#): In addition to the license contracts, the associated software maintenance agreements can also be defined. There are various types of software maintenance agreements. Clicking the *Maintenance Types* button will open the *Manage Maintenance Types* dialog.



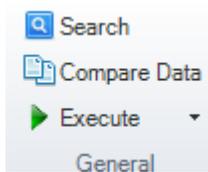
2.7.1.4 Advanced

The Advanced ribbon consists of five groups.

General

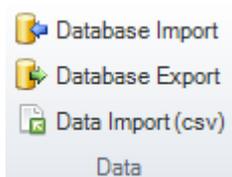
- [Search](#): Using the integrated full-text search, you can search the entire database for specific terms. The search feature will be explained in more detail in the Search section.
- Compare Data: A click on the *Compare Data* button launches the data comparison wizard. For details on this topic, refer to the [Data Comparison](#) section.
- Execute: The *Execute* button will only be enabled if an object, for which actions specific to that object can be performed, has been selected in the tree view. If, for example, the Remote Desktop Connection from *Management Tools* has been stored with the object, a connection for a scanned computer can be established

directly by means of the *Execute* button.



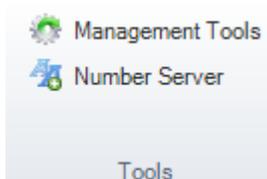
Data

- [Database Import](#): Data from another Docusnap database can be imported by clicking the *Database Import* button.
- [Database Export](#): Using the *Database Export* button, you can export a database.
- [Data Import \(csv\)](#): Click the *Data Import (csv)* button to launch the wizard for importing data from a CSV file.



Tools

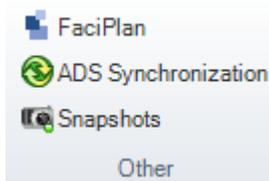
- [Management Tools](#): Click the Management Tools button to set up external programs that can then be started from within Docusnap using the Execute button.
- Number Server: By means of the number server, you can define a sequential number that will be used when you create data entry screens.



Other

- **FaciPlan**: FaciPlan is a facility management application. The equipment that has been inventoried can be managed from within Docusnap. FaciPlan can access this data and integrate it into building plans.
- **ADS Synchronization**: When you click the *ADS Synchronization* button, the scanned systems are compared with the systems known to the Active Directory system. Then, the computers that are no longer found in the Active Directory system, but still exist in Docusnap, will be displayed. From that dialog, you can determine whether these computers should be deleted from the Docusnap database as well. The Active Directory system will not be modified by Docusnap.

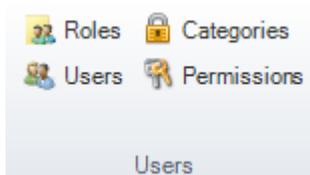
- **Snapshots:** By clicking the *Snapshots* button, you open the dialog for managing snapshots. There, you can name the snapshots that have been created so far. In addition, they can be deleted or flagged as undeletable.



Users

The features in Docusnap can be enabled or disabled from the [Manage Users](#) dialog.

- **Users:** By clicking the *Users* button, you can assign domain users to the defined roles.
- **Roles:** Click this button to open a dialog where all buttons available in the user interface are listed for roles management. These buttons can then be enabled or disabled for the individual roles.
- **Categories:** You can use the [Categories](#) button to control access to extensions.
- **Permissions:** When you click the *Permissions* button, a dialog opens where you can define the [permissions](#) for the objects selected in the tree view.



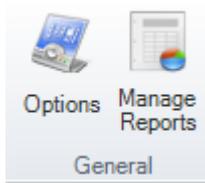
2.7.1.5 Tools

User-defined settings can be defined from the *Tools* ribbon. Detailed explanations of these dialogs are spread across several sections.

General

- **Options:** The Options dialog can be opened by clicking the *Options* button. Program settings can be made from this dialog. The database selection and settings for wizards, additional tools, documentation, license management, the update feature and related to the Docusnap license are found in this dialog. For a detailed explanation of this dialog, refer to the [Options](#) section.
- **Manage Reports:** You can open the dialog for creating and deleting reports by clicking the *Manage Reports* button. The designer for editing the reports can be started by clicking the Designer button located in that dialog. Information about the management, modification and creation of reports can be

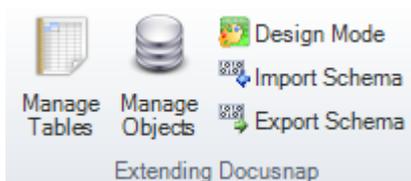
found in the Administration Manual.



Extending Docusnap

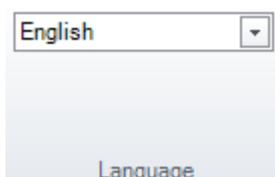
The buttons in the *Extending Docusnap* group will only be available if a license for the Customizing module has been purchased.

- **Manage Tables:** The tables in the Docusnap database can be edited and extended. Clicking the *Manage Tables* button will open a dialog for managing the meta tables.
- **Manage Objects:** Clicking the *Manage Objects* button will open a dialog for managing the meta objects. The tree view in the Data Explorer can be customized or extended from this dialog.
- **Design Mode:** This option is only available if a data entry screen has been opened in the main window. Clicking the *Design Mode* button will open the data entry screen in the Designer.
- **Import Schema:** When you click the Import Schema button, a file with modifications of the hierarchy and tables from another database can be imported into the current database.
- **Export Schema:** When you click the Export Schema button, the modifications made to the hierarchy and the tables will be saved to an external file.



Language

The language for the program will be determined from this group. Docusnap provides the choice of either English or German. The language for Docusnap will be set by selecting it from the combo box. For a language change to take effect, the program must be re-started.



2.7.1.6 Help

From the *Help* ribbon, you can start the software update feature. In addition, the manual and other useful information can be accessed from there. This ribbon is subdivided into two groups:

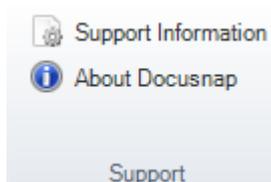
General

- **Update:** Clicking the *Update* button starts the program update. More information about this can be found in the [Update](#) chapter.
- **Merge Reports:** If an update has added new or modified reports to the application directory, these can be copied to the report repository using the *Merge Reports* dialog. To update a report, tick the associated checkbox and confirm the merge action by clicking the *OK* button.
- **Quick Support:** Support in the form of remote maintenance is an option for problems and questions. Clicking the *Quick Support* button, starts the "TeamViewer" client. It displays an ID and a password that you must tell to our support staff so that the support team member can connect to your computer. After the connection with the support team member has been established, control of the screen can be transferred.
- **Changes:** Click the *Changes* button to open a dialog that shows the change log, i.e. the changes and enhancements introduced with the last versions of Docusnap.
- **Help:** Click this button to display a menu that allows you to open the User Manual and the Configuration Manual as PDF files or access their online versions.



Support

- **Support Information:** By clicking the *Support Information* button, you open a dialog that allows you to create and send information for troubleshooting.
- **About Docusnap:** A click on the *About Docusnap* button displays a window with information about the program. For example, the current version number will be displayed.



2.7.1.7 Permission Analysis

The Permission Analysis ribbon will be displayed when Permission Analysis has been selected from the Navigation pane. This ribbon is subdivided into four groups.

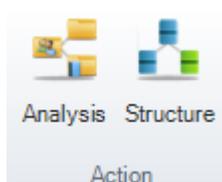
General

- [NTFS Permissions](#): Click the *NTFS Permissions* button to launch a wizard which helps you select the Windows systems for which to scan the permissions.
- [Online Analysis](#): The permissions will be determined at runtime by the Online Analysis process and thus not stored in the database. The Online Analysis process will be active once you click the *Online Analysis* button (highlighted in orange).



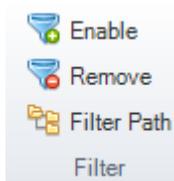
Action

- Analysis: Click the *Analysis* button to open the [permission structure](#) for the currently selected user.
- Structure: Click the *Structure* button to display the [group or user nestings](#) diagram.



Filter

- Enable/Remove: The Data Explorer displays all directories of a scanned system. To display the filter below the permissions list, click the *Enable* button in the *Filter* group of the ribbon. Once you have defined the desired filter criteria (Write, Read, etc.), only those directories will be displayed in the Data Explorer that match the selected user or group filter.
- Filter Path: The *Filter Path* dialog only opens for the analysis of SharePoint permissions. Since the SharePoint permission structure is different from the structure of NTFS permissions, this dialog is used to select the desired starting point for the analysis. According to the filter you set, only the directories below the starting node that correspond to the selected users/groups will be displayed.



Effective Permissions Reports

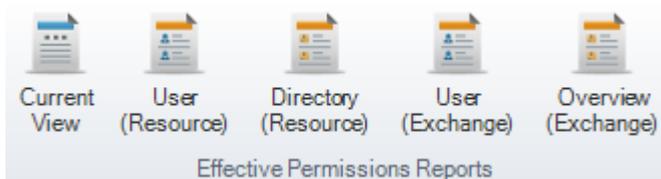
When you click the *Current View* button, the permissions displayed on the Permission Analysis tab will be output in a report.

By clicking the *User (Resource)* button, you can create a report which shows the effective permissions to the selected directory and its subdirectories.

Clicking the *Directory (Resource)* button creates a report which displays all users who have a permission to the selected directory and its subdirectories.

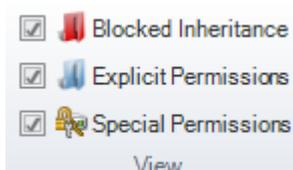
Clicking the *User (Exchange)* button creates a report on the effective permissions of the selected users to the Exchange mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.

Clicking the *Overview (Exchange)* button creates a report which displays all users who have permissions to the mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.



View

- **Blocked Inheritance:** Inheritance can be blocked for directories. This means that the permissions will not be inherited. If the *Blocked Inheritance* checkbox is enabled, the directories for which inheritance is blocked will be displayed with a red icon in the Permission Analysis explorer.
- **Explicit Permissions:** Permissions can be assigned directly to directories. If the *Explicit Permissions* checkbox is enabled, all directories to which permissions have been assigned explicitly will be displayed with a blue icon.
- **Special Permissions:** If this checkbox is enabled, special permissions will be displayed in addition to the basic permissions.



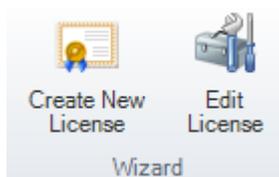
2.7.1.8 License Management

The *License Management* ribbon displays after the License Management option has been selected in the Navigation pane.

Wizard

Clicking the *Create New License* button will start the [License Management Wizard](#). The desired license can be created using this wizard.

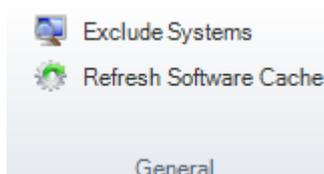
There are two options for modifying an existing license. The data can either be edited using the wizard or using the editor from the main window. Clicking the *Edit License* button will open the *License Management* wizard with the data for the selected software product, which may then be edited.



General

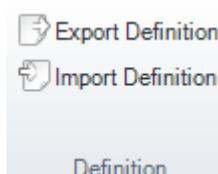
If you want to exclude software pertaining to certain systems, e.g. software used in a test environment, the corresponding systems may be excluded from license management. To exclude such systems, either click the *Exclude Systems* button or use the editor in the [Data Explorer](#) hierarchy of the specific system.

Cached tables have been introduced to Docusnap 6.1 in order to avoid latency during license management. In general, the cache will automatically update itself. The cache can be built manually by clicking the *Refresh Software Cache* button.



Definition

The settings for software groups, software products, search keywords and licenses can be exported and imported into other databases. This means that a software product must only be defined once and can then be re-used with other Docusnap databases.



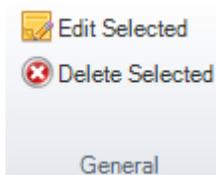
2.7.1.9 Organization

The *Organization* ribbon will display once you have selected *Organization* from the Navigation pane. Organization provides the ability to view all extensions (contracts, financial data, etc.) in a flat structure and thus presents the information from an organizational perspective. This ribbon consists of two groups:

General

The *Edit Selected* and *Delete Selected* buttons are only enabled if an extension has been selected in the data window. By clicking the *Edit Selected* button, you can open the selected extension in the editing window.

By clicking the *Delete Selected* button, you can remove the selected extension.



New

The *Organization* ribbon provides the ability to add new extensions. In the *New* group, you can add comments, passwords, financial elements, contracts and reminders. The dialog for adding extensions will be explained in the [Organization](#) section.



2.7.1.10 Reporting System

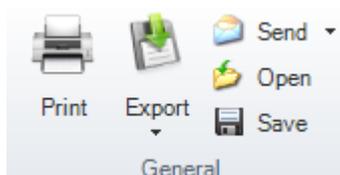
The *Reporting* ribbon appears when a report is executed. Actions specific to reports may be executed from this ribbon. This ribbon consists of four groups.

General

- **Print:** The displayed report can be printed by clicking the *Print* button.
- **Export:** Reports may be exported to various file formats. The desired format can be selected by clicking the *Export* button. When you click the desired format, a dialog appears where you can select the pages to be exported. Click the *plus* sign to expand the settings dialog. Then, you can select format-specific settings. If the file should automatically be opened after the save, enable the *Open After Export* checkbox.
- **Send:** Reports may be sent by email. As with Export, the desired file format can

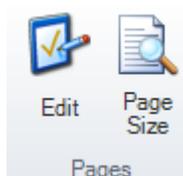
be selected by clicking the *Send* button. The page selection dialog will be opened after you have selected the desired file format. Once the report has been saved, the default email program opens so that you can send the report.

- **Open:** Saved reports can be opened by clicking the *Open* button. Only reports that have been saved as *.mdc* files may be opened in this manner.
- **Save:** Click the *Save* button to save the executed report as an *.mdc* file.



Pages

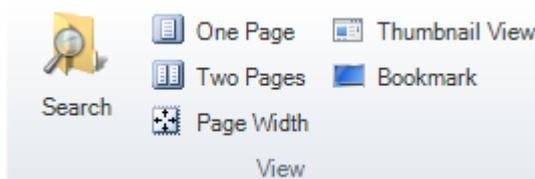
- **Edit:** To edit the displayed report, click the *Edit* button. Editable fields are indicated with red borders. You can specify in the report definition whether a field in the report is editable or not. In the predefined Docusnap reports, only the headings can be edited. The results of the reports are not editable. Once the report has been opened in the Designer, its properties may be edited to make certain report sections editable.
- **Page Size:** To open the dialog for the definition of the page size, click the *Page Size* button.



View

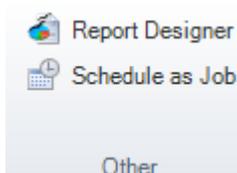
- **Search:** When you click the *Search* button, the search toolbar will appear on the status bar of the main window. This toolbar can be used to search the displayed report.
- **One Page, Two Pages:** These options determine whether one page will be displayed or two pages side by side.
- **Page Width:** When you click the *Page Width* button., the executed report will be use the full width of the main window for display.
- **Thumbnail view:** Thumbnails of the report pages will be displayed to the right of the data window. You can display or hide the preview pages by clicking the *Thumbnail View* button.
- **Bookmarks:** You can define bookmarks for your report. If bookmarks have been defined for a report, you can display them by clicking the *Bookmarks* button. This

button is disabled if no bookmarks exist.



Other

- **Report Designer:** The current report can be opened in the Report Designer. To do so, click the *Report Designer* button.
- **Schedule as Job:** Click the *Schedule as Job* button to open the *Report Automation* wizard. The execution of a report can be scheduled for a later time using this wizard.



2.7.1.11 IT Relations

The *IT Relations* ribbon displays when you select IT Relations in the Navigation pane. Using this ribbon, you can save and edit relations.

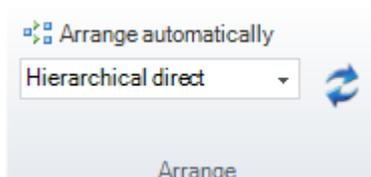
General

Click the *Export* button to export the current diagram to a Visio file. Clicking the *Reset* button will reload the last saved version of the diagram.



Arrange

The *Arrange* group on the ribbon is used to select the algorithm for the automatic arrangement of the objects.

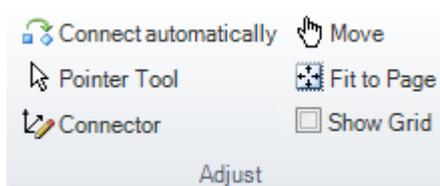


Adjust

- If the *Connect automatically* button has been enabled, a new component will

always be connected with the most recently selected component.

- The *Pointer Tool* allows you to select individual components by a mouse click.
- If the *Connector* tool has been selected, you can create a relation connector by clicking a component while holding down the mouse button. That component can then be dragged to another component and, by doing so, the two components will be connected.
- Click the *Move* button to enable moving of the entire diagram.
- Clicking the *Fit to Page* button adjusts the diagram to the page.
- Show Grid: In the background of the drawing sheet, a grid can be displayed that helps you align the components.



Connector

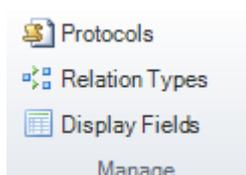
In the *Connector* group, you can select the connector type and design.



Manage

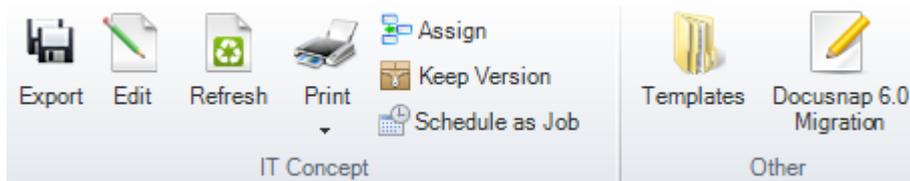
By clicking the buttons in the *Manage* group, you open [Management dialogs](#) for the displayed protocols, the connection types and the displayed fields.

- Protocols: With each connector, an entry screen allows you to select the protocol to be used for that connection. Clicking the *Protocols* button opens a dialog where you can manage and add protocols.
- Relation Types: You can map the connection between two components using a relation type. New relation types can be added from the management dialog.
- Display Fields Each relation has properties, such as a name, description, priority, etc. The fields to be displayed can be selected from the Display Fields for Relations dialog.



2.7.1.12 IT Concept

The IT Concepts ribbon displays when you have selected IT Concepts in the Navigation pane. Using this ribbon, you can edit and change concepts.



IT Concepts

- **Export:** Using the *Export* button, you can export your concept to Word, PDF, or other formats.
- **Edit:** A click on the *Edit* button launches the IT Concept Editor where you can edit the selected IT concept.
- **Refresh:** Use the *Refresh* button to update the IT concept. This reloads the data for data elements, reports, etc. and recreates the table of contents.
- **Print:** By clicking the *Print* button, you can print the selected IT concept.
- **Assign:** Clicking this button opens the *Assign IT Concepts* dialog which allows you to insert the desired concept into other tree views. It is also possible to add an *IT concept folder* to a node in one of the other trees.
- **Keep Version:** Since only a certain number of versions of a document can be stored, you can click this button to select and keep a certain version. This prevents the current document version from deletion.
- **Schedule as Job:** Clicking this button opens a wizard which allows you to schedule creation of an IT concept for a certain date and time.
- **Templates:** Clicking the *Templates* button opens the *Manage IT Concept Templates* dialog.
- **Docusnap 6.0 Migration:** If the database still holds Docusnap 6.0 concepts which have not been migrated to the new IT Concept format, you can start the migration by clicking the *Docusnap 6.0 Migration* button.

2.7.1.13 IT Concept Editor

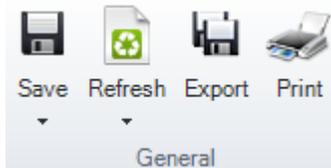
General

- **Save:** After clicking the *Save* button, you can decide whether to simply save the concept, to save it as a new version, or to save it as a template.
- **Refresh:** Use the *Refresh* button to update the IT concept. You can specify whether you would like to refresh the entire IT concept or just the document outline. A refresh of the entire document reloads the data for data elements,



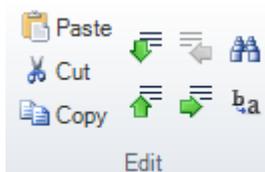
reports, etc. and recreates the table of contents. When you just refresh the document outline, the system recreates the table of contents and reloads the entries in the navigation pane.

- **Export:** Using the *Export* button, you can export your concept to Word, PDF, or other formats.
- **Print:** By clicking the *Print* button, you can print the open IT concept.



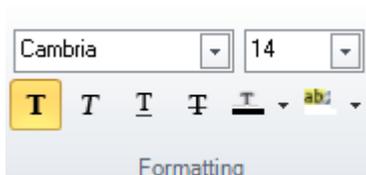
Edit

- **Paste:** Using the *Paste* button, you can insert elements from the clipboard into the text area.
- **Cut:** This button allows you to cut selected text elements.
- **Copy:** This button allows you to copy selected text elements to the clipboard.
- **Hierarchical structure:** By clicking the arrows, you can change the hierarchical level and order of the headings in your IT concept.
- **Find:** The  button allows you to quickly find particular parts in the entire text quickly and easily.
- **Replace:** The  button allows you to find and replace certain text parts.



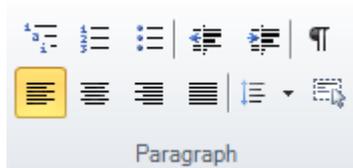
Formatting

This group contains buttons that can be used to change the font, color, and typeface of your text.



Paragraph

The buttons in the *Paragraph* group allow you to adjust the alignment and formatting of the paragraphs in your text area.



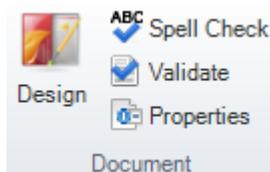
Styles

For text formatting, [Styles](#) are available which allow you to edit the text in your entire document in a centralized way. These styles are also needed when creating the table of contents.



Document

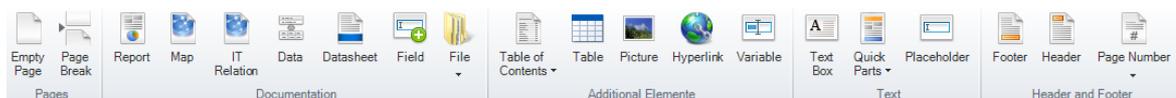
- **Design:** Clicking the *Design* button opens the *Designs and Styles* dialog. This dialog allows you to individually define the design of your IT concept.
- **Spell Check:** Click the *Spell Check* button to start the integrated spell checker.
- **Validate:** By clicking the *Validate* button, you can check the IT concept for validity. Any errors found will be displayed in the error list. An error is present if, e.g., an inserted relation was deleted or if a report does not exist any longer.
- **Properties:** Click the *Properties* button to open a window which lists the properties of your IT concept. Here, the title and author of the IT concepts may be changed. You can also enter an additional description. The properties also include additional information such as the date when the IT concept was last modified.



Insert

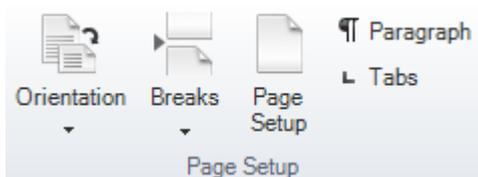
Use the Insert ribbon to insert different [elements](#) into your IT concept.

- **Header and Footer:** Use the Header or Footer button to open an additional tab where you can specify your header and footer settings.



Page Layout

- Orientation: The options below this button can be used to specify portrait or landscape format.
- Breaks: Click the *Breaks* button to insert a page break. Two different types of page breaks, i.e. *Continuous* and *Next Page* can be selected.
- Page Setup: Click the *Page Setup* button to adjust the margins, paper size, header and footer, columns, and borders of your document.
- Paragraph: This button opens a dialog that allows you to change the formatting, indents, frame, and page breaks of your document.
- Tabs: This button opens the *Tabs* dialog where you can set and change various indents.



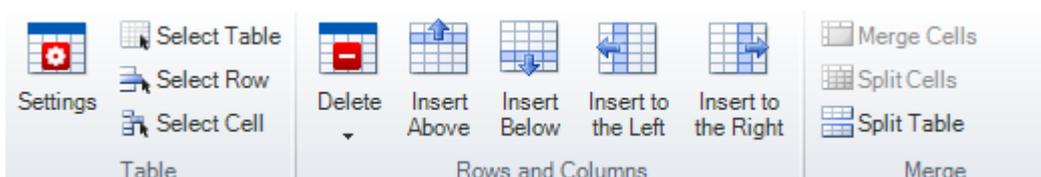
Data Elements

If you highlight a certain element such as a map, a relation, or a data element, an additional ribbon displays.

- Settings: When you click the Settings button, you can specify further settings for the selected element.
- Refresh: For elements such as *data elements*, *maps*, or *relations*, you can click the *Refresh* button to load their current version.
- Delete: Click the *Delete* button to delete the selected element.



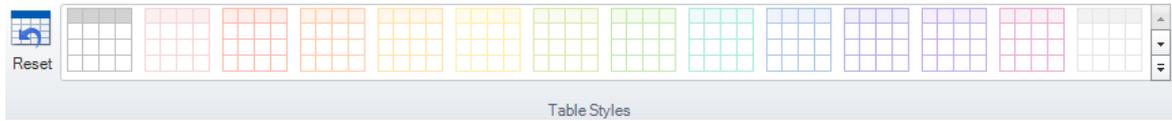
Table Tools



The Table Tools ribbon display when you insert a new table or select an existing table.

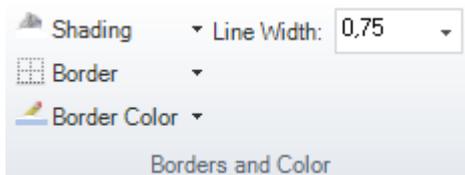
Table Styles

Various styles are available for tables. Click the little arrows next to the buttons and select the desired basic shading for your table.



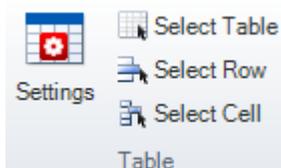
Borders and Color

In the *Borders and Color* group, you can select the shading, border color, border, and line width for the selected part of the table.



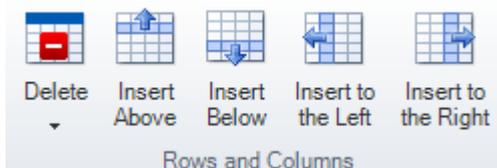
Table

- **Settings:** Here, you can change table properties such as the distance from text or the cell height.
- **Select Table:** Click the *Select Table* button to select the entire table.
- **Select Row; Select Cell:** These two buttons can be used to select the row or cell where the cursor is currently placed.



Rows and Columns

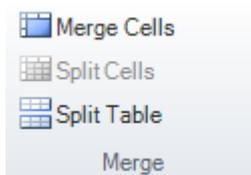
- **Delete Table; Delete Columns; Delete Rows:** These options can be used to delete the entire table, selected columns, or selected rows. These options display when you click the *Delete* button.
- **Insert Above; Insert Below; Insert to the Left; Insert to the Right:** These four buttons can be used to insert more columns and lines into an existing table.



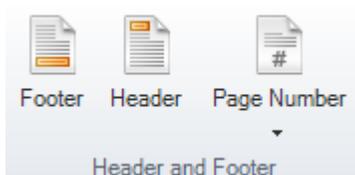
Merge

- **Merge Cells:** Click this button to merge the selected cells into one.

- Split Cells: Clicking this button allows you to split the highlighted merged cell again.
- Split Table: Click this button to split the existing table into two.



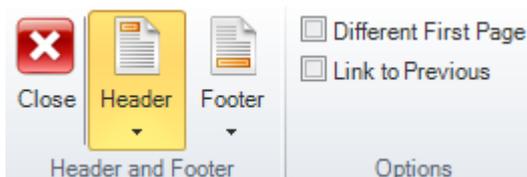
Header and Footer



This ribbon allows you to create headers and footers.

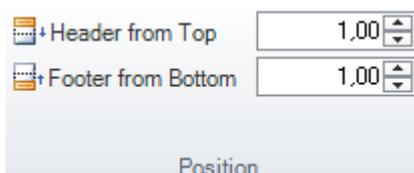
Header and Footer

- Close: Click this button to end the editing of your headers and footers. You are taken back to the *General* ribbon.
- Header; Footer: Use these buttons to enable, disable and modify your headers and footers.
- Different First Page: Tick this checkbox to create a special header and footer for the first page of your document.
- Link to Previous: If you enable the *Link to Previous* feature, a document with multiple sections will always use the header and / or footer of the previous section.



Position

In the *Position* group, you can change the position of your headers and / or footers.



2.7.2 Data Explorer

The data resulting from the inventory scan as well as manually entered information is displayed in the Data Explorer. This tree view reflects the structure of the network and presents the data transparently.

The tree nodes (objects) may represent captions, data or reports. Captions aid with the organization of the displayed information. When you select a data object in the tree view, the associated information will be displayed in the main window. When you select a report in the tree view, it will be generated and displayed in the main window.

In addition, you can use the *New*, *Save*, and *Delete* buttons above the tree structure to create, save, and delete a company.



By clicking the  button above the Data Explorer tree structure, you can start a [Full-text Search](#) .

Once a node has been selected in the Data Explorer, you can click the  button to start a [Data comparison](#) .

In the Navigation pane, you can select one of the seven available categories (Data Explorer, IT Documentation, Permission Analysis, License Management, Organization, IT Relations, IT Concepts) for display. Depending on the category selected in the Navigation pane, the ribbon and the contents of the main window will be adjusted accordingly.



[Data Explorer](#)

[IT Documentation](#)

[Permissions Analysis](#)

[License Management](#)



Organization

IT Relations

IT Concepts

2.7.2.1 Data Explorer

The *Data Explorer* displays data resulting from a [network inventory scan](#) and any information that have been added manually.

The top level represents the company. If you want to add a new company, click the *New* button above the Data Explorer. A new company can only be created if either an existing company is selected in the tree view or if no object is selected at all. When you click the *New* button, the [data entry screen](#) for creating a new company appears. Once you have entered all required information, click the *Save* button above the Data Explorer to save it.

Name	Data (5)	Comments (0)	Finance (0)	Passwords (0)	Contracts (0)	Reminders (0)	Virtualization Host
SBDC0002	Succeeded		docusnap.internal	DC		No	
SBEX0001	Succeeded		docusnap.internal	Server		No	
SBPS0001	Succeeded		docusnap.internal	Server		No	
SLDC0001	Succeeded		docusnap.internal	DC		No	
SLSQ0001	Succeeded		docusnap.internal	Server		No	
SLTS0001	Succeeded		docusnap.internal	Server		No	

At the second level, the *Contacts* and *Network Environment* objects are located. Previously created *IT Concepts* will be listed at the level directly below the company.

If the *Contacts* node is selected, you can create a new contact entry by clicking the

New button.

All domains in the network environment that have already been inventoried or created will be listed under the *Network Environment* node. In addition, equipment that was entered manually at the company level will be displayed under the Other Inventory node. Concepts created for this company in the IT Concepts module are listed directly below the company node.

At the third level, any identified devices are listed under the *Workstations, Servers, Linux, Mac, SNMP Systems* and *Virtualization* nodes. At the next level, the inventory date of each scanned device is displayed.

Below the ADS node, you can see entries showing the ADS inventory date. Below the date, the nodes for various areas such as ADS Users, ADS Groups, ADS Logical Structure, ADS Sites, Subnets, Master Roles and the Global Catalog are displayed.

Under the Network Services node, you can find DHCP Servers and DNS Servers. Under the Application Servers node, the Exchange, IIS Servers, SharePoint Servers and SQL Servers nodes are listed. The next level features a listing of the detected equipment and below it, the scan date. The levels below the scan date contain information on the system.

Under the *Virtualization* node, you can find the VMware Infrastructure and the Hyper-V Server nodes. The level below shows the date of the scan. Below the date, you can find a listing of data identified by the scan.

Under the *IP Systems* node, you can see any equipment that was found during an *IP System* scan.

You can manually add any equipment that could not be scanned automatically under the *Systems* node. To do so, use the [data entry screen](#) which is displayed in the main window.

Reports are available at various levels (company, domain, etc.) You can find the reports associated to the current level under the Reports node.

2.7.2.2 IT Documentation

When you navigate to IT Documentation in the Navigation pane, the Explorer shows any documents created in this module. Maps and datasheets are displayed in a hierarchical structure.

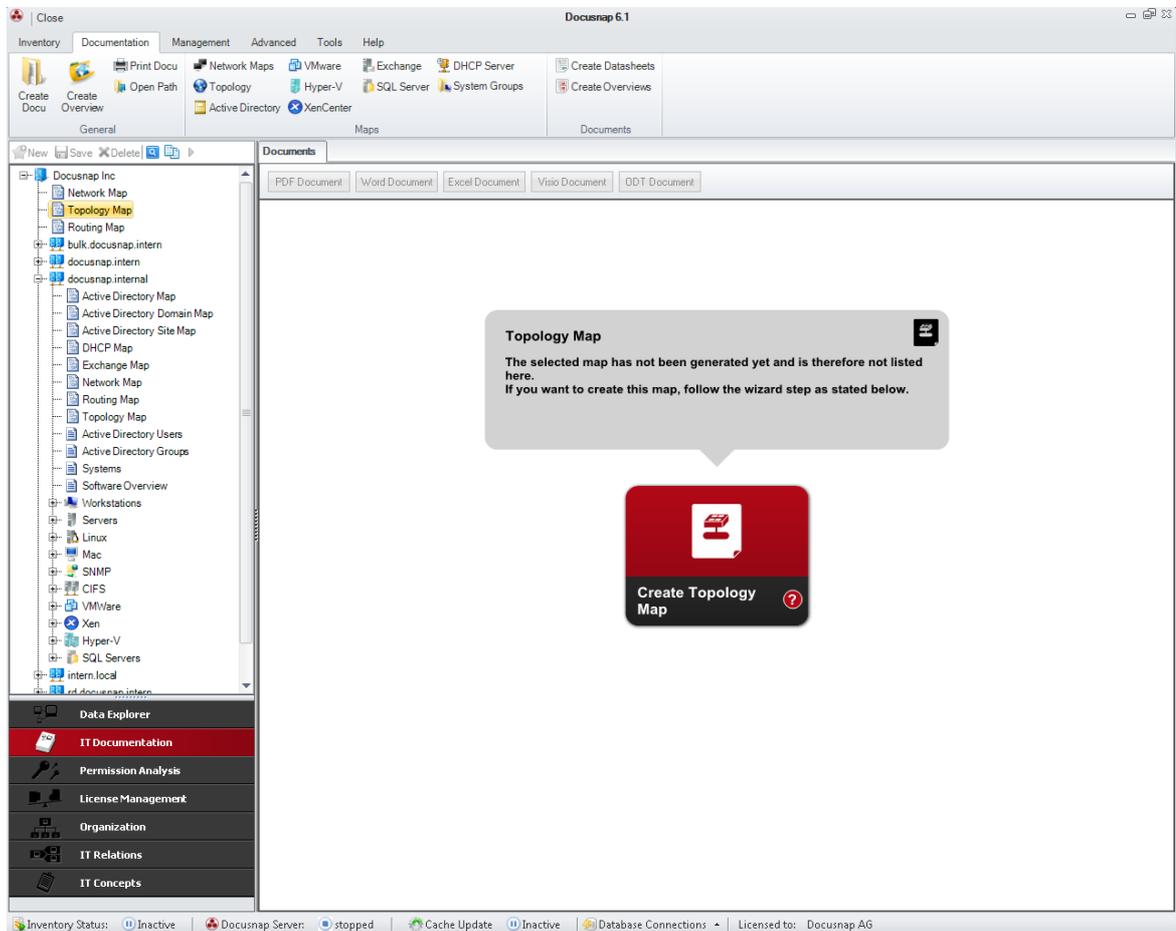
At the first level, all companies are displayed. Below each company node, you can find the overview maps and network maps that include multiple domains.

At the same level, the domains are listed. Below the domain level, further maps and summaries are displayed.

Datasheets can be found below the Workstations, Servers, Linux and Mac nodes. Below the VMware and Hyper-V nodes, you can find the associated maps.



If no map or datasheet has been created yet for the selected node, the main window shows the wizard that will help you to do so.

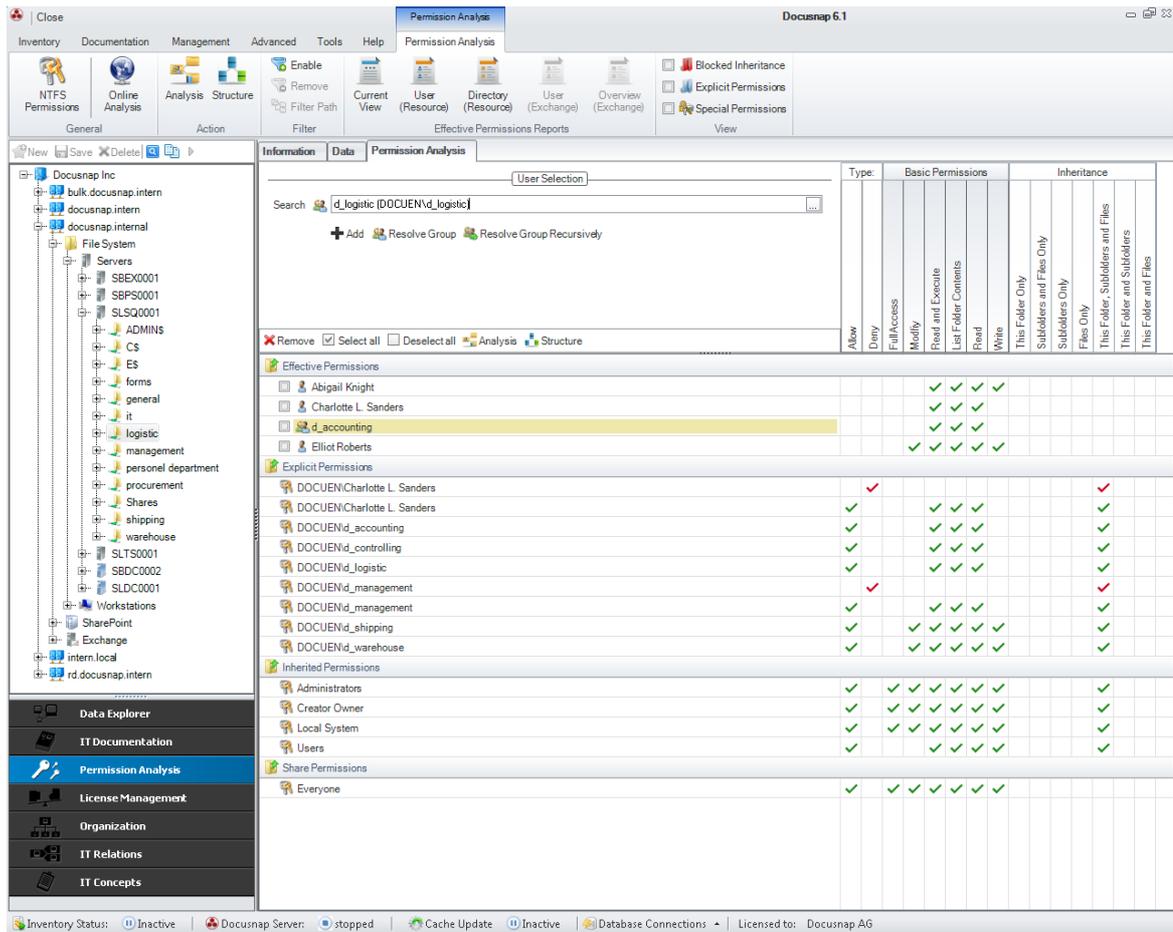


2.7.2.3 Permission Analysis

The *Permission Analysis* explorer displays the shares that were determined by inventorying the Windows system. After a permission analysis, the tree view reflects the directory structure of the share.

In addition to the permissions of Windows systems, the Permission Analysis explorer also displays SharePoint and Exchange permissions for analysis.

For more information on this topic, refer to the [Permission Analysis](#) chapter.



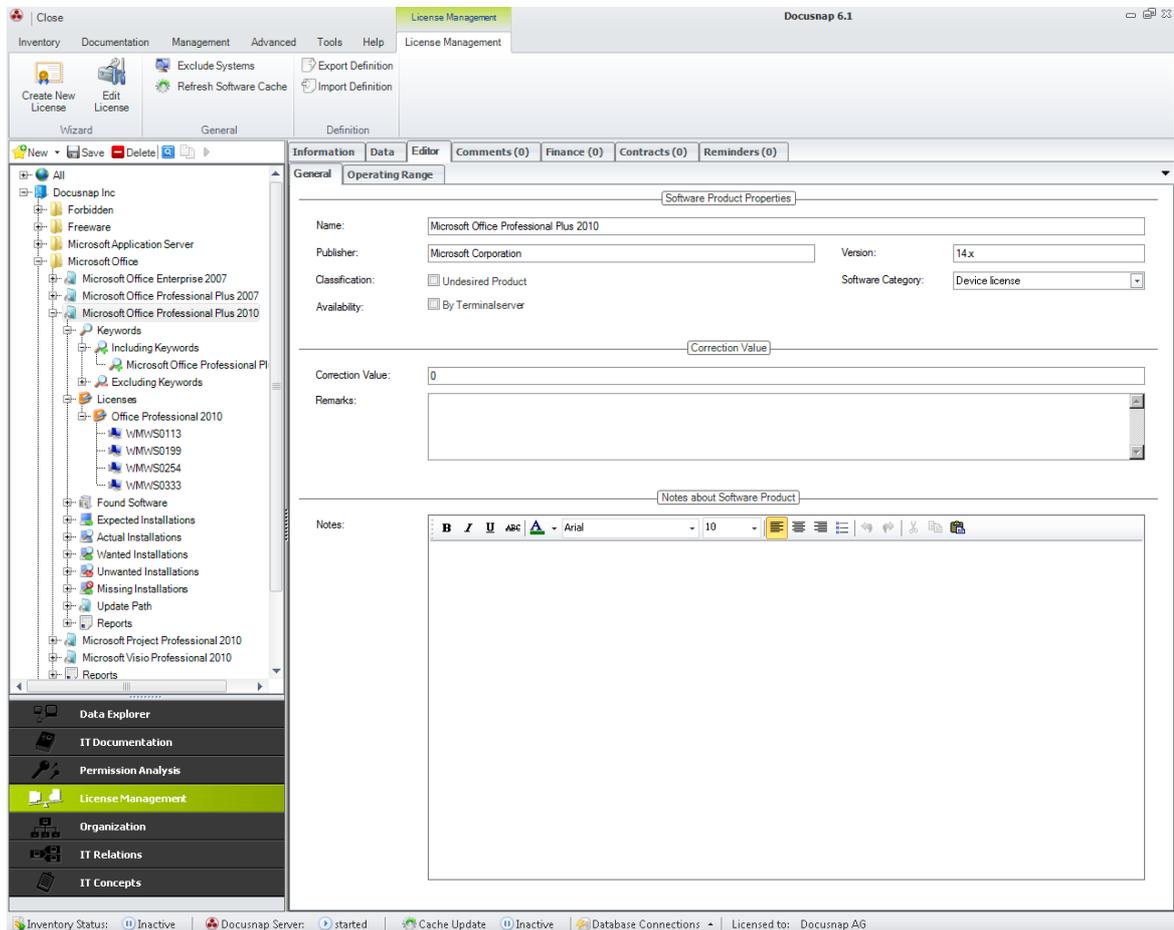
The company is shown at the top level of the tree. Below the company, you can see the associated domains which have been inventoried. Below each domain, you can find the File System, SharePoint, and Exchange nodes where the corresponding permissions are listed.

When you select a directory in the Explorer, the main window displays the *Permission Analysis* tab that includes information on *share permissions*, *inherited permissions*, *explicit permissions*, and the resulting *effective permissions*.



2.7.2.4 License Management

In the *License Management* explorer, any defined licenses will be displayed. In the Docusnap License Management module, you can analyze and document the licenses for software products purchased by your company.



The company is shown at the top level. At the next level, the software groups are listed. Below this level, you can define *software groups* in order to group software, e.g. by publishers.

Below each *software group* node, you can find the software products defined in the wizard. A software product may, for example, represent an installed software program.

The level below the software product node contains the following objects:

- Keywords
- Licenses
- Found Software
- Expected Installations
- Actual Installations

- Wanted Installations
- Unwanted Installations
- Missing Installations
- Update Path
- Reports

Keywords may be either including or excluding keywords. You can use them to assign the software found on the computers to software products.

The license represents the license agreement which has been accepted with regard to the software. Multiple licenses might have been purchased for any given software application. For this reason, you can create multiple licenses for each software product. Licenses can be assigned to CPUs, CPU cores, devices or users. This assignment indicates on which device the software should be installed or which users may work with the software. If devices or users have been assigned, they will be displayed at the next level below the licenses.

Each application that has been found by the network scan and matches the keywords will be displayed under Found Software. Besides, the systems on which the software is installed will be listed below its node.

The *Expected Installations* node shows the systems assigned to the licenses. This assignment is only possible if you have selected, on the Category page, one of the following license types: Device license, Processor license or Processor core license. The Expected Installations node indicates the systems where software should have been installed.

Below the *Actual Installations* node, you can see all systems where the software was found during the network scan.

Under the *Wanted Installations* node, you can find all systems which have been assigned to the licenses and where the software is installed. If the license was not assigned to a software category or if User license was selected as the category, no systems will be displayed under the Wanted Installations node.

Under the *Unwanted Installations* node, Docusnap displays all systems which have not been assigned to a license, but where the software is installed. If no systems have been assigned, all systems where the software is installed will be shown under the *Unwanted Installations* node.

Under the *Missing Installations* node, you can find all systems which have been assigned to a license, but where the software is not installed.

Using the *update paths*, predecessor (downgrade) and successor (upgrade) products can be defined. You can find the Downgrade and Upgrade nodes below the Update Path node. Upgrade licenses are shown under Upgrade, downgrade licenses



under Downgrade.

From the License Management module, you can execute reports for products, groups and companies. All available reports are listed under the Reports node. To execute a report, click its name.

You can define a software product as "undesired". Any undesired software products are shown under the software group, just like the other software products. Additionally, these software products will also be listed under the *Undesired Products* node.

2.7.2.5 Organization

When you navigate to the *Organization* module, the Explorer displays any extensions (contracts, finance details, etc.) using a flat structure.

These extensions (comments, finance details, passwords, contracts, reminders) may be added from the Data Explorer, or one of the Explorers found in the Permission Analysis, License Management or Organization modules. The Organization tree view displays all available comments, finance details, passwords, contracts and reminders both summarized by type form and subdivided by company. This gives you a clear overview of the extensions and you can evaluate the data in reports.

The Organization Explorer includes the additional *All* heading. At the level below the *All* node, you can find the extensions grouped by Comments, Finance, Passwords, Contracts and Reminders. At the next level, all extensions of the selected type will be displayed.

Under each company node, nodes for all extensions will be listed. At the next level, the extensions associated with the selected company will be listed.

In the Organization module, extensions cannot be edited in a data entry screen from the main window. To edit an object, highlight it in the tree view and then click the *Edit Selected* button in the *Organization* [ribbon](#). To create a new extension, you can use the corresponding Add... buttons on the ribbon.

Introduction

The screenshot displays the Docusnap 6.1 application window. The 'Organization' tab is active, showing a list of password entries. The interface includes a menu bar (Inventory, Documentation, Management, Advanced, Tools, Help), a toolbar with actions like 'Edit Selected', 'Add Comment', and 'Add Contract', and a sidebar with a tree view of the organization structure. The main area contains a table with the following data:

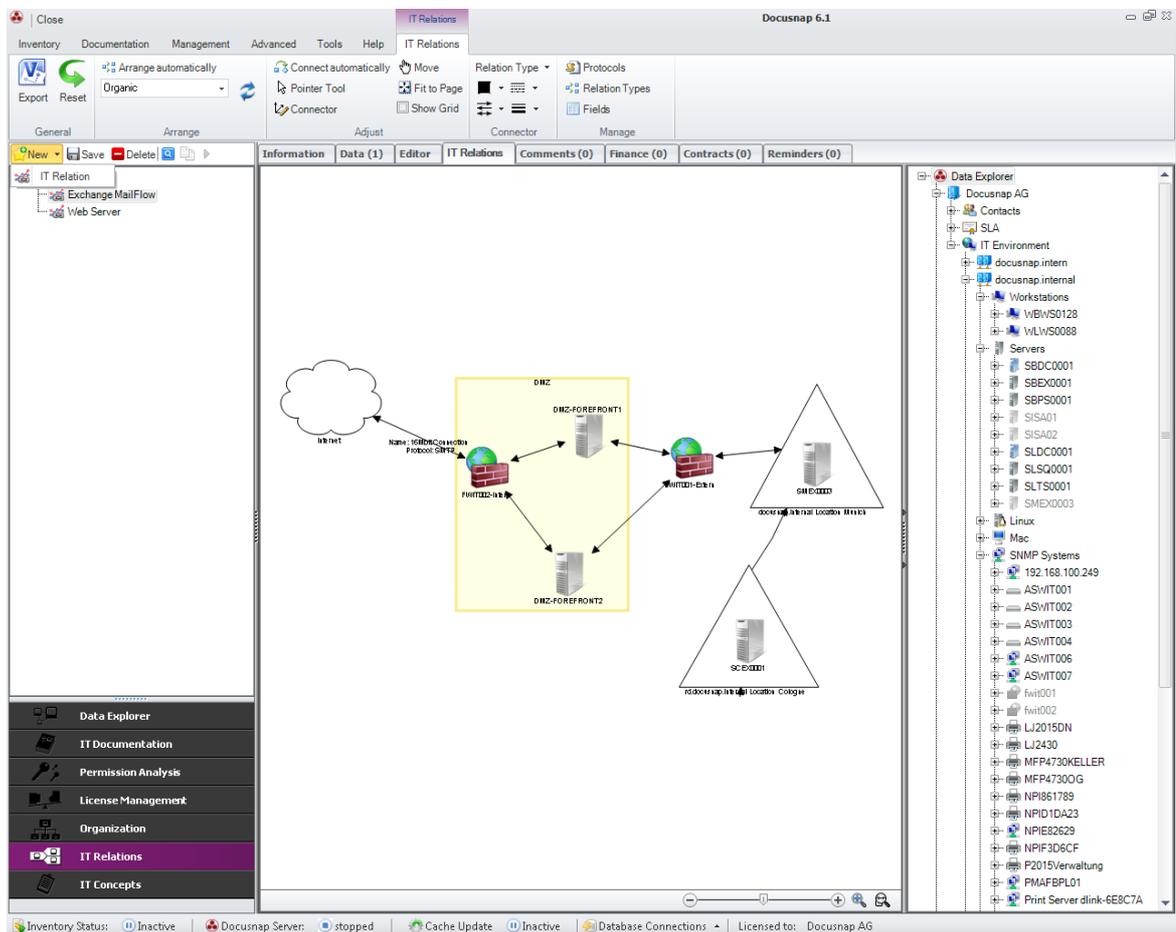
Title	User Name	Password Type	System Name	URL	Valid through	Description
SQL Server - SMSQ0001	admin	User Password	SMSQ0001			
Wlan_Intern Encryption		Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)	Wlan_Intern			
WMLX0007 - Linux	root	User Password	WMLX0007			
WMA0001 - Mac	admin	User Password	WMA0001			
Wlan_Guest Encryption		Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)	Wlan_Guest			
WMV/S0113 Bios Password		BIOS Password	WMV/S0113			
WMV/S001 Bios Password		BIOS Password	WMV/S001			
Docusnap Homepage	admin	User Password	www.docusnap.com			
E-Mail (user@docusnap.com)	user	BIOS Password				
WMLX0001 - Linux	root	User Password	WMLX0001			
SMSQ0001 - SQL Server	sa	User Password	SMSQ0001			

At the bottom of the window, the status bar shows: Inventory Status: Inactive, Docusnap Server: stopped, Cache Update: Inactive, Database Connections: [dropdown], Licensed to: Docusnap AG.



2.7.2.6 IT Relations

In the *IT Relations* module, the Explorer displays the companies at the first level. Relations will be created at the level directly below the companies. To create a new relation, click the *New* button above the tree view. You can then navigate to the *IT Relations* tab to create the desired diagram.



2.7.2.7 IT Concept

The *IT Concepts Explorer* shows the available concepts. A dedicated *IT Concepts* ribbon displays when you navigate to this module.

The companies are displayed at the top level. Below each company, any directories and documents you create will be displayed. To create a new document or directory, click the New button above the tree view.

The screenshot shows the Docusnap 6.1 IT Concepts Explorer interface. The window title is "Docusnap 6.1" and the ribbon is "IT Concepts". The left pane shows a tree view for "Docusnap Inc" with folders like "Disaster Recovery", "DR Email Server", "DR Virtualization", "Emergency Manual", "ISMS", "Risk Assessment Server", and "Operations". The main pane displays a "Content" table of contents for the "Emergency Manual" document. The status bar at the bottom shows "Inventory Status: Inactive", "Docusnap Server: not configured", "Cache Update: Inactive", and "Database Connections".

Content	
1. Scope.....	4
2. Application Area.....	4
3. Roles and Responsibilities.....	4
3.1. IT Emergency Manager.....	4
3.2. IT Emergency Staff.....	4
3.3. Role Division and Responsibilities.....	4
4. Manuals / Pages / Documents.....	4
4.1. Storage IT Emergency Manual.....	4
5. IT Emergency Management.....	4
5.1. Definition IT Emergency.....	4
5.2. IT Emergency Case Studies.....	4
5.3. Required IT Emergency Planning.....	4
5.3.1. Server Systems.....	4
5.3.2. Client Systems.....	4
5.3.3. Active Network Components.....	4
5.3.4. Building Infrastructure.....	4
5.4. Alerting System in Case of an IT Emergency.....	4
5.4.1. Notification Plan.....	5
5.4.2. Automatic Notifications.....	5
5.4.3. Notification of Ambulance and Emergency Services.....	5
5.4.4. Internal Notification according to Alerting Procedure.....	5
5.4.5. Notification Procedure.....	5
5.4.6. Contact Details IT Emergency Team.....	5
6. Restoring Plans for Critical Components.....	5
6.1. Restoring of Datacenter.....	5
6.2. Restoring of Active Directory.....	5
6.3. Restoring of Central Data Storage.....	5
6.4. Restoring of ERP.....	5
6.5. Restoring of Communication.....	5
6.6. Restoring of Critical Clients.....	5



2.7.3 Main Window

Depending on the object selected in the Explorer, a variety of tabs will be displayed in the Docusnap main window. All available tabs are listed below.

[Information](#)

[Data](#)

[Editor](#)

[Reports](#)

[Extensions \(comments, finances, passwords, contracts, reminders\)](#)

[Documents](#)

[Permission Analysis](#)

[Permission Structure](#)

[Group Policies](#)

[Structure](#)

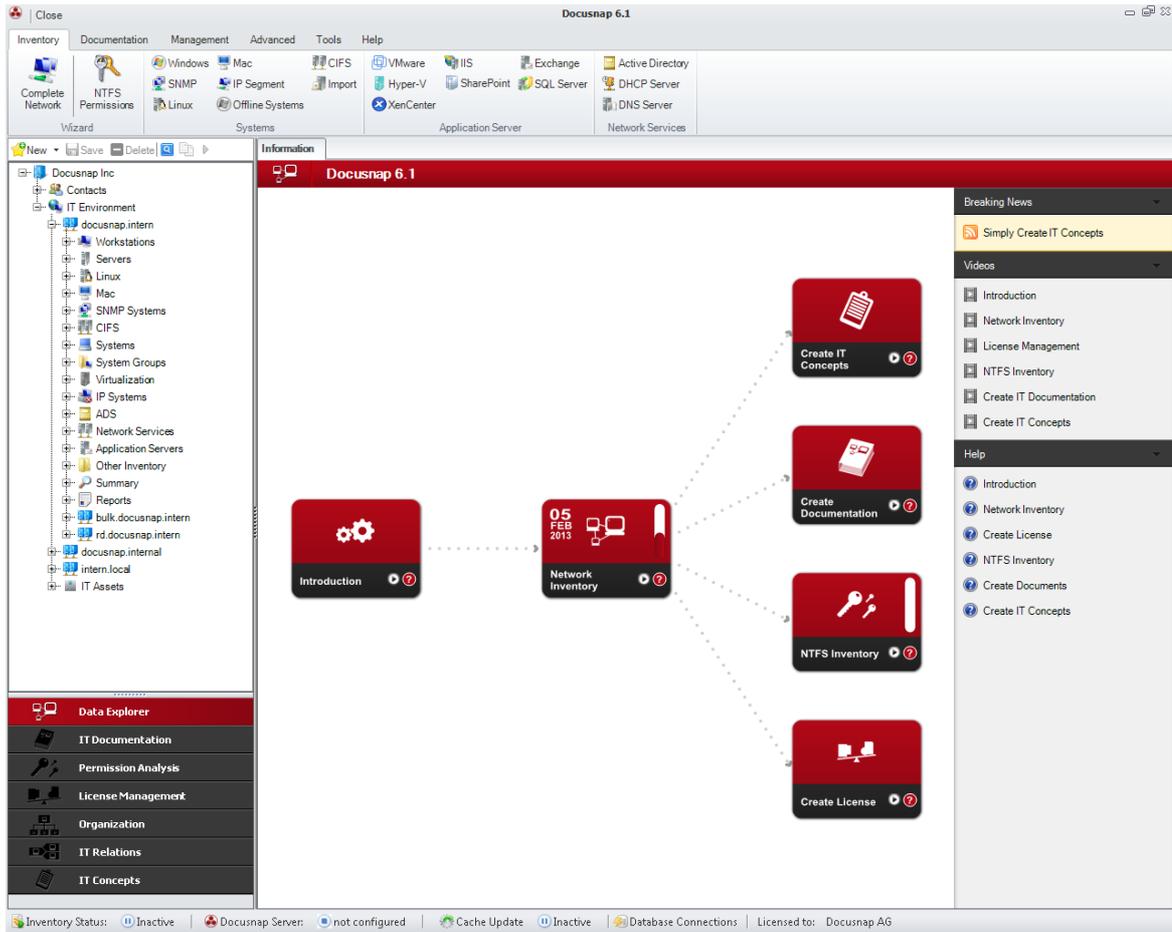
[IT Relations](#)

[IT Concepts](#)

2.7.3.1 Information

When you navigate from one module to another, the *Information* tab displays.

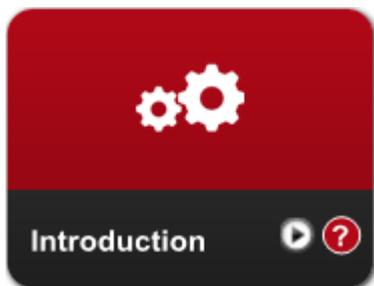
This tab contains specific Dashboards for the selected module. They help you to work with the various Docusnap modules and indicate best practices.



The structures of the individual Dashboards are not identical. The following Dashboard types are available:

Introduction

The Introduction Dashboard includes two links. Clicking the play icon plays a video with help information, and clicking the question mark icon opens the associated help in text form.



Dashboards for the Inventory Process

The *NTFS Inventory*, *SharePoint Inventory*, *AD Inventory*, *Windows Inventory*, *Mac Inventory*, *Linux Inventory* and *Network Inventory* Dashboards display the date of the last scan. The shorter the progress bar at the right side of the Dashboard is, the longer is the time that has passed since the last scan. What is more, by clicking the



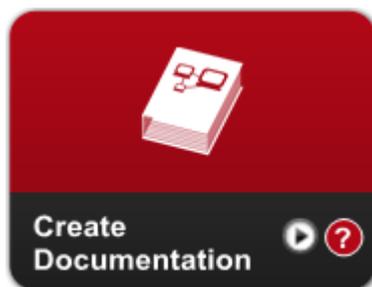
Dashboard, you can open the associated wizard.

These Dashboards also include a link to the associated video and to the help text.



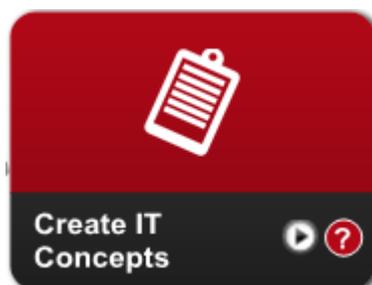
Create Documentation and Create License Dashboards

When you click the *Create Documentation* Dashboard, the wizard for creating the entire documentation will open. Clicking the *Create License* Dashboard will launch the License Management wizard. On these Dashboards too, you will find the links both to the help video and to the help text.



Other Dashboards

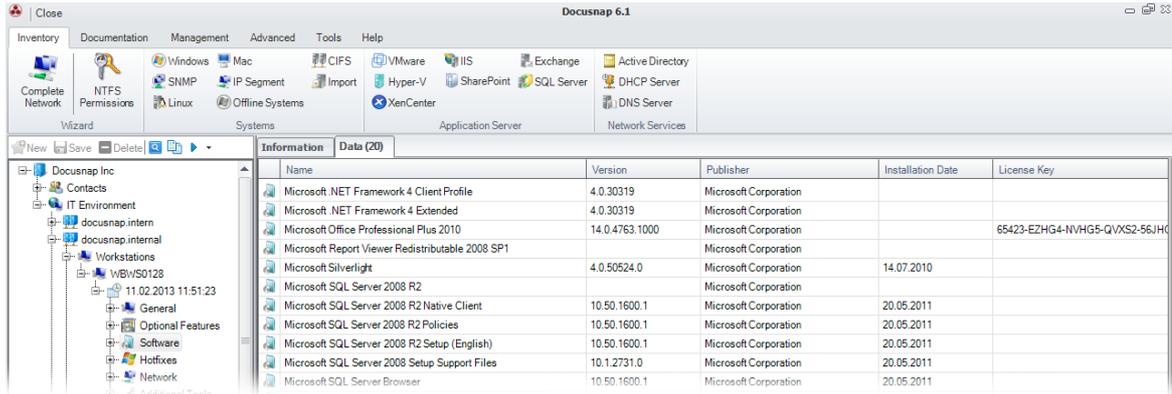
The remaining Dashboards, such as *Create IT Concept*, *Create IT Relation* and *Create Organization*, help you to further process the data scanned and documented in Docusnap. From these Dashboards, you can play videos or open instructions that help you with using the software.



2.7.3.2 Data

In general, the *Data* tab displays the data for the object selected in the Explorer.

By double-clicking an entry on the *Data* tab, you select it in the *Data Explorer*.

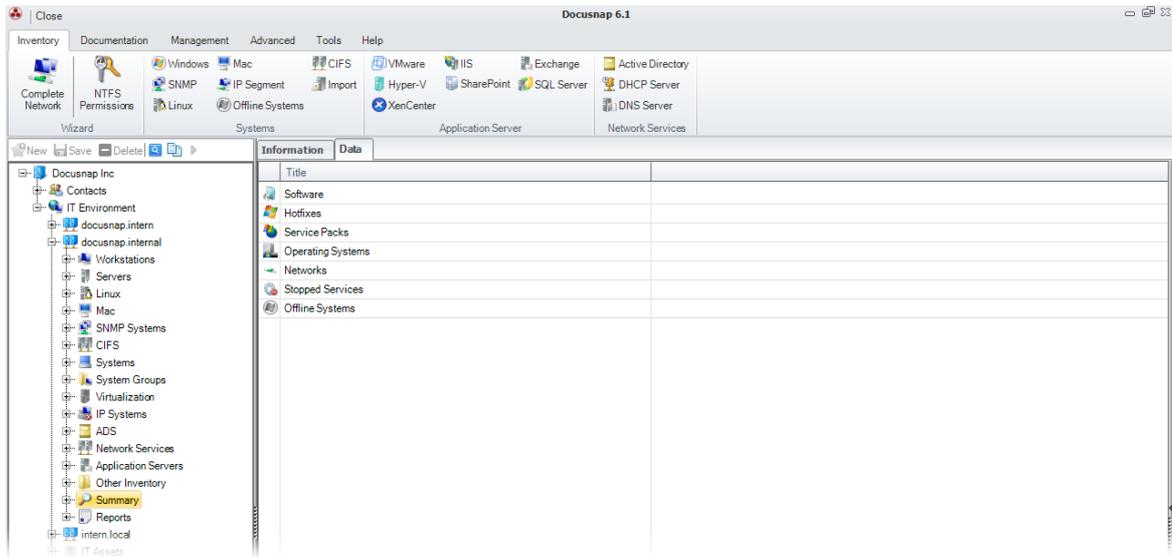


If an object you select in the Explorer contains data, the corresponding object data will be displayed on the *Data* tab.

If the object selected in the Explorer has children, the content of the next level below will be shown on the *Data* tab.

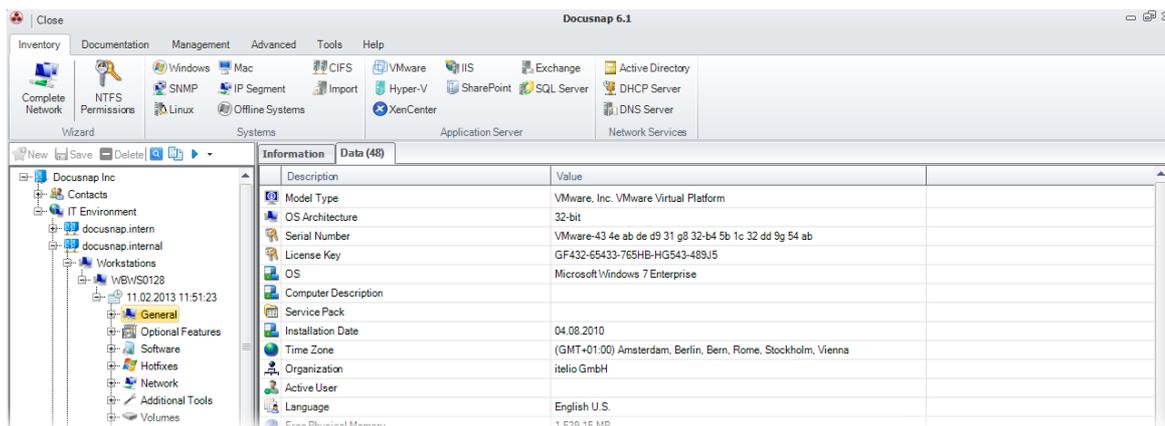
If the nodes at the level below the object selected in the Explorer contain data and titles, only the data will be displayed on the *Data* tab.

If the nodes at the level below the object selected in the Explorer only contain titles, these will be displayed on the *Data* tab.



If the data of the child object can only occur once per parent object, they will be displayed in an alternative way. For example, there is only one record for *General*, i.e. general information about a Windows system. In the alternative representation, this data will not be presented as a table, but rather with their designation in the first column and the associated value in the second column.





By right-clicking anywhere in the main window, you open a context menu that enables you to hide or unhide columns as desired. Furthermore, you can change the order of columns simply by dragging them to the desired location with the mouse. When you click a column heading, the table will be sorted by this column. In addition, you can modify the column widths as desired. These changes will not be stored globally for all users, but rather separately for each individual user.

If you wish to undo these changes, open the context menu and restore the default settings by clicking *Reset*.

By clicking the right border of the *Data* tab pane, you open the Docusnap filter. Using the filter pane, you can export the contents of the Data tab to an unstructured Excel list. In addition, you can select the desired data items by applying an appropriate filter. For an explanation of the filter functionality, see the [Filters](#) section.

Introduction

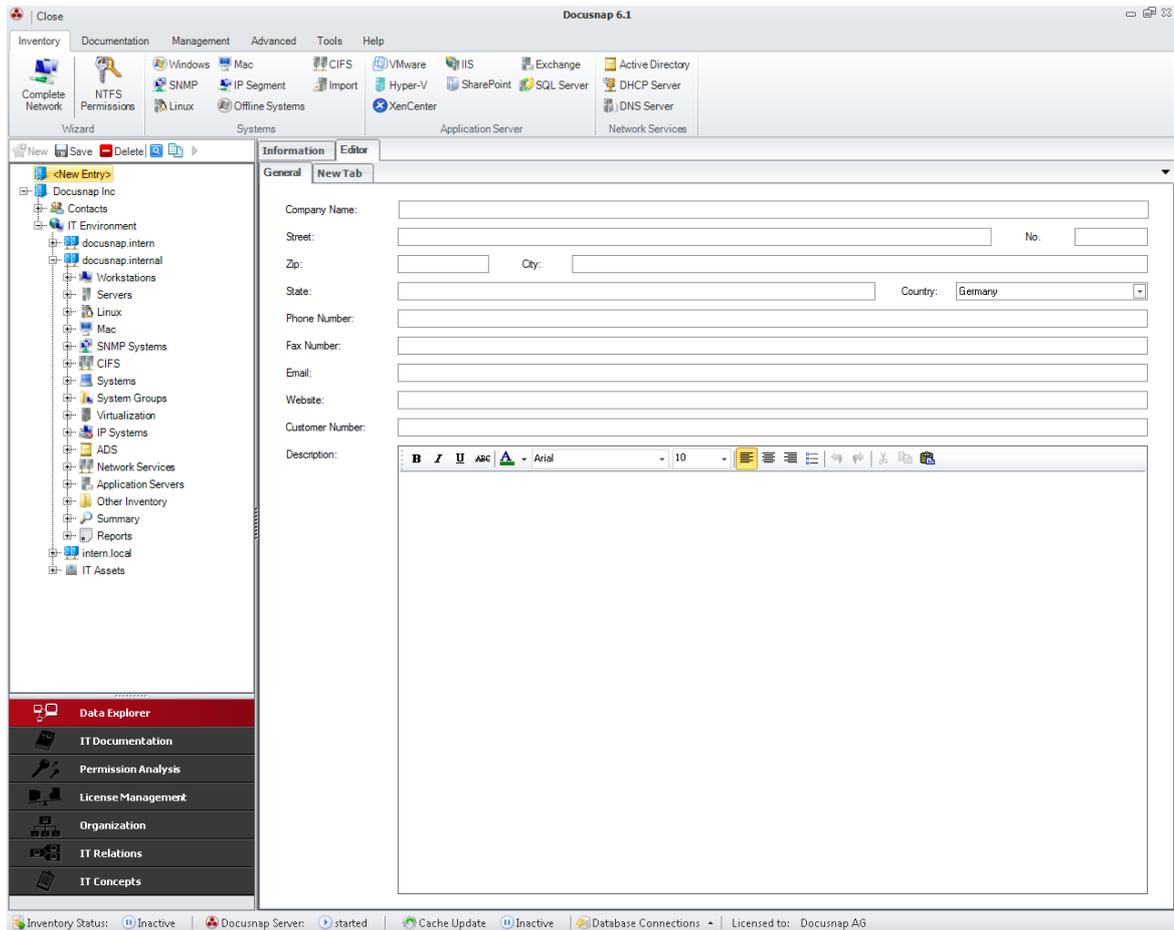
The screenshot displays the Docusnap 6.1 application window. The interface includes a menu bar (Inventory, Documentation, Management, Advanced, Tools, Help), a toolbar with various icons, and a sidebar with a tree view of the inventory structure. The main area shows a table of software items with columns for Name, Version, Publisher, Installation Date, and License Key. A 'Column Options' dialog box is open, allowing the user to select which columns to display. The table lists various Microsoft and VMware products.

Name	Version	Publisher	Installation Date	License Key
Microsoft .NET Framework 4 Client Profile		Microsoft Corporation	14.07.2010	
Microsoft .NET Framework 4 Extended		Microsoft Corporation	14.07.2010	
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	65423-EZHG4-IVHG5-QVXS2-56JHC
Microsoft Report Viewer Redistributable 2008 SP1		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft Silverlight		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Native Client		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Policies		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Setup (English)		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Setup Support Files		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server Browser		Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server Compact 3.5 SP2 ENU	3.5.8080.0	Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server Compact 3.5 SP2 Query Tools ENU	3.5.8080.0	Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft SQL Server VSS Writer	10.50.1600.1	Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft Visio Professional 2010	14.0.4763.1000	Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	87TDE-SERF3-HGD43-FSEKZ-654TF
Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable - x86 9.0.30729.4148	9.0.30729.4148	Microsoft Corporation	17.02.2012	
Microsoft Visual Studio Tools for Applications 2.0 - ENU	9.0.35191	Microsoft Corporation	20.05.2011	
Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	6.1.7600	Microsoft Corporation	04.08.2010	GF432-65433-765HB-HG543-489J5
VMware Tools	8.6.0.8802	VMware, Inc.	17.02.2012	
Windows Internet Explorer 8	8.0.7600.16385	Microsoft Corporation		

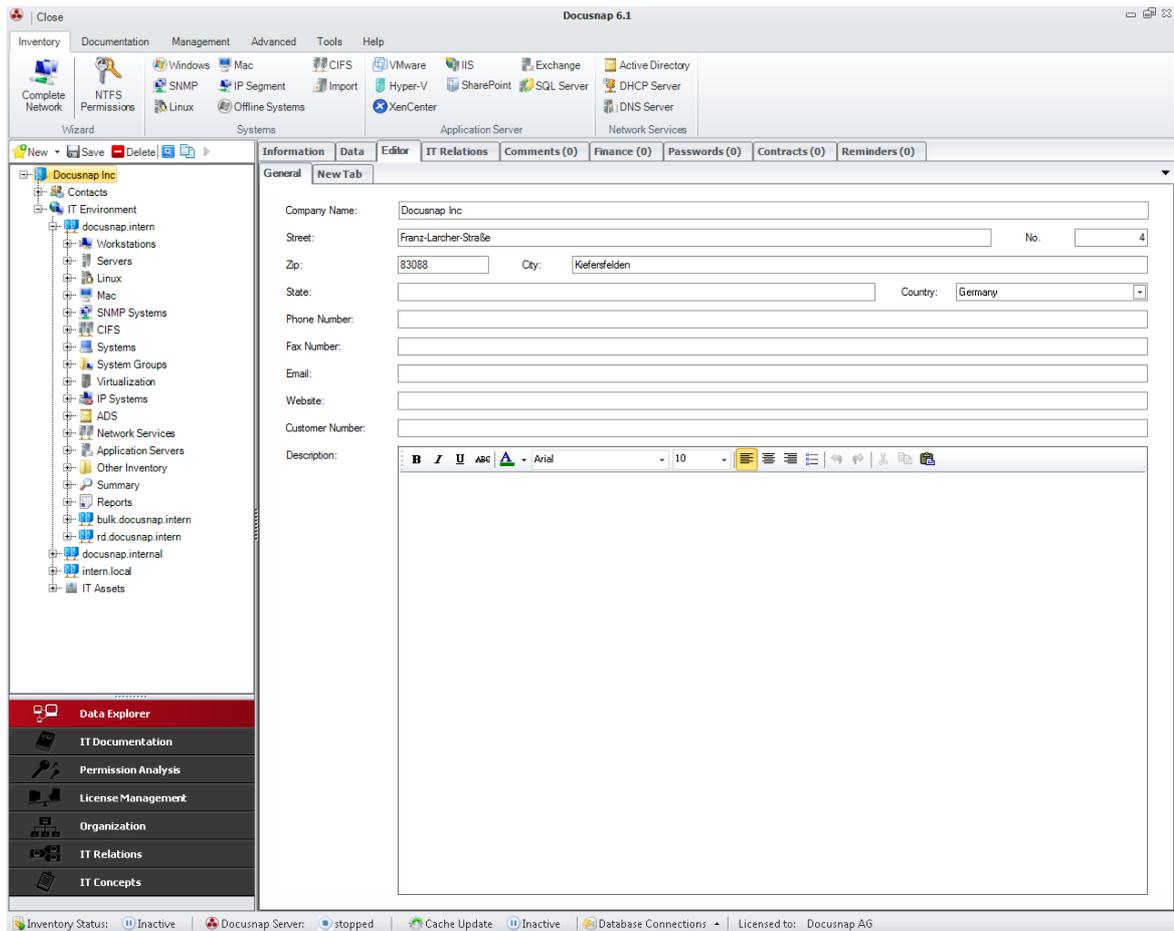


2.7.3.3 Editor

The *Editor* tab will only be displayed if the object selected in the Explorer is *editable*. For example, if you want to create an entry manually, a blank data entry screen will open in the editor where you can enter the required information. Additional tabs, such as Data, Documents or the various tabs for the extensions will only be displayed after you have saved the data entered in the editor.



If you select an editable object that has already been saved, the associated data entry screen opens on the *Editor* tab, populated with the previously saved data.



2.7.3.4 Reports

When you select a *report-type* object in the Explorer, a corresponding report will be created and displayed on the *Reports* tab in the main window. Thumbnails of all report pages will be displayed to the right of the main window. If you want to hide them, you can do so by clicking the *Thumbnail View* button on the *Reporting* ribbon. If a report has bookmarks, they will be displayed on the left side of the window. You can toggle the display of the bookmarks pane on and off using the *Bookmark* button on the *Reporting* ribbon.

The navigation and search bar is displayed at the bottom of the main window. You will find the zoom functions in the bottom right corner. In addition, the desired page layout can be selected there.

When you click the *Search* button on the *Reporting* ribbon, a search bar opens at the bottom of the main window. Here, you can enter your search criteria.



The screenshot displays the Docusnap 6.1 Reporting application window. The interface includes a menu bar with options like 'Inventory', 'Documentation', 'Management', 'Advanced', 'Tools', and 'Help'. A toolbar contains icons for 'Print', 'Export', 'Open', 'Save', 'Edit', 'Page Size', 'Search', 'One Page', 'Two Pages', 'Page Width', 'Thumbnail View', 'Bookmark', 'Report Designer', and 'Schedule as Job'. The main workspace is divided into three panes: a left-hand tree view showing a hierarchical structure of IT assets under 'Docusnap Inc', a central 'Information' pane listing various asset IDs (e.g., SMDC0001, SMDC0002, SMDC0003, SMDC0004, SMEX0003, SMII0001, SMII0002, SMP50001, SMRA0001, SMSP0001, SMSP0002, SMS00001, WMWS0022, WMWS0064, WMWS0113, WMWS0199, WMWS0254, WMWS0333, WMWS0610, WMWS0944), and a large central report area. The report area displays the title 'Hotfix' and the domain 'docusnap.intern'. Below the title, a table provides the following metadata:

Date	15.02.2013
Author	Docusnap
Number of Pages	39

On the right side of the report area, there are three thumbnail previews of the report pages, numbered 1, 2, and 3. The status bar at the bottom shows 'Page 1 of 39', a zoom level of '74%', and system information including 'Inventory Status: Inactive', 'Docusnap Server: started', 'Cache Update: Inactive', 'Database Connections', and 'Licensed to: Docusnap AG'.

2.7.3.5 Extensions

Extensions can be used to store additional information about individual objects. Using extensions, you can create [comments](#), [finance details](#), [passwords](#), [contracts](#) and [reminders](#).

The tabs for entering comments, finance details, passwords, contracts or reminders will appear when you select the respective object in the Data Explorer. Alternatively, you can also add extensions from the Explorer of the [Organization](#) module.

The screenshot shows the Docusnap 6.1 application window. The main area displays a table of password records under the 'Passwords (11)' tab. The table has columns for Title, User Name, Password Type, Password Validity, System Name, and URL. The record for 'Docusnap Homepage' is highlighted.

Title	User Name	Password Type	Password Validity	System Name	URL
WMA0001 - Mac	admin	User Password	Unlimited	WMA0001	
WMLX0007 - Linux	root	User Password	Unlimited	WMLX0007	
WMV5001 Bios Password		BIOS Password	Unlimited	WMV5001	
WMLX0001 - Linux	root	User Password	Limited	WMLX0001	
WiFi_Intern Encryption		Wi-Fi Protected Acces...	Unlimited	WiFi_Intern	
WiFi_Guest Encryption		Wi-Fi Protected Acces...	Limited	WiFi_Guest	
Docusnap Homepage	admin	User Password	Limited	www.docusnap.com	
WMV50113 Bios Password		BIOS Password	Limited	WMV50113	
SQL Server - SMSQ0001	admin	User Password	Limited	SMSQ0001	
SMSQ0001 - SQL Server	sa	User Password	Limited	SMSQ0001	
E-Mail (user@docusnap.com)	user	BIOS Password	Limited		

The detailed view at the bottom shows the 'General' tab for the selected 'Docusnap Homepage' record. It includes fields for Title, User Name, Password, URL, Password Type (User Password), System Name (www.docusnap.com), Password Validity (Unlimited), and Valid Until.

2.7.3.6 Documents

The *Documents* tab displays the documents created for the object selected in the tree view. If you have created a document for an object by using the Documentation module, it will be displayed on the *Documents* tab.

For each device that has been inventoried individually, a datasheet will be displayed. If a Visio map has been created for an object, you can view it on the Documents tab of the main window.

In the IT Documentation module tree view, the document generated by Docusnap is displayed at its proper location. If no document has been created for a node in the tree view, a Dashboard appears that helps you with the creation of the desired



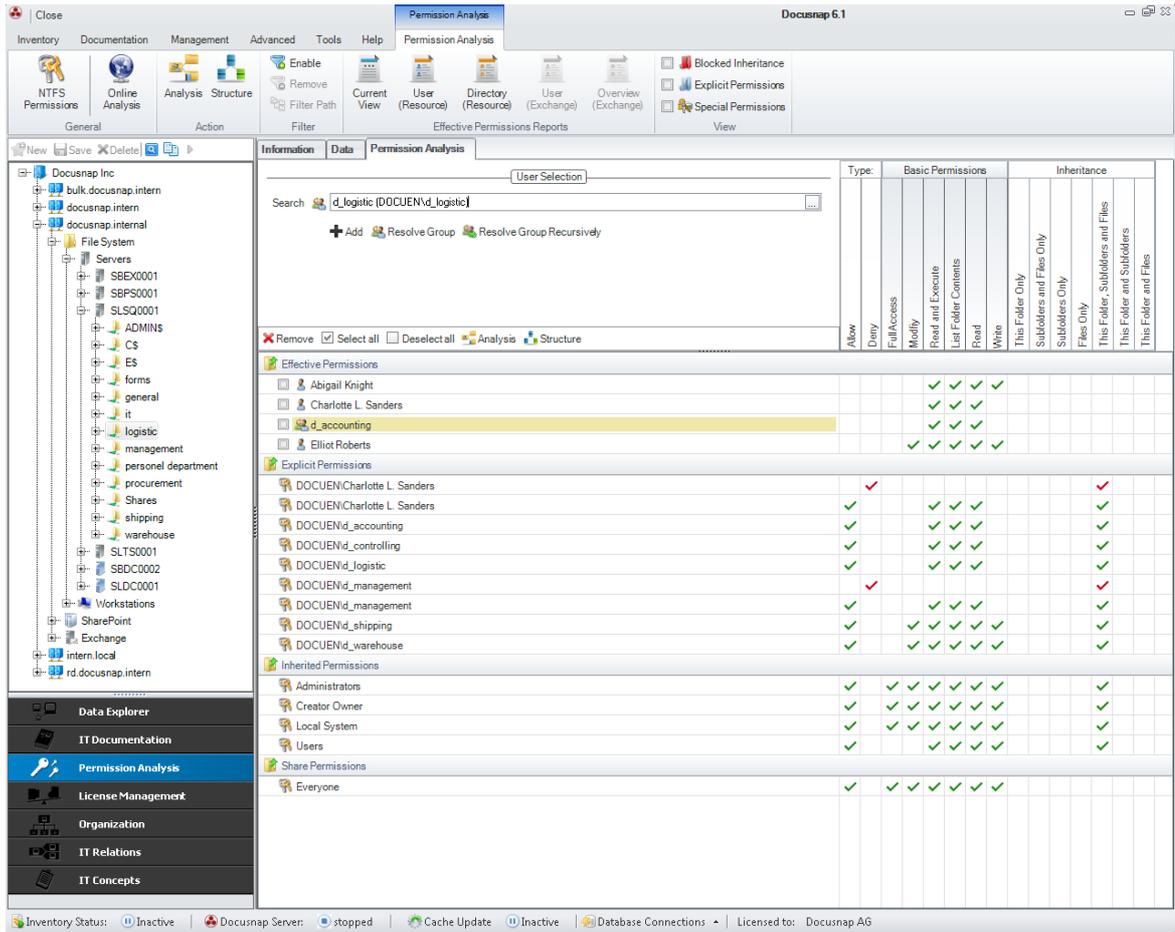
document. For detailed information on the IT Documentation module, click [here](#).



Generated documents can only be displayed if the documentation path selected to create the document matches the one specified in the *Options* dialog.

2.7.3.7 Permission Analysis

The *Permission Analysis* tab displays the permissions related to the object that is currently selected in the tree view. Here, you can find information on share permissions as well as explicit and inherited permissions. The columns indicate whether a permission was granted or denied. You can also see what kind of permissions it is and how it is inherited. For the analysis, any number of users or groups can be selected. For each selection, the currently valid permissions are shown.



2.7.3.8 Permission Structure

On the *Permission Structure* tab, you can see how a user or group obtained a certain permission. By selecting an individual permission on the left, you can filter the structure on that specific permission.



The screenshot displays the Docusnap 6.1 software interface, specifically the 'Permission Analysis' window. The interface is divided into several sections:

- Top Bar:** Includes 'Close', 'Inventory', 'Documentation', 'Management', 'Advanced', 'Tools', and 'Help' menus. The 'Permission Analysis' tab is active.
- Toolbar:** Contains icons for 'NTFS Permissions', 'Online Analysis', 'Analysis', 'Structure', 'Enable', 'Remove', 'Filter Path', 'Current View', 'User (Resource)', 'Directory (Resource)', 'Blocked Inheritance', 'Explicit Permissions', and 'Special Permissions'.
- Left Panel:** A tree view showing the file system structure under 'Docusnap Inc'. It includes folders like 'bulk.docusnap.intern', 'docusnap.intern', 'File System', 'Servers', and various sub-folders such as 'SBEX0001', 'SBFS0001', 'SLSQ0001', 'ADMINS', 'CS', 'ES', 'forms', 'general', 'it', 'logistic', 'management', 'personal department', 'procurement', 'Shares', 'shipping', 'warehouse', 'SLTS0001', 'SBDC0002', 'SLDC0001', 'Workstations', 'SharePoint', 'intern.local', and 'rd.docusnap.intern'.
- Center Panel:** A 'Permissions' list with checkboxes for various permissions such as 'Select All', 'Full Access', 'Modify', 'Read and Execute', 'List Folder Content', 'Read', 'Write', 'Traverse Folder', 'Execute File', 'List Folder', 'Read Data', 'Read Attributes', 'Read ext Attributes', 'Create Files', 'Write Data', 'Create Folders', 'Append Data', 'Write Attributes', 'Write ext Attributes', 'Delete Subfolders and Files', 'Delete', 'Read Permissions', 'Change Permissions', and 'Take Ownership'.
- Right Panel:** A hierarchical diagram titled 'Path: Docusnap Inc\docusnap.intern\FK_SqlServer\SLSQ0001\log\FK'. It shows a tree structure of folders and files with permission boxes. A legend indicates: 'Explicit Permissions' (blue box), 'Effective Permissions' (green box), and 'Blocked Inheritance' (red box).
- Bottom Bar:** Shows system status: 'Inventory Status: Inactive', 'Docusnap Server: stopped', 'Cache Update: Inactive', 'Database Connections', and 'Licensed to: Docusnap AG'.



2.7.3.9 Group Policies

In Docusnap 6.1, you can scan group policies and display them with the corresponding organizational units or the associated domain. The group policies will then be displayed on the *Group Policy* tab.

The screenshot displays the Docusnap 6.1 interface. On the left, a tree view shows the organizational structure, including 'Docusnap Inc', 'IT Environment', and 'ADS Logical Structure'. The 'Default Domain Controllers' group is selected. The main pane shows the 'Default Domain Controllers Policy' configuration, including details, links, security filtering, delegation, and computer configuration settings.

Default Domain Controllers Policy
Data collected on: 2/11/2013 3:05:56 PM

General

Details

Domain	docusnap.internal
Owner	DOCUEN\Domain Admins
Created	8/2/2010 3:21:28 PM
Modified	8/3/2010 8:44:12 AM
User Revisions	0 (AD), 0 (sysvol)
Computer Revisions	2 (AD), 2 (sysvol)
Unique ID	{6AC1786C-016F-11D2-945F-00C04B984F9}
GPO Status	Enabled

Links

Location	Enforced	Link Status	Path
Domain Controllers	No	Enabled	docusnap.internal/Domain Controllers

This list only includes links in the domain of the GPO.

Security Filtering

The settings in this GPO can only apply to the following groups, users, and computers:

Name
NT AUTHORITY\Authenticated Users

Delegation

These groups and users have the specified permission for this GPO

Name	Allowed Permissions	Inherited
NT AUTHORITY\Authenticated Users	Read (from Security Filtering)	No
NT AUTHORITY\ENTERPRISE DOMAIN CONTROLLERS	Read	No
NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM	Edit settings, delete, modify security	No

Computer Configuration (Enabled)

Policies

Windows Settings

Security Settings

Local Policies/User Rights Assignment

Policy	Setting
Access this computer from the network	Everyone, BUILTIN\Administrators, NT AUTHORITY\Authenticated Users, NT AUTHORITY\ENTERPRISE DOMAIN CONTROLLERS, BUILTIN\Pre-Windows 2000 Compatible Access
Add workstations to domain	NT AUTHORITY\Authenticated Users
Adjust memory quotas for a process	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE, NT AUTHORITY\NETWORK SERVICE, BUILTIN\Administrators
Allow log on locally	BUILTIN\Administrators, BUILTIN\Backup Operators, BUILTIN\Account Operators

2.7.3.10 Structure

The Structure tab will be displayed in the main window when you select an *Active Directory user* or an *Active Directory group*. This tab shows group nesting as well as user nesting information.

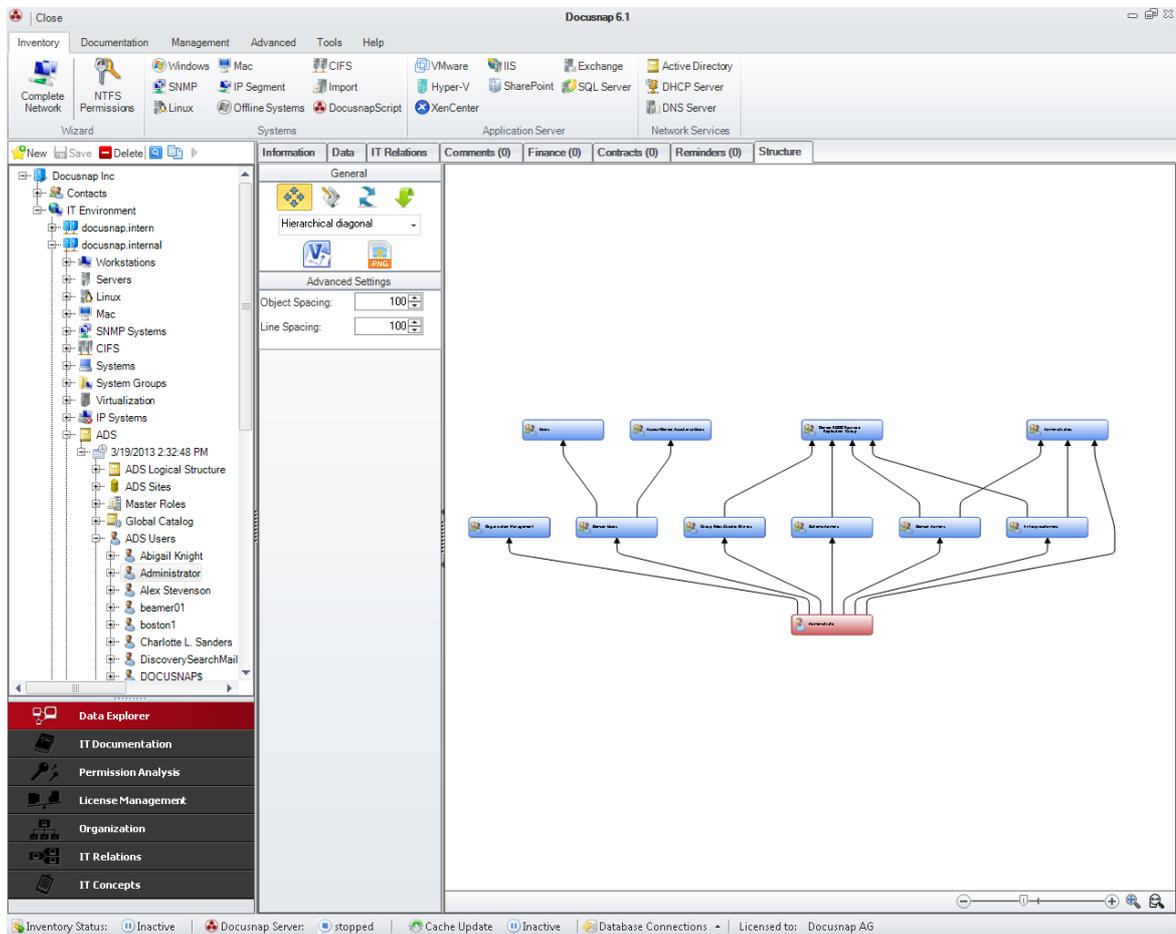
Using this information, you can find out the following:

- Which group or groups is the user xxx a member of?
- Which members make up the group yyy?

Before you can display this structure, you need to select the desired ADS user or ADS group. When you click the *Structure* tab, the hierarchy of groups or users is built and shown in a diagram. The  icon indicates a group. Individual users are identified by the  icon.



Using the icons in the left pane, you can modify the graphics display or export the displayed diagram to Microsoft Visio or to a .png file.



2.7.3.11 IT Relations

On the IT Relations tab, you can create diagrams that show the relations between different elements. The current Data Explorer tree view will be displayed in a separate pane at the right. From this tree, you can drag the components required for the diagram to the main window while holding the left mouse button. When you click a connection line, a data entry screen for the connection properties opens at the bottom of the window. There, you can describe the relations between individual objects in more detail.

Introduction

The screenshot displays the Docusnap 6.1 software interface, specifically the 'IT Relations' module. The main window shows a network diagram with a central yellow box labeled 'DMZ' containing two servers, 'DMZ-FOR-REFRONT1' and 'DMZ-FOR-REFRONT2'. To the left, a cloud icon represents the 'Internet'. To the right, a triangle contains two servers, 'SMB0001' and 'SMB0002'. Arrows indicate connections between the Internet, the DMZ servers, and the internal servers. A 'Data Explorer' pane on the right lists various system components under 'Docusnap AG', including 'SMB0001', 'SMB0002', 'SMB0003', and several 'SIS' and 'SLD' servers. The bottom of the interface features a 'Properties' section with fields for 'Name', 'Priority', 'Description', 'Relation Type', and 'Protocol'. The status bar at the very bottom shows 'Inventory Status: Inactive', 'Docusnap Server: stopped', 'Cache Update: Inactive', and 'Database Connections'.



2.7.3.12 IT Concepts

The *IT Concepts* tab displays the document currently selected in the Explorer.

At the bottom, information such as the page number of the concept is displayed.

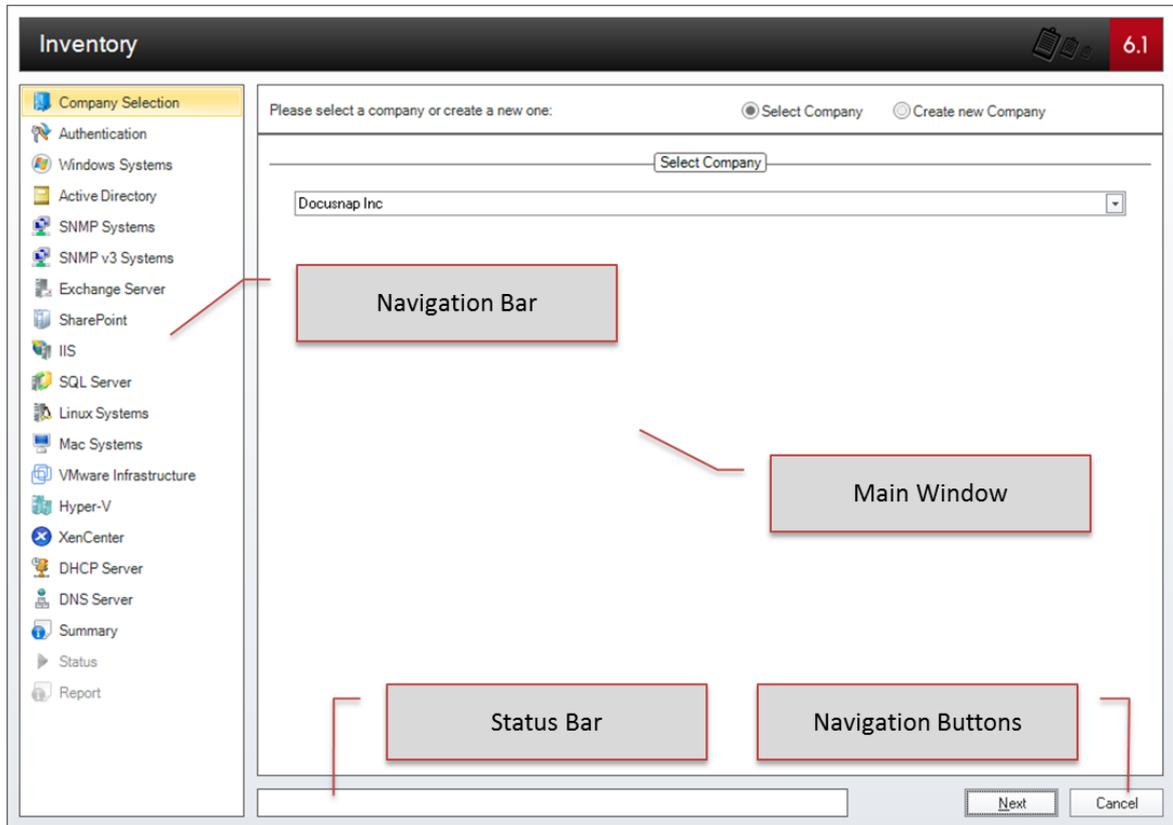
The screenshot shows the Docusnap 6.1 application window. The title bar reads 'Docusnap 6.1'. The menu bar includes 'Inventory', 'Documentation', 'Management', 'Advanced', 'Tools', and 'Help'. The toolbar contains icons for 'Export', 'Edit', 'Refresh', 'Print', 'Assign', 'Keep Version', 'Schedule as Job', and 'Templates'. The left-hand pane shows a tree view under 'Docusnap Inc' with folders: 'Disaster Recovery', 'DR Email Server', 'DR Virtualization', 'Emergency Manual' (highlighted), 'ISMS', 'Risk Assessment Server', and 'Operations'. Below this is a sidebar with buttons for 'Data Explorer', 'IT Documentation', 'Permission Analysis', 'License Management', 'Organization', 'IT Relations', and 'IT Concepts' (highlighted). The main area displays a 'Content' table of contents:

Content	
1. Scope.....	4
2. Application Area.....	4
3. Roles and Responsibilities.....	4
3.1. IT Emergency Manager.....	4
3.2. IT Emergency Staff.....	4
3.3. Role Division and Responsibilities.....	4
4. Manuals / Pages / Documents.....	4
4.1. Storage IT Emergency Manual.....	4
5. IT Emergency Management.....	4
5.1. Definition IT Emergency.....	4
5.2. IT Emergency Case Studies.....	4
5.3. Required IT Emergency Planning.....	4
5.3.1. Server Systems.....	4
5.3.2. Client Systems.....	4
5.3.3. Active Network Components.....	4
5.3.4. Building Infrastructure.....	4
5.4. Alerting System in Case of an IT Emergency.....	4
5.4.1. Notification Plan.....	5
5.4.2. Automatic Notifications.....	5
5.4.3. Notification of Ambulance and Emergency Services.....	5
5.4.4. Internal Notification according to Alerting Procedure.....	5
5.4.5. Notification Procedure.....	5
5.4.6. Contact Details IT Emergency Team.....	5
6. Restoring Plans for Critical Components.....	5
6.1. Restoring of Datacenter.....	5
6.2. Restoring of Active Directory.....	5
6.3. Restoring of Central Data Storage.....	5
6.4. Restoring of ERP.....	5
6.5. Restoring of Communication.....	5
6.6. Restoring of Critical Clients.....	5

The status bar at the bottom shows: 'Inventory Status: Inactive', 'Docusnap Server: not configured', 'Cache Update: Inactive', 'Database Connections', and 'Licensed to: Docusnap AG'.

2.8 Basics Wizards

The Docusnap wizards help you in all program modules when you need to perform or configure a process such as scanning the IT environment or creating documentation. As shown in the following illustration, all wizards have more or less the same structure.



In order to be able to use various Docusnap features, the wizards can be extended to include additional steps. For example, if the Scheduling step in the [Options](#) dialog has been enabled, you will have to work on an additional step in the wizard. In this manual and in the help documentation, these optional steps will be identified by the word "Optional" in the heading (e.g. Optional: Scheduling).

Navigation Pane

The Navigation pane on the left side of the dialog identifies the current step in the wizard by highlighting the associated button in orange. If the button for a certain step is enabled, you can also go directly to this step.

Wizard Pane

The main pane of the wizard displays the actual steps, such as selecting the domain to be inventoried, or specifying the Active Directory systems to be scanned.



Status Bar

The status bar of the wizard displays detailed information and messages. If, for example, the authentication for the domain fails, a corresponding error message will be shown which informs you about the cause of the error.

The following message types are used:

- Success 
- Error 
- Warning 
- Information 

Navigation Buttons (*Next, Back, Cancel, Start, Close*)

The *Next* button takes you to the next step in the wizard. If this button is disabled, essential information is missing. You can get information on wrong entries or missing information from the status bar of the wizard.

The *Back* button behaves in the same way as the *Next* button, except that clicking the button will take the wizard back one step.

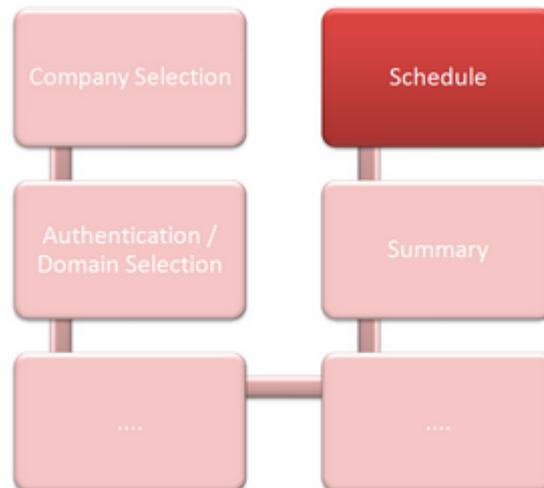
Cancel immediately terminates the wizard. If the wizard is performing a critical action at the time you click the *Cancel* button, such as a database operation, this action will be safely completed before the wizard closes. This ensures that Docusnap and the Docusnap database remain in a consistent state at all times.

The *Start* button will only become visible when you can start the inventory process. Clicking this button causes the inventory scan to start based on the data you have provided.

After the inventory scan has completed, only the *Close* button will be available on the Report page.

2.8.1 Optional: Scheduling

By default, the *Scheduling* step is disabled in Docusnap. To enable this setting, select *Tools* -> *Options* and open the *Wizards* page. This makes the *Scheduling* step available in all wizards.



Scheduling is an essential component of Docusnap and allows you to fully automate the inventory and documentation procedures. Before the *Docusnap Server* can process batch jobs, the desired settings must be configured and saved for the current job.

Inventory 6.1

Schedule Inventory

Common Settings

Name: Complete Network Inventory
 Type: Recurring
 Every Week on Friday at 20:00:00. Schedule will be used between 01.02.2013 and 01.10.2013.

Frequency

Interval: Weekly
 Recurring every: 1 Week(s) on: Monday Wednesday Friday Saturday
 Tuesday Thursday Sunday

Frequency per day

One-time at: 20:00:00 Every: 1 Hour(s) Start: 00:00:00 End: 23:59:59

Duration

Start Date: 01.02.2013 End Date: 01.10.2013 No End Date:

Job Management

Database Type: SQLServer
 Database: DSHelp_EN
 Server: sdevsql01

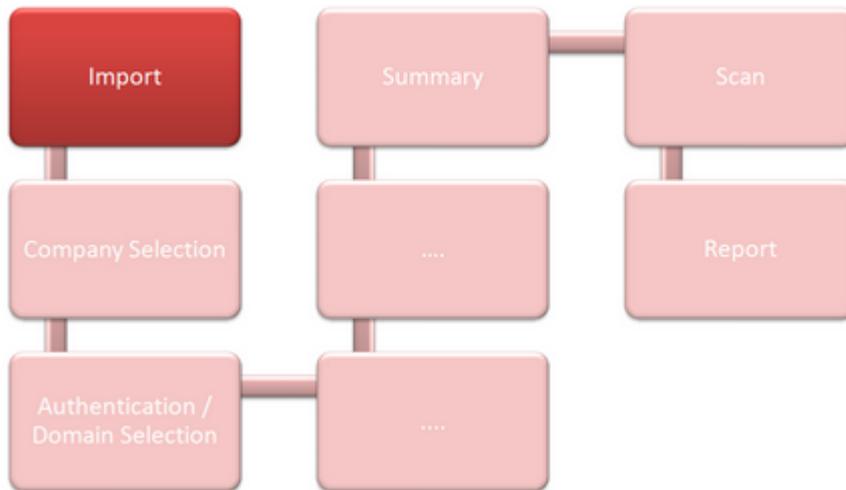
Docusnap Server: WKNM0002
 Status: started

Back Finish Cancel

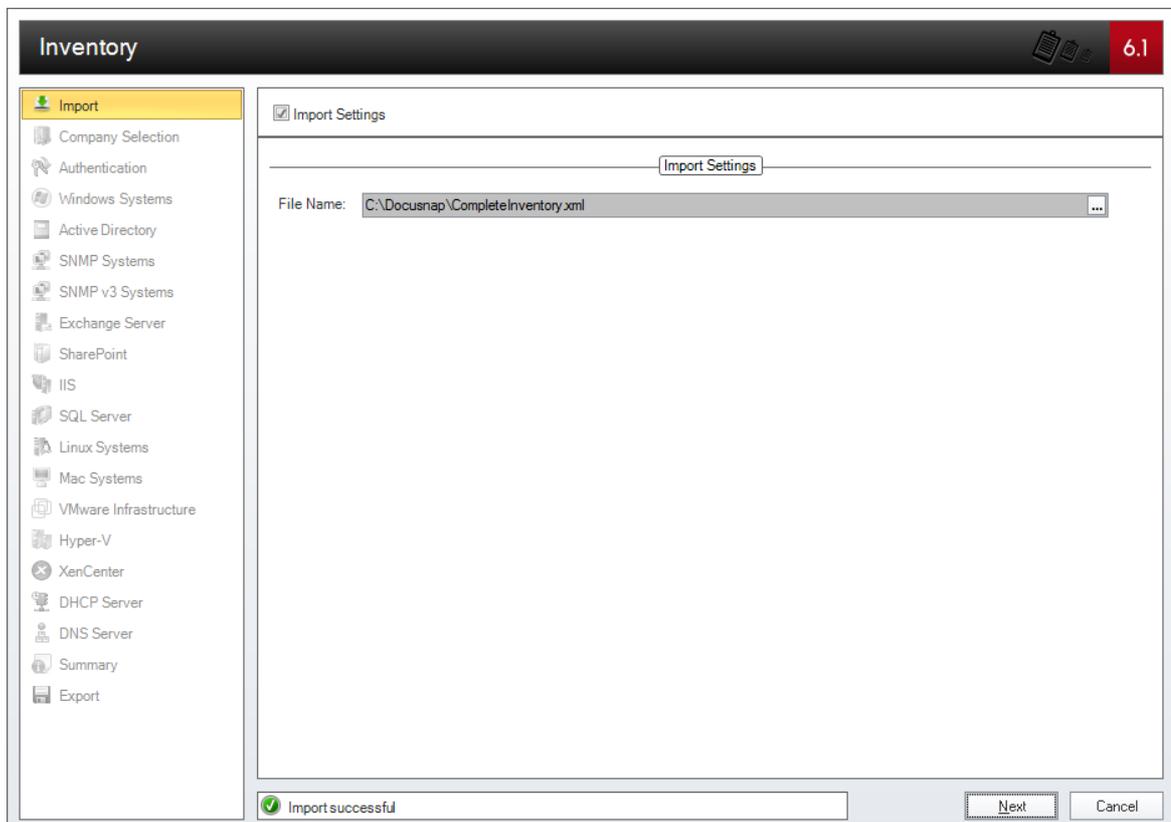
Assign a unique name to the batch job in the *Name* field so that it can be identified by its name in the scheduling dialogs. The field to the right can be used to summarize the selected configuration.

2.8.2 Optional: Import

The *Import* step is only displayed in the *Complete Network* wizard if the *Import Saved Settings* checkbox has been enabled on the *Wizards* page of the [Options](#) dialog.

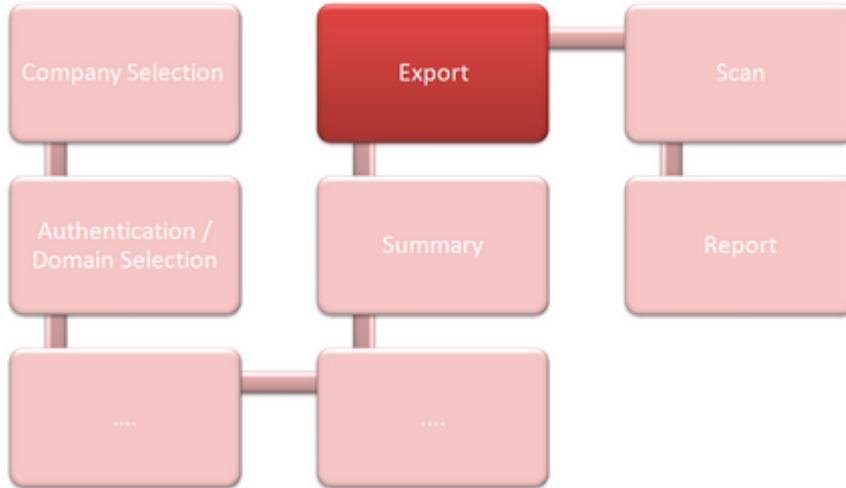


You can use the *Import* step to load a saved configuration. This option is particularly helpful if you need to perform inventory scans repeatedly and with the same settings. Before you can import the .xml file that contains the configuration, it must have been saved in the [Export](#) step. When you select the desired configuration file, all settings saved in this file will be applied. Only the authentication step must be repeated.



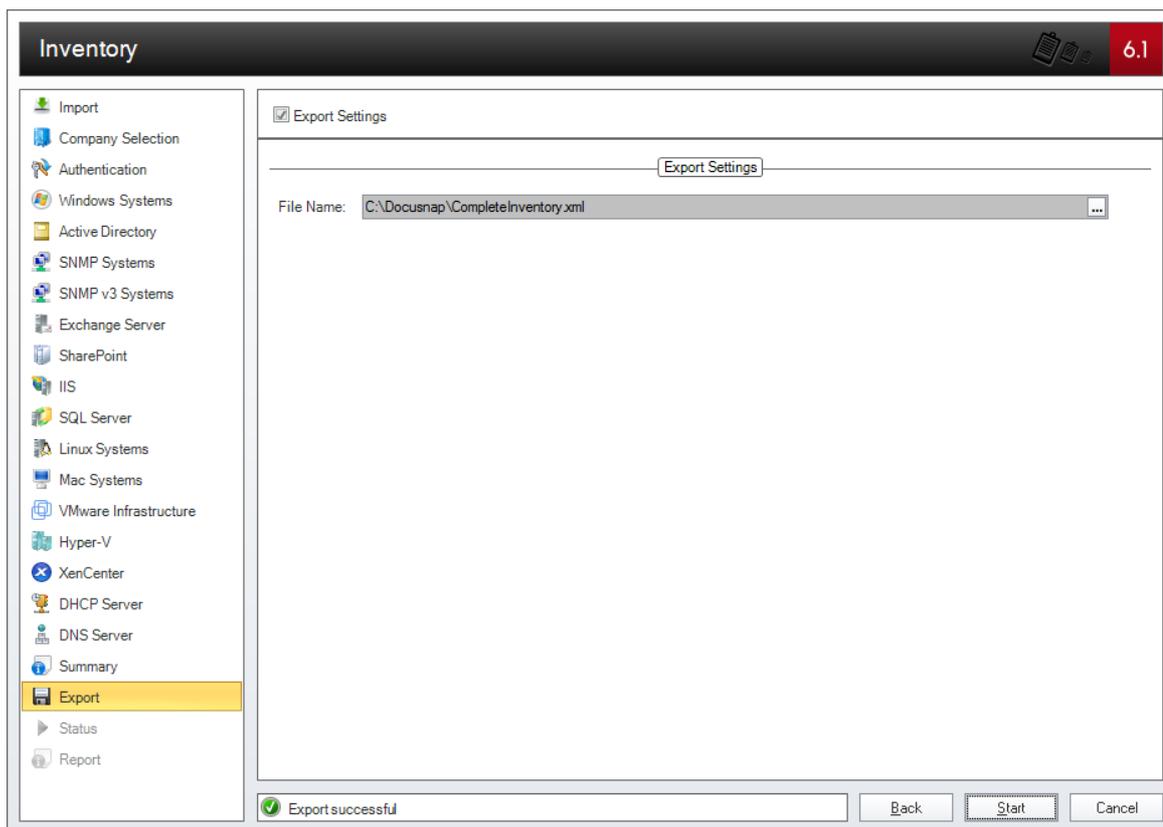
2.8.3 Optional: Export

The *Export* step is only displayed in the *Complete Network* wizard if the *Export Settings* checkbox has been enabled on the *Wizards* page of the [Options](#) dialog.



You can save the current configuration of the wizard by means of the *Export* step and reload it by selecting the *Import* step, as needed. This option is particularly helpful if you need to perform inventory scans repeatedly and with the same settings.

In order to enable the export of settings, check the *Export Settings* checkbox in the Options dialog. Then, you can click the  icon to select the directory where to save the .xml file. In the *Import* step, you can import this file and thus avoid specifying the same settings again.



2.9 Filtering

When you click the right border of the Data tab pane, the *DocuSnap filter pane* appears. When you cursor over this border, it will turn *orange*. Click the border to show the filter pane. This filter can also be used for other lists, for example in some of the steps of a wizard.

The screenshot shows the Docusnap 6.1 application window. At the top, there are icons for Exchange, Active Directory, SQL Server, DHCP Server, and DNS Server. Below these are tabs for 'Finance (0)', 'Passwords (0)', 'Contracts (0)', and 'Reminders (0)'. The main area contains a table with the following data:

Online	Domain	Type	Description	Exclude from License Management
Succeeded	docusnap.internal	DC		No
Succeeded	docusnap.internal	Server		No
Succeeded	docusnap.internal	Server		No
Succeeded	docusnap.internal	DC		No
Succeeded	docusnap.internal	Server		No
Succeeded	docusnap.internal	Server		No

The image shows a dropdown menu with the following items:

- Show always ?
- Filter**
- Disable Filter
- Apply Filter
- Remove Filter
- Other**
- Excel Export

To make sure that the filter is always displayed in Docusnap (even after a program reboot), tick the *Show always* checkbox.

Clicking the *Enable Filter* button displays text fields above the main window columns where you can specify the desired filters or enter keywords. The table displayed in the main pane of the wizard will be filtered by those keywords.

The asterisk (*) and the question mark (?) can be used as wildcards. Example: If you enter the keyword "Docu*", Docusnap will return all records that begin with "Docu"



in the corresponding columns. The other way round: The keyword "***docu**" will return all records that end with "docu".

The following additional filter options may also be used. Please note that the wildcards mentioned above cannot be combined with the filter options listed below.

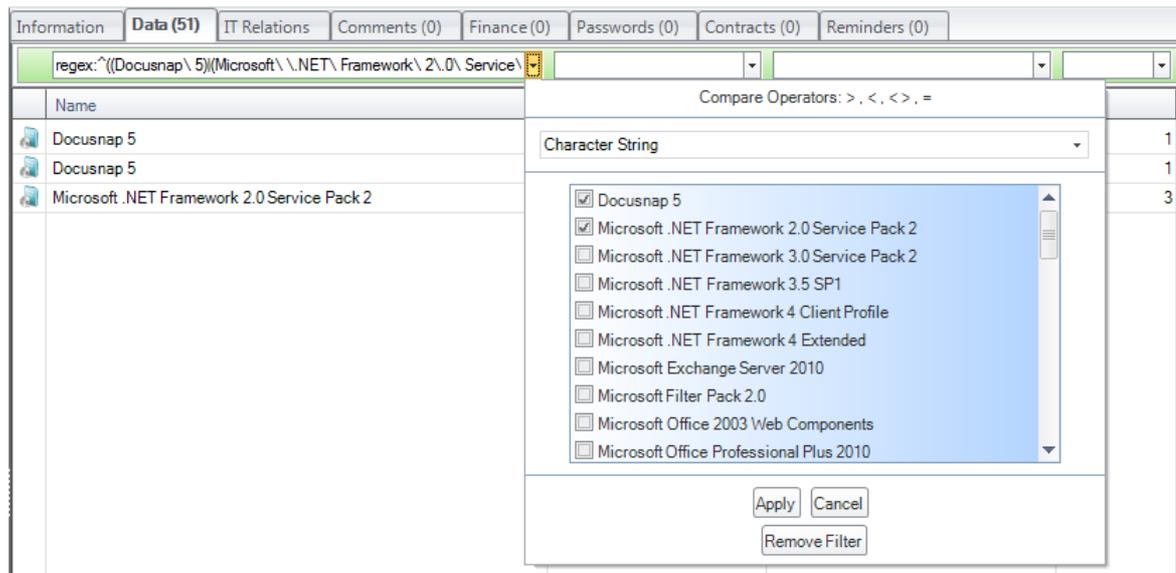
	Example
>(greater than) or>= (greater than or equal to)	> Docu would filter for entries sorted alphabetically after "Docu".
>(less than) or.>= (less than or equal to)	< Docu would filter for entries sorted alphabetically before "Docu".
<>(not equal)	<> Docu would explicitly exclude the "Docu" entry when filtering.
=(equal)	= Docu would only show entries that match "Docu" exactly.

Name	Version	Publisher
 Docusnap 5	5.1.247.5	itelio GmbH
 Microsoft .NET Framework 4 Client Profile	4.0.30319	Microsoft Corporation
 Microsoft .NET Framework 4 Extended	4.0.30319	Microsoft Corporation
 Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	14.0.4763.1000	Microsoft Corporation

When you have entered all required keywords, apply the filter either by clicking the *Apply Filter* button or by pressing the *Enter* key.

In addition, you can click the *down arrow* to the right of each *text field* to open a list of filter criteria. The *combo box* will be populated with the content of the associated column. Docusnap uses the selected criteria and applies the filter using a regular expression. It is also possible to enter regular expressions directly into the *text field*. Do do so, enter *regex:* and then type your expression.

Please note that the selected data type may affect the way numbers are sorted. If you select the String data type, numbers will be sorted by numeric order (for example 1, 11, 14, 19, 2, 21, 29, 3, 31...) With the Integer data type, however, numbers will be sorted according to their numeric values (for example 1, 2, 3, 9, 11, 24, 29, 31...)



To display all data again without filtering it, either delete the *keywords* from the text fields and re-apply the filter, or remove the filter by clicking the *Remove Filter* button.

To export the current view, as displayed in the main window, to an Excel file, click the *Excel Export* button. After you have saved the file, it will be opened directly in Excel.

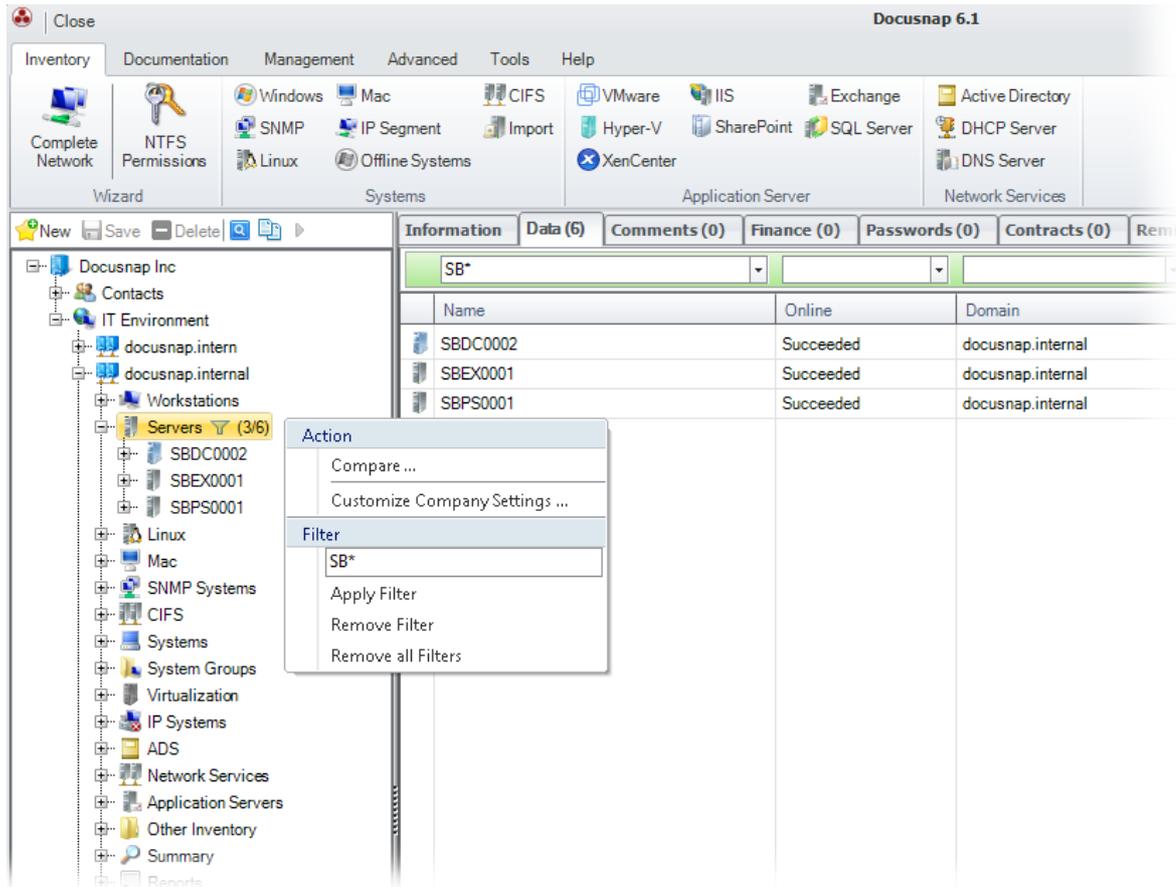
Filtering the Data Explorer

In addition to the filter specified in the main window, it is also possible to filter the nodes of the tree view. In the Data Explorer or License Management tree view, right-click a node to display its context menu where you can specify the desired filter. This way, you can filter the data below the selected node. The filters will be stored on the computer where you are currently working. For this reason, the filters set in the tree view will also be retained when you restart Docusnap. The  icon indicates that a filter is currently applied to the node.

To specify a filter criterion, enter it in the text field below the "Filter" caption. As with the main window filter, both the "*" and "?" wildcards, as well as RegEx expressions, can be used as filter criteria. To enable the filter, either press the *Enter* key or click the *Apply Filter* option.

If a filter is applied to the tree view, the entries in the main window table will be filtered according to the same criteria. As soon as you remove the filter from the main window, Docusnap redisplay all data. This will, however, not remove the filter from the tree view. However, removing the filter from the tree view will also remove the filter from the main window.

To remove the filter for the current node, click the *Delete Filter* option from the context menu. To remove the filters for all companies in all tree views, click the *Remove all Filters* option.

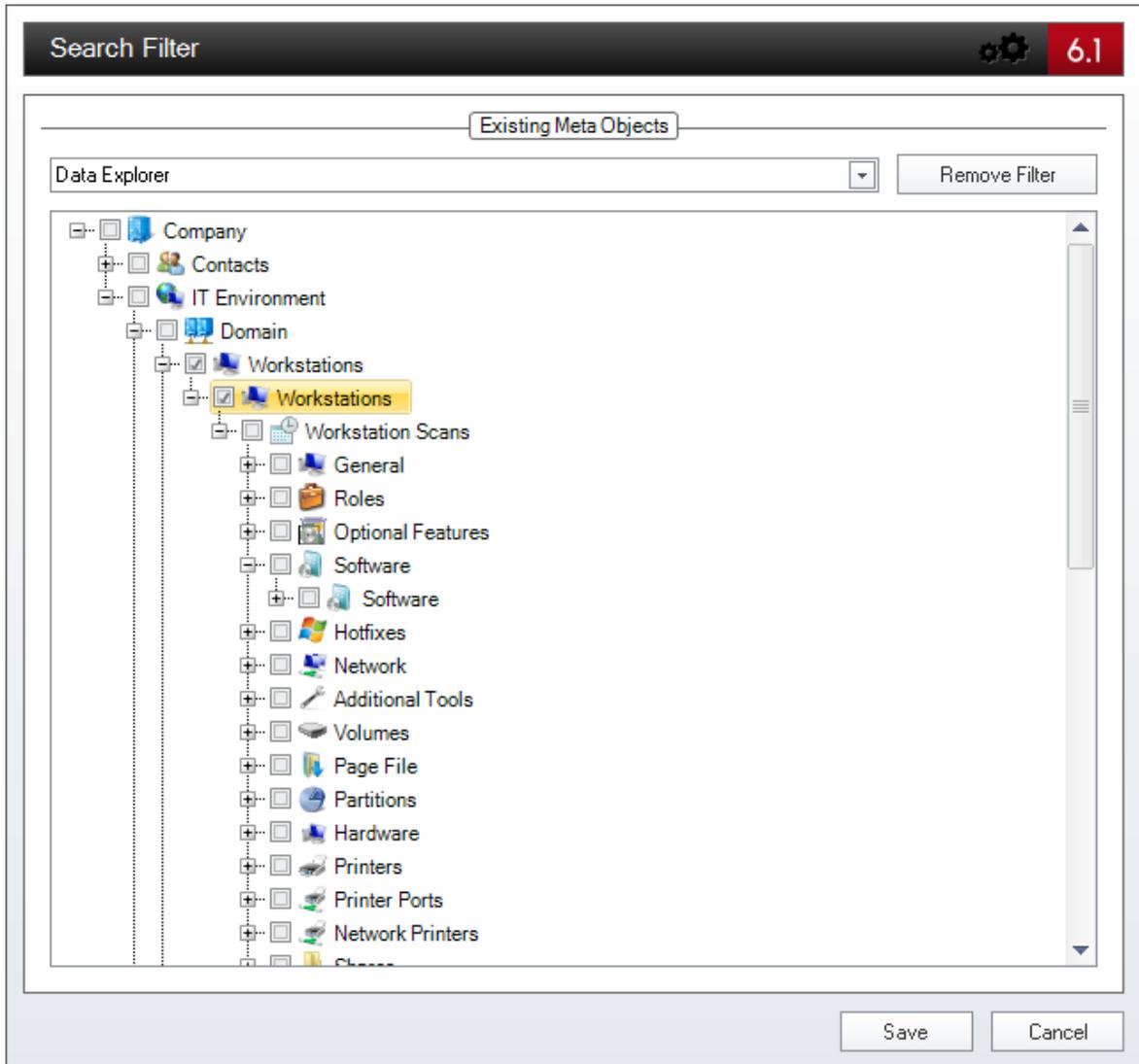


2.10 Search

To perform a full-text search in the database, you can use the *Search* button on the *Advanced* ribbon. Using the Search feature, you can search the entire content of the tree structure for text strings (e.g. portions of license keys, names of software, hotfixes and more).

If no restrictions are made, all tree structures are searched.

To restrict the search to specific nodes to be searched, you can define a filter. The *Search Filter* dialog, that opens when you click the Filter button on the search bar, lists all meta objects. Select the meta objects to be included in the search.



For a full-text search, the following controls are available:



Control	Description
Combo box	Here, you can enter the search string.
Archive	If you <i>enable</i> this checkbox, all existing snapshots will be searched. If the checkbox is <i>disabled</i> , only the current snapshots will be searched.
 / 	Starts or terminates the current search.
Filter	A filter can be used to restrict the search to specific meta objects.

Progress bar

The green progress bar remains visible until the search has completed.

The combo box contains a history of the previously entered search strings. However, these search strings will be discarded when you exit Docusnap. When you restart Docusnap, the combo box will be empty again. Since the full-text search will also find word fragments in the tree view, the search string does not need to be a complete word.

When you start the search, the *Number of Objects* message appears. It indicates how many objects have been searched.

Example

If you enter the search string *Microsoft Office*, the tree view will be searched for items that contain the words *Microsoft Office*. This means that the search will find every object that contains the string *Microsoft Office* (software, hotfixes, printers, services, etc.).

The screenshot shows the Docusnap 6.1 application window. The search bar at the top contains 'Microsoft Office' and 'Searched Data Sets: 7.316'. The main window is divided into two panes. The upper pane displays a table of search results with columns for Name, Object, and Path. The lower pane displays detailed information for the selected item, 'Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010', including Version (14.0.4763.1000), Publisher (Microsoft Corporation), Installation Date, and License Key (MDX44-F3KF8-8D86D-YHIVKVI-RMP).

Name	Object	Path
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010:Update for Microsof...	Hotfixes	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Visio 2010:Definition update for Microsoft O...	Hotfixes	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Visio 2010:Microsoft Visio 2010 Service Pa...	Hotfixes	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Office 64-bit Components 2010:Microsoft O...	Hotfixes	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft SharePoint Workspace Audit Service	Services	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft SharePoint Workspace Audit Service	Services	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Groove Audit Service	Services	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Diagnostics Service	Services	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft SharePoint Workspace Audit Service	Services	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Diagnostics Service	Services	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Visio Professional 2007	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Enterprise 2007	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Visio Professional 2007	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Software	Docusnap AG/IT Environment/docusna...

Name	Version	Publisher	Installation Date	License Key
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	14.0.4763.1000	Microsoft Corporation		MDX44-F3KF8-8D86D-YHIVKVI-RMP

The search results will be displayed in the upper pane of the main window. There, you can see the name, object type and path of the objects found by the search. When you double-click a search result entry in this pane, the associated license object will

be highlighted in the tree view and its data displayed in the lower pane.

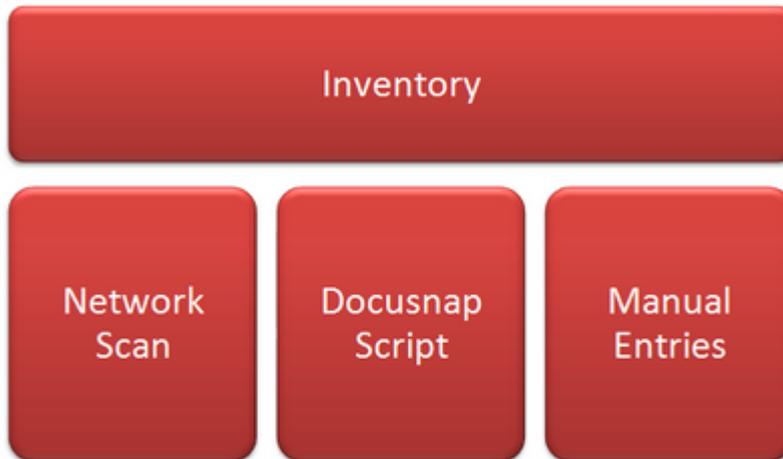
Column	Description
Name	The name of the object in the tree view.
Object	The object type associated with the current tree view level where the search result is located.
Path	Indicates the path to the object in the tree view.



Part



3 Inventory



Network Inventory

The procedures for the automated inventory process are covered in the Network Inventory Process section.

Docusnap Script

Using the Docusnap Script, you can scan a Windows or Linux system and save the collected information to an XML file that can be imported subsequently into Docusnap.

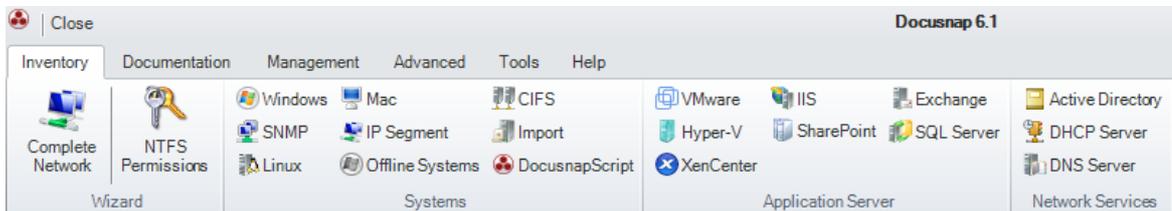
Manual Entries

If you wish to include systems that cannot be scanned by the automated inventory process or by the Docusnap Script, you can enter the required information manually.

3.1 Network Inventory



When you navigate to the *Inventory* tab on the ribbon, the buttons used to create an inventory of the IT environment become accessible.



Inventorying the Network

Click the *Complete Network* button to open the inventory wizard. From this wizard, you can access a number of separate wizards which will be described below.

Windows Systems

Windows systems will be inventoried on the basis of the Active Directory.

SNMP Systems

When you perform an inventory of your SNMP systems, Docusnap will find systems such as printers, routers, or switches.

Linux Systems

Equipment where Linux is installed as the operating system can be discovered and scanned using the Linux inventory process.

Mac Systems



All Mac systems can be determined using the Mac inventory process.

IP Segments

An inventory of IP segments is an alternative to scanning Windows systems. Here, the inventory scan is not based on the Active Directory, but on a freely definable IP range.

Offline Systems

If some systems were unreachable during a previous scan, they can be targeted for another scan at a later time by means of the Offline Systems inventory process.

CIFS

The primary goal when inventorying CIFS systems is to scan the shares and the associated permissions. This information forms the basis for a permission analysis with Docusnap (see [Permission Analysis](#)).

Exchange Server

Use the *Exchange Server* wizard to inventory all your Exchange Servers.

SQL Server

To inventory your SQL Servers, click the *SQL Server* button in the *Inventory* ribbon.

VMware Infrastructure

By scanning the VMware infrastructure, you can obtain information about vCenter, ESX, and VMware Server.

Hyper-V

Scanning the Hyper-V servers creates an inventory of the existing Hyper-V servers.

Internet Information Service (IIS)

Use the *IIS* wizard to inventory the Internet Information Service Server.

SharePoint

To perform an inventory of your SharePoint servers, server authentication is required. For this, you need to specify the following information: SharePoint name, user, and password.

XenCenter

Use this wizard to inventory your XenCenter environment.

Active Directory

Besides Active Directory information such as organizational units, users, or groups, you can scan permissions and group policies.

DHCP Server

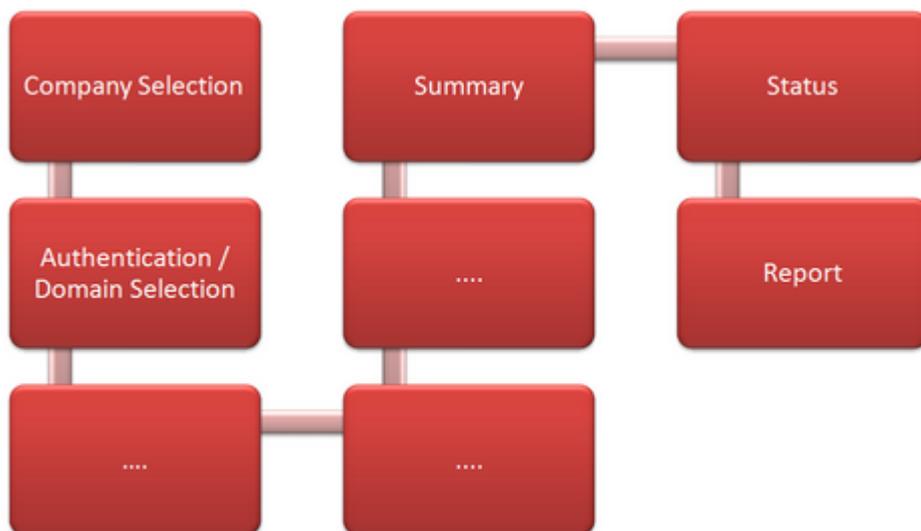
Use this wizard to inventory your DHCP servers.

DNS Server

To scan your DNS servers, click the *Inventory* button in the *Network Services* group.

3.1.1 Basic Steps

For the tasks involved in an inventory scan, Docusnap provides a wizard-based user interface that will be referred to as *Wizard* in this documentation. The Docusnap inventory wizard consists of several steps, which are combined differently depending on which system type (Windows systems, VMware infrastructure, etc.) is to be scanned. The following figure illustrates the basic steps each wizard includes.



3.1.1.1 Company Selection

When you start the Docusnap inventory wizard, the first step is to select a company to which the results of the inventory scan will be assigned. If you purchased a Docusnap multi-license (capable of supporting multiple companies), you can create a new company or select an existing company in this step.

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application interface. On the left is a navigation pane with 'Company Selection' highlighted. The main area contains the text 'Please select a company or create a new one:' followed by two radio buttons: 'Select Company' (which is selected) and 'Create new Company'. Below the radio buttons is a 'Select Company' button and a dropdown menu currently displaying 'Docusnap Inc'.

When you click the *Create New Company* radio button, a data entry screen opens where you can create the desired new company. After you have entered the name in the text field, you can accept your entry by clicking the *Save* button or discard your changes by clicking the *Cancel* button.

This screenshot shows the same 'Inventory' application interface, but with the 'Create new Company' radio button selected. The 'Select Company' button is now disabled. A 'Create new Company' button is active, and a text input field below it contains the text 'itelio GmbH'. To the right of the text field are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

3.1.1.2 Authentication

Depending on the systems for which the inventory process will be performed, the second step in the wizard is to either specify your credentials or a domain.

The term "domain" will be used in Docusnap both in connection with logging on to an Active Directory and for the logical organization in the Data Explorer. This means that, if no Active Directory Domain Service is available, a domain name must nonetheless be entered for purposes of logical organization in the Docusnap Data Explorer.

Authentication

Authentication by specifying an *Active Directory* domain is required for the following wizards:

- Complete Network
- NTFS Permissions
- Windows
- Offline Systems
- Exchange Server

- Active Directory
- DHCP Server
- DNS Server
- Hyper-V
- SharePoint
- IIS (Internet Information Service)

For an *Active Directory* domain authentication, enter the domain name in the *Domain* field. If it is necessary to enter your username and password, depends on the following:

- If you are logged on to the Docusnap computer as a domain administrator, you can use the integrated Windows authentication for the inventory process. This means that you need not specify a user name or password.
- If you are logged on to the Docusnap computer as a user other than a domain administrator, you need to specify the corresponding credentials.



If you need to enter your credentials for authentication, the NetBIOS name, followed by a backslash (\), must precede the user name. For example, the NetBIOS name of the domain named *intern.local* is *INTERN*. Therefore, you would have to enter the following user name: *INTERN\<UserName>*

Click the *Check Credentials* button to log on to the Active Directory. If the login was successful, you can proceed with the next step.

Selecting a Domain

A logical domain must be selected or created for the following wizards:

- SNMP
- Linux
- Mac



- IP Segment
- CIFS
- SQL Server
- VMware Infrastructure
- XenCenter

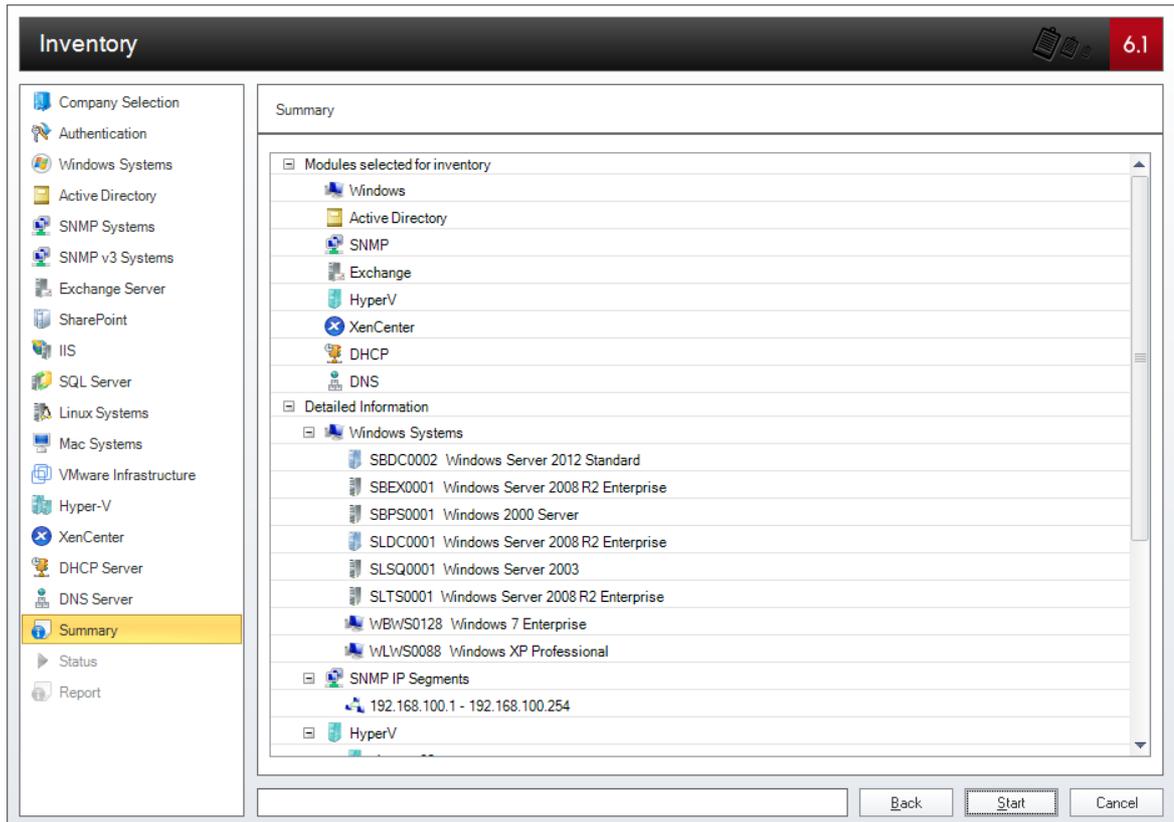
When you click the *Create New Domain* radio button, a data entry screen opens where you can create the desired new logical domain for Docusnap. After you have entered the name in the text field, you can apply your entry by clicking the *Save* button or discard your changes by clicking the *Cancel* button.

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application interface. On the left, a sidebar contains a tree view with 'Domain' selected. The main area has a header 'Please select a domain or create a new one:' with two radio buttons: 'Select Domain' (selected) and 'Create new Domain'. Below this is a 'Select Domain' button and a text input field containing 'docusnap.internal'. The top right corner of the application window shows the version number '6.1'.

3.1.1.3 Summary Page

As the last step, before the actual inventory scan can be started, both the modules to be inventoried as well as detailed information about the individual modules will be listed on a summary page.

Click the *Start* button to initiate the inventory process. The *Status* page of the wizard opens.



3.1.1.4 Status

The Status page displays information about the status and progress of the current inventory scan. The Navigation pane is disabled while the system performs the inventory scan. So, if you need to abort this process, you can only click the Cancel button.

The actual progress for each step will be displayed using progress bars (see the screenshot below) and can take on various states:

- A green progress bar indicates that a task has been performed successfully.
- A yellow progress bar shows that some information could not be determined for the corresponding step.
- A red progress bar indicates that an error has occurred during the inventory scan.

After the inventory process has been completed, the wizard automatically takes you to the Report page where a summary is displayed.



The screenshot displays the 'Inventory Status' page. On the left, a sidebar contains a list of menu items: Company Selection, Authentication, Windows Systems, Active Directory, SNMP Systems, SNMP v3 Systems, Exchange Server, SharePoint, IIS, SQL Server, Linux Systems, Mac Systems, VMware Infrastructure, Hyper-V, XenCenter, DHCP Server, DNS Server, Summary, Status (highlighted), and Report. The main area shows a table with the following data:

Name	Type	Progress in %	Information
Preparation	Preparation	Completed	Completed
Active Directory	Active Directory	Completed	Completed
Windows	Windows	Executing Process: 73 %	Executing Process: 73 %
SBDC0002	Windows	Scanning CD rom drives	Scanning CD rom drives
SBEX0001	Windows	Scanning software information	Scanning software information
SBPS0001	Windows	Scanned successfully	Scanned successfully
SLDC0001	Windows	Scanned successfully	Scanned successfully
SLSQ0001	Windows	Scanned successfully	Scanned successfully
SLTS0001	Windows	Scanned successfully	Scanned successfully
WLWS0088	Windows	Scanned successfully	Scanned successfully
WBWS0128	Windows	Scanning software information	Scanning software information

At the bottom right of the main area, there is a 'Cancel' button.

3.1.1.5 Summary Page

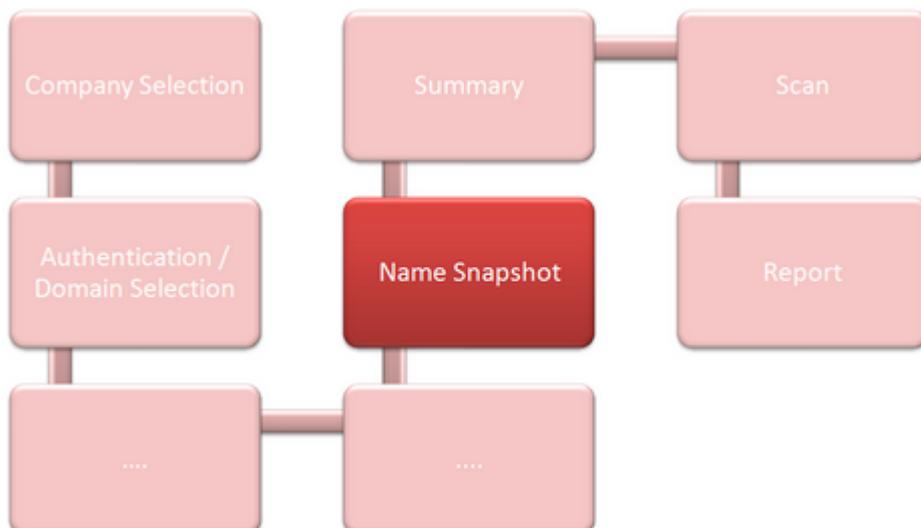
As the last step of the *wizard*, a final report is displayed that shows information on the completed inventory scan. The structure of the view reflects each inventory process step that was performed successfully, caused errors or could not be completed. In addition, error messages and error cause details will be shown for the aborted and incomplete steps.

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application window. On the left is a navigation pane with various system categories. The 'Report' option is selected and highlighted in yellow. The main area displays a 'Report' table with columns for Name, Type, and Information. The report shows a summary of scan results, including a list of successful scans for various systems like Active Directory, Windows, and SNMP.

Name	Type	Information
Summary		Required Time: 00:15:20
Active Directory		Completed
Windows		Completed
SNMP		Completed
IP System		Completed
Topology		Completed
DHCP		Completed
DNS		Completed
Hyper-V		Completed
XEN		Completed
Exchange		Completed
Successful (29)		
Active Directory (1)		
docusnap.internal	ADS	Scanned successfully
Windows (7)		
SBDC0002	Windows	Scanned successfully
SBEX0001	Windows	Scanned successfully
SBPS0001	Windows	Scanned successfully
SLDC0001	Windows	Scanned successfully
SLSQ0001	Windows	Scanned successfully
SLTS0001	Windows	Scanned successfully
WBWS0128	Windows	Scanned successfully
SNMP (14)		
192.168.100.240	SNMP	Scanned successfully

3.1.1.6 Optional: Naming Snapshots

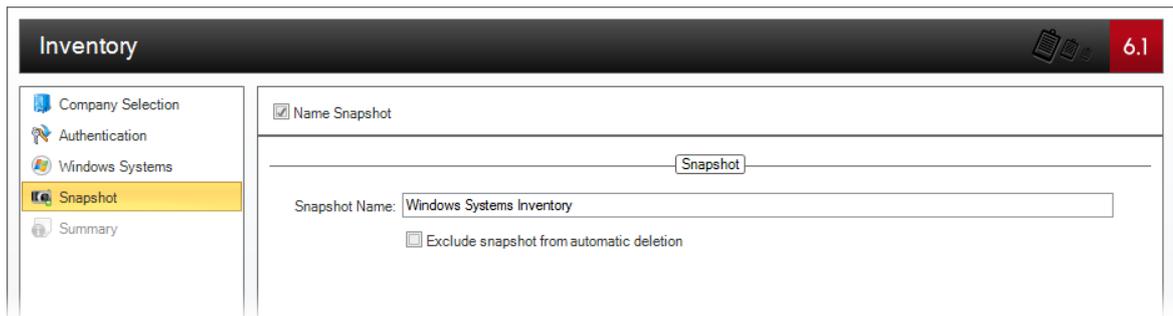
As already described in the [Basics - Docusnap Wizards](#) section, Docusnap wizards can be extended as needed. To enable the *Name Snapshot* step, open the *Wizards* page of the *Options* dialog.



In the *Name Snapshot* step, you can assign a name to an inventory scan. *Snapshots* are primarily used to summarize inventory scans so that you are able to identify them later. So you can, for example, select a specific *snapshot* when importing data to the database, or you can delete the entire *snapshot* with all of its data.

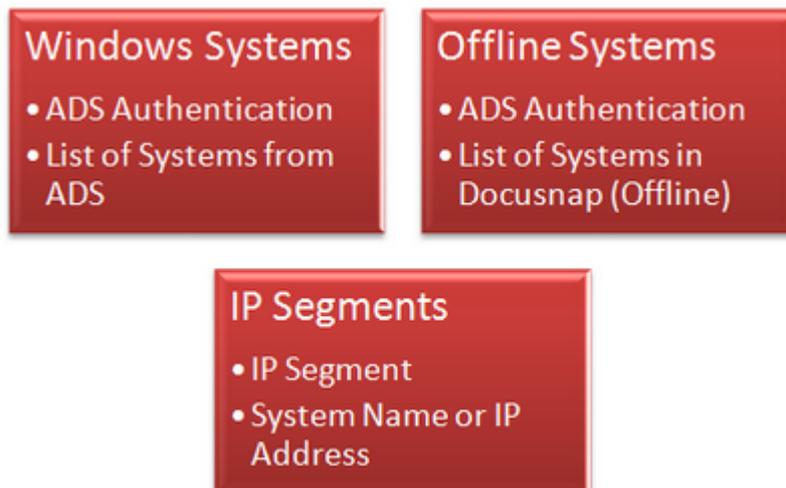
After enabling the *Name Snapshot* checkbox, you can define a specific name for the current inventory scan. If you enable the *Exclude snapshot from automatic deletion* checkbox, the data associated with the current snapshot will not be deleted when the maximum number of archive versions (specified in the [Options](#) dialog) is reached.

If you did not enable the *Name Snapshot* checkbox, the name of the snapshot will be *Inventory from*, along with the date and time of the inventory scan.



3.1.2 Windows

For the automated scanning of *Windows systems*, a variety of methods can be used in Docusnap. While the core directory service, i.e. the *Active Directory Service* must be accessible when scanning *Windows systems* and *offline systems*, you can use the *IP Segment* inventory process to scan an IP range or a single system.



These are the differences:

[Windows Systems](#)

When you click either the *Complete Network* or the *Windows* button, Docusnap will search the Active Directory for active computer accounts. The actual inventory

process for individual systems will be based on the results of this search.



If the Active Directory system has a larger number of active computer accounts than have been licensed in Docusnap, a corresponding error message will be displayed in the *Authentication* step.

IP Segments

Click the *IP Segments* button to scan Windows systems which are not part of the Active Directory, for example, workgroup computers. Based on the specified IP ranges, IP addresses or computer names, Docusnap attempts to identify Windows systems in the network and to inventory them in subsequent steps.

Offline Systems

If any systems cannot be reached at the time of a Windows inventory scan, Docusnap will assign the *Offline* status to them. By clicking the *Offline Systems* button, you can perform another inventory scan for these systems.

3.1.2.1 Windows Systems

To start the wizard for inventorying your Windows systems, click the *Complete Network* or *Windows* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *Windows Systems* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

Inventory
6.1

- Company Selection
- Authentication
- Windows Systems
- Snapshot
- Summary

Inventory Windows Systems

Start Search at:

	Name	Operating System	Type	Password Age...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBDC0002	Windows Server 2012...	Domain Controller	28
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBEX0001	Windows Server 2008...	Server	13
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBPS0001	Windows 2000 Server	Server	16
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLDC0001	Windows Server 2008...	Domain Controller	3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLSQ0001	Windows Server 2003	Server	3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLTS0001	Windows Server 2008...	Server	24
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WBWS0128	Windows 7 Enterprise	Workstation	21
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WLWS0088	Windows XP Professio...	Workstation	27

Filter

Select

Select all

Deselect all

Other

Systems found: 8



Docusnap will select the systems to be scanned based on the active computer accounts available in the Active Directory. Using the *Start Search at* filter criterion, you can restrict the search to a specific organizational unit. Click the *Select OU* button to open a dialog where you can select the desired organizational unit. If you do not specify a filter criterion, Docusnap will search the entire Active Directory for active computer accounts.

Start the search by clicking the *Start Search* button. During the search, all user interface controls except the *Cancel* button will be disabled. After the search has completed, the identified Windows systems will be displayed in the *Systems Found* list.

There are several ways to select the systems to be inventoried. To select or deselect a certain system, you can use the checkbox next to its name. By default, all devices are selected.

In addition, a flyout pane will appear to the right of the list. There, you can filter, select and export the displayed systems (see: [Filters](#) section). While you can click one of the  (domain controllers),  (memberservers) and  (workstations) icons to add or remove individual items, the *Select all* and *Deselect all* checkboxes allow you to select or deselect all systems with one click.



Besides the operating system information and the system type, the *Systems Found* list also includes a column showing the password age. The password age indicates how many days ago the current computer account last received a new access token from the domain controller. By default, this token is renewed every 30 days.

3.1.2.2 IP Segments

To start the wizard for inventorying certain IP segments of your Windows systems, click the *IP Segment* button on the *Inventory* ribbon. The *Windows Systems* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain.

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application window with a sidebar on the left containing 'Company Selection', 'Domain', 'Windows Systems' (selected), and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Inventory IP Segments' and contains two sections:

Add IP Range: A table with columns 'IP from' and 'IP to'. The first row is highlighted in yellow and contains '192.168.100.1' and '192.168.100.255'. To the right of the table are input fields for 'IP from' (192.168.100.1), 'IP to' (192.168.100.255), 'User' (docuen\administrator), and 'Password' (masked with asterisks). Below these fields are 'New', 'Clear', and 'Save' buttons. A 'Start Search' button is located below the table.

Found Systems: A table with columns 'Host Name' and 'IP Address'. It lists several systems with checkboxes in the first column:

Host Name	IP Address
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.100.210	192.168.100.210
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SKNITIL01	192.168.100.155
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SMAIL02	192.168.100.18
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SREP01	192.168.100.49
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> STAPI01	192.168.100.25
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WKNE0002	192.168.100.174
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WKNM0002	192.168.100.122

To the right of the table are input fields for 'Host Name', 'or IP', 'User', and 'Password'. Below these fields are 'New', 'Delete', and 'Save' buttons. At the bottom of the window are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

There are two ways to identify individual systems:

Entering an IP Segment Manually

First, you need to enter the required information (*IP from*, *IP to*, *User*, *Password*) in the *Add IP Range* group and save this information. Then, click the *Start Search* button to identify the Windows systems in the specified segment(s). During this process, the individual IP addresses in the specified segments will be pinged. Each Windows system that replies successfully will be added to the *Found Systems* list.

Entering Individual Computers Manually

In addition to scanning entire IP ranges for systems, you can also specify a single system. In the *Found Systems* group, click the *New* button and then enter either a system name or an IP address as well as the *User* name and the *Password* for the system(s) to be scanned subsequently.



If you wish to use the the *IP Segments* inventory process to scan systems that are members of a domain, precede the user name with the NetBIOS name and a backslash (\). For example, the NetBIOS name of the domain named *intern.local* is *INTERN*. This means that you need to enter the following in the *User* field: *INTERN\<UserName>*.

If you would like to use the inventory process to scan individual systems or workgroup systems, "only" the user name (permissions of a local administrator) needs to be specified.

The actual inventory process is based on the systems listed in the *Found Systems* group. All systems selected there will be scanned.

3.1.2.3 Offline Systems

To start the wizard for inventorying your offline systems, click the *Offline Systems* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *Offline Systems* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application window with the 'Offline Systems' step active. The interface is divided into three main sections:

- Navigation Pane (Left):** Contains 'Company Selection', 'Authentication', 'Offline Systems' (highlighted), and 'Summary'.
- Main Content Area:** Features a checkbox for 'Inventory Offline Hosts' and a table titled 'Systems Found'.

Name	Type	Domain
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SBEX0001	Offline	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SLFS0001	Offline	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SLSQ0001	Offline	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> W/WS0128	Offline	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> W/LWS0088	Offline	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SLTS0001	Offline	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SBPS0001	Offline	docusnap.internal
- Filter Pane (Right):** Includes 'Filter' options (Enable, Apply, Remove), 'Select' options (Select all, Deselect all), and 'Other' options (Excel Export).

At the bottom of the window, there are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Only Windows systems that could not be inventoried during previous inventory scans will be displayed in the *Systems Found* list.

There are several ways to select the systems to be inventoried. To select or deselect a certain system, you can use the checkbox next to its name. By default, all devices are selected.

In addition, a flyout pane will appear to the right of the list. There, you can filter, select and export the displayed systems (see: [Filters](#) section). Using the *Select all* and *Deselect all* buttons, you can select or deselect all systems with one click.

3.1.2.4 Optional: Software Search

As already described in the [Basics - Wizards](#) section, Docusnap wizards can be extended as needed. The *Software Search* step can be enabled from the Wizards page of the *Options* dialog.

The Software Search step is available in the following wizards:

- Complete Network
- Windows Systems
- Offline Systems
- IP Segments



The Software Search feature is an additional Docusnap feature for inventorying software products that could not be scanned by means of the Windows inventory process. If, for example, an application (.exe) has been saved to the file system from a distribution package without registering with the target system, Docusnap will not be able to find this product during the automated inventory scan. With the Software Search feature, Docusnap accesses the file system directly and attempts to find the defined software product in the course of the inventory scan.

Before you can use the Software Search feature, you need to define software products. To define the desired products, open the *Manage Software Search* dialog by clicking the *Software Search* button on the [Management](#) ribbon.



All registered software products will be listed as a result of the *Software Search* step. By enabling or disabling the checkboxes, you can determine which products Docusnap will be looking for when performing the automated scan.

3.1.2.5 Optional: Additional Tools

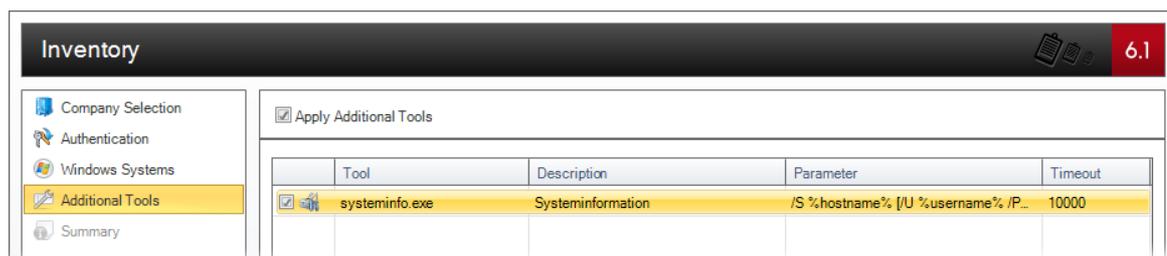
As already described in the [Basics - Wizards](#) section, Docusnap wizards can be extended as needed. The Additional Tools step can be enabled from the Wizards page of the Options dialog.

The Additional Tools step is available for the following wizards:

- Scan Network
- Windows Systems
- Offline Systems
- IP Segments



Utilities (additional tools) can be used during the inventory process in order to scan for additional information about a Windows system. For example, the SystemInfo.exe application provides access to the operating system configuration for a local or remote computer. During the scanning process, Docusnap will start the selected utility and will add the results into the Docusnap database.



All of the registered programs will be listed during the *Additional Tools* process step. Checking or unchecking the checkbox will determine which products should

be executed in the course of the automated scan process.



Utilities will be executed on the system where the inventory process will be taking place. If, for example, *SystemInfo.Exe* has been integrated as a utility, it will be started on the computer on which Docusnap is running. The operating system configuration for a remote system to be scanned can be specified to *SystemInfo.Exe* by means of a parameter.

Before an *additional tool* can be used, it must be defined. This can be done from the *Additional Tools* page of the Options dialog.

3.1.3 SNMP Systems

To start the wizard for inventorying *SNMP systems*, click the *Complete Network* or *SNMP* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *SNMP* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

Scanning SNMP systems

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application window with the 'SNMP Systems' step selected. The interface includes a sidebar with navigation options: Company Selection, Domain, **SNMP Systems**, SNMP v3 Systems, and Summary. The main configuration area has a checked box for 'Inventory SNMP Systems' and an 'Add IP Range' button. Below this are input fields for 'IP from' (192.168.100.1), 'IP to' (192.168.100.254), 'Community' (public), and 'Timeout' (2500). There are 'New', 'Delete', and 'Save' buttons. Below the input fields is a table titled 'IP Ranges' with columns for 'IP from', 'IP to', 'Community', and 'Timeout'. The table contains one entry: 192.168.100.1 to 192.168.100.254 with community 'public' and timeout '2500'. At the bottom of the window are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

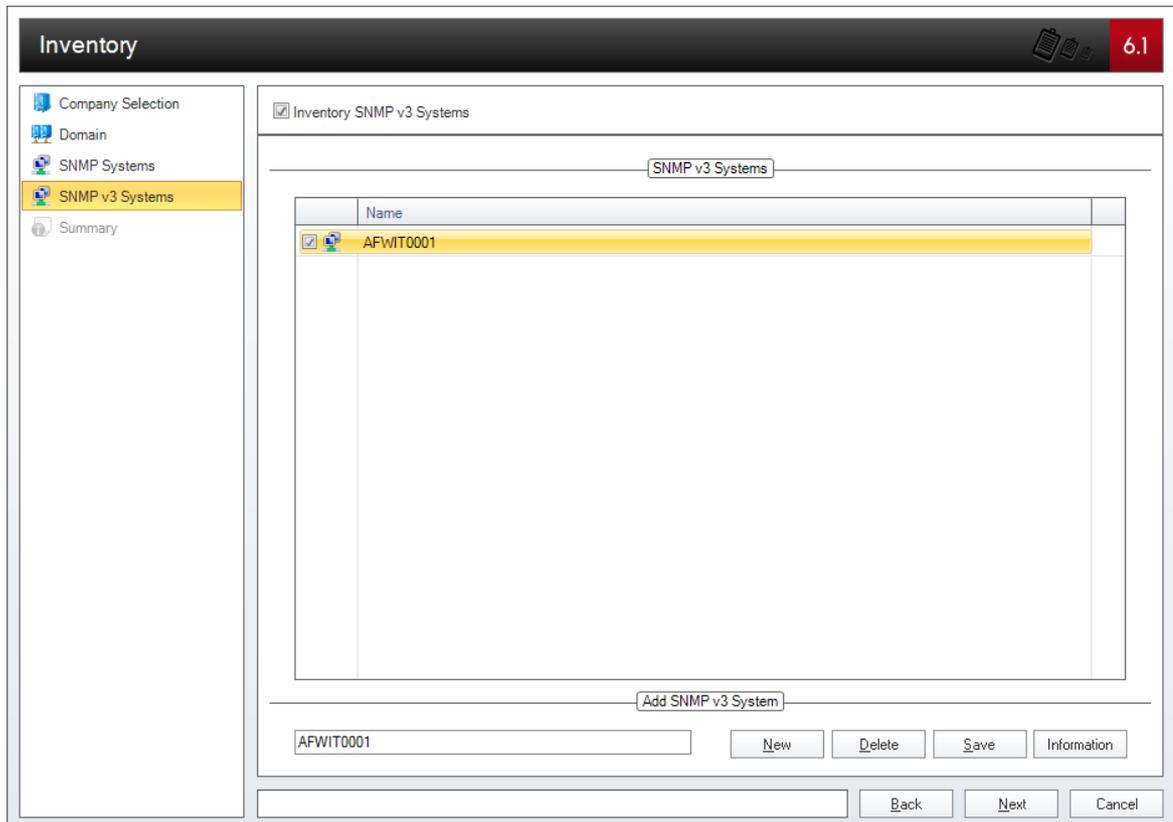
	IP from	IP to	Community	Timeout
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.100.1	192.168.100.254	public	2500

Fill in the *IP from*, *IP to*, *Community* and *Timeout* fields to define the IP range to be scanned. After you have added the desired ranges to the IP Ranges list, you can specify for each range whether or not the inventory scan should be performed by enabling / disabling the checkbox next to it.



Scanning Systems using the SNMP v3 Protocol

The next step refers to scanning systems that support SNMP v3. The main difference between SNMP V3 and SNMP v1 / v2 is that, for SNMP v3 systems, you can define authentication data.



Click the *New* button to specify the name of the desired system that uses the SNMP v3 protocol. When you click the *Information* button, the *SNMP v3 Information* dialog opens where you can enter the authentication details required for a successful scan.

SNMP v3 Information: AFWIT0001
6.1

USM User	<input type="text" value="docusnap"/>
Security Level	<input type="text" value="Auth_Priv"/>
Auth Algorithm	<input type="text" value="MD5"/>
Auth Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Privacy Algorithm	<input type="text" value="DES"/>
Privacy Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Context Name	<input type="text"/>
Engine ID	<input type="text"/>
Localized Auth Key	<input type="text"/>
Localized Priv Key	<input type="text"/>
Timeout in ms	<input type="text" value="2600"/>

After the desired systems have been added to the *SNMP v3 Systems* table, you can use the checkbox next to each system to specify whether it is to be included in the inventory scan or not.



Generally, Docusnap uses the SNMP v1 and v2 protocols to identify SNMP systems. Each IP address in the specified range will be checked to determine if an SNMP system is involved. If the requested IP address responds to a ping and proves itself to be a valid SNMP system, the inventory process will be performed using the SNMP protocol.

SNMP systems that require the SNMP v3 protocol, but have been listed in the IP range list for the normal SNMP scan (i.e. using the v1 and v2 protocols), will not be considered when scanning the v1 and v2 systems.

By default, Docusnap inventories SNMP systems based on their system names. If a network includes multiple SNMP systems with the same system name, the results for all corresponding systems will be grouped under this system name. If you want to obtain individual results for each of these systems, you can specify to identify SNMP systems by their DNS names (on the Wizards page of the [Options](#) dialog).

3.1.4 Linux Systems

To start the wizard for inventorying Linux systems, click the *Complete Network* or *Linux* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *Linux Systems* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory Linux Systems' wizard. On the left, a sidebar lists 'Company Selection', 'Domain', 'Linux Systems' (selected), and 'Summary'. The main window is titled 'Inventory Linux Systems' and features a '6.1' version indicator in the top right. Below the title bar, there are two main sections: 'Add IP Range' and 'Found Systems'. The 'Add IP Range' section contains a table with columns 'IP from' and 'IP to', and a form with fields for 'IP from', 'IP to', 'User', 'Password', and 'Port'. The 'Found Systems' section contains a table with columns 'Host Name' and 'IP Address', and a form with fields for 'Host Name', 'or IP', 'User', 'Password', and 'Port'. At the bottom, there are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

If you define an RSA key on the Wizards page of the [Options](#) dialog, you can, once an initial scan has been performed, omit the password for subsequent scans.

There are two ways to identify the available Linux systems:

Entering an IP Segment Manually

First, you need to enter the required information (*IP from*, *IP to*, *User*, *Password*, *Port*) in the *Add IP Range* group and save this information. Then, click the *Start Search* button to identify the Linux systems in the specified segment(s). During this process, the individual IP addresses in the specified segments will be pinged. Each Linux system that replies successfully will be added to the *Found Systems* list.

Entering Individual Computers Manually

In addition to scanning entire IP ranges for systems, you can also specify a single system. In the *Found Systems* group, click the *New* button and then enter either a system name or an IP address as well as the *User* name and the *Password* for the

system(s) to be scanned subsequently.

The actual inventory process is based on the systems listed in the *Found Systems* group. All systems selected there will be scanned.



To perform an automatic scan of Linux systems, the SSH daemon must be running on the remote Linux system and port 22 must be open.

3.1.5 Mac Systems

To start the wizard for inventorying Mac systems, click the *Complete Network* or *Mac* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *Mac Systems* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory' application window with the 'Mac Systems' step selected in the sidebar. The main area is divided into two sections: 'Add IP Range' and 'Found Systems'.

Add IP Range Section:

	IP from	IP to
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.100.100	192.168.100.110

Form fields on the right:

- IP from: 192.168.100.100
- IP to: 192.168.100.110
- User: docusnap
- Password: [masked]
- Port: 22

Buttons: Start Search, Cancel, New, Clear, Save

Found Systems Section:

	Host Name	IP Address
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	macbookair	192.168.100.101

Form fields on the right:

- Host Name: [empty]
- or IP: [empty]
- User: [empty]
- Password: [masked]
- Port: 22

Buttons: New, Delete, Save, Back, Next, Cancel

There are two ways to identify the available Mac systems:

Entering an IP Segment Manually

First, you need to enter the required information (*IP from*, *IP to*, *User*, *Password*, *Port*) in the *Add IP Range* group and save this information. Then, click the *Start Search* button to identify the Mac systems in the specified segment(s). During this



process, the individual IP addresses in the specified segments will be pinged. Each Mac system that replies successfully will be added to the *Found Systems* list.

Entering Individual Computers Manually

In addition to scanning entire IP ranges for systems, you can also specify a single system. In the *Found Systems* group, click the *New* button and then enter either a system name or an IP address as well as the *User* name and *Password* for the system to be scanned subsequently.

The actual inventory process is based on the systems listed in the *Found Systems* group. All systems selected there will be scanned.

3.1.6 CIFS

To start the wizard for inventorying your CIFS systems, click the CIFS button on the Inventory ribbon. The CIFS step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory CIFS Systems' wizard. On the left, a navigation pane has 'CIFS' selected. The main area is titled 'Inventory CIFS Systems' and contains a table with columns 'Server', 'User', and 'Password'. One entry is visible: '172.31.1.71' with user 'docuen\administrator' and a masked password. Below the table is an 'Add CIFS System' section with input fields for 'Host Name' (172.31.1.71), 'User' (docuen\administrator), 'Community' (public), and 'Password' (masked). Buttons for 'New', 'Delete', 'Save', 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' are present.

Server	User	Password	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172.31.1.71	docuen\administrator	*****

Host Name: User:
Community: Password:

The primary goal when inventorying CIFS systems is to scan the shares and the associated permissions. This information forms the basis for a permission analysis with Docusnap (see the [Permission Analysis](#) section).

Identify the CIFS system to be scanned by completing the *Host Name*, *User*,

Password and *Community* fields. After the desired systems have been added to the table of CIFS systems, you can use the checkbox next to each system to specify whether it is to be included in the inventory scan or not.

3.1.7 Exchange Server

To start the wizard for inventorying your Exchange servers, click the *Complete Network* or *Exchange Server* button on the Inventory ribbon. After you have selected a company and a domain or entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)) the *Exchange Server* step will display.

For inventorying Exchange servers, you can select whether data on mailbox folders and the Exchange permissions should be retrieved as well.

	Name	Version	Import
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SCEX0001.rd.docusnap.intern	Version 8.3 (Build 30083.6)	<input type="checkbox"/> Import
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SMEX0003.docusnap.intern	Version 14.0 (Build 30639.21)	<input type="checkbox"/> Import
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	STEX0001.bulk.docusnap.intern	Version 14.0 (Build 30639.21)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Import

Click the *Start Search* button to let Docusnap search the Active Directory for registered Exchange servers. These will be displayed in the *Found Systems* list. Then, you can select the Exchange servers whose mailboxes, public folders, and permissions you want to inventory. If you do not carry out this search, but immediately click *Next*, all existing Exchange Servers will be included in the inventory.



Scanning Exchange servers can cause problems when subdomains are to be inventoried. Exchange services are always registered in the root domain, even if the Exchange Server installation is

physically located in a subdomain. To be able to collect the desired information in such a situation, you will need the appropriate permissions for the root domain.

Import

Use the [DocusnapExchange.exe](#) script to retrieve information about the mailboxes, public folders, and permissions for a particular Exchange server and to collect them in a file. This data can be imported into Docusnap during the Exchange server inventory process.

Click the *Import* button to select the folder where these files are located. All folders are searched recursively and compared to the server data retrieved from the Active Directory. If matching files are found for the Exchange servers, these will be assigned accordingly. In the next step, the data for the respective servers will be imported and not retrieved by the inventory process.

Since you previously had clicked the *Start Search* button to list all existing servers, you can now select the systems for which you want to import the data from the server list.

3.1.8 VMware Infrastructure

To start the wizard for inventorying the VMware infrastructure, click the *Complete Network* or *VMware Infrastructure* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *VMware Infrastructure* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

Server	User	Password
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> svic03	docuen\administrator	*****

Add VMware vCenter/ESX Server

vCenter/ESX Server: User:

Password:

Click the *New* button in the *Add VMware vCenter/ESX Server* group to specify the desired VMware VCenter server, VMware server, VMware ESXi or VMware vSphere. In the *vCenter/ESX Server* field, you can specify the name or the IP address.



Depending upon the configuration of the VMware product, you may have to specify a port in the *vCenter/ESX Server* field in order to establish a connection.



3.1.9 Hyper-V

To start the wizard for inventorying Hyper-V servers, click the *Complete Network* or *Hyper-V* button. After you have selected select a company and a domain or entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)) the *Hyper-V* step is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory Hyper-V Server' wizard. On the left, a sidebar contains navigation options: 'Company Selection', 'Authentication', 'Hyper-V' (highlighted), and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Inventory Hyper-V Server' and features a 'Hyper-V Server' table with one entry: 'shyperV02'. Below the table is an 'Add Hyper-V Server' section with a text input field containing 'shyperV02' and buttons for 'New', 'Delete', and 'Save'. At the bottom, there are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons. The top right corner of the window displays the version number '6.1'.

Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> shyperV02

To inventory the desired Hyper-V servers, click the *New* button and specify the name of the respective system. You can also enter alternative credentials. After you have saved your entry, Docusnap will check whether this system belongs to the domain you specified. If yes, the server will be added to the list at the top of the window, and the *Next* button becomes active. If the specified server name is not correct, the button remains grayed out. After adding the desired systems to the *Hyper-V Server* table, you can use the checkbox next to each system to specify whether it is to be included in the inventory scan or not.

3.1.10 Internet Information Service

To start the wizard for inventorying Internet Information Service (IIS) systems, click the *Complete Network* or *IIS* button. After you have selected select a company and a domain or entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)) the *IIS* step is displayed.

Name	Security	Info
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> smii0001.docusnap.intem	Global Credentials...	

To inventory the desired IIS servers, click the *New* button and specify the name of the respective server. You can also enter alternative credentials. After you have saved your entry, Docusnap will check whether this server belongs to the domain you specified. If yes, the server will be added to the list at the top of the window, and the *Next* button becomes active. If the specified server name is not correct, the button remains grayed out. After the desired systems have been added to the table of IIS servers, you can use the checkbox next to each system to specify whether it is to be included in the inventory scan or not.

3.1.11 SharePoint

To start the wizard for inventorying SharePoint servers, click the *Complete Network* or *Share Point* button. After you have selected a company and a domain or entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)) the *SharePoint* step is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Inventory SharePoint Server' configuration window. On the left, a sidebar contains 'Company Selection', 'Authentication', 'SharePoint' (highlighted), and 'Summary'. The main area is titled 'Inventory SharePoint Server' and contains a table of servers. Below the table is a form to 'Add SharePoint Server'.

SharePoint Server			
Name	Security	Info	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> smsp0001.docusnap.intern	Special Credential...		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> smossdev01	Global Credentials...		

Below the table, the 'Add SharePoint Server' form includes:

- SharePoint:
- User:
- Server Authentication
- Password:
- Limit Job History
- Number of Entries:

Buttons for 'New', 'Delete', 'Save', 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' are visible.

There are two ways to scan SharePoint servers: Either you use global credentials for login. In this case, only the name of the SharePoint server is required for the scanning process. Or you log in using specific credentials. For this purpose, you need to enable the *Server Authentication* checkbox. This allows you to enter the user and password information. Along with a scan of the SharePoint servers, it is possible to retrieve the job history. If you tick the *Limit Job history* checkbox, only the most recent entries will be retrieved. You can specify the number of entries to be saved in the *Number of Entries* field.

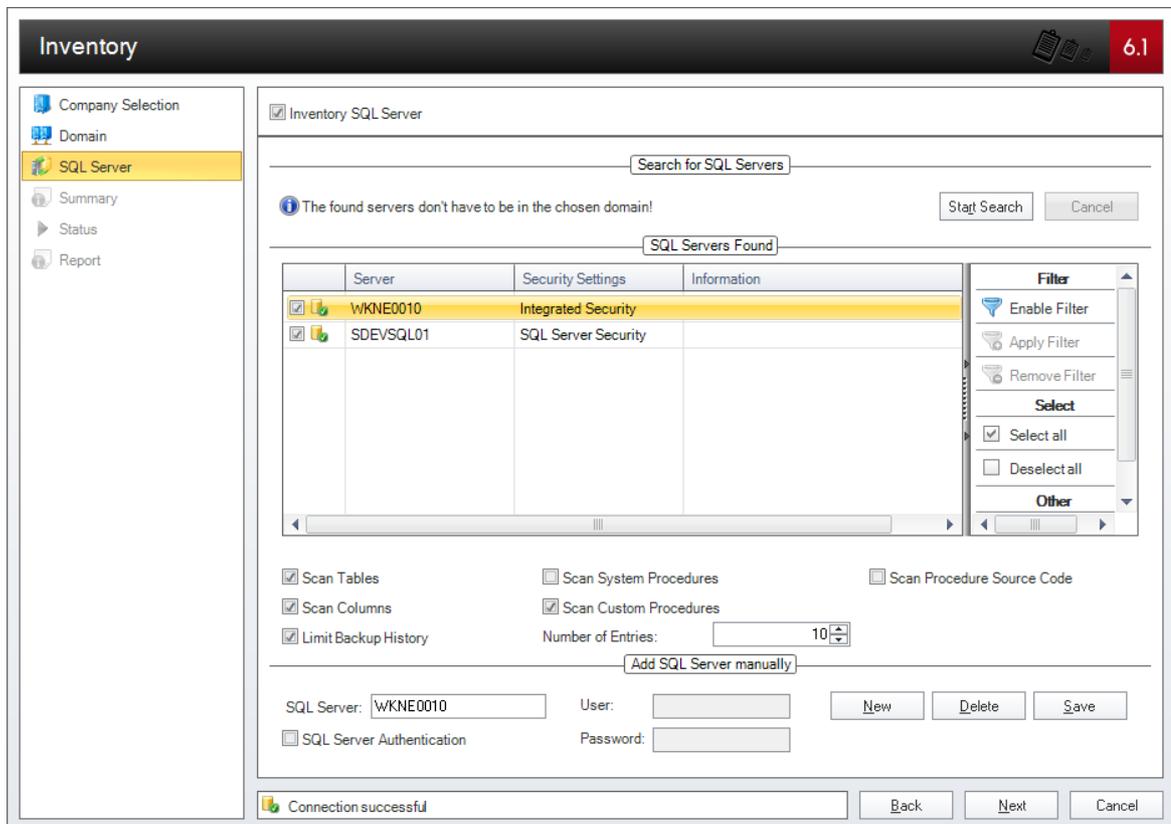
After adding the desired systems to the *SharePoint Server* table, you can use the checkbox next to each system to specify whether it is to be included in the inventory scan or not. The *Next* button will only be enabled once you have specified a SharePoint server. Then, you can continue with the inventory process.

An inventory of the SharePoint servers forms the basis for a subsequent analysis of the SharePoint permissions (see: [Permission Analysis](#)).

3.1.12 SQL Server

To start the wizard for inventorying your SQL servers, click the *Complete Network*

or *SQL Server* button on the *Inventory* ribbon. The *SQL Server* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).



There are two ways to identify SQL servers:

Searching for SQL Servers Automatically

When you click the *Start Search* button, Docusnap will attempt to identify the SQL servers in your network. If SQL servers have been found, they will be listed in the *SQL Servers Found* table.

Entering an SQL Server Manually

In addition to an automatic search for SQL servers, you can specify a single SQL server in Docusnap manually. In the *Add SQL Server Manually* group, click the *New* button and specify the system to be scanned subsequently.

The following icons indicate the access rights to an SQL server:

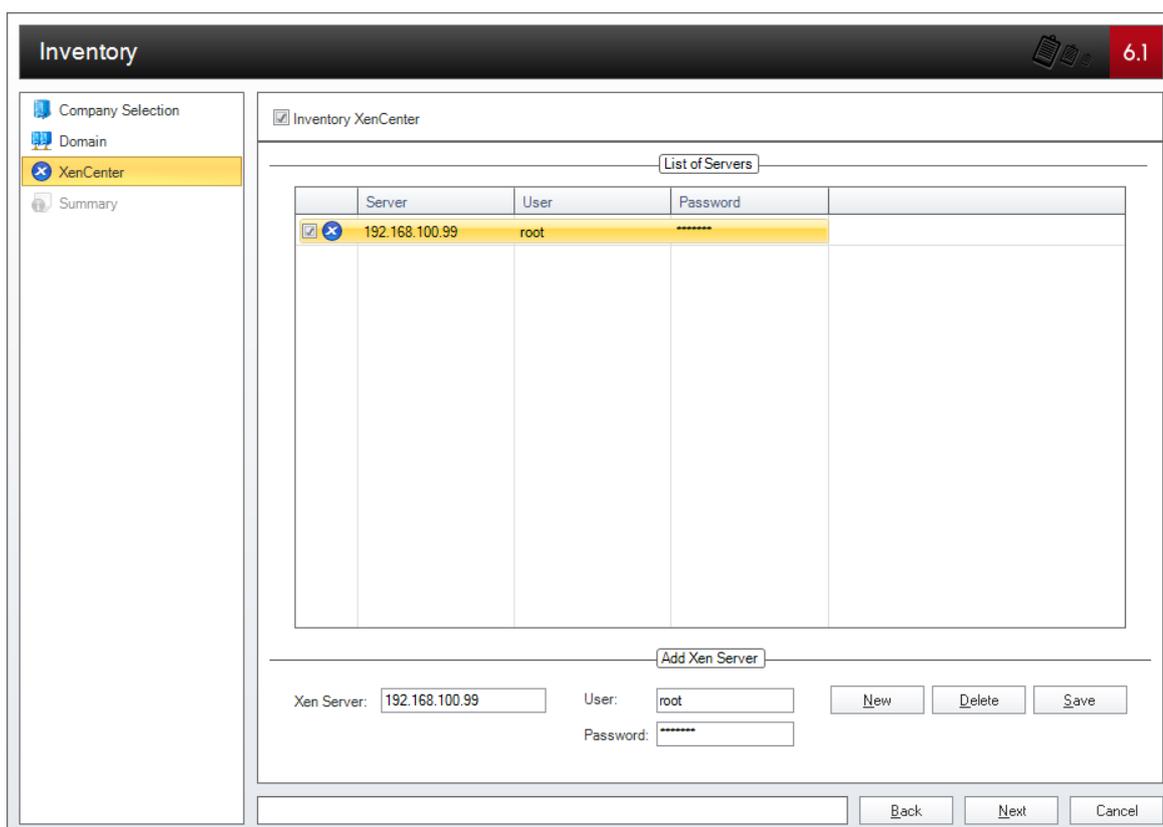
-  The SQL server can be scanned.
-  The server can only be scanned to a limited extent. In order to completely scan the server, you need to enter valid SQL authentication data manually.

-  The server cannot be scanned because you do not have the required permissions. In order to scan this server, you need to enter valid SQL authentication data manually.

Using the *Scan Tables* and *Scan Columns* checkboxes, you can specify the scope of the inventory scan. To determine the procedures to be scanned, you can use the *Scan Custom Procedures* and *Scan System Procedures* checkboxes. Using the *Scan Procedure Source Code* checkbox, you can specify whether the procedure source code will be scanned as well. During the scan of the SQL servers, the backup history is retrieved. If you tick the *Limit Backup History* checkbox, only the most recent entries will be retrieved. You can specify the number of entries to be saved in the *Number of Entries* field.

3.1.13 XenCenter

To start the wizard for inventorying Xen servers, click the *Complete Network* or *XenCenter* button on the Inventory ribbon. After you have selected select a company and a domain or entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)) the *XenCenter* step is displayed.



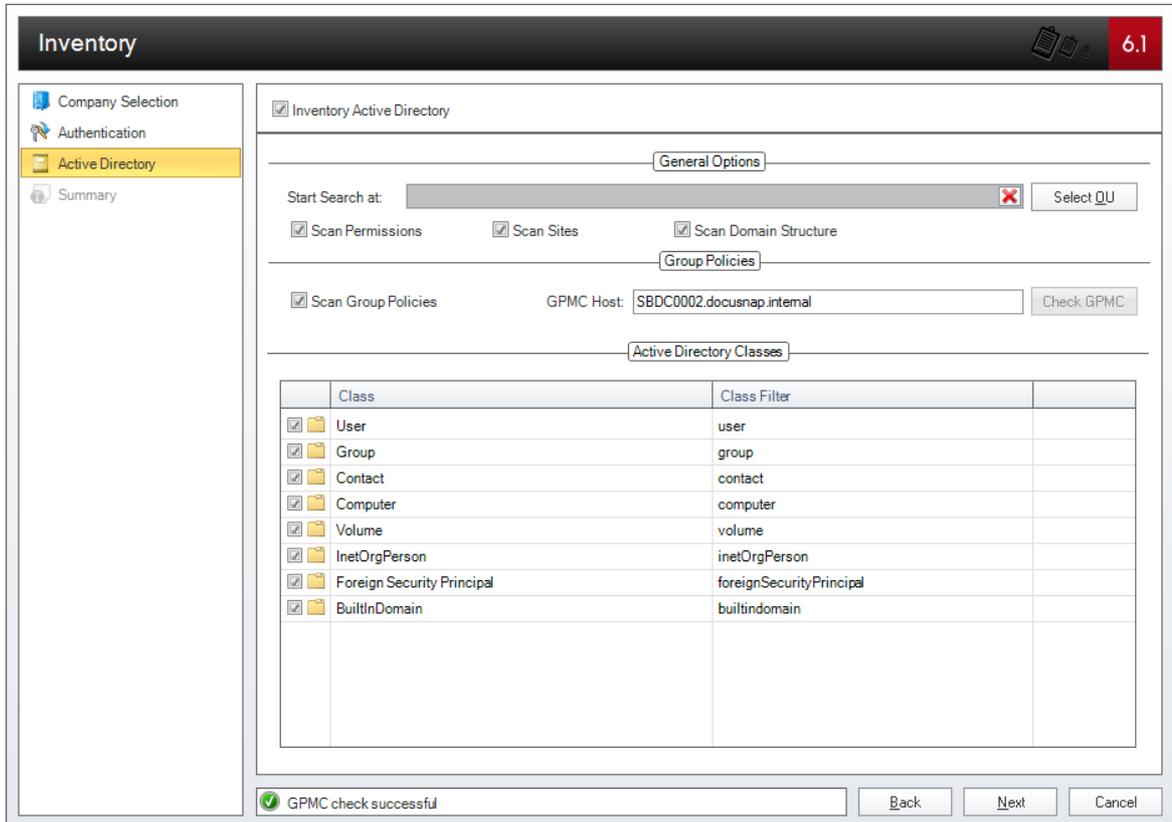
Server	User	Password
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.100.99	root	*****

Xen Server: User: Password:

Click the *New* button in the *Add Xen Server* area to specify the Xen server. The *Xen Server* text box accepts the name or the IP address of the Xen server.

3.1.14 Active Directory

To start the the wizard for inventorying the Active Directory service, either click the *Complete Network* button or the *Active Directory* button. The *Active Directory* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).



Using the *Start Search at* filter criterion, you can restrict the AD scan to a specific organizational unit. Click the *Select OU* button to open a dialog where you can select the desired organizational unit. If you do not enter a filter criterion, Docusnap will inventory the entire Active Directory system. By enabling the *Scan Permissions* checkbox, you can specify to scan the permissions for an Active Directory object as well.

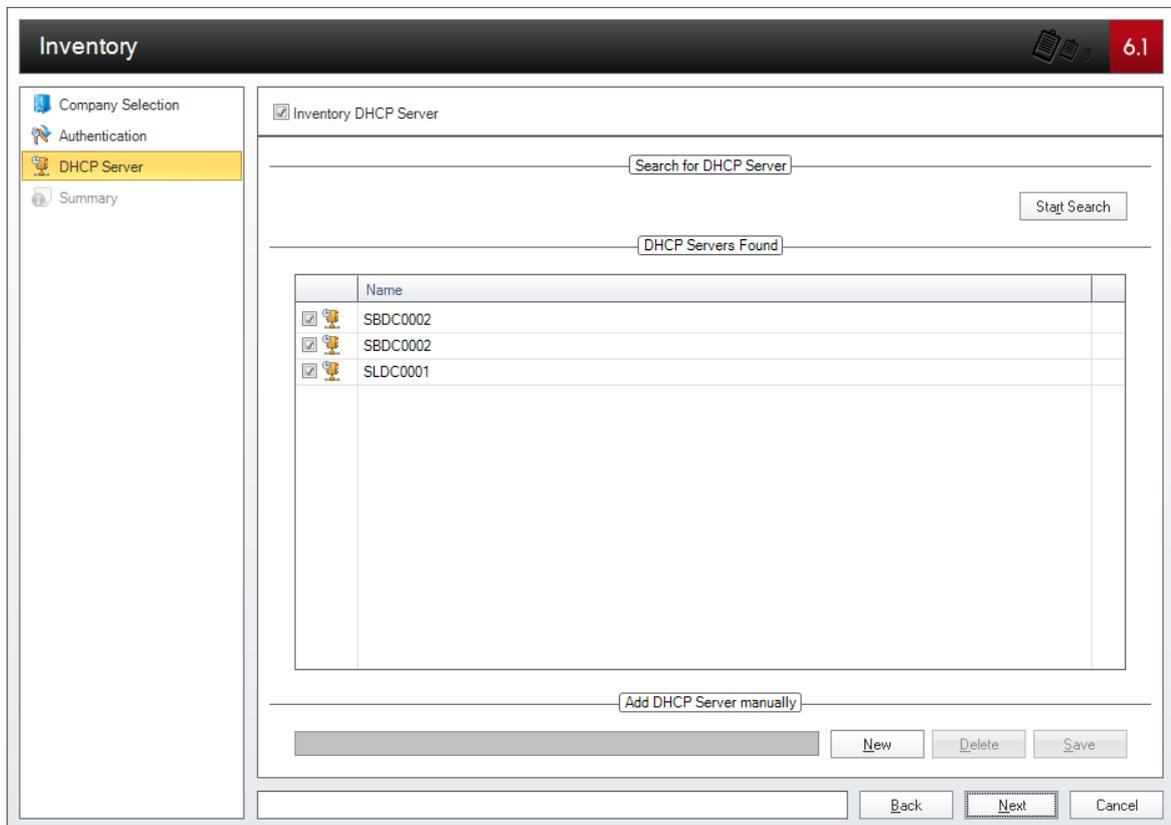
In addition, you can retrieve group policies. They will then be displayed with the corresponding organizational units or domain. To scan the information for group policy objects, you need to specify the computer where the Group Policy Manager Console (GPMC) is installed. It does not matter whether the GPMC is available on the local system or on a remote system.

In the *Active Directory Classes* group, you can select the Active Directory classes to be included in the scan.



3.1.15 DHCP Server

To start the wizard for inventorying your DHCP servers, click the *Complete Network* or *DHCP Server* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *DHCP Server* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and entered your credentials.



There are two ways to identify DHCP servers:

Searching for DHCP Servers Automatically

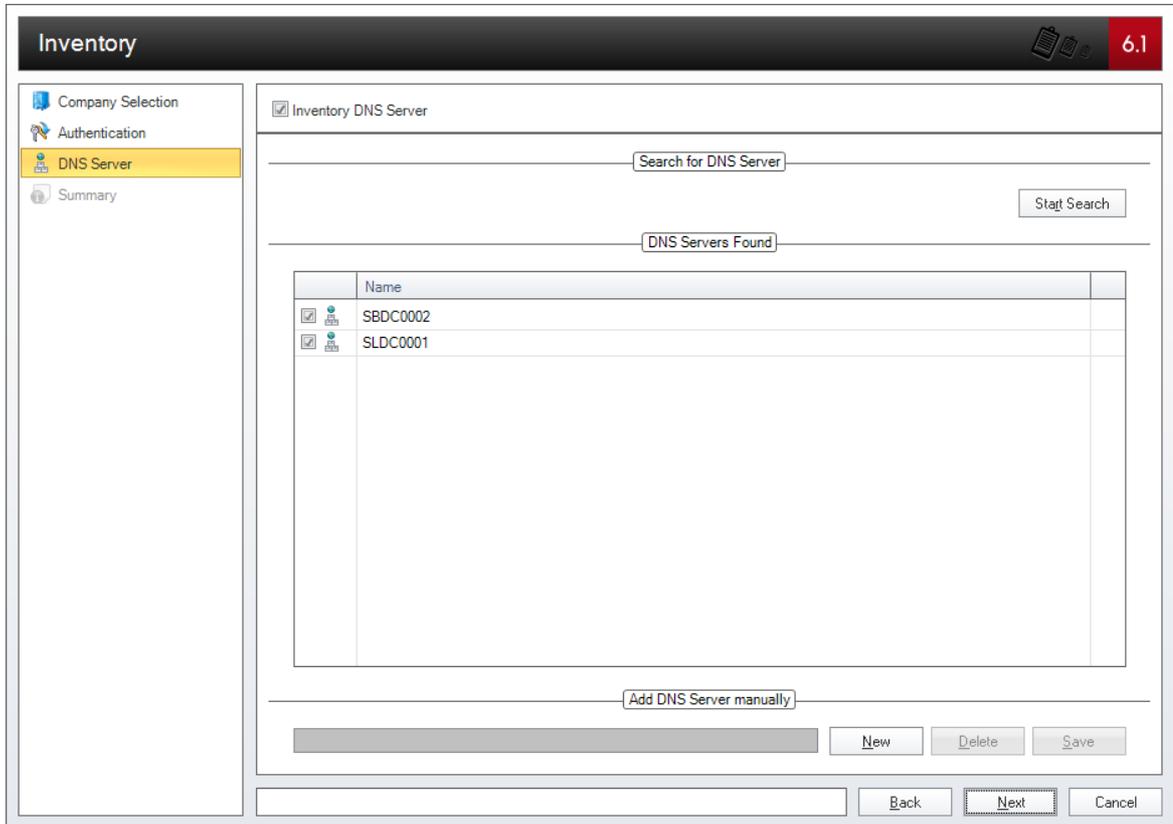
When you click the *Start Search* button, Docusnap will attempt to identify the DHCP servers in your network. If DHCP servers could be determined, they will be listed in the *DHCP Servers Found* list.

Entering a DHCP Server Manually

In addition to performing an automatic search for DHCP servers, you can specify a single DHCP server in Docusnap manually. Click the *New* button in the *Add DHCP Server Manually* group of the wizard to specify the system to be scanned subsequently.

3.1.16 DNS Server

To start the wizard for inventorying your DNS servers, click the *Complete Network* or *DNS Server* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *DNS Server* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and entered your credentials.



There are two ways to identify DNS servers:

Searching for DNS Servers Automatically

When you click the *Start Search* button, Docusnap will attempt to identify the DNS servers in your network. If DNS servers have been determined, they will be listed in the *DNS Servers Found* list.

Entering DNS Servers Manually

In addition to performing an automatic search for DNS servers, you can specify a single DNS server in Docusnap manually. Click the *New* button in the *Add DNS Server Manually* group of the wizard to specify the system to be scanned subsequently.

3.2 Scripting



Windows Systems

Docusnap provides the *DocusnapScript.exe* executable as an alternative method to scan Windows systems. For example, in a company which employs field staff, the chances of a successful inventory with Docusnap are minimal. In this situation, the *DocusnapScript.exe* file may prove helpful: Next time the corresponding user logs on to the domain, *DocusnapScript.exe* will be executed using the login script.

Import Scripts

Using the wizard for importing script files, you can import files that have been created by executing the *DocusnapScript.exe*.

Exchange Systems

To inventory Exchange servers, you can use the separate *DocusnapExchange.exe* script as an alternative to scanning them with Docusnap. The retrieved data can subsequently be imported into Docusnap.

3.2.1 Windows

After a Windows system has been scanned, *DocusnapScript.exe* will generate an XML file that contains all collected data. You can later import this XML file manually to Docusnap or have it imported by the Docusnap Server automatically.

During the installation of Docusnap, *DocusnapScript.exe* will be stored in the *Tools* folder of the application directory. To execute *DocusnapScript.exe*, no additional files are required.

Parameters:

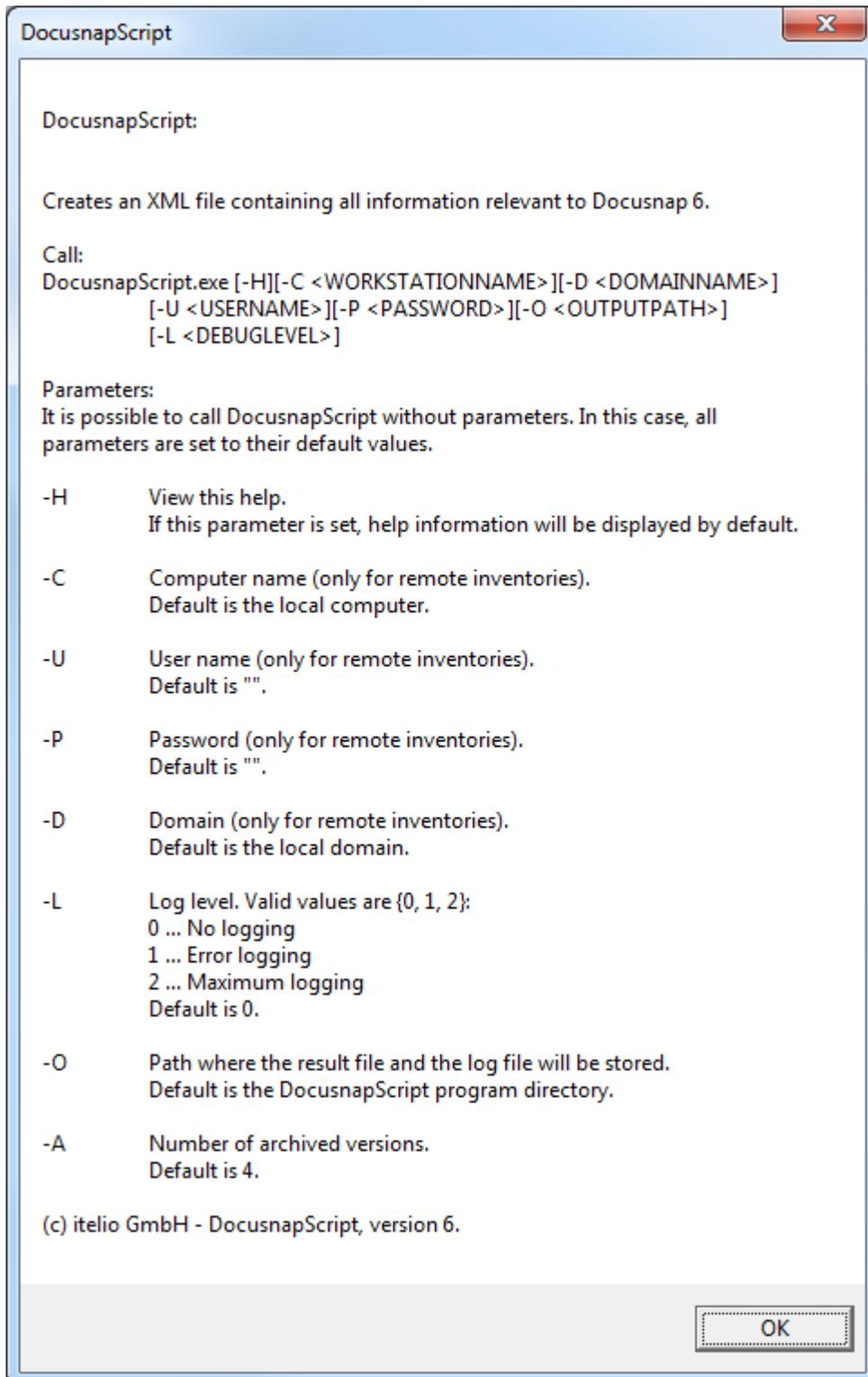
- **C:** Sets the name of the workstation.
- **D:** Sets the name of the domain where the system to be scanned is located.

- **H:** Opens the help screen.
- **L:** Sets the debug level to be used during the inventory scan.

The following debug levels are available:

- 1:** Errors and function calls will be logged.
 - 2:** The entire program flow will be logged.
- **O:** Sets the path where to generate the XML file. If the process creates a log file, it will be stored in this path.





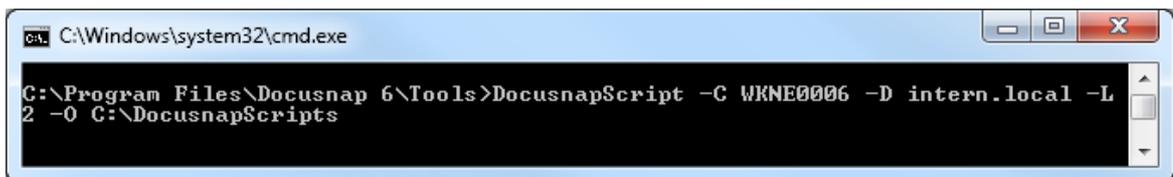
Examples:

If you run the script on the system you want to inventory, no additional parameters are required. You can specify the location of the XML file using the -O parameter.



```
C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Program Files\Docusnap 6\Tools>DocusnapScript -O C:\DocusnapScripts
```

If you intend to use the script for an inventory scan of a remote system, you can specify the system to be scanned using the **-C** and **-D** parameters.



```
C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Program Files\Docusnap 6\Tools>DocusnapScript -C WKNE006 -D intern.local -L 2 -O C:\DocusnapScripts
```

This command will scan the **WKNE006** workstation in the **intern.local** domain using debug level **2**. The XML file will be stored in the **C:\DocusnapScripts** directory.

Software Search

The Docusnap [Software Search](#) feature enables you to inventory software products that cannot be scanned through the Windows inventory process. You can include a Software Search command in the Docusnap script. To use the Software Search feature, you need to create an XML software list manually.

The XML file must have the following structure:

```
<SoftwareItem>
<SoftwareName>My New Software 1</SoftwareName>
<SoftwarePublisher>Microsoft</SoftwarePublisher> <!-- optional-->
<SoftwareVersion>1.0 Beta</SoftwareVersion> <!-- optional-->
<FileName>notepad.exe</FileName>
<SearchPath>C:\Windows</SearchPath>
<FileSize>193536</FileSize> <!-- optional byte-->
</SoftwareItem>
```

Make sure to specify the filename correctly or use a wildcard character (?,*).

```
<SoftwareItem>
<SoftwareName>My New Software 1</SoftwareName>
<SoftwarePublisher /> <!-- optional-->
<SoftwareVersion /> <!-- optional-->
<FileName>notepad.exe</FileName>
<SearchPath>C:\Windows</SearchPath>
<FileSize /> <!-- optional byte-->
</SoftwareItem>
```

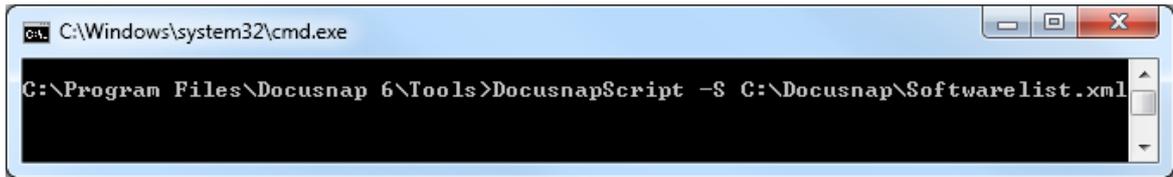
If one of the optional parameters is not specified, use the notation shown in the example to the left (<SoftwarePublisher />).

If you specify a wrong file size, the desired software will not be scanned!

To use the software list in the DocusnapScript, use the following command:

DocusnapScript.exe -S <path\><filename.xml>



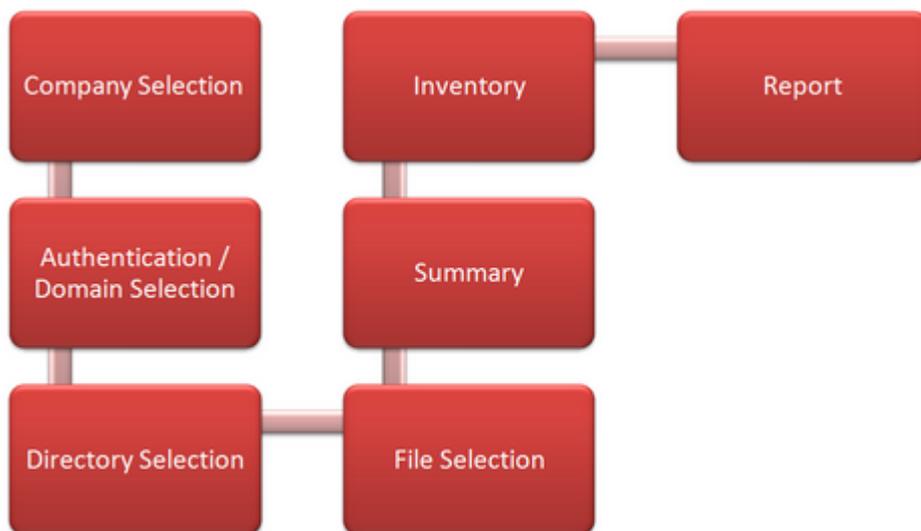


```
C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Program Files\Docusnap 6\Tools>DocusnapScript -S C:\Docusnap\SoftwareList.xml
```

If a defined software product is found during the execution of the script, its data will be stored in the results XML file. When you import the XML file into Docusnap, this data will be imported as well.

3.2.2 Import Scripts

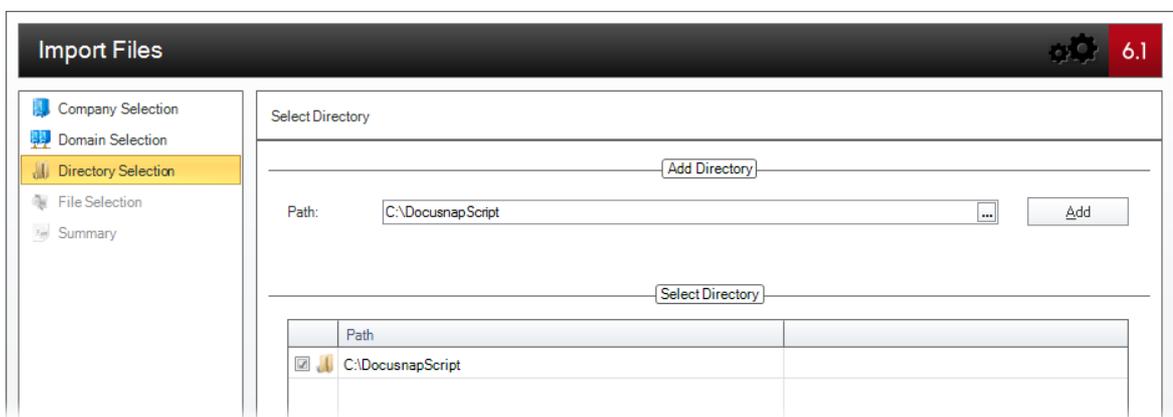
Using the wizard for importing script files, you can import files that have been created by executing the DocusnapScript.exe.



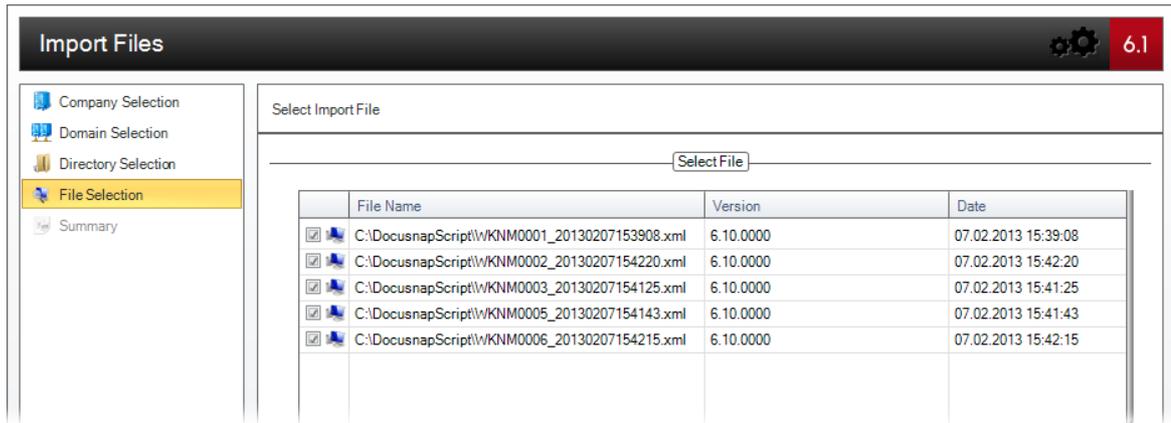
Click the *Import* button on the Inventory ribbon to open the *Import Files* wizard. The *Directory Selection* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain (see: [Basic Steps](#)).

To import xml files, two steps are necessary in the Docusnap *Import Files* wizard:

- In the *Directory Selection* step, define the location for storing the XML files.



- In the *File Selection* step, select the files to be imported.

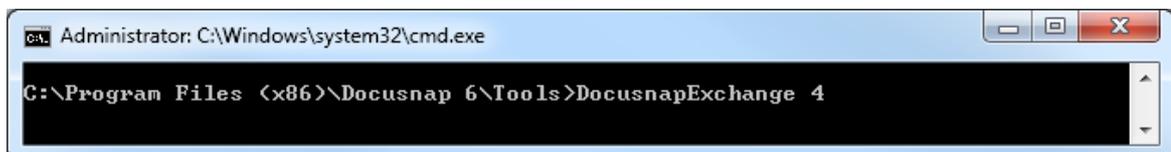


3.2.3 Exchange

DocusnapExchange.exe provides three ways to inventory an Exchange server. Always run the script on the very system that you want to scan. During the installation of Docusnap, the *DocusnapExchange.exe* script is stored in the *Tools* folder of the application directory.

- Local:

The *DocusnapExchange.exe* script can be executed either by double-clicking its name or entering its name in the command line. When using the command line, you can additionally specify the number of threads to be used. When the inventory is done, an XML file is created in the folder where the *DocusnapExchange.exe* file is located. This XML file contains all retrieved data.



- Default:

The second option allows you to select the information to be retrieved. To do so, specify 'true' or 'false' for the following arguments:

Argument 1 = Retrieve permissions for mailboxes

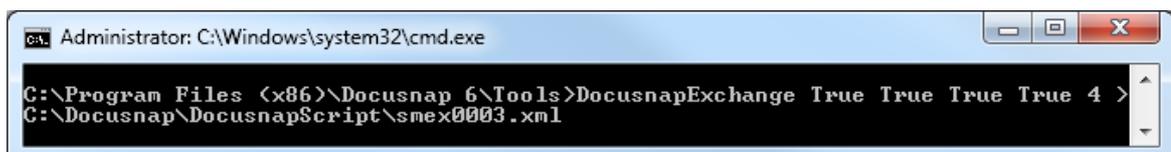
Argument 2 = Scan mailbox folders

Argument 3 = Retrieve permissions for public folders

Argument 4 = Retrieve special permissions for mailboxes

Argument 5 = Number of threads

It is recommended to write the results to a file.



- Legacy:

For the last option, you need to additionally specify the server name and the



Exchange version as the first and second arguments. This option already existed in previous Docusnap versions and has been retained for users who integrated this option into their processes.

Argument 1 = Exchange server name

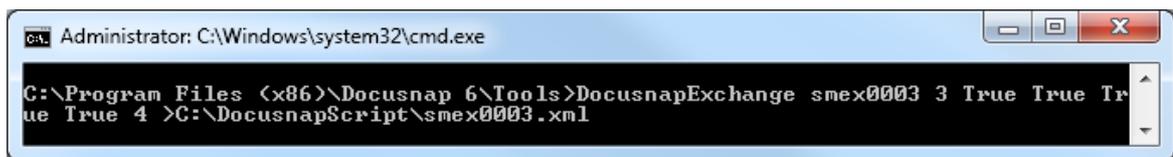
Argument 2 = Exchange version

Argument 3 = Retrieve permissions for mailboxes

Argument 4 = Scan mailbox folders

Argument 5 = Retrieve permissions for public folders

Argument 6 = Retrieve special permissions for mailboxes



```
Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Program Files (x86)\Docusnap 6\Tools>DocusnapExchange smex0003 3 True True True True 4 >C:\DocusnapScript\smex0003.xml
```



The Default option yields the same result as Legacy, but without requiring additional information on the server name or Exchange version. Therefore, it is recommended to use the Local or the Default option.

The files created here can then be imported during the [Exchange inventory](#) process.

3.3 Manual Entries

You can enter additional information into data entry screens to add them to the database. This may include information about the company, additional systems, equipment, etc.

For all editable objects displayed in the tree view, data entry screens have been predefined which allow quick and easy editing of all available data directly from the Docusnap tree view. The data entry screens are part of the user interface with the database. All data you enter here, will be basically validated and error messages will be generated, if appropriate.

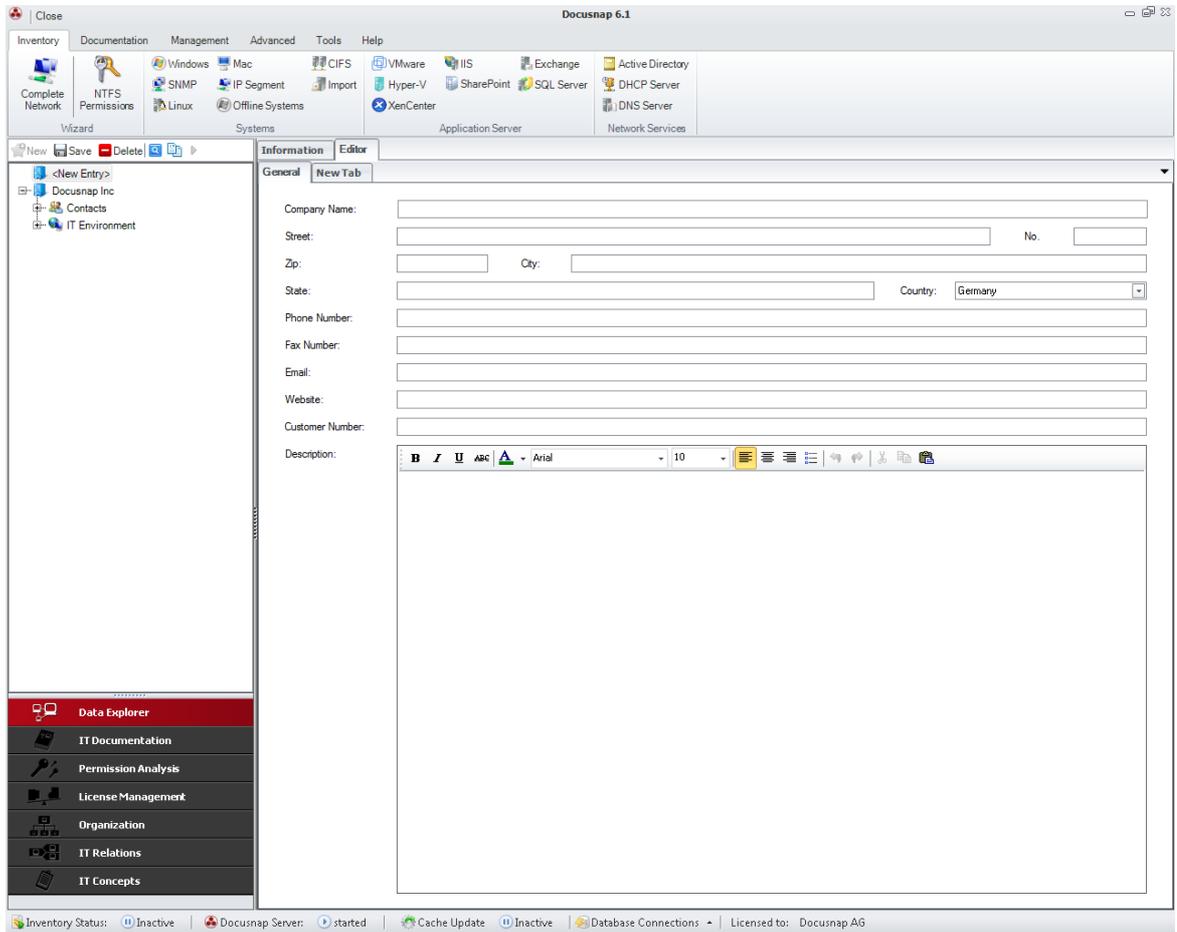
When you select an object in the Explorer, the corresponding data entry screen is displayed on the *Editor* tab, provided the object is *editable*. The data for an editable object will be shown on the data entry screen and can be edited. When you need to create a new entry manually, a blank data entry screen is displayed on the Editor tab where you can enter the required data.



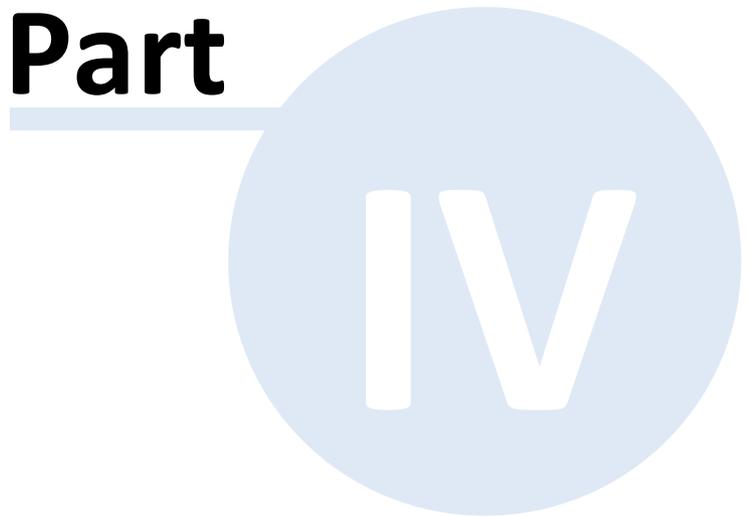
In order to create a new entry, you must select the object at that same level or the object one level above. Clicking the *New* button on the ribbon, opens a list with the objects that can be created at that level. Once you have selected the object type to be created, the associated data entry screen will be displayed. After you have

Inventory

entered all required information, click the *Save* button to save your data. To delete entries that are no longer needed, click the *Delete* button.



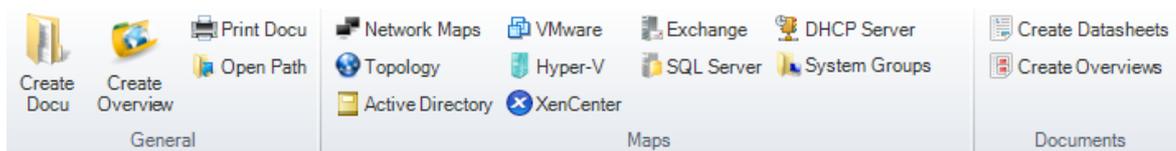
Part



4 Documentation

Data that has been determined by the network scan can be exported to files using the Documentation feature.

Using the ribbon of the same name, you can create maps of your network as well as of the Active Directory, etc. These maps can be opened in Visio.



General

Use the options in this group to set the folder structure and to format the documentation to be created.

Creating Documentation

To create the documentation, various wizards are available.

IT Documentation View

Docusnap has a specific IT Documentation module which allows you to manage the documentation you create.

Printing Documentation

Datasheets and overviews can be printed using the Print Documentation wizard.

4.1 General

The files created in the Documentation module will be stored on the hard disk. For this, you need to select a custom directory as the location for storing the documents.

The Docusnap Server can be used to set a particular date and time for the automatic creation of the documentation.

The documentation can be created in English or in German. Even if English is selected as your the interface language, it is possible to create documentation in German.

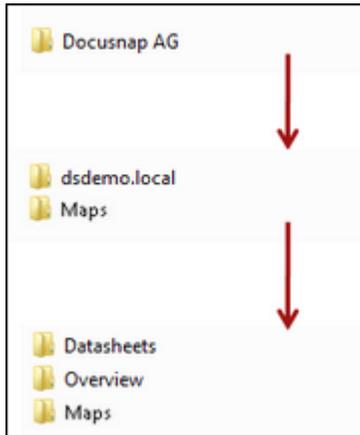
Folder Structure

The folder where the documents will be saved must be selected when getting started with Docusnap. This path is specified on the Documentation page of the [Options](#) dialog and can be changed later.

A folder hierarchy for storing the files will be created in the selected directory

during the creation of the documents. At the top level, you will find a folder with the name of the company. Under this folder, a folder with the name of the domain will be created. The *Maps* folder contains maps with values from multiple domains.

Below the domain folder, Docusnap creates the *Datasheets*, *Overview* and *Maps* folders, respectively, when the associated documents are generated. Each Datasheet contain information about a single system and will be stored in a subfolder under the Datasheets folder that is named after the corresponding system.



To open the folder which reflects the folder hierarchy for the documents, click the *Open Path* button in the ribbon. The new IT Documentation module displays each generated map, overview or datasheet at its intended position in the IT Documentation explorer.

Format Settings

The design of the documents and maps you create is influenced by two factors.

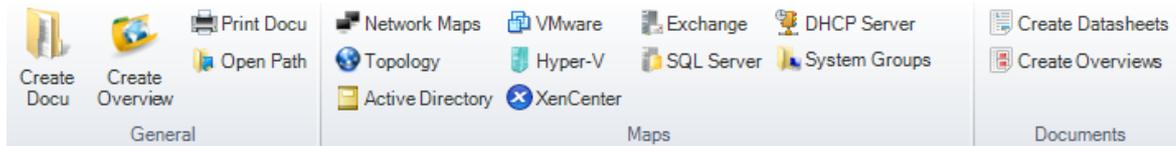
To format maps, go to the Documentation page of the [Options](#) dialog. Here, you can specify the font to be used in maps. The color is determined through the design selected in the *Designs* dialog.

Datasheets and overviews are based on reports. For this reason, the format settings for the datasheets and overviews follow the format settings for the reports. To select the design for your reports, use the *Designs* dialog. If you want to open and edit report in the Report Designer, go to the *Manage Reports* dialog.

The report names for datasheets start with "Datasheet", followed by "Linux", "Mac", "Server", "SNMP" or "Workstation" and the reports for the overview have a "OV_" prefix, followed by "Computerlist", "Grouplist", "Softwarelist" and "Userlist". In the *Manage Reports* dialog, you can select whether to display the entries in English or in German.

4.2 Creation of Documentation

By selecting the *Documentation* group on the ribbon, you can display the buttons required to document your IT environment.



General

In this group, all basic wizard steps for creating documentation are available.

Maps

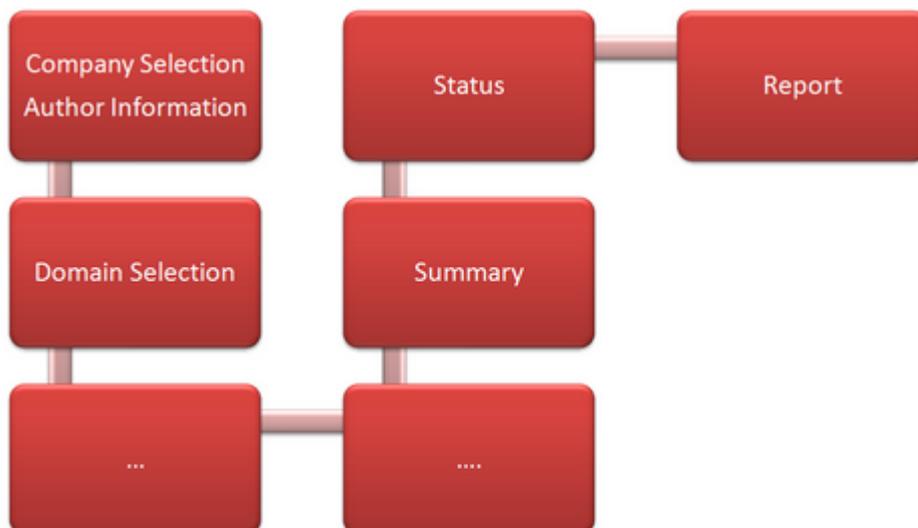
You can create Visio maps of your network, Active Directory, Exchange servers, etc. Visio maps cannot be created using the Docusnap Server.

Documents

The buttons in this group can be used to create datasheets and overviews.

4.2.1 Basic Steps

A wizard-based user interface helps you with creating the documentation. The wizard consists of a series of individual steps which vary depending on the type of document you selected. The following figure illustrates the basic steps used by each of the documentation wizards.



Company selection

Domain Selection

[Summary](#)

[Status](#)

[Report](#)

4.2.1.1 **Company Selection**

A documentation will always be created for the data of a specific company. Therefore, you need to select the company here. The drop-down list lets you select one of the existing companies.

The documentation path has been specified in the [Options](#) dialog. The documents will be stored in this path. The Alternative Documentation Path option allows you to select a different path for the current documentation. This path will be used exclusively for the documents created by running this wizard. This setting does not change the documentation path you have set in the Options dialog. If you want the documents to be created at a later time by using the Scheduler and the documentation path has been changed, make sure that the path exists on the executing system and that the Docusnap Server has the necessary permissions.

The documentation can be created in English or in German. You can even create a German documentation if the Docusnap user interface has been set to English.

If desired, you can set the names of the company and of the author to appear on the document. The same or a different company can be selected as the authoring company. After you have selected a company, the table displays the names of all persons who were created as contacts in this company. Enabling the checkbox for a contact sets the name of this contact person as author in the document.



The screenshot shows the 'Documentation' wizard at the 'Company Selection' step. The sidebar on the left contains the following options: Company Selection (highlighted), Domain Selection, Network Maps, Network Topology, Datasheets, Active Directory, DHCP Server, Exchange, SQL Server, VMware Infrastructure, Hyper-V, XenCenter, Overviews, Summary, Status, and Report.

The main area is titled 'Company Selection' and contains the following fields and options:

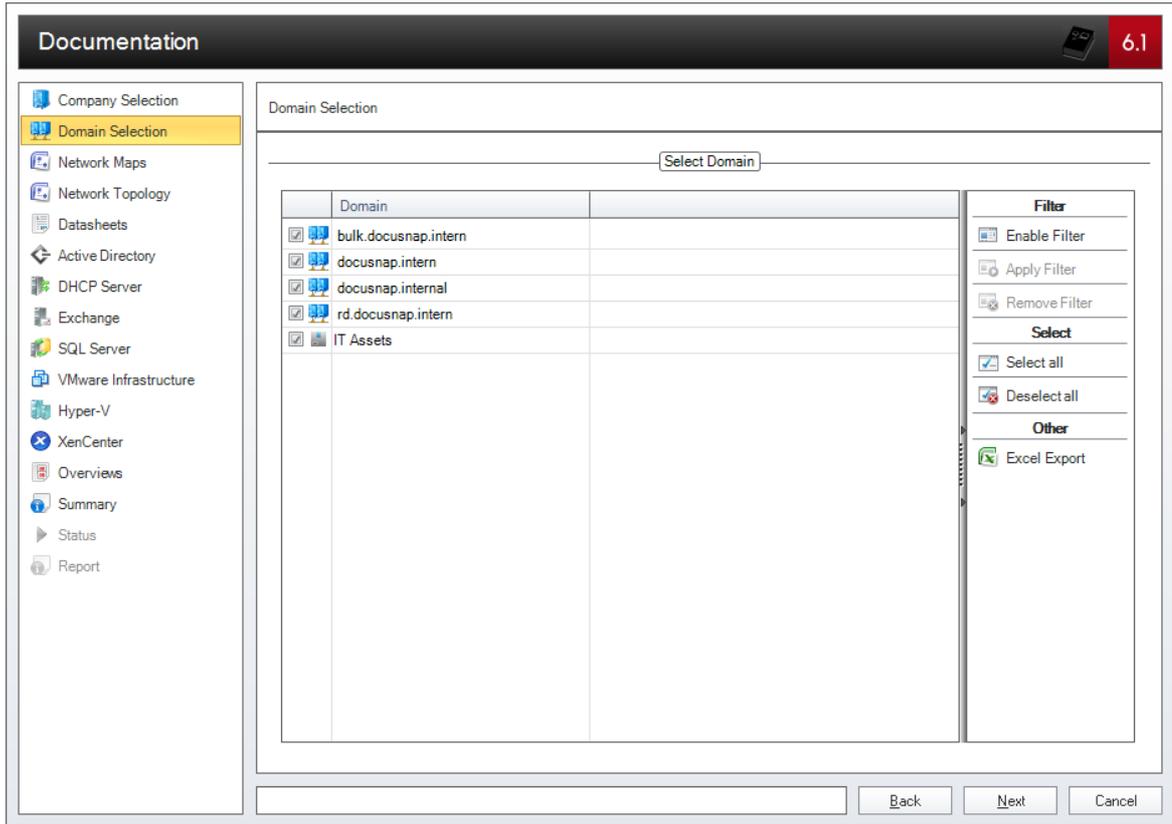
- Select Company:** A dropdown menu with 'Docusnap Inc' selected.
- Documentation Path:** A text field with 'C:\Documentation' and a browse button (...).
- Language:** A dropdown menu with 'English' selected and a checkbox for 'Just HTML Documentation'.
- Author Information:** A checkbox for 'Include Author Information in Documentation' and a dropdown menu with 'Docusnap Inc' selected.
- Author Table:** A table with columns: Last Name, First Name, Title, Position, Department, Sex. Two rows are visible: Clifton, Matthew (male) and Dubin, Mack (male).

At the bottom, a status bar shows a green checkmark and the text 'A company is selected.' with 'Next' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4.2.1.2 Domain Selection

In the next step, you will select the domain to be documented. Multiple or all domains can be selected as required.

In addition it is defined, whether IT assets should be included in maps.



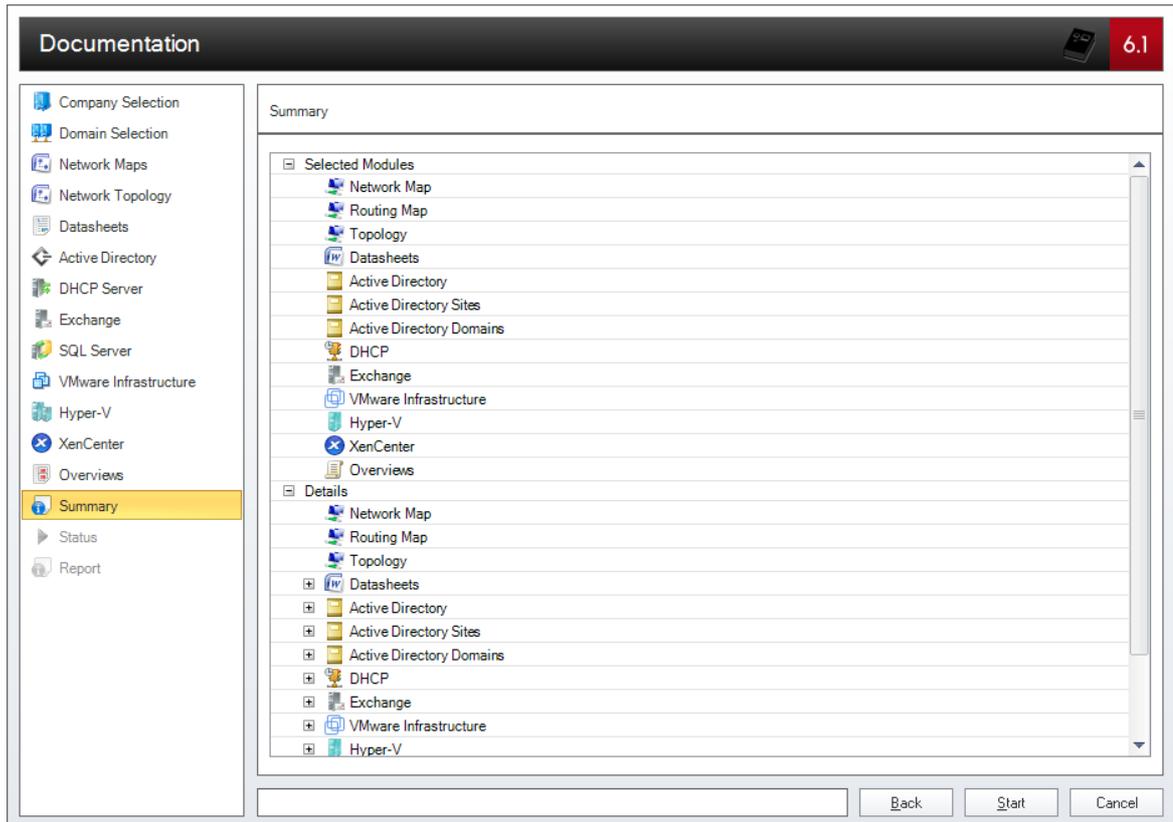
4.2.1.3 Summary Page

The Summary page shows an overview of the settings you specified in the individual steps of the wizard.

Clicking the *Start* button launches the documentation creation.

For each step, you can specify to create the respective document or not. For example, if you do not need to create network maps, you can disable their creation in the *Network Maps* step. With each step, you have the option to skip creation of the current document type. If you have cleared the document creation checkbox of each step in the *Create Docu* wizard, the *Start* button will be disabled on the Summary page when you are done with the wizard. In this case, you must either click *Back* to enable at least one document or exit the wizard by clicking *Cancel*. This is also true if you open a wizard for a single document type and you clear the corresponding checkbox.





4.2.1.4 Status

The Status dialog shows the documentation creation progress. While the system creates the documentation, the navigation pane is disabled. So, if you need to abort this process, you can only click the *Cancel* button.

The actual progress of each task will be displayed by means of progress bars which can take on various states:

- A green progress bar indicates that a task has been performed successfully.
- A red progress bar indicates that an error has occurred during the creation of the respective document.

After creating the documentation, the wizard automatically takes you to the Report page where a final report is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Documentation' application window. The title bar reads 'Documentation' and version '6.1'. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: Company Selection, Domain Selection, Network Maps, Network Topology, Datasheets, Active Directory, DHCP Server, Exchange, SQL Server, VMware Infrastructure, Hyper-V, XenCenter, Overviews, Summary, Status (highlighted), and Report. The main area is titled 'Documentation Status' and contains a table with the following data:

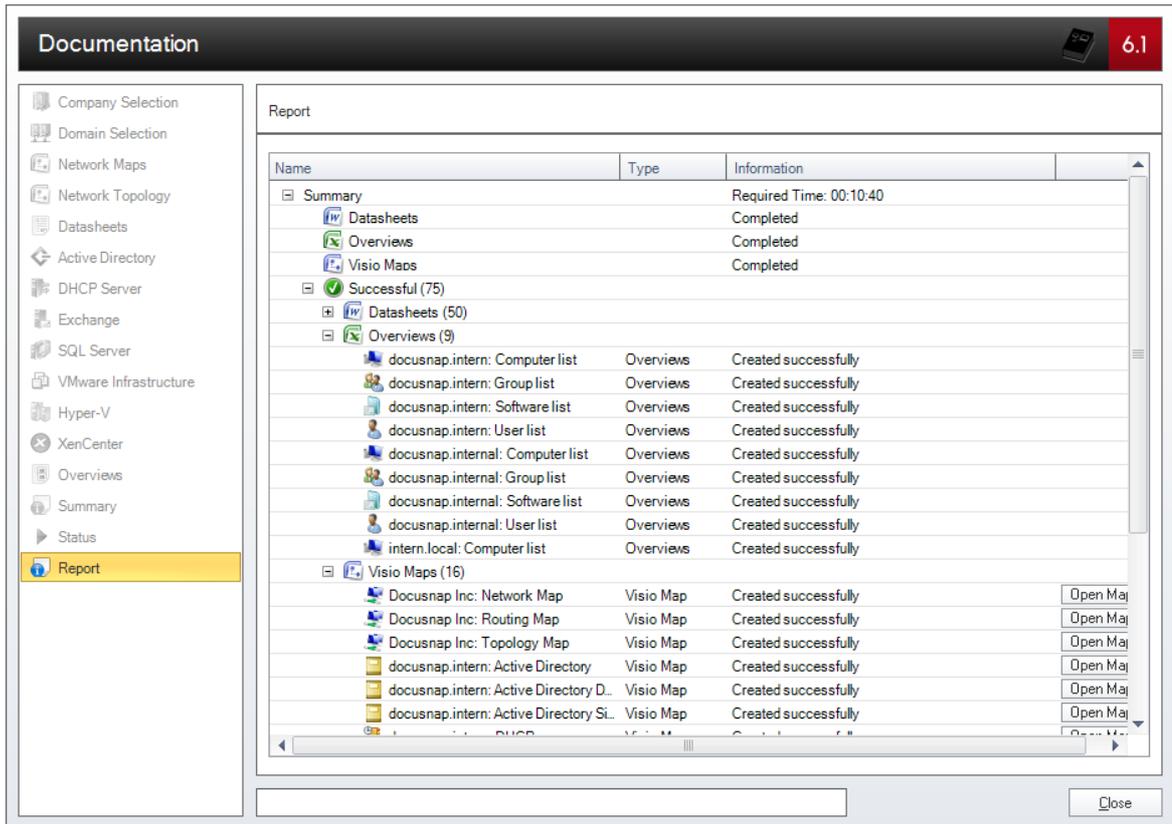
Name	Type	Progress in %	Information
Datasheets	Datasheets	Completed	Completed
Overviews	Overviews	Completed	Completed
Visio Maps	Visio Maps	Executing Process: 41 %	Executing Process: 41 %
Docusnap Inc: Network M...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
Docusnap Inc: Routing M...	Visio Map	Created successfully	Created successfully
Docusnap Inc: Topology...	Visio Map	Drawing objects (Step 51/89)	Drawing objects (Step 51/89)
docusnap.intern: Active Di...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
docusnap.intern: Active Di...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
docusnap.intern: Active...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
docusnap.intern: Active...	Visio Map	Created successfully	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Active...	Visio Map	Created successfully	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: DHCP	Visio Map	Created successfully	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Exchange	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
docusnap.intern: Excha...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
smesx02.docusnap.intern	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
docusnap.intern: Active Di...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
docusnap.intern: DHCP	Visio Map	Created successfully	Created successfully
TEST_DS.docusnap.inter...	Visio Map	Waiting for other processes	Waiting for other processes
SHYPERV02.intern.local	Visio Map	Created successfully	Created successfully

A 'Cancel' button is located at the bottom right of the window.

4.2.1.5 Report Page

The final report shows which documents have been successfully created and which caused errors. The structure of the view reflects the individual documentation steps that were performed successfully or caused errors. Error messages will be shown for the steps that caused errors. If you wish to open the document right after its creation, click the *Open Map* button in the ribbon.





The screenshot shows the 'Documentation' application interface. On the left is a navigation pane with various system categories. The 'Report' window is open, displaying a table of generated documents. The table has columns for Name, Type, and Information. The 'Report' window title bar shows '6.1'.

Name	Type	Information
Summary		Required Time: 00:10:40
Datasheets		Completed
Overviews		Completed
Visio Maps		Completed
Successful (75)		
Datasheets (50)		
Overviews (9)		
docusnap.intern: Computer list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Group list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Software list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: User list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.internal: Computer list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.internal: Group list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.internal: Software list	Overviews	Created successfully
docusnap.internal: User list	Overviews	Created successfully
intern.local: Computer list	Overviews	Created successfully
Visio Maps (16)		
Docusnap Inc: Network Map	Visio Map	Created successfully
Docusnap Inc: Routing Map	Visio Map	Created successfully
Docusnap Inc: Topology Map	Visio Map	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Active Directory	Visio Map	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Active Directory D.	Visio Map	Created successfully
docusnap.intern: Active Directory SI.	Visio Map	Created successfully

4.2.2 Map Files

The documentation you can create in Docusnap includes maps of the network, the Active Directory, the Exchange servers, etc.



To create these maps, Microsoft Visio must be installed. The maps cannot be created using the Docusnap Server.

Network Maps

Topology

Active Directory

Exchange Server

VMware Infrastructure

Hyper-V

SQL Server

DHCP Server

System Groups

4.2.2.1 Network Map

If you select multiple domains in the *Domain Selection* step, the system will create a network map which combines the selected domains in one single map. If you choose to create a routing map along with the network map, it will also include the values from all selected domains. This map will be stored in the Maps folder directly under the folder with the company name.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Maps\network)

(\Documentation Path\Company\Maps\routing)

Docusnap will not create individual maps for the domains, but only one single map which provides an overview of all selected domains. If you select only one domain, then the Visio file and the HTML file will be stored in the Maps folder for the corresponding domain.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\network)

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\routing)

When selecting the domain(s), you can also specify whether to include IT assets in the network map or not. If you enable the *IT Assets* entry, all IT assets where a value of the *Network Information* type has been defined will be displayed for selection.

On this page, you can specify whether to create the network map and/or the routing map.

All systems existing in the selected domains are displayed in the Systems table. To include a system in the network or routing map, tick the corresponding checkbox. Using the filter to the right of the selection list, you can restrict the selection to specific equipment. For more information about filtering, see the [Filters](#) chapter. To include only servers, workstations, Linux systems, etc. into your network map or routing map, click the corresponding icon(s). Clicking each icon a second time will exclude the respective system type again.

You can create datasheets for the individual systems. These datasheets can be linked to the objects in the network map and the routing map. The options under Advanced, which are also available as preferences in the Options dialog, allow you to specify the formats used for datasheet linking, if desired. The links will be created even if that particular datasheet does not exist yet. This way, datasheets created subsequently will also be linked to the systems in the network map and the routing map.

Docusnap also provides Management tools. For example, you can establish a remote desktop connection to a previously found system. The management tools

can also be used with the two map types and the HTML file. For this purpose, a Scripts folder that contains the scripts required for the management tools will be created in the Datasheets folder.

If IT assets with a value of the *Network Information* type have been defined, they will be shown in the list. To include an IT asset in the network map, tick the corresponding checkbox.

The screenshot shows the 'Documentation' software interface. On the left, there is a navigation pane with 'Network Maps' selected. The main area is divided into 'Maps' and 'Systems' sections. In the 'Maps' section, there are checkboxes for 'Create Network Map' and 'Create Routing Map', each with a 'Preview' button. An 'Advanced' dropdown menu is also present. The 'Systems' section contains a table of systems with columns for Name, Type, and Domain. A 'Filter' panel on the right allows for enabling, applying, or removing filters, and selecting or deselecting all items. An 'Excel Export' option is also available.

	Name	Type	Domain
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WBlWS0128	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0032	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0064	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0113	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0199	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0254	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0333	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0610	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WMwS0944	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBEX0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBPS0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLSQ0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLTS0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SMEX0003	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SMII0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SMII0002	Server	docusnap.internal

The preview window reflects the layout of the network map or routing map. You can change the layout, if required. For most network and routing maps, it is recommended to use the default settings. You can adjust both map types individually in the preview:

Network map

If you enable the *Group Workstations* or *Group SNMP Systems* checkbox, the workstations or SNMP equipment will be drawn on the network map as one single object. Two other options allow you to include IP systems and ignore VMware adapters. Details about the individual computers that are present in the network will be displayed on an additional datasheet.

By enabling the *Group IT Assets* checkbox, you can group all IT assets and output them as a single object.

In the HTML view of the map, the various datasheets will be displayed as links in the left pane of the browser. The Visio file and the HTML file will be stored in the

Maps folder.

Network Map
<input type="checkbox"/> Group Workstations
<input type="checkbox"/> Include IP Systems
<input type="checkbox"/> Group SNMP Systems
<input type="checkbox"/> Group IT Assets
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore VMware Adapter

Routing map

The routing map preview provides a checkbox that enables you to ignore the VMware adapters.

Routing Map
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore VMware Adapter

4.2.2.2 Topology

You can create a network topology map either using the *Create Docu* wizard or the *Topology* wizard.

A network topology map shows the interrelations of switches, virtual switches and systems in a network environment. Switches are scanned using an [SNMP systems](#) inventory scan. For virtual switches, you need to perform a [VMware Infrastructure](#) inventory scan.

If you enable the *Show Unknown Structures* checkbox, the ports of switches on which multiple MAC addresses have been learned will be displayed as a cloud.

DocuSnap will generate additional maps for switches and virtual switches that have been selected in the *Systems* table. These maps will show the systems connected to the selected switch.

If multiple domains have been selected when creating the network topology map, it will be stored in the Maps folder below the company.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Maps\topology)

If only a single domain has been selected, the Visio and html files will be stored in the Maps folder of that domain.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\topology)

Documentation 6.1

Create Network Topology Map

Options

Show Unknown Structures Preview

Switch Maps

	Name	Type	Domain	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NetgearGS108T	SNMP	docusnap.intern	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NetgearGS108T(A0-21-B7-95-6F-80)	SNMP	docusnap.intern	

Filter

Enable Filter

Apply Filter

Remove Filter

Select

Select all

Deselect all

Other

Excel Export

Back Next Cancel



4.2.2.3 Active Directory

The Active Directory Tree wizard step presents a choice of three different maps. Use the checkboxes on the left to select the domains and the maps to be created. The generated maps will be added to the directory structure.

Documentation 6.1

Create Active Directory Maps

Active Directory Maps

	Domain	Filter	Preview	OU Map	Overall Map	GPO Map
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	docusnap.intern	<input type="checkbox"/> Filter	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	docusnap.internal	<input type="checkbox"/> Filter	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Active Directory Site Maps

	Domain	Preview	Show Replication	Show Site Transport
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	docusnap.intern	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	docusnap.internal	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Active Directory Domain Maps

	Domain	Preview
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	docusnap.intern	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	docusnap.internal	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>

The preview allows you to check the look and feel of the maps. You can change the map layout, if desired. For most cases, we recommend to use the default settings.

Active Directory Map

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\adstree)

Before creating an Active Directory map, you can click the *Filter* button to open the *Select Organizational Unit* dialog where you can limit the map scope by setting specific filter criteria.

The resulting preview allows you to adjust the Active Directory structure. This means that you can create either an OU map, an overall map or a group policy map. If desired, you can add Active Directory classes to the map or removed them by using the checkboxes next to each Active Directory class.

Active Directory Structure
<input type="radio"/> OU Map
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Overall Map
<input type="radio"/> Group Policy Map

Active Directory Classes
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Select All
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> BuiltInDomain
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Computer
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Contact
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Foreign Security Principal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Group
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Group Policy Container
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> InetOrgPerson
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Volume

Active Directory Site Map

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\adssites)

An Active Directory site map graphically represents the locations of an entire AD structure. It not only displays the site names, but also the domain controllers and subnets associated with each site. Optionally, you can choose to output the site links as routing information.

When creating the Active Directory site map, you can use the preview to specify directly whether you want replications or the site transport to be included in the map.

Active Directory Sites
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show Replication
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show Site Transport

Active Directory Domain Map

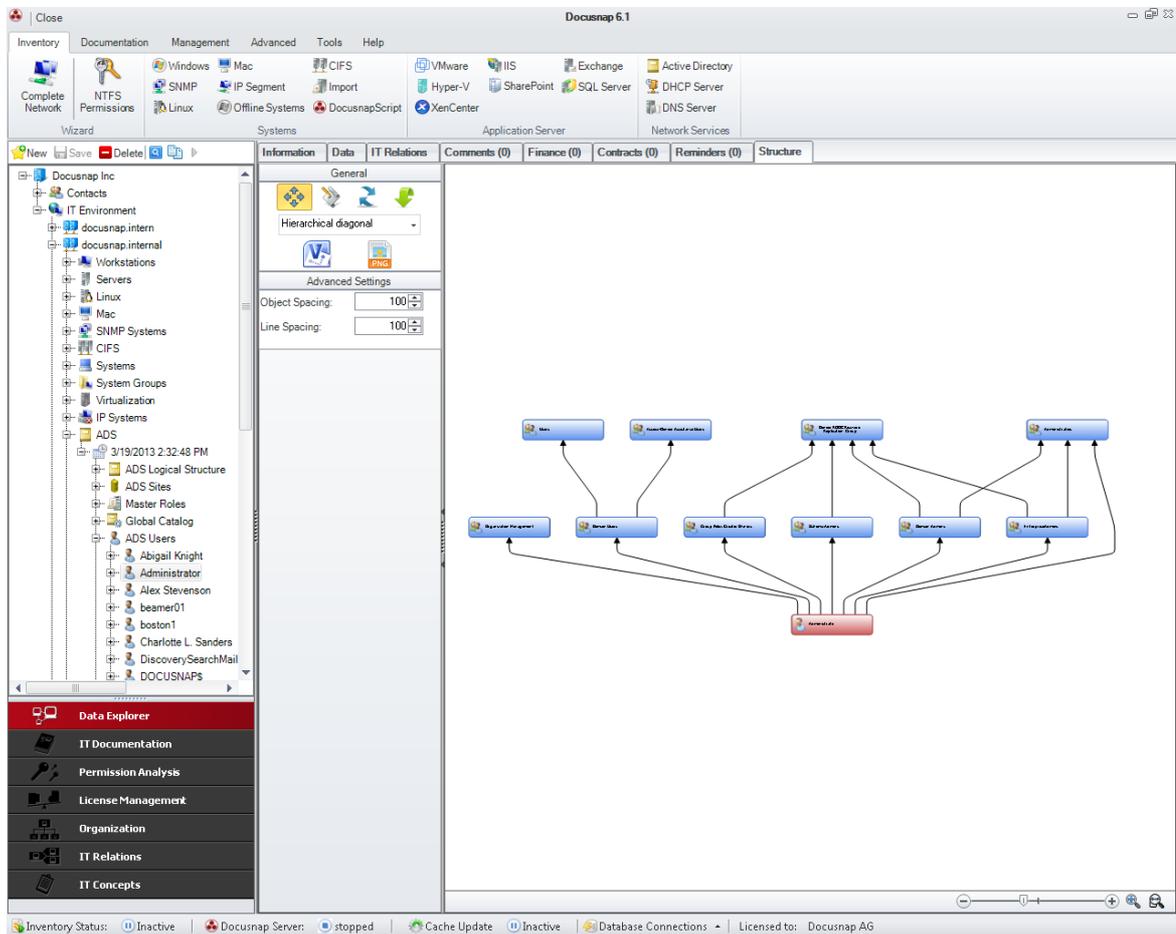
(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\adsdomains)

An Active Directory Domain map graphically represents the domains that exist in a structure. This includes the trust relationships within the overall structure and within other structures. This map also shows the distribution of the operations master roles for the overall structure and the domains.

Active Directory structure of individual groups and users

The Active Directory map displays all groups and users. It is also possible to show only the relationship between a certain ADS user and an ADS group, or all ADS users

belonging to an ADS group. The [Structure](#) tab in the main window displays all associated groups for the selected user or all group members for the selected group. You can export this structure to a Visio map.



4.2.2.4 Exchange Server

Exchange Server maps can be created either from the *Create Docu* wizard or the *Exchange Server* wizard.

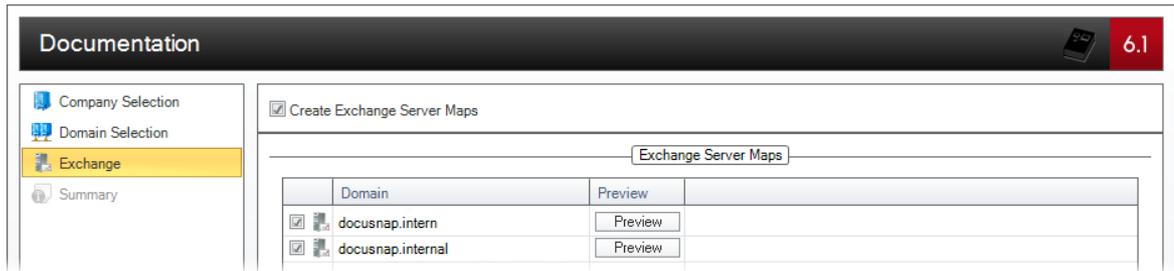
The Visio file and the HTML file will be stored in the Maps folder.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\exchange)

Once you have selected the domains, all Exchange Servers in the domains will be displayed. Each server whose checkbox is enabled will be included in the Exchange Server map.

The preview reflects the layout of the Exchange Server map.





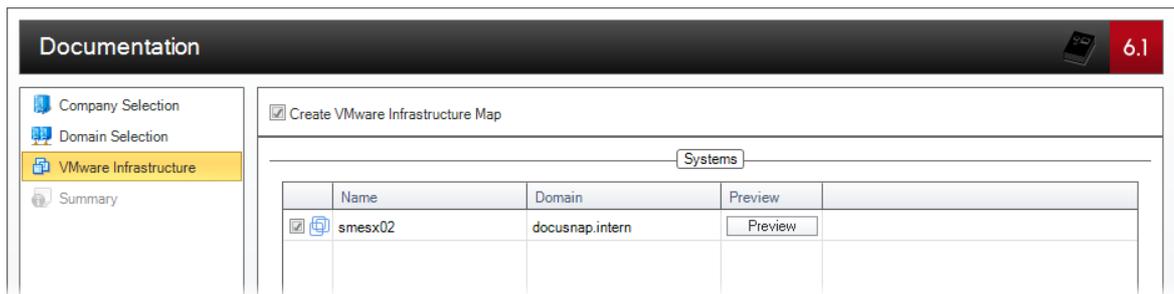
4.2.2.5 VMware Infrastructure

The VMware Infrastructure map can be created either from the *Create Docu* wizard or the *VMware Infrastructure* wizard.

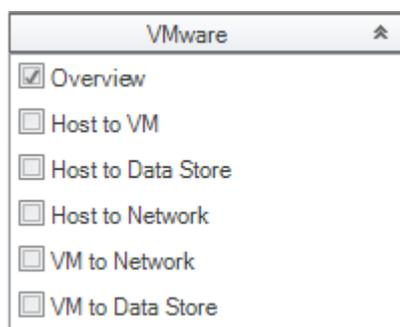
The preview allows you to check the look and feel of the maps. You can change the map layout, if desired. For most cases, we recommend to use the default settings.

The VMware map will be stored in the *VMware* subfolder of the documentation directory.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\VMware\VMware name)



In the generated preview, you can see which maps will be created. The graphics display the interconnections between the various entities existing in a VMware environment. These entities are virtual machines, networks, hosts and data stores. Each map reflects the respective assignments.



4.2.2.6 Hyper-V

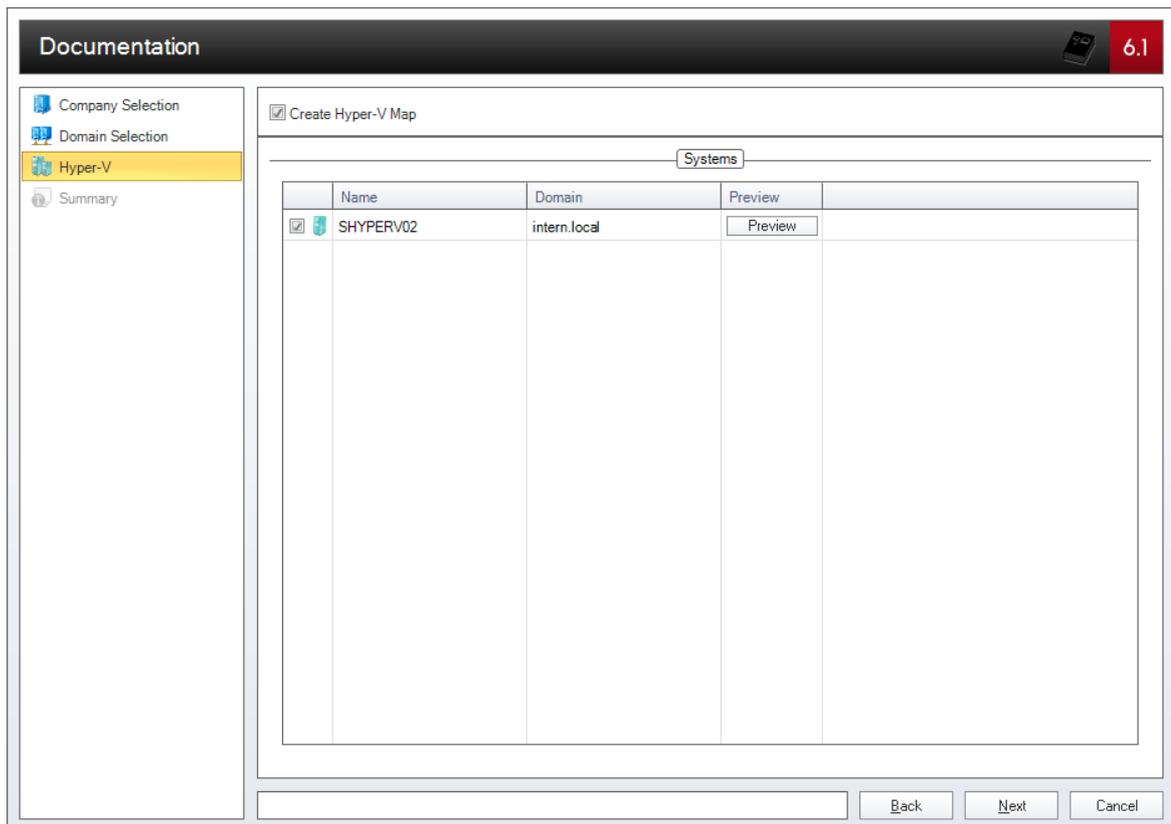
The Hyper-V Server map can be created either from the *Create Docu* wizard or the *Hyper-V* wizard.

Once you have selected the domains, all Hyper-V servers from each domain will be displayed. Each server whose checkbox is enabled will be included in the Hyper-V map.

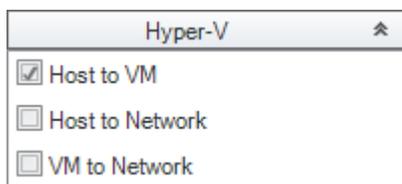
The preview window reflects the layout of the Hyper-V map. You can change the layout, for most Hyper-V maps, however, we recommend to use the default settings.

The Hyper-V map will be stored in the Maps folder of the corresponding domain.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\hyperv\Hyper-V server name)



You can enable/disable the checkboxes in the preview to specify whether the Host to VM, Host to Network or VM to Network relationships will be shown in the map.

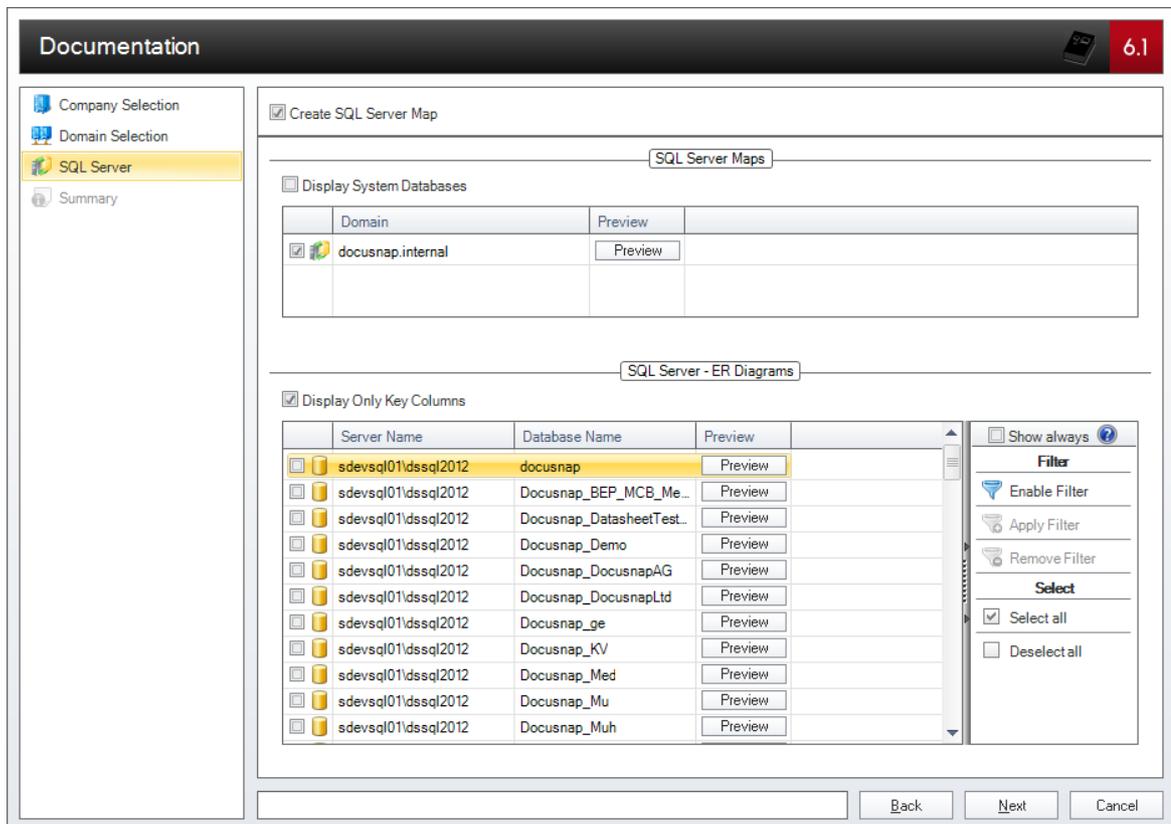


4.2.2.7 SQL Server

The SQL Server map contains all databases that are located on an SQL server. If you enable the *Include System Databases* checkbox, the system tables from the database will also be shown in the map. Databases to excluded from the map can be disabled in the list.

The Visio file and the HTML file will be stored in the Maps folder.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps)



4.2.2.8 DHCP Server

The DHCP Server map can be created either from the *Create Docu* wizard or the *DHCP Server* wizard.

Once you have selected the domains, all DHCP servers from each overall structure will be displayed. Each server whose checkbox is enabled will be included in the DHCP map.

The preview window reflects the layout of the DHCP Server map. You can change the layout, if required. For most DHCP Server maps, however, we recommend to use the default settings.

The DHCP map will be stored in the Maps folder for the corresponding domain.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\dhcp)



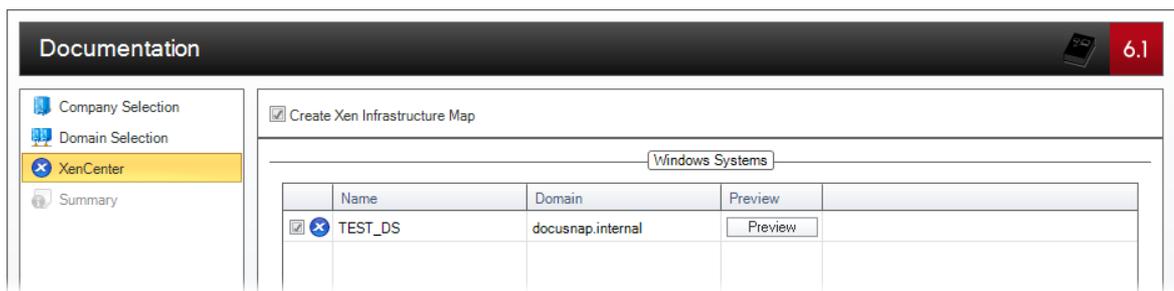
4.2.2.9 XenCenter

XenCenter maps can be created either from the *Create Docu* wizard or the dedicated *XenCenter* wizard.

The preview allows you to check the look and feel of the maps. You can change the map layout, if desired. For most cases, we recommend to use the default settings.

The XenCenter map will be stored in the *Xen* subfolder of the documentation directory.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Maps\Xen\Name of the XenCenter)

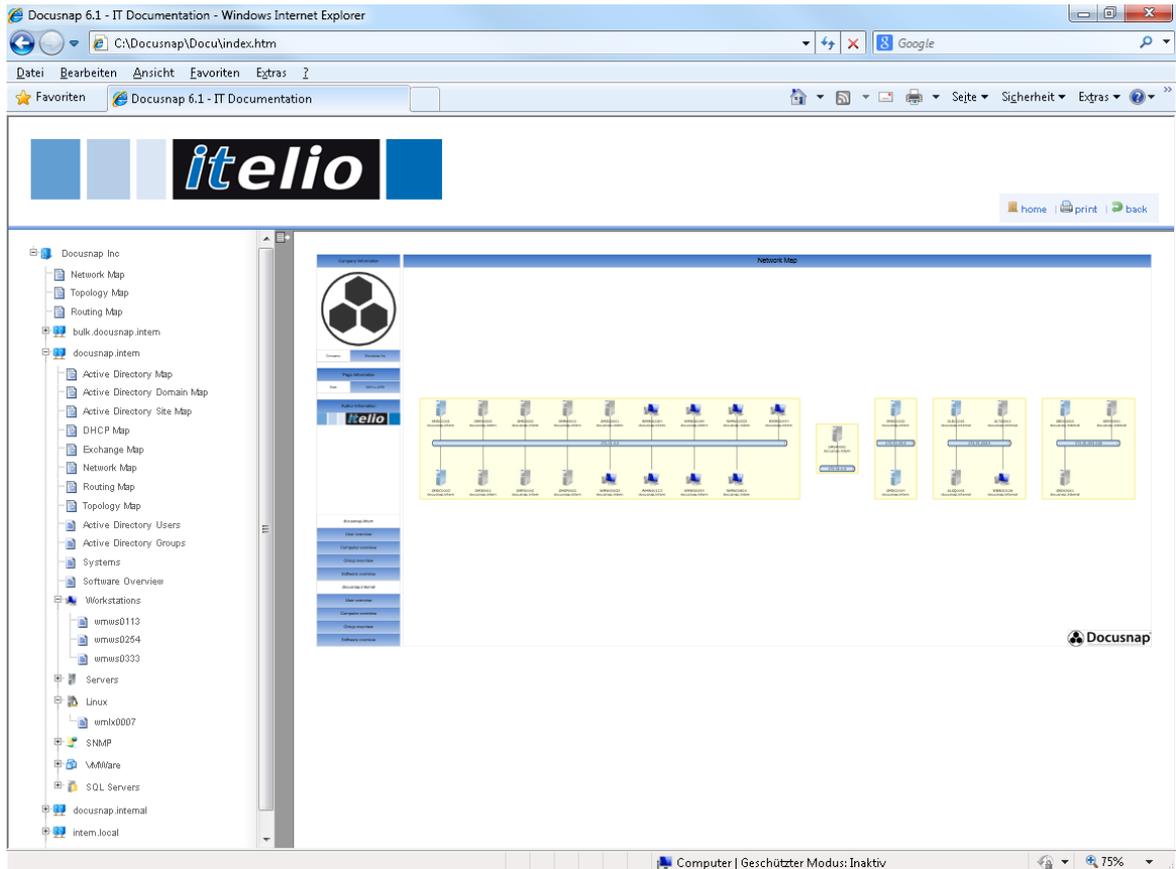


From the generated preview, you can specify which maps to create. The graphics display the interconnections between the various entities existing in a Xen environment. These entities are virtual machines, networks, hosts, and data stores. Each map reflects the respective assignments.

4.2.2.10 Overview Map

To create overview maps, either use the *Create Docu* wizard or the *Create Overviews* wizard.

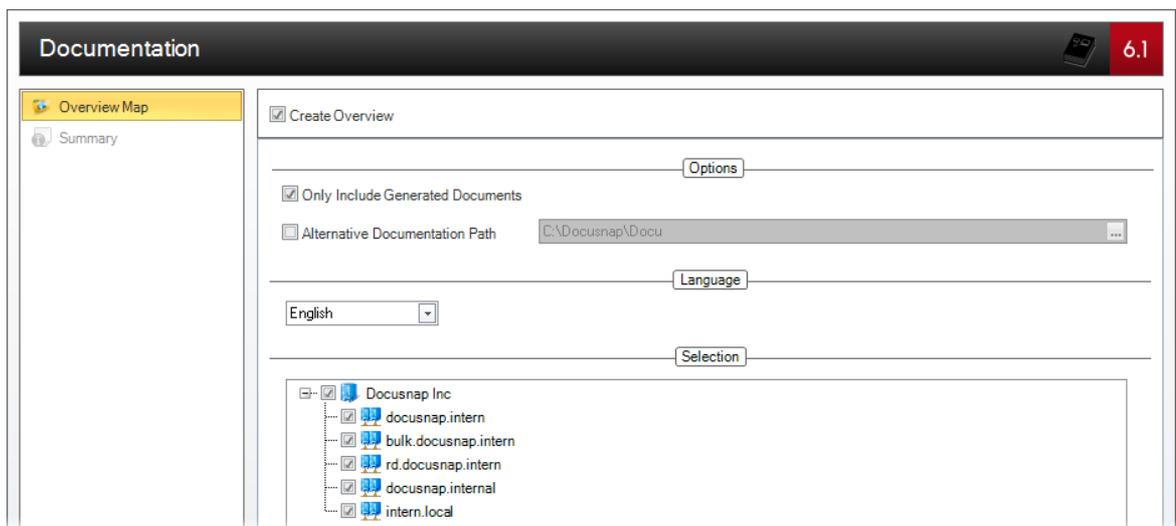
An overview map displays all maps that can be generated. If this map already exists in the directory, a link will be established so that you can open either the HTML map or the Visio map.



The preview window reflects the layout of the overview map. You can change the layout, if required. For most overview maps, however, we recommend to use the default settings.

Overview maps will be stored in the *Maps* directory below the documentation directory for the corresponding company.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Maps\overview)

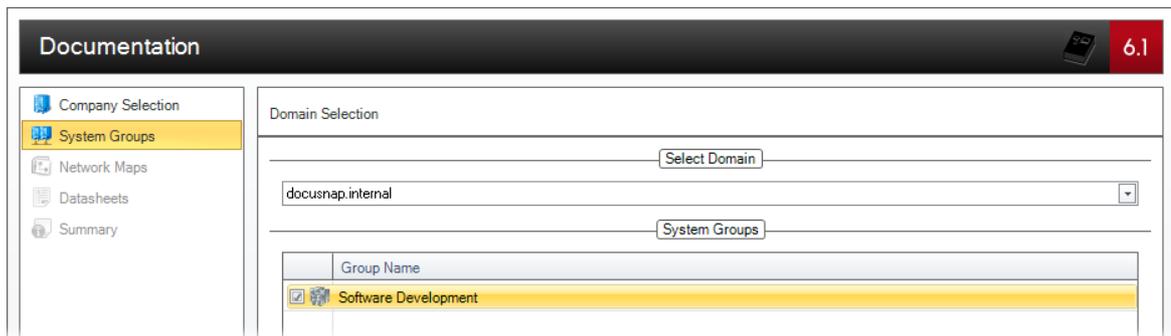


4.2.2.11 System Groups

In Docusnap, it is possible to define [system groups](#). This means that systems belonging for example to the same department can be combined into one group.

For these system groups, you can create network maps, routing maps and datasheets. To create the documents for the system groups, use the *System Groups* button. The *Create Docu* wizard is not available for this kind of documentation.

In the first step, you select the domain. When creating network maps and datasheets for system groups, you must additionally select the desired system group. Only one group may be selected at a time.



Then, you can select the systems to be included in the network map and/or routing map. Docusnap will only display systems that have been assigned to the selected system group. When you create network maps for system groups, you can also group workstations and SNMP systems. To include a system in the network map, tick the corresponding checkbox. Using the filter to the right of the selection list, you can enhance transparency by displaying only the desired systems. For more information about filtering, see the [Filters](#) section. If you want to include only servers, workstations, Linux systems, etc. into your network map, click the corresponding icon(s). Clicking each icon a second time will exclude the respective system type again.

In the next step, you can create datasheets can be created for each system. These datasheets can be linked to the objects in the network map. The options under *Advanced*, which are also available as preferences in the [Options](#) dialog, allow you to specify the formats for datasheet linking, if desired. The links will be created even if that particular datasheet does not exist yet. This way, also datasheets created at a later time, will be linked to the systems in the network map.

The preview window reflects the layout of the network map or routing map. You can change the layout, if required. For most network and routing maps, you get the best results when using the default settings. What is more, the preview enables you to make the same changes as described under [Network Map](#).

If you want to create only the datasheets for the system group, but not the network and routing maps, this step can be skipped. To do so, clear the *Create*

Network Map and/or Create Routing Map checkbox.

The screenshot shows the 'Documentation' software interface. On the left is a navigation pane with 'Network Maps' selected. The main area has a 'Maps' section with checkboxes for 'Create Network Map' and 'Create Routing Map', each with a 'Preview' button. Below this is a 'Systems' table with columns for Name, Type, and Domain. The table lists several systems, all with the domain 'docusnap.internal'. To the right of the table is a 'Filter' panel with options to enable, apply, or remove filters, and buttons for 'Select all', 'Deselect all', and 'Excel Export'. At the bottom are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

	Name	Type	Domain
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WBIWS0128	Workstation	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBEX0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBPS0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLTS0001	Server	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SBDC0002	DC	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SLDC0001	DC	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	KVMONTHENET	SNMP	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PMAFBPL01	SNMP	docusnap.internal
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SXEN01	Linux Workstation	docusnap.internal

In the next step, you can select the systems for which to create datasheets. The datasheets will contain all information about the selected systems, such as software, hardware, networks, services, local users, etc.

To create the network maps without any datasheets, disable the *Create Datasheets for Servers, Workstations, SNMP, Linux and Mac Systems* checkbox.

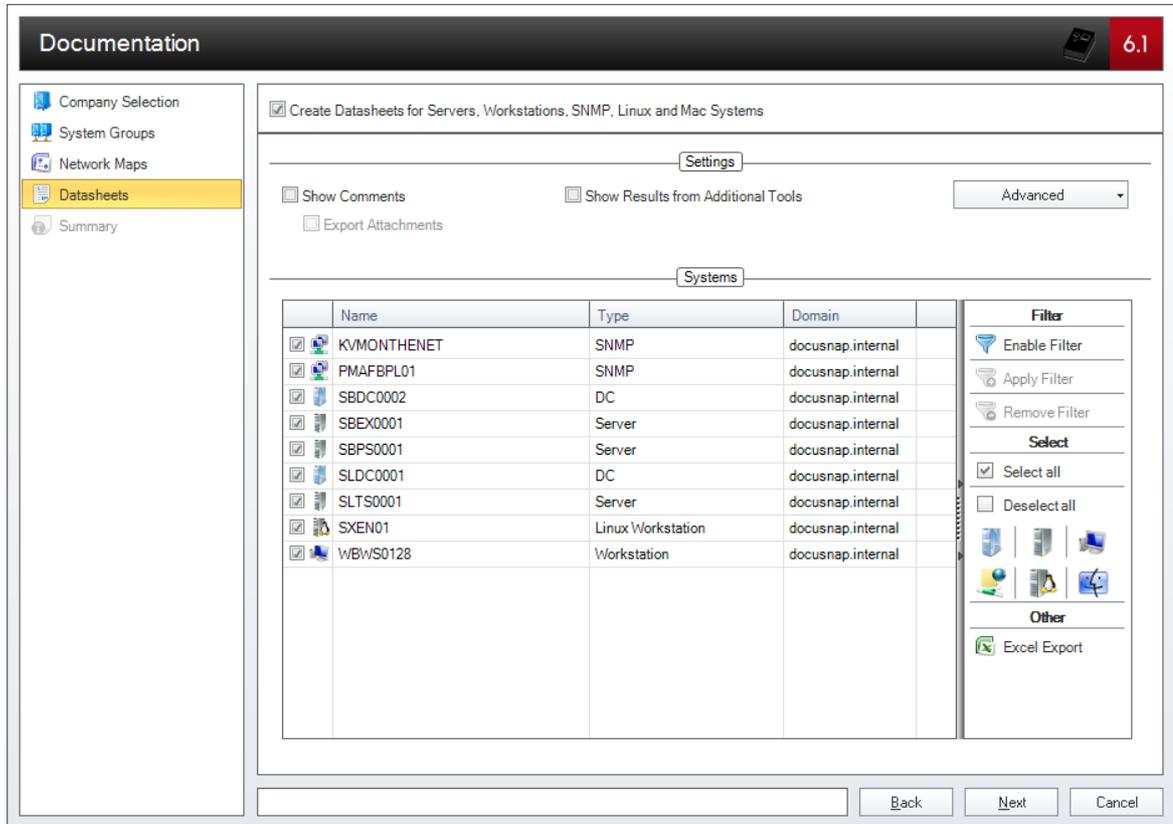
The datasheets may also include comments that have been stored with the systems. Comments saved at the system level will be shown, but no comments created for lower levels. In addition, the attachments can be included. If you enable the *Export Attachments* checkbox, the attachments to the comments will be listed in the report and the attachments themselves will be stored in the Comments folder.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\System Groups Name\DataSheets\Name of the System\Attachments\Comments)

It is possible to integrate additional tools into the scanning process. You can add these tools from the Additional Tools page on the [Options](#) dialog. In case an additional tool is used for inventorying, the results can be output along with the datasheet. If the *Show Results of the Additional Tools* checkbox is enabled, the results found by the additional tool for each system will be exported to a folder

under the Datasheet folder.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\System Groups Name\DataSheets\Name of the System\ToolResults)



4.2.3 Data Sheets

Datasheets can be created using either the *Create Docu* wizard or the *Create Datasheets* wizard.

After you have selected the domains, all servers, workstations and SNMP, Linux and Mac systems that exist in the selected domains will be displayed. If the checkbox next to a system is enabled, a datasheet will be created for it.

Each datasheet contains all current information that is located at the levels below the node of the selected system.

The datasheets may also include comments that have been stored with the systems. Comments saved at the system level will be shown, but no comments created for lower levels. In addition, the attachments can be included. If you enable the *Export Attachments* checkbox, the attachments will be listed with the comments in the report and the attachments themselves will be stored in the *Comments* folder.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Datasheets\Name of the System\Attachments\Comments)



When performing an inventory scan, additional tools can also be included. You can add these tools from the Additional Tools page on the [Options](#) dialog. The results of an additional tool used for inventorying can be output along with the datasheet. If you enable the *Show Results from Additional Tools* checkbox, the results this tool found for the respective system will be exported to a folder under the Datasheet folder.

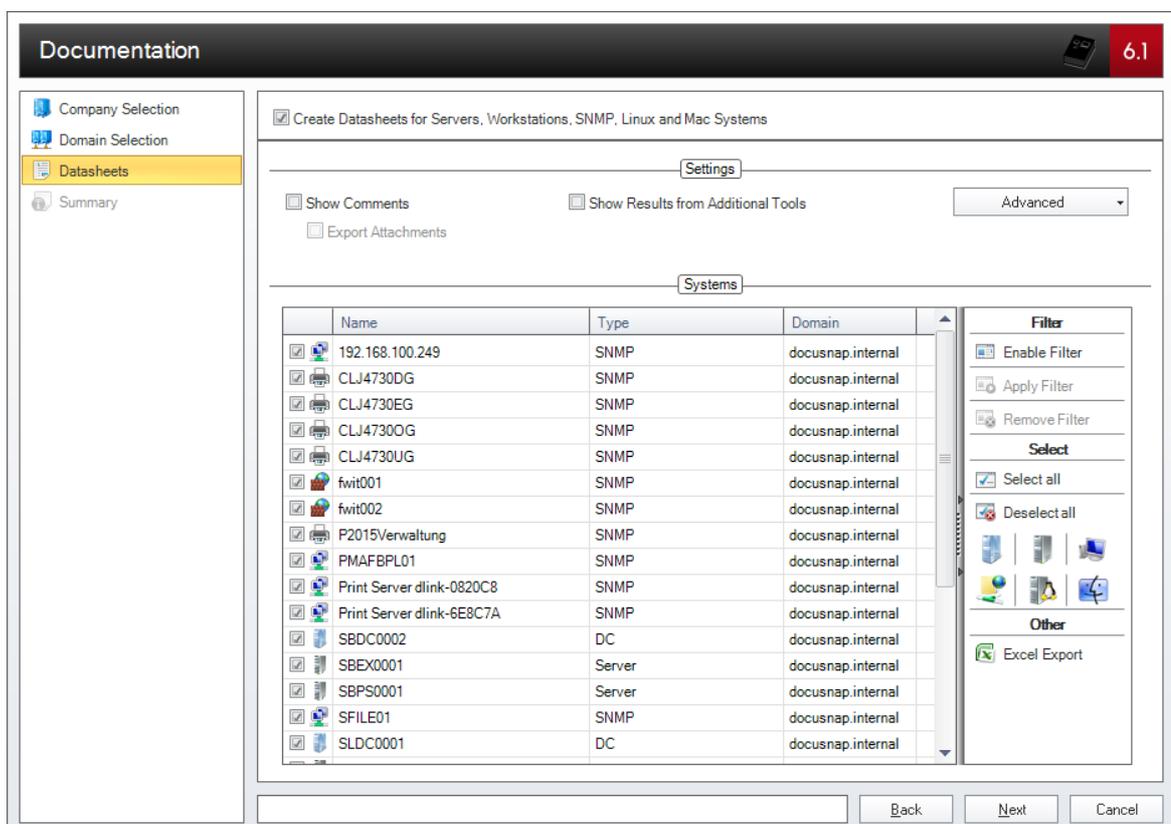
(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Datasheets\Name of the System\ToolResults)

To filter the display, you can select one of the filter buttons on the right. For a detailed description, click [here](#).

When creating datasheets, you can additionally enable the *Print Preparation* option. It can be used to generate an additional file with the *.mdc* file extension. This file is required if you want to use the *Print Docu* wizard to print the documentation.

The documentation will be stored in the *Datasheets* subfolder of the documentation directory.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Datasheets)



4.2.4 Overviews

Overviews can be created using either the *Create Docu* wizard or the *Create Overviews* wizard.

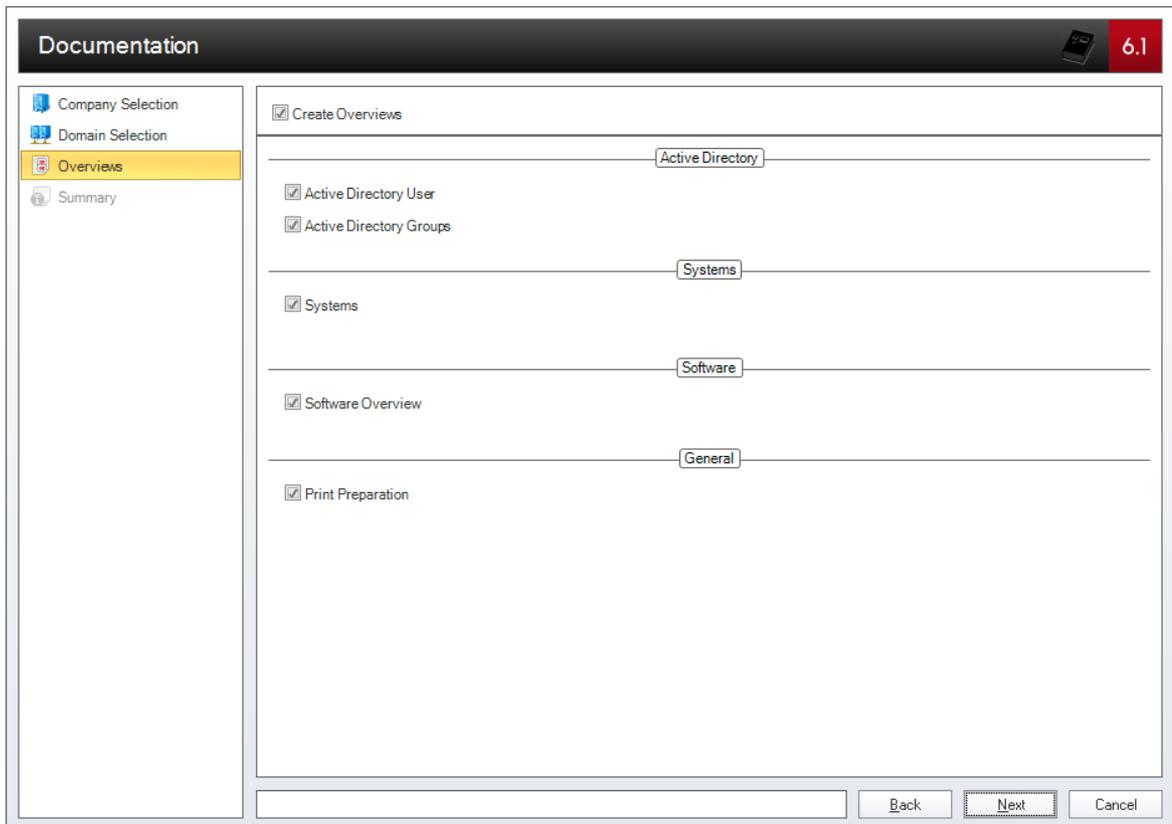
After you have selected the domains, you are presented with a choice of overview documents that can be created. Enable the checkbox of every overview type you wish to create.

The overviews will be stored in the *Overview* subfolder of the documentation directory under the corresponding company and domain. Creating an overview results in three files. The *computerlist_en.html* and *computerlist_en.xlsx* files are based on the report and include the company and the name of the author. The *computerlist_plain_en.xlsx* file is a flat table in Excel format.

When creating overviews, you can also tick the *Print Preparation (MDC)* checkbox. It can be used to generate an additional file with the *.mdc* file extension. This file is required if you want to use the *Print Docu* wizard to print the documentation.

The files will be stored in the *Overview* folder.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Overview)



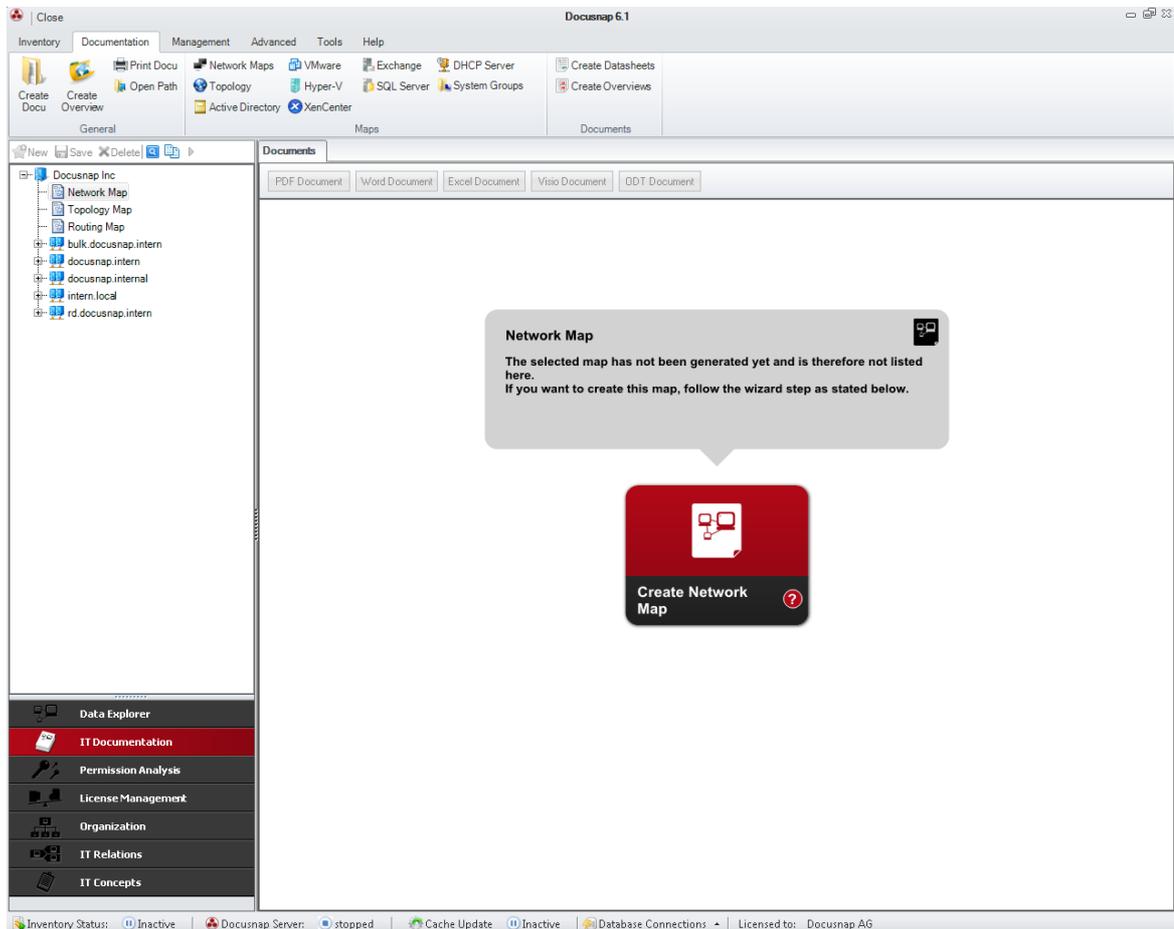
4.3 IT Documentation

The new IT Documentation module was designed to help you manage and create your documentation and enhance the transparency of the entire process.

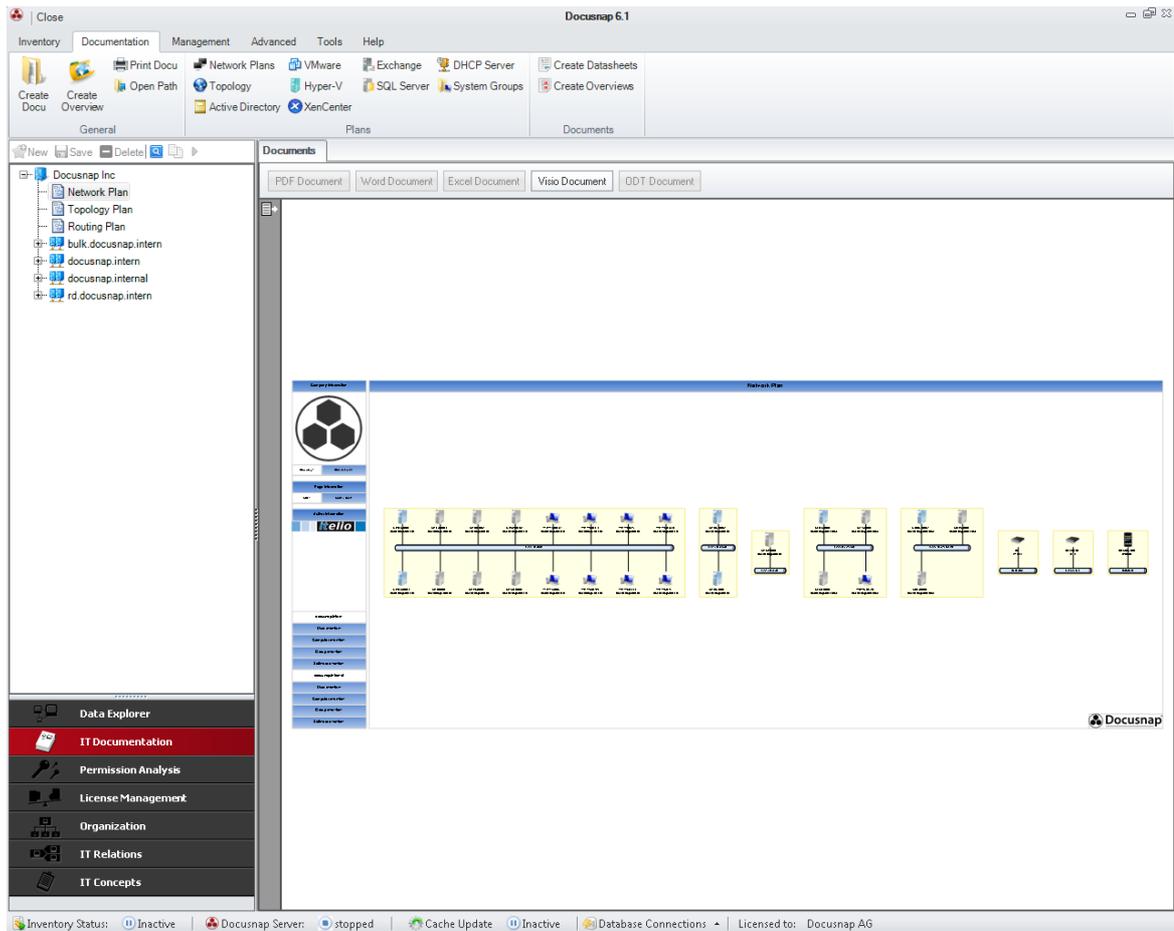


If no maps, datasheets or overviews have been created for the selected Explorer node yet, the *Documents* tab in the right pane displays a dashboard-type indicator that helps you to create the respective document. What is more, it allows you to access the specific online help for the desired map.

You can use the Dashboard as a shortcut to launch the required wizard without accessing the ribbon.



If the document exists already, the desired map is displayed instead of the Dashboard. The *PDF Document*, *Word Document*, *Excel Document*, *Visio Document* and *ODT Document* buttons allow you to display the map in the desired format. The desired format is only available if the document was created in that format.



4.4 Print Documentation

Docusnap allows you to print several datasheets and overviews simultaneously. When you create datasheets or overviews, the *Print Preparation* (.mdc) file format must be selected additionally.

To start the Print Documentation wizard, click the *Print Docu* button. In the *Print Settings* step, select the folder where the documents are stored. If files to be printed are located in subfolders of the selected folder, you can include them by ticking the *Recursively Search Subdirectories* checkbox. The *Depth* indicates how many subfolder levels will be included. Click the *Add* button to add the selected location to the list of directories to be searched. The documentation path that has been defined in the Options dialog is already set.

If you clear the checkbox next to a folder, the documents from that folder will not be available for printing.

The selected printer will be displayed in the Print Settings area at the bottom of the dialog. A different printer, as well as additional print settings, may be selected by clicking the *Settings* button. Clicking the *Next* button takes you to the *File Selection* step in the wizard. The *Next* button will remain disabled until a folder has been selected.



Print Documentation 6.1

Print Settings
File Selection

Select directories, which are searched for printable files

Add new Directory

...

Add

Recursively Search Subdirectories Depth: 1

Directories to be Searched

Directory	Levels	Delete
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C:\Documentation	6	

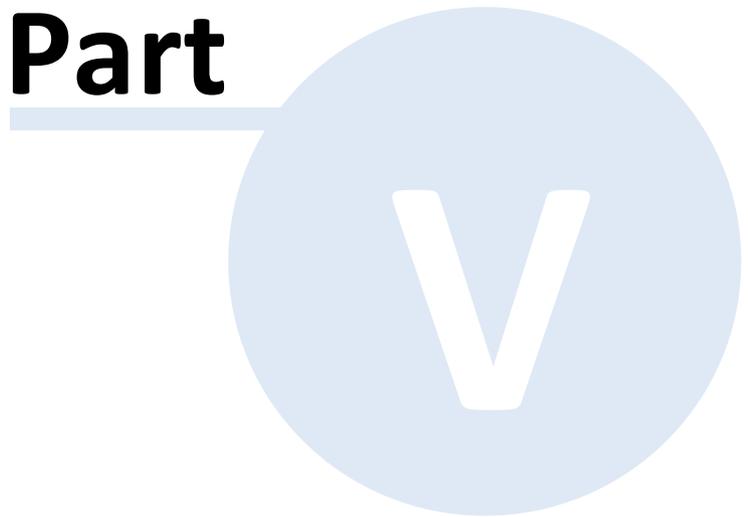
Print Settings

Settings

Valid settings are defined. Next Cancel

All files that have been stored in the selected folder and have the *.mdc* file format will be displayed in the file selection step. When you click the *Deselect All* button, your document selection will be undone. Only selected documents will be printed. To start the print job, click the *Next* button. The button will remain disabled until at least one document has been selected.

Part



5 Permission Analysis

With the Docusnap Permission Analysis feature, you can determine and analyze the effective permissions for users and groups. For this purpose, comprehensive reports are available that illustrate the current permissions situation from the user or group perspective or for a certain resource (e.g. a directory).

Using filters, you can display a quick and interactive analysis of the desired situations.

Docusnap can, for example, answer the following questions:

- Which items can be accessed by employee X?
- Who has access to the HR directory?
- What combination of permissions (NTFS, shares) has been granted to a certain user?

You can perform a permission analysis for all Windows systems or for systems that support the SMB or CIFS protocol (e.g. Samba and NetApp Filer).

It is also possible to scan and analyze the permissions to SharePoint servers. SharePoint server permissions are determined while Docusnap performs a SharePoint inventory scan.

Docusnap 6.1 also enables you to scan and analyze the permissions to Exchange mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.

Permission Analysis is a separate Docusnap module that you can access by clicking the *Permission Analysis* button in the Navigation pane.

In the Permission Analysis explorer, a hierarchically structured tree will be displayed that has been optimized for the needs of this module.

Structure

This section explains the structure of the Permission Analysis feature.

Inventory

Before permissions can be analyzed, it is mandatory to perform an inventory scan of the NTFS directory structures. This section explains the inventory wizard for NTFS directories. SharePoint permissions are inventoried during a SharePoint scan, Exchange permissions are read in together with the Exchange inventory scan.

Analysis

For the analysis of permissions, three functions are available.

The Permission Analysis tab shows the current situation based on the permissions

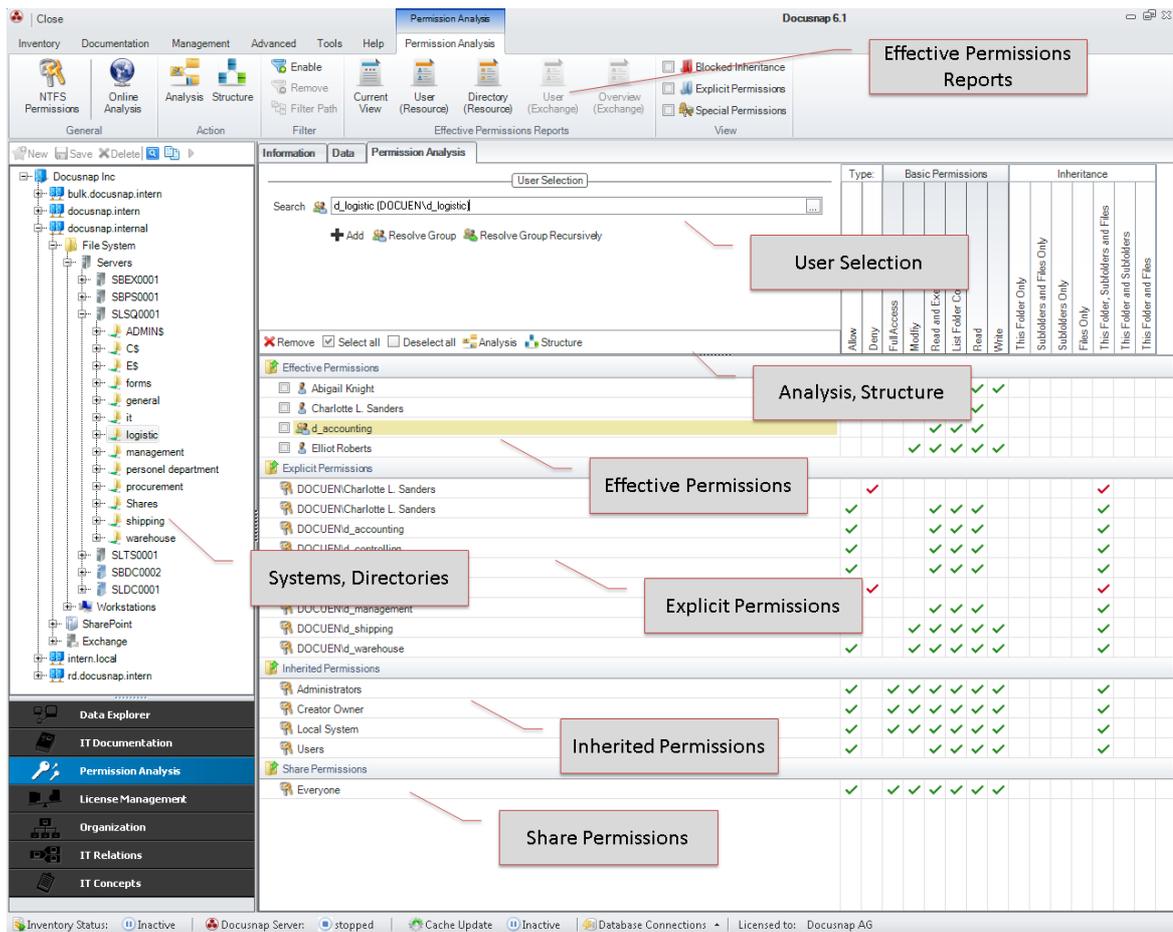
to a directory or SharePoint.

Analysis diagrams illustrate which criteria were used to assign an effective permission to the selected user or group.

Reports show the effective permissions a specific user has to a directory or user.

5.1 Structure

The Permission Analysis module has been subdivided into several panes so that a maximum of information can be displayed.



In the left pane, below the *File System* node, your systems, directories and shares are listed. Under the *SharePoint* node, you will find the web pages, web pages collections, and lists. Below the Exchange node, the Exchange mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders are displayed.

In the user selection in the right pane the users and groups for whom the effective permissions should be displayed can be added.

Below the user selection the effective permissions, the explicit permissions, the inherited permissions and the share permissions are located. Special permissions are only displayed if you have enabled the *Special Permissions* checkbox in the ribbon.



You can access the required functions and reports from a dedicated *Permission Analysis* ribbon.

By clicking the *Analysis* button, you open the permission structure for the currently selected user or the currently selected group. The permission structure reveals how the user or group obtained their permissions.

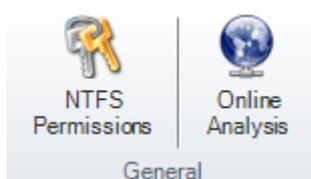
Click the *Structure* button to display a diagram showing the nesting of users or groups for the selected user/group.

5.2 Menu Ribbon

The Permission Analysis ribbon will be displayed when Permission Analysis has been selected from the Navigation pane. This ribbon is subdivided into four groups.

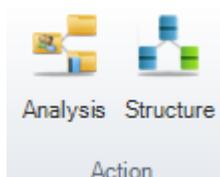
General

- [NTFS Permissions](#): Click the *NTFS Permissions* button to launch a wizard which helps you select the Windows systems for which to scan the permissions.
- [Online Analysis](#): The permissions will be determined at runtime by the Online Analysis process and thus not stored in the database. The Online Analysis process will be active once you click the *Online Analysis* button (highlighted in orange).



Action

- *Analysis*: Click the *Analysis* button to open the [permission structure](#) for the currently selected user.
- *Structure*: Click the *Structure* button to display the [group or user nestings](#) diagram.

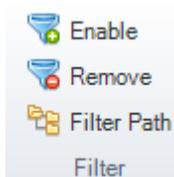


Filter

- *Enable/Remove*: The Data Explorer displays all directories of a scanned system. To display the filter below the permissions list, click the *Enable* button in the *Filter* group of the ribbon. Once you have defined the desired filter criteria (Write, Read, etc.), only those directories will be displayed in the Data Explorer that match the

selected user or group filter.

- **Filter Path:** The *Filter Path* dialog only opens for the analysis of SharePoint permissions. Since the SharePoint permission structure is different from the structure of NTFS permissions, this dialog is used to select the desired starting point for the analysis. According to the filter you set, only the directories below the starting node that correspond to the selected users/groups will be displayed.



Effective Permissions Reports

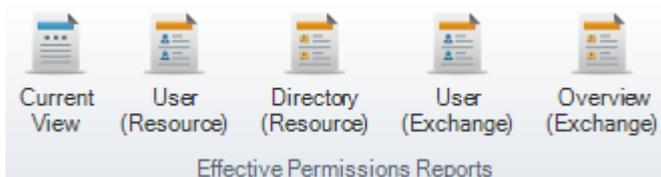
When you click the *Current View* button, the permissions displayed on the Permission Analysis tab will be output in a report.

By clicking the *User (Resource)* button, you can create a report which shows the effective permissions to the selected directory and its subdirectories.

Clicking the *Directory (Resource)* button creates a report which displays all users who have a permission to the selected directory and its subdirectories.

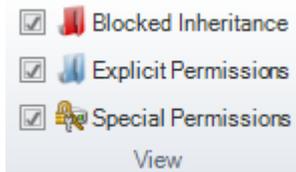
Clicking the *User (Exchange)* button creates a report on the effective permissions of the selected users to the Exchange mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.

Clicking the *Overview (Exchange)* button creates a report which displays all users who have permissions to the mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.



View

- **Blocked Inheritance:** Inheritance can be blocked for directories. This means that the permissions will not be inherited. If the *Blocked Inheritance* checkbox is enabled, the directories for which inheritance is blocked will be displayed with a red icon in the Permission Analysis explorer.
- **Explicit Permissions:** Permissions can be assigned directly to directories. If the *Explicit Permissions* checkbox is enabled, all directories to which permissions have been assigned explicitly will be displayed with a blue icon.
- **Special Permissions:** If this checkbox is enabled, special permissions will be displayed in addition to the basic permissions.



5.3 Inventory

DocuSnap uses different permission inventory processes for the file system, for SharePoint and for Exchange.

File System

Before you can start analyzing file system permissions, the systems must have been scanned using the [Network Inventory](#) function. Also, users and groups must have been inventoried by means of a complete Active Directory scan. If this is the case, you can start the inventory process for NTFS permissions.

SharePoint Servers

To perform a permission analysis for a SharePoint environment, you need to scan the SharePoint servers first. Moreover, a complete Active Directory scan must have been performed in order to obtain the users and groups required for the analysis. DocuSnap will determine the SharePoint permissions during the SharePoint inventory scan.

Exchange

DocuSnap will determine the Exchange permissions during the Exchange inventory scan. In order to perform a permission analysis, an Active Directory scan is required as well.

5.3.1 File System

In Microsoft environments, the effective permissions are a combination of the share permissions and the NTFS permissions. DocuSnap determines the respective shares for a system, including the permissions and the local users and groups, during the Windows inventory process. The domain users and group hierarchies are retrieved by means of the Active Directory inventory scan.

To determine the organization of NTFS systems, you need to execute an additional wizard.

For a permission analysis, the following steps are required:

1. Determining the target devices using a Windows or CIFS inventory scan
2. Scanning the Active Directory
3. Determining the NTFS directory data using the NTFS wizard

4. Analyzing and evaluating the results

Note: Steps 1 and 2 are described in the Inventory section.

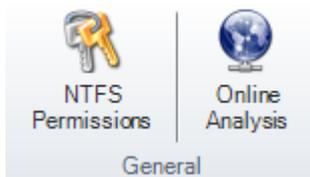


In order to perform a permission analysis, you must always scan the complete Active Directory system to make sure that all groups and users will be available for analysis.

5.3.1.1 Inventory Permissions

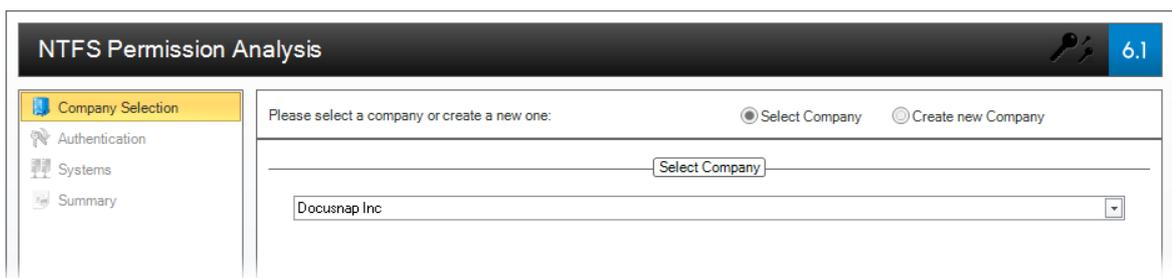
A permission analysis requires that the NTFS permissions to the directories have been stored in the database. For this purpose, you can use a wizard or the Docusnap server.

The *NTFS Permissions* wizard can be started from the Inventory ribbon or the *Permission Analysis* ribbon.



Company Selection

Unlike a network scan, a NTFS permissions scan does not allow you to create a new company. You need to select an existing company. A Windows inventory scan must already have been performed for this company. Otherwise, it will not be possible to retrieve the permissions.

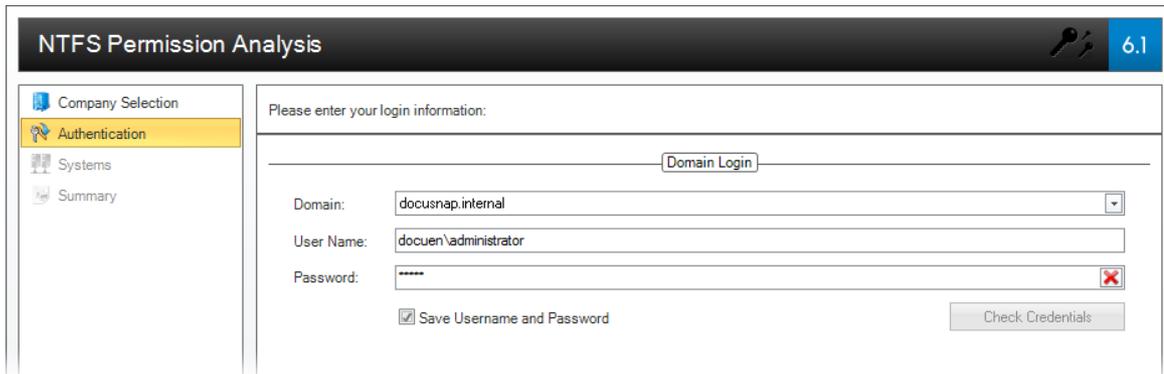


Authentication

Please note that only existing domains in a company may be selected for authentication. After you have selected the domain, Docusnap will display the user name and password that were used for creating the network inventory. If desired, you can also enter the credentials of another user. Aside from this, you can also use the name and password of the currently logged-on user to perform the inventory scan. In this case, only select the domain and leave the *User Name* and *Password* fields blank. Afterwards, click the *Check Credentials* button to check if the user is a



member of the domain and if the proper password has been entered. After successful authentication, the *Next* button will be enabled.

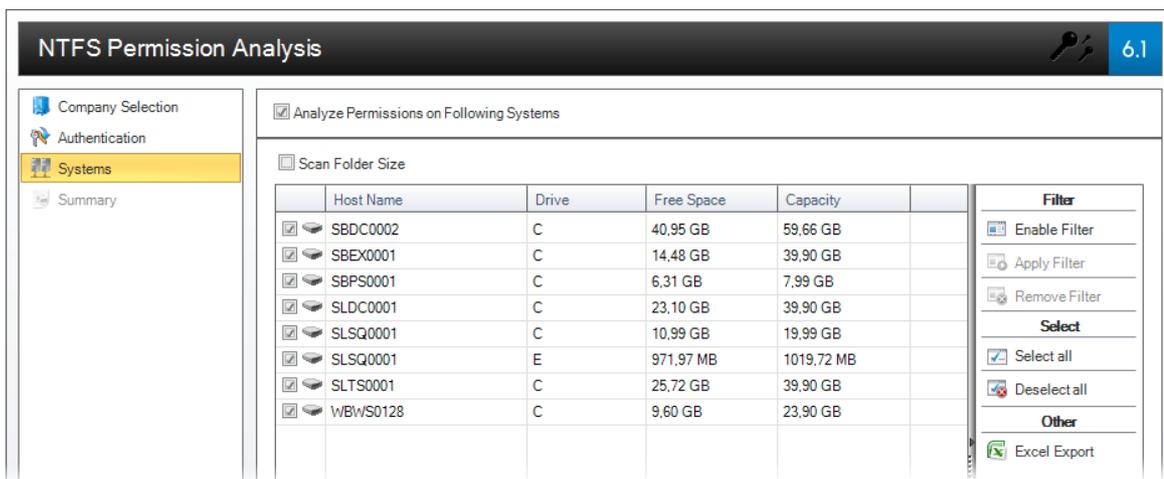


Systems

All Windows systems that have been scanned will be displayed on the Systems page. In addition, it lists all drives on the corresponding systems. Use the checkbox next to each system to indicate whether the permissions for that system are to be scanned or not. If a system has multiple drives, a separate system entry will be listed for each drive. Thus, each drive of a system can be selected individually for the permission scan. The [Filter](#) group is displayed on the right. Using a filter, you can filter the systems list for individual values.

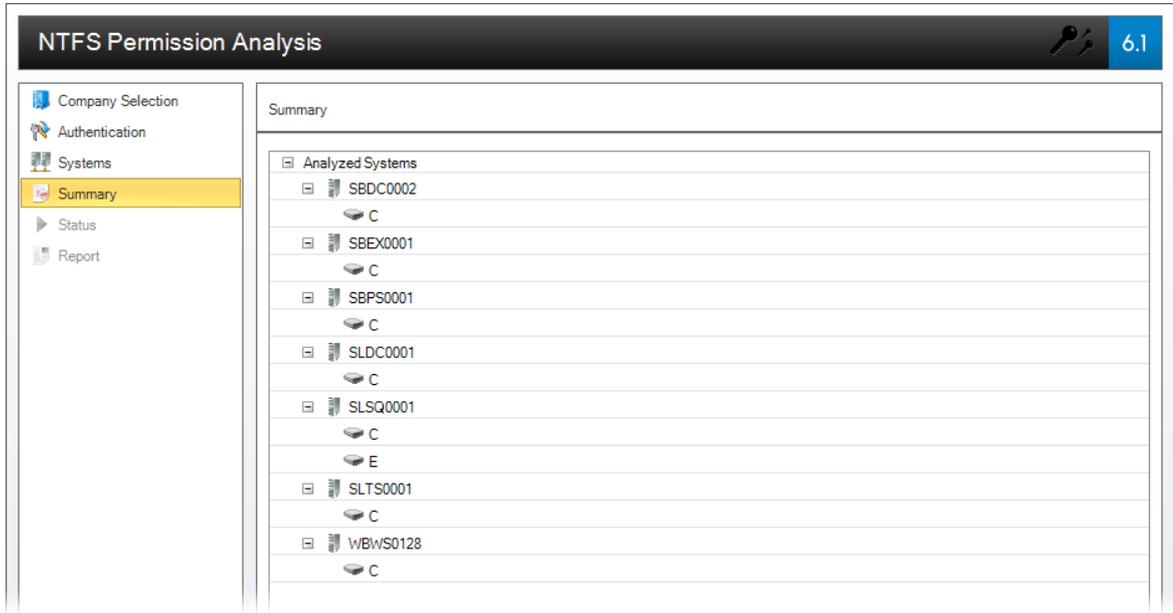
For systems based on the SMB or CIFS protocol, such as NetApp Filer or Samba Server, the available shares rather than the local drives will be displayed for selection on the those systems.

If you wish to exclude a directory from the inventory scan, you can specify this exclusion in the [Manage NTFS Filter](#) dialog. When you add a directory to this list, all its subdirectories will be excluded from the analysis as well. For example, this is helpful for user profiles or temporary Internet directories.



Summary Page

All systems and drives to be inventoried will be listed on the Summary page.



Scheduling

By using the [scheduling](#) feature, you can specify a later time for the automatic start of the permission scan routine. For this purpose, Scheduling must have been enabled in the [Options](#) dialog. In the scheduling window, you can indicate whether the scan should be performed only once or repeatedly.

In order to use this feature, the Docusnap Server component must be installed on a system in the network.

Status

After the process has started, this page will display the progress of the inventory scan. If you wish to abort the inventory process, click the *Cancel* button. The NTFS permissions of all scanned systems with the *Completed* status will be written to the database. Permissions for systems where the scan process has not yet been completed will not be saved.

Name	Type	Progress in %	Information
NTFS	NTFS	Executing Process: 40 %	
SBDC0002 C:\	NTFS	Permission Analysis. 726 Folders have been sear...	
SBEX0001 C:\	NTFS	Permission Analysis. 1187 Folders have been se...	
SLDC0001 C:\	NTFS	Permission Analysis. 1240 Folders have been se...	
SLSQ0001 C:\	NTFS	Permission Analysis. 533 Folders have been sear...	
SBPS0001 C:\	NTFS	Completed successfully	
SLSQ0001 E:\	NTFS	Completed successfully	
SLTS0001	NTFS	Check connection with remote system	

Summary Page

The Report page displays how many systems have been successfully inventoried. To exit the wizard, click the *Close* button.

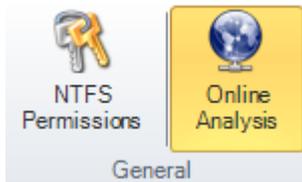
Name	Type	Information
Summary		Required Time: 00:21:19
NTFS		Completed
Successful (8)		
NTFS (8)		
SBDC0002 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
SBEX0001 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
SBPS0001 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
SLDC0001 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
SLSQ0001 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
SLSQ0001 E:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
SLTS0001 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully
WBWS0128 C:\	NTFS	Scanned successfully



During the inventory scan, there may be no connection to the target system if a different user than the one logged on to the desktop was specified. Microsoft only allows one single connection to a target system during a session and would otherwise generate an error.

5.3.1.2 Online Analysis

You can start the Online Analysis process from the *Permission Analysis* ribbon. Just like the normal analysis, the Online Analysis process uses the share permission, user and group data from the database. Only the NTFS permissions and the directory structures will be loaded directly from the network for each item clicked in the hierarchy.



The Online Analysis process allows you to create the tree view without having to execute the *NTFS Permissions* wizard first. In principle, the Online Analysis process works exactly like a permission scan, with the difference that the data will not be written to the database and only the permissions for the directory that is currently open in the tree view will be scanned. The Online Analysis process will use the credentials of the currently logged-on user. For this reason, the user who has logged on must have the right to scan the NTFS permissions for the system.

To enable this feature, click the *Online Analysis* button. When it is enabled, the permissions will be re-scanned from the network as soon as you open directories and subdirectories.



Since the Online Analysis process does not write data to the database, it is not possible to create reports in this mode.

5.3.1.3 NTFS Filter

When performing a [permission analysis](#), Docusnap scans the permissions users and groups have on directories.

Use the *Manage NTFS Filter* dialog to define which directories should be included or excluded from the analysis.

It is possible to specify directories that should be inventoried, to exclude directories that are not needed in the permission analysis, or to define a combination of included and excluded directories.

The specification to include directories is only used when permissions for certain directories are of interest, for example who has access to directories which contain client data or project information.

Definitions to exclude directories are used to exclude big folder structures like *Windows* or *Program Files*.

The conditions can be grouped and linked with either *AND* or *OR*.

Click the button  to add another row. Click the button  to delete the current row.

▪ Operator

In the column *Operator* you can choose between *Contains* or *Not Contains*. Wildcards can be used to specify the selection in greater detail.

- Contains: The specified condition must match the directory.
- Not Contains: The specified condition must not match the directory.

▪ And/Or

Once several directories are specified, select in the *And/Or* column whether the conditions should be linked with *And* or *Or*. If the terms are linked with *And*, then all conditions have to apply to the directory. If the conditions are linked with *Or*, only one of the terms has to match the directory.

▪ Grouping

Use grouping to nest the conditions as needed. For example two terms can be linked with *Or* and then be extended with *And* to include another condition. Click the checkbox to select the conditions, afterward click the  button to group the selected entries to one condition. Only conditions listed one below the other can be grouped. The button  marks the start of the group. Click the  button to revoke the grouping. It is possible to organize the grouping in several levels. Select more than one group and click on the  button to group them into one condition.

Click Save to apply the settings.

Manage NTFS Filter						
			And/Or	Field	Operator	Value
+	x	<input type="checkbox"/>		Directory Path	Not Contains	C:\\Windows
+	x	<input type="checkbox"/>	And	Directory Path	Not Contains	*System32*
+	x	<input type="checkbox"/>	And	Directory Path	Not Contains	*Program Files*



If the full name of the directory is specified, then the time needed for the inventory of the NTFS permissions can be shortened, since these directories can be skipped during the inventory.

5.3.2 SharePoint

The SharePoint permissions to web page collections, web pages and lists have already been scanned during the SharePoint inventory process. For this reason, an additional wizard is not necessary.

To start the wizard for inventorying SharePoint servers, click the *SharePoint* button on the Inventory ribbon. The *SharePoint* step will be displayed after you have selected a company and a domain and entered your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)).



Inventory

6.1

Company Selection
Authentication
SharePoint
Summary

Inventory SharePoint Server

SharePoint Server

	Name	Security	Info
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	smsp0001.docusnap.intern	Special Credentials...	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	smossdev01	Global Credentials...	

Add SharePoint Server

SharePoint: User:

Server Authentication Password:

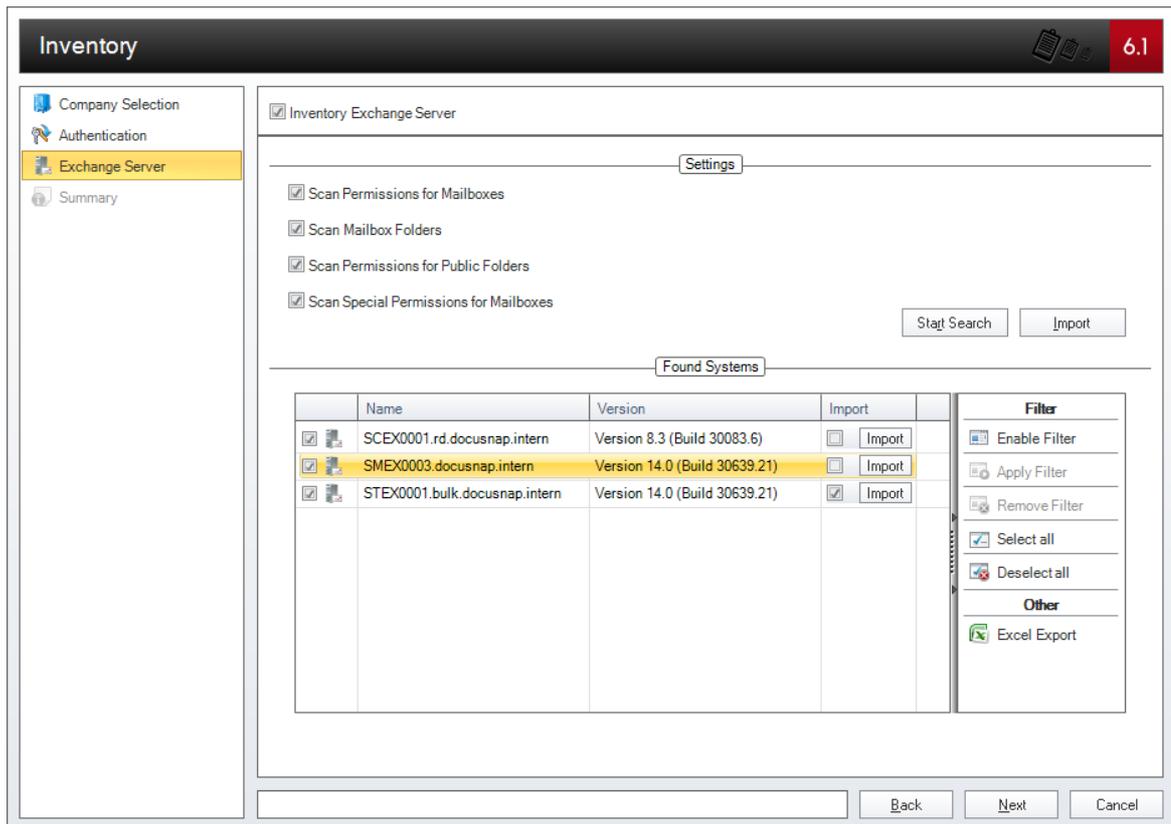
Limit Job History Number of Entries:

There are two ways to scan SharePoint servers: You can either use *global credentials* for login. In this case, only the name of the SharePoint server is required for the scanning process. Or you log in using *specific credentials*. For this purpose, you need to enable the *Server Authentication* checkbox. Then, you can enter the required user name and password. After the desired systems have been added to the SharePoint Server table, you can specify whether the inventory process should be performed for the corresponding system or not by enabling / disabling the checkbox next to each system. The *Next* button will only be enabled once you have specified a SharePoint server. Then, you can continue with the inventory process.

5.3.3 Exchange

The permissions of users and groups to Exchange mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders are retrieved during an Exchange inventory scan.

Click the *Exchange* button in the *Inventory* ribbon to launch the corresponding wizard. First, you need to select a company and enter your credentials (see: [Basic Steps](#)). Then, the *Exchange* step will display.



5.4 Analysis

For the analysis of permissions, three functions are available.

Permission Analysis

From the Permission Analysis tab, you can see the current state of permissions to a folder, SharePoint server, or to Exchange mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.

Analysis Diagrams

These diagrams illustrate which criteria were used to assign an effective permission to the selected user or group.

Determining the Effective Permissions

The goal of each permission analysis is to show the effective permissions to a certain directory or for a certain user.

5.4.1 Permission Analysis

When, in the Permission Analysis tree view, you select a node below the *File System*, *SharePoint*, or *Exchange* nodes for which permissions have been scanned, the main window displays an additional tab named *Permission Analysis*.



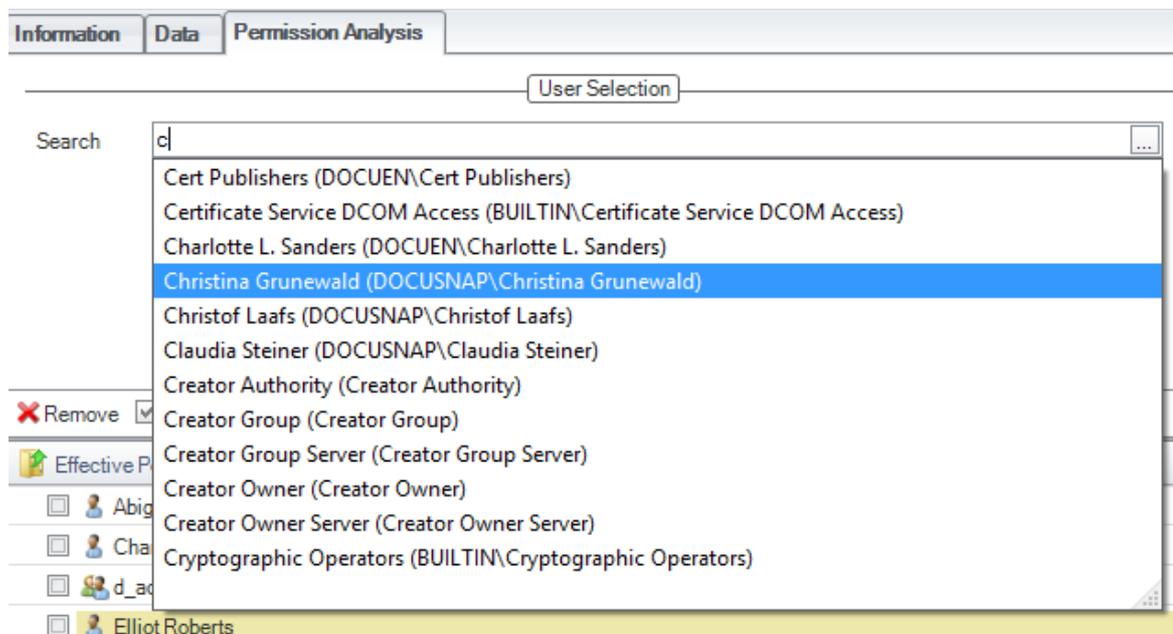
The *Permission Analysis* tab shows the *Explicit Permissions*, the *Inherited Permissions* and the *Share Permissions*.

Effective Permissions

In order to retrieve the *effective permissions* for a user or a group, select the desired entry from the *User Selection*.

There are different possibilities to add users and groups.

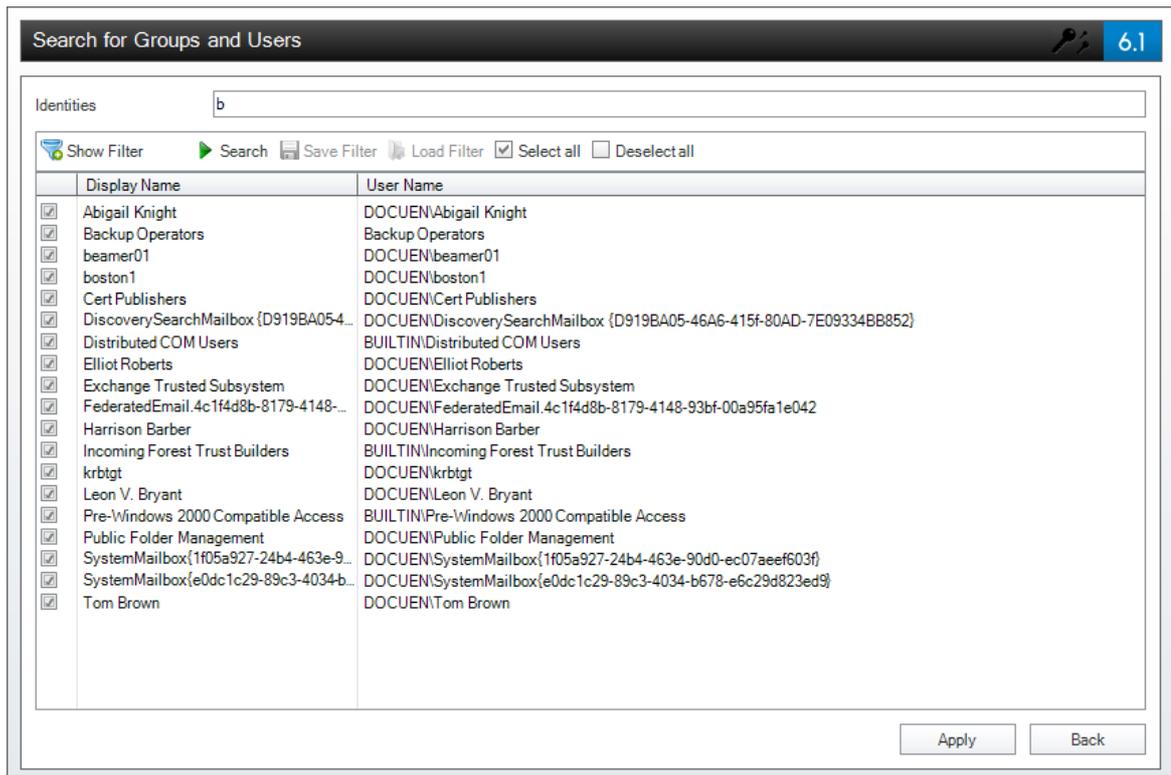
Enter the name of the wanted user or the wanted group. Users are identified by the  icon and groups by the  icon. Once the first letter is entered, the matching entries are suggested. Users and groups can be added via enter key, selection via the mouse from the suggestion list or via click on the *Add* button. Users are added to the list immediately. After selecting a group the options are to add all the direct users of this group, to add the direct users and the users of subordinate groups or to add the group.



Click the  button in the *Search* text box to open the *Advanced Search* dialog.

The names of the users and groups, who should be added, can be entered into the *Search* text box in the *User Selection*. All users and groups, who were selected in the *Advanced Search* dialog, are displayed in the *Selected User/Groups* field. Click the  button if you want to remove the according entry.

Click the *Advanced* button to refine the search for active directory users and groups further. Enter the name of the wanted entries in the *Identities* text box. It is possible to just enter a part of the name in this text box and all users and groups who contain this string are listed and can be selected. With the wildcard "%" intermediate parts can be omitted. Select the wanted entries with the according checkbox and click the *Apply* button to add the users and groups.



Click the *Show Filter* button to open the filter. The filter provides the ability to select users and groups through the definition of one or more conditions.

Click the button **+** to add another row. Click the button **x** to delete the current row.

▪ Field

The column *Field* lists all ADS properties for users and groups. Depending on the selected property different operators and suggestions are offered. For *User Account Control* the different options like *Account activated* are provided. If the property is a string the first twenty entries are displayed. Subsequently the suggestion list can be filtered by tipping the first letters of the wanted entry. For properties which are a period of time a date has to be given in MM/DD/YYYY or MM.DD.YYYY format. To find users and groups who for example don't have an expiry date, enter as value the word "never" instead of a date .

▪ Operator

The column *Operator* provides several operators.

- Contains: The specified value must be contained in the properties of the user or the group.
- Not Contains: The specified value must not be contained in the properties of the user or the group.
- Starts with: The value of the user or group must begin with the specified value.



- Ends with: The value of the user or group must end with the specified value.
- =: The value of the user or group has to match the specified value exactly.
- <>: The value of the user or group must not match to the specified value.
- <=,>=,<,>: The value of the user or group has to be less than or equal (<=), greater than or equal (>=), less than (<) or greater than (>) the specified value.

▪ And/Or

Once several conditions are specified, select in the *And/Or* column whether the conditions should be linked with *And* or *Or*. If the terms are linked with *And*, then all conditions have to apply to the user or the group. If the conditions are linked with *Or*, only one of the terms has to match the user or the group.

▪ Grouping

Use grouping to nest the conditions as needed. For example two terms can be linked with *Or* and then be extended with *And* to include another condition. Click the checkbox to select the conditions, afterward click the  button to group the selected entries to one condition. Only conditions listed one below the other can be grouped. The button  marks the start of the group. Click the  button to revoke the grouping. It is possible to organize the grouping in several levels. Select more than one group and click on the  button to group them into one condition.

Click the *Search* button to list the users and groups who match the specified filter.

If a term is entered in the *Identities* text box, then the users and groups are filtered by this search term and the specified conditions.

Click the *Save Filter* to save the specified conditions in an XML file. When the *Advanced Search* is opened the next time, click the *Load Filter* button to recover the conditions from the XML file so they don't have to be defined again.

Select the wanted entries with the according checkbox and click the *Apply* button to add the users and groups.

Search for Groups and Users
6.1

Identities

Disable Filter

 Select all
 Deselect all

				And/Or	Field	Operator	Value
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			User Account Control	=	Account Activated
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	And		Department	Contains	Docusnap
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Or		Department	Contains	KFI
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	And		Last Logon	>	01/01/2013
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	And		Account Expires	=	never

Display Name	User Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Abigail Knight	DOCUEN\Abigail Knight
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Access-Denied Assistance Users	DOCUEN\Access-Denied Assistance Users
<input type="checkbox"/> Account Operators	Account Operators
<input type="checkbox"/> Administrator	DOCUEN\Administrator
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Administrators	Administrators
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alex Stevenson	DOCUEN\Alex Stevenson
<input type="checkbox"/> Allowed RODC Password Replication...	DOCUEN\Allowed RODC Password Replication Group
<input type="checkbox"/> Backup Operators	Backup Operators
<input type="checkbox"/> beamer01	DOCUEN\beamer01
<input type="checkbox"/> boston1	DOCUEN\boston1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cert Publishers	DOCUEN\Cert Publishers
<input type="checkbox"/> Certificate Service DCOM Access	BUILTIN\Certificate Service DCOM Access
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Charlotte L. Sanders	DOCUEN\Charlotte L. Sanders

Afterwards all added users and groups are listed in the *Selected User/Groups* field. Click the *Apply* button to add the users and groups below the *Effective Permissions* heading and display their associated permissions to the selected directory.

When a different node is selected, the users and groups will not be deleted. The effective permissions will be recalculated for the selected node and the selected users or groups. Click the *Analysis* button to display the analysis of the permissions for the selected user or group. To display the group memberships of the selected user or group click the *Structure* button.

To delete an entry check the check box of an user or a group and click the *Remove* button.

Information		Data	Permission Analysis															
User Selection Search <input type="text" value="d_logistic (DOCUEN\d_logistic)"/>				Type:	Basic Permissions						Inheritance							
<input type="button" value="+ Add"/> <input type="button" value="Resolve Group"/> <input type="button" value="Resolve Group Recursively"/>				Allow	Deny	FullAccess	Modify	Read and Execute	List Folder Contents	Read	Write	This Folder Only	Subfolders and Files Only	Subfolders Only	Files Only	This Folder, Subfolders and Files	This Folder and Subfolders	This Folder and Files
<input type="button" value="Remove"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Select all <input type="checkbox"/> Deselect all <input type="button" value="Analysis"/> <input type="button" value="Structure"/>																		
Effective Permissions																		
Abigail Knight								✓	✓	✓	✓							
Charlotte L. Sanders								✓	✓	✓								
d_accounting								✓	✓	✓								
Elliot Roberts								✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
Explicit Permissions																		
DOCUEN\Charlotte L. Sanders					✓													✓
DOCUEN\Charlotte L. Sanders					✓			✓	✓	✓								✓
DOCUEN\d_accounting					✓			✓	✓	✓								✓
DOCUEN\d_controlling					✓			✓	✓	✓								✓
DOCUEN\d_logistic					✓			✓	✓	✓								✓
DOCUEN\d_management																		
DOCUEN\d_management					✓			✓	✓	✓								✓
DOCUEN\d_shipping					✓			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						✓
DOCUEN\d_warehouse					✓			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						✓
Inherited Permissions																		
Administrators					✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						✓
Creator Owner					✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						✓
Local System					✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						✓
Users					✓			✓	✓	✓	✓							✓
Share Permissions																		
Everyone					✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓							

Filters

The Data Explorer displays all directories of a scanned system. To display the filter below the permissions list, click the *Enable* button in the *Filter* group of the ribbon. Once you have defined the desired filter criteria (Write, Read, etc.), only those directories will be displayed in the Data Explorer that match the filter set for the selected user or group.

5.4.2 Analysis Diagram

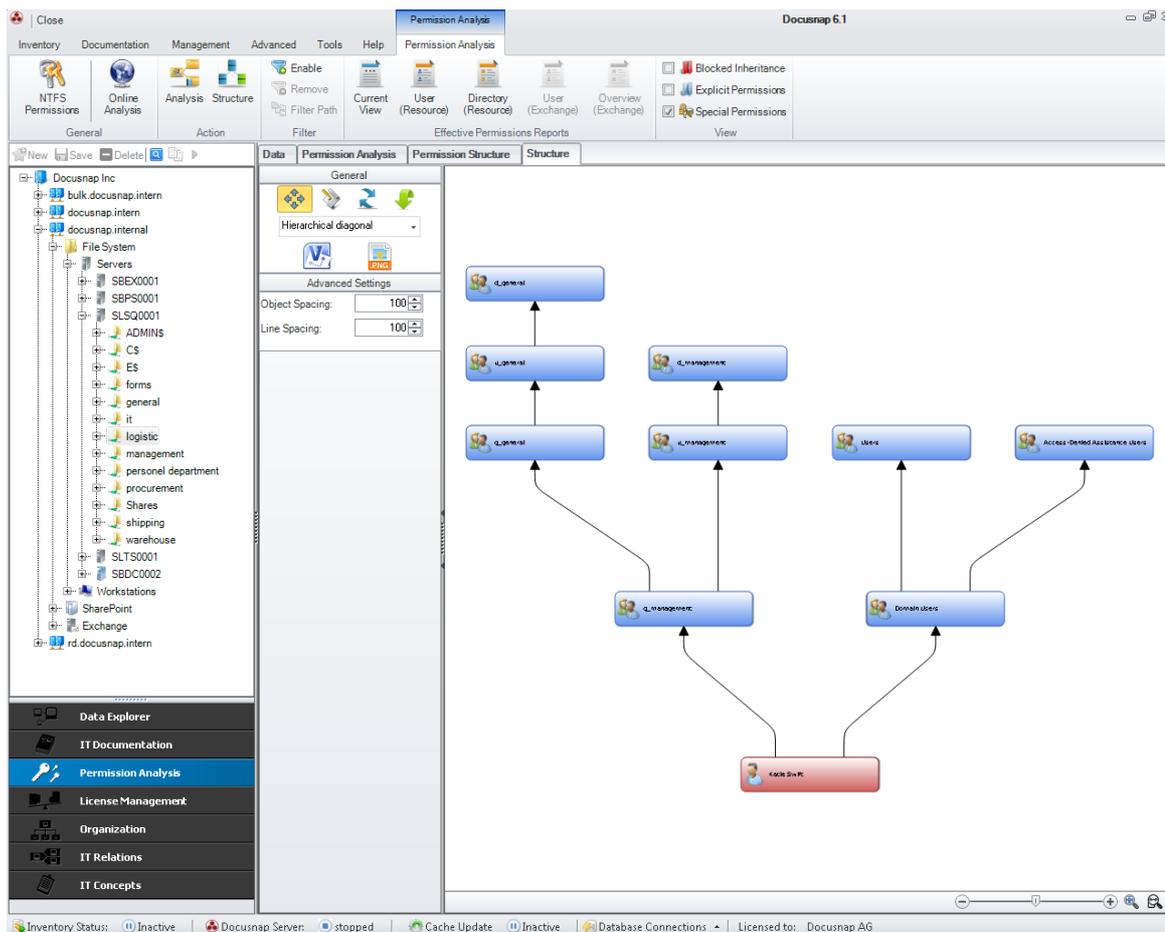
The [Permission Analysis](#) tab displays the effective permissions for the selected user or group. Effective permissions consist of various permissions, such as NTFS and share permissions, explicit permissions and inherited permissions. In the diagram, you can see how a user or group obtained a certain permission.

Click the *Analysis* button to open an additional tab where the permission structure of the selected user or group is displayed. This button is available on the ribbon and on the *Permission Analysis* tab.

Permission Analysis

The *Structure* tab shows which groups the selected user belongs to or which users are members of the selected group. Click the *Structure* button to open the *Structure* tab for the selected group or user.





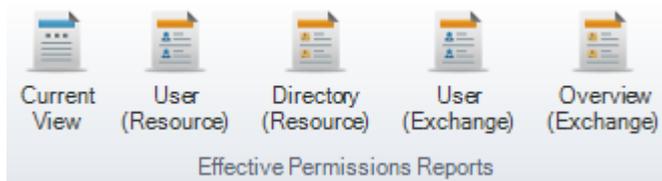
5.4.3 Determining the Effective Permissions

In the Permission Analysis module several different reports can be generated. One report shows the effective permissions for specific users to one or more directories. All users who have a permission to a specific directory will be shown in the second report. The third report, *Current View*, includes the permissions that are currently displayed on the Permission Analysis tab.

In addition, it is possible to create a report for Exchange which lists the permissions of selected users or groups to the mailboxes, mailbox folders, or public folders. The Exchange Overview report lists all users who have permissions to the mailboxes, mailbox folders, and public folders.

Click the button *User (Resource)*, *Directory (Resource)*, *User (Exchange)* or *Overview (Exchange)* to open the wizard to generate the reports.

To create the user reports at least one user or group has to be selected in the *User Selection* before opening the wizard.



The selected node will be used as the starting point.

A hierarchical tree structure displays the entries for the file system, the SharePoint environment, and the Exchange servers. You can specify the number of sub-levels to be included in the report by setting the *Levels* field to the desired value. To include all levels, tick the *Show All Levels* checkbox.

If you enable the *Show Only Changes* checkbox, only those entries will be displayed where the effective permissions of the selected users or groups have changed. If this checkbox is not enabled, all directories, SharePoint entries, Exchange mailboxes, etc. and the corresponding user and group permissions to these items will be shown.



By enabling the *Show Only Changes* option, you can significantly reduce the resulting number of report pages and thereby improve the readability of the report

If the *Special Permissions* checkbox is enabled, the *Special Permissions* will be shown. Otherwise, the report will only show the *Basic Permissions*.

For directory reports additional settings can be determined.

If you check the *Include Default Groups (e.g. Everyone)* option, the users of default groups will also be included. Since domain administrators have full access to all directories in most cases, you can exclude them from the reports by enabling the *Exclude Domain Administrators* checkbox. If the *Show Only Groups* checkbox has been enabled, only the permissions for groups, and not those for individual users, will be included. Usually, the report will show three blocks of permissions (effective, share and NTFS). Using the respective checkboxes you can hide or unhide information.

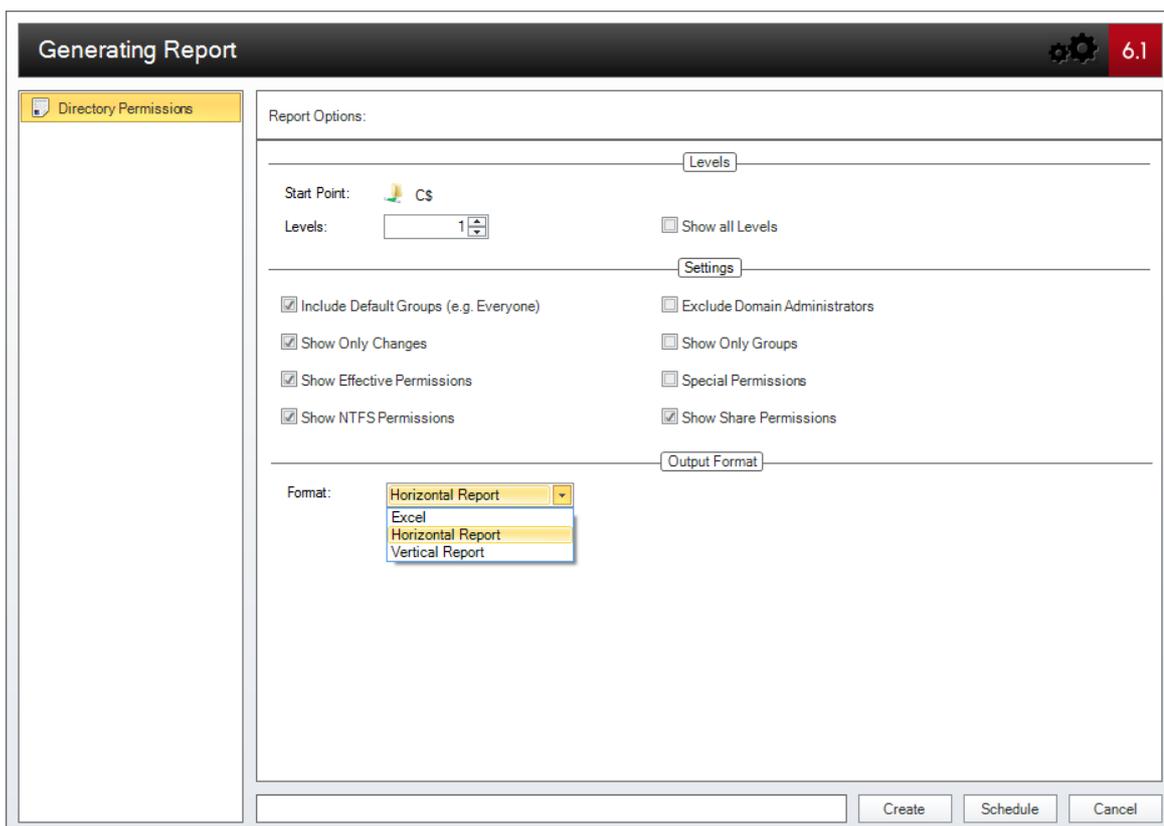
For the user, directory and overview reports three different output formats are provided.

- **Horizontal report:**
The horizontal report lists directories, users/groups and permissions one underneath the other.
- **Vertical report:**
The vertical report displays the directories, users/groups and permissions in a matrix.
- **Excel:**



When in the wizard the output format *Excel* is selected, the data is exported directly into an excel file. The file is saved in the documentation path below the respective domain.

(\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Starting Point\Reports\PermissionsDirectory) or
 (\Documentation Path\Company\Domain\Starting Point\Reports\EffectivePermission)



The report may be exported to various file formats. Click the *Export* button on the *Reporting* ribbon and select the desired format. Clicking the desired format opens a dialog where you can select the pages to be exported. Click the + sign to expand the Settings group. Then, you can select format-specific settings. If the file should automatically be opened after the save, enable the *Open After Export* checkbox.

Scheduling

With Docusnap, you can schedule the creation of reports and have them generated automatically at a later point in time.

Click the *Schedule* button to open the next step. In case you do not create the report using the predefined directory (documentation path), specify an alternative documentation path. By default, the documentation path defined for the Docusnap Server will be used. If you specify an *alternative documentation path*, that path will be used. In addition the language can be chosen.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Generating Report" with a version indicator "6.1" in the top right corner. On the left is a sidebar menu with four items: "Directory Permissions", "Company Selection" (highlighted), "Report", and "Scheduling". The main area is titled "Company Selection" and contains the following fields and controls:

- A "Select Company" button above a text field containing "Docusnap Inc".
- A "Documentation Path" label above a text field containing "C:\Docusnap\Docu".
- An unchecked checkbox labeled "Alternative Documentation Path" above the same text field.
- A "Language" label above a dropdown menu set to "English".
- An unchecked checkbox labeled "Just HTML Documentation".

At the bottom of the dialog, there is a status bar with a green checkmark icon and the text "A company is selected.", followed by "Back", "Next", and "Cancel" buttons.

In the next step, you can select the desired report format.

The following formats are available: docx, xlsx, html, odt and pdf.

Additionally, you can specify here whether to include a cover page, a header and a footer in your report. If you do not make any changes, the settings from the *Designs* or the *Define Company Settings* dialog will be used.

If you tick the *E-Mail Distribution* checkbox, the report will be sent to the e-mail address(es) specified below. Even if *E-Mail Distribution* is enabled, the reports will always be saved to the specified *documentation path*.

Generating Report

6.1

- Directory Permissions
- Company Selection
- Report**
- Scheduling

Distribution Options:

Settings

Header Footer Show Cover

Distribution

E-Mail Distribution

Recipient:

Subject:

Message:

Advanced

- Create DOCX
- Create HTML
- Create PDF
- Create XLSX
- Create ODT

In the next step, you can define scheduling details. This step determines when and how often the report will be created. Click the *Finish* button to save the task.



Scheduling will only work if the Docusnap Server service has been set up.

Report Automation 6.1

- Company Selection
- Report
- Scheduling**

Schedule Report

Common Settings

Name: Every Week on Friday at 14:00:00. Schedule will be used between 13.02.2013 and 13.12.2013.

Type:

Frequency

Interval:

Recurring every: Week(s) on: Monday Wednesday Friday Saturday Tuesday Thursday Sunday

Frequency per day

One-time at: Every Hour(s) Start: End:

Duration

Start Date: End Date: No End Date:

Job Management

  Database Type: SQLServer
Database: Docusnap
Server: sdevsql01

 Docusnap Server: **WKNE0015**
Status: **started**



Part



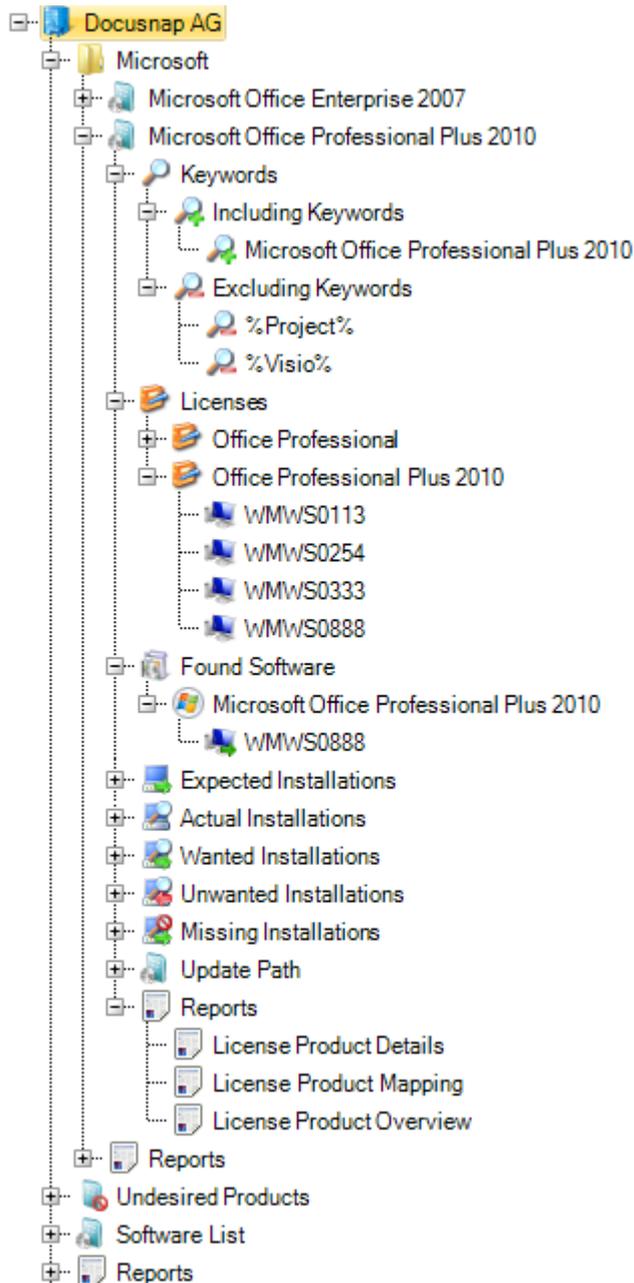
6 License Management

The integrated License Management module in Docusnap enables you to design the process for legal and efficient use of proprietary software and for organizing the licenses purchased in your company. Comprehensive features which are suitable to map nearly all use cases relevant to licensing are available, all evaluations being performed at the company level. Some selected examples for such evaluation options will be given in a [separate section](#).

The dataset on which License Management is based consists of the software found during the most recent [Network Scan](#) of the systems inventoried in the network. All software installations found will be considered, regardless of the device type or the installed operating system, provided that they have been enabled in the License Management options. In addition, all installations found through the Software Search process, as well as manually entered software products will be included in the License Management evaluations.

For most License Management analyses, so-called [keywords](#) are used. These keywords help you to determine the [Software Products](#) found on the inventoried systems without having to enter all variants of a software package explicitly. This means that, e.g., different versions of the same software product can be easily covered just by specifying appropriate keywords. An [in-depth explanation](#) of the use of keywords and the possibilities they offer will be given in the description of the License Management wizard.

The basic structure used to visualize License Management data consists of the following items:



- **Company:** As in the [Data Explorer](#), the company represents the base node of the entire structure under which all data will be located.
- **Category:** All software products recorded in the License Management module must belong to a category. This categorization is used to define the underlying behavior of the License Management module. For example, the types of evaluations to be performed or the types of licensing to be used for the corresponding software product will be defined at this level.
- **Group:** The software groups in the License Management module of Docusnap serve the same purpose as the folders in the file system on the hard disk. Assigning software products to groups makes it possible to organize the wealth of data in the License Management module in a reasonable and transparent way. Thus, software products can be grouped, for example according to their classification (operating systems, application programs, etc.). What is more, various evaluations are provided in the form of reports at the group level. This allows you to analyze a particular group independently from the products in the remaining groups.

- **Product:** The so-called "software products" form the core component of the License Management module. Each "software product" in the Docusnap License

Management sense is a software product, installed in one of the inventoried systems, that needs to be organized.

- [Licenses](#): To each software product, you can assign multiple licenses. These licenses in Docusnap correspond to the real-life software licenses actually purchased and the software contracts signed. From the registered licenses, the License Management module knows how many installations of the software may be found during the inventory process before under-licensing occurs. Depending on the licensing type, the assigned [devices](#) or [users](#) a license has been issued for are located below each license.
- [Keywords](#): As mentioned above, keywords are used when determining and evaluating the corresponding installations on the inventoried systems. The flexibility of definition allows you to specify generic keywords. This ensures that no complex searches are necessary to find the entire software inventory.
- [Update Paths](#): Registered software products are not considered exclusively as standalone items by the License Management module, but may also be associated with other software products. This is especially useful if you want to show particular update structures of various versions of the same software.

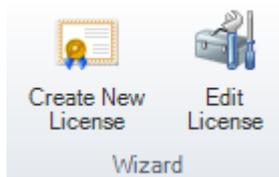
In addition to the elements mentioned above, the License Management tree view contains several nodes for performing various analyses which will be discussed in a [separate section](#). The [Undesired Products](#) node represents a special issue regarding software that should not be found on the target systems. The License Management module provides many comprehensive evaluations in the form of reports.

6.1 General

The License Management ribbon, whose features will be briefly explained in this section, appears when you select the License Management button from the Navigation pane.

Wizard

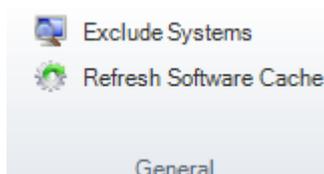
Click the *Create New License* button to start the [License Management](#) wizard which helps you create entries for new [software products](#), and define the necessary settings associated with them. If you would like to edit a previously created software product at a later time, you basically have the choice between two options. Either the data of a tree entry can be edited directly on the [editor](#) tab, or you can open the License Management wizard by clicking the *Edit License* button. To edit a software product using the License Management wizard, you must select a software product or an object at [lower tree level](#).



General

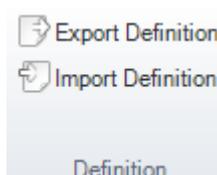
You can use the [Exclude Systems](#) button to specify that particular, previously inventoried systems are not to be included in license management. This means that software found on these systems will no longer be considered by any of the license management evaluations. This is useful if, for example, test environments exist in the company which do not require coverage by license management. If software installed on certain systems is not to be considered, you can exclude these systems from license management. This is also possible from the Data Explorer of the License Management module.

Since a large amount of data must be processed for the evaluation of licensing issues, the respective queries are cached to reduce latency to a minimum. This caching is a fully automatic process performed in the background and indicated by a corresponding message on the Docusnap status bar. If you suspect that the dataset is out-of-date while Docusnap performs an evaluation in the License Management module, a cache refresh can be triggered manually by clicking the *Refresh Software Cache* button on the ribbon. Please note that this explicit update is not necessary during normal operation, but only in exceptional situations.



Definition

You can [export](#) all static entries about the registered software products to an external file or [import](#) such entries from a corresponding, previously exported file, so that these settings do not need to be re-entered from scratch, for example, when switching between databases. With some minor limitations, it is thus possible to import the static settings from earlier Docusnap versions. For these processes, the *Export Definition* and *Import Definition* buttons are available from the ribbon.



Edit

In general, you can create and edit software products in two ways, i.e. using the [License Management](#) wizard and by manually entering/editing data on the [Editor](#) tab that displays in the right pane when you select corresponding items in the license tree view. As a general rule, the use of the License Management wizard is easier and safer. Make sure to restrict manual edits to minor changes. As with other Docusnap modules, it is possible to edit entries made manually.



6.2 License Management Wizard

The easiest way to create new software products or to edit existing entries in the Docusnap License Management module is by using the *License Management* wizard. To open the wizard for creating a new license, click the *Create New License* button on the the License Management ribbon. If a software product or a mode at a level below it is selected in the tree view, you can click the *Edit License* button to open that software product for editing in the License Management wizard

Depending on the selected options, the License Management Wizard features a varying number of steps which basically include the following:

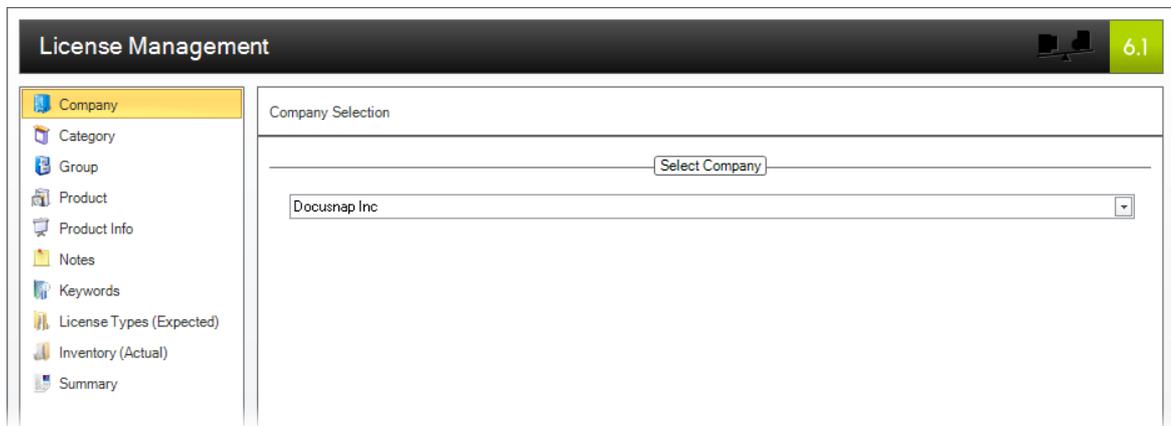
- [Company Selection](#)
- [Category Selection](#)
- [Group Selection](#)
- [Software Product](#)
- [Product Info](#)
- [Notes about the Software Product](#)
- [License Types \(Expected\)](#)
- [System Assignment](#)
- [User Assignment](#)
- [Inventory Acquisition \(Actual\)](#)
- [Summary](#)

For detailed explanations of each step from the License Management wizard, refer to the corresponding sections. There, you will also find exemplary use cases and information on best-practices.

6.2.1 Company Selection

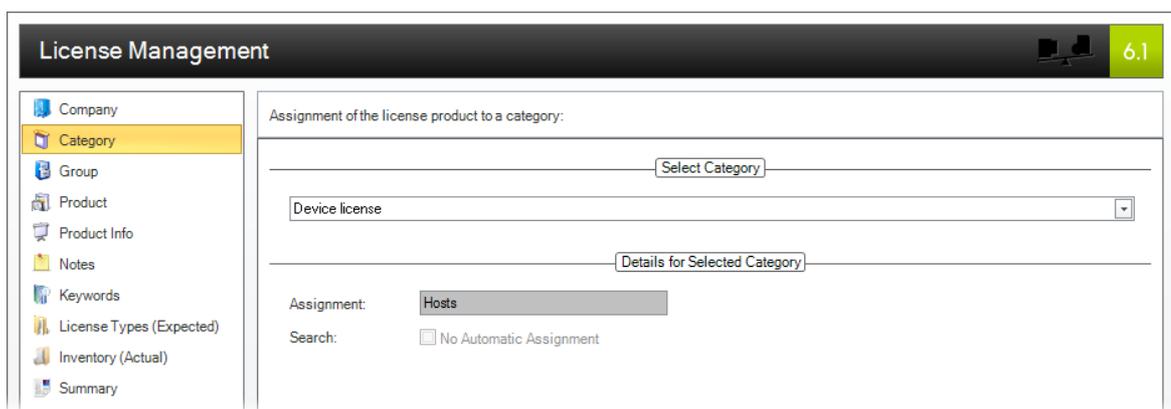
The first step of the License Management wizard allows you to select the company

for which you want to create a [software product](#). Since all evaluations in the License Management module are performed at the company level, the selection made here determines which data will be available in the wizard.



6.2.2 Category

In the second License Management wizard step, you select a specific category for your [software product](#). This assignment defines the basic settings, such as the type of licensing, for the product. The category you select here determines whether it will be possible to use [keywords](#) and define [system assignments](#) or [user assignments](#) in later wizard steps. To add software categories or edit existing ones from the [Manage Software Categories](#) dialog. The word "Manual" in the name of a predefined category indicates that keywords will not be used here, but you will have to enter the used licenses manually. For most cases, it is best to select a category that allows system assignment.



6.2.3 Group

Each [software product](#) must be assigned to a specific group. The software groups ultimately help with the ability to present and evaluate the whole catalog of inventory clearly and enable detached consideration of products in other groups. Either an existing group may be selected, or a new group created, during this third step. The fact that a new group will only be saved after the successful completion of the License Wizard should be kept in mind. In the event that the License Wizard is



terminated, the newly created group will also be lost. Aside from this, several groups can be created at the same time during this wizard step, however a software product may only be assigned to one specific software group. Each group name must be unique for each company, in order to avoid confusion.

The screenshot shows the 'License Management' application window. On the left is a sidebar with a tree view containing: Company, Category, Group (highlighted), Product, Product Info, Notes, Keywords, License Types (Expected), Inventory (Actual), and Summary. The main window title is 'License Management' with a version indicator '6.1' in the top right. The main content area is titled 'Group selection for software product'. It features a 'Select Group' button above a dropdown menu currently showing 'Microsoft Office'. Below this is a section titled 'Details for Selected Group'. It contains a 'Group Name' text box with 'Microsoft Office' and a 'Description' text area with a rich text editor toolbar (bold, italic, underline, font color, font size, bulleted list, numbered list, indent, outdent, undo, redo, copy, paste) and the text 'Microsoft Sans Serif' and '10'. At the bottom right of the main area are 'New' and 'Save' buttons. At the very bottom of the window is a status bar with a green checkmark icon and the text 'A valid group is selected.', along with 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

6.2.4 Product

In the fourth step, you can define the software products, which are at the core of the Docusnap License Management, by specifying their most important attributes. For identification, the product name, the vendor (publisher) and the version are used, similarly to the information Docusnap collects when automatically inventorying the software on the scanned computers. You must enter the product name here. Details about the vendor and the version are optional, but specifying them is highly recommended as they help to generate meaningful evaluations. However, the values entered here are only used for display in the program and in the evaluations. They do not affect the analysis procedures in any way.

In addition to the general data about the software product, you can specify here whether it is an [undesired software product](#) or whether the software is hosted on a terminal server. Undesired software products are displayed under a separate node in the License tree structure, allowing a quick overview. They may later be evaluated separately. This topic will be discussed further in a [separate section](#).

Optionally, you can also select upgrade and downgrade versions of the current software product. Thereby it is possible to map the corresponding update

License Management

hierarchies in the company. For example, you could specify for the current software product MS Office 2007 that it is an upgrade from MS Office 2003 and a downgrade from MS Office 2010. If multiple downgrade versions of a particular software product exist, you can easily select the ones relevant to your company from the combo box. A product will only be used if you enable its checkbox in the respective line. Simply highlighting the item in the combo box is not sufficient. A product that has already been selected as upgrade version cannot be selected as a downgrade version, and vice versa. Of course, only products already existing in the database are available for selection. If necessary, you will have to change these details again, for example, if an upgrade version has not been registered in Docusnap yet and will be added later.

If a software product selected as an upgrade or downgrade, the current product is not automatically added as a downgrade or upgrade, but must be added manually for the respective product.

Upgrade:  Microsoft Office 2010

Product Name	Publisher	Version
<input type="checkbox"/>  Microsoft Office 2003	Microsoft Corporation	2003
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  Microsoft Office 2010	Microsoft Corporation	2010

A list of all of the installed software products found on the inventoried systems is displayed in the lower part of this wizard page. This list only helps you to specify a meaningful name for the software product and has no influence whatsoever on the way the License Management module works.



License Management 6.1

Enter basic information about the selected software product

Basic Information about the Software Product

Product Name: Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2007

Publisher: Microsoft Corporation Version: 12.0.4763.1000

Classification: Undesired Product Availability: Hosted by Terminal Server

Downgrade: Upgrade:

Current Software List to Support Product Name Selection

Name	Publisher
Microsoft Help Viewer 1.1 Language Pack - DEU	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Office 2003 Web Components	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Office Enterprise 2007	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2007	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Office Visio Professional 2007	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Report Viewer 2012-Laufzeit	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Report Viewer Redistributable 2008 SP1	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Report Viewer Redistributable 2008 SP1 Lan...	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Server Speech Platform Runtime (x64)	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Server Speech Recognition Language - TEL...	Microsoft Corporation
Microsoft Server Speech Recognition Language - TEL...	Microsoft Corporation

Filter

Enable Filter

Apply Filter

Remove Filter

A product name is defined but not reviewed yet.

Back Next Cancel

6.2.5 Product Info

The fifth step of the License Management wizard allows you to enter additional information about the current [software product](#). These entries will be used to display selected evaluations in reports. Thus, for example, the persons or groups responsible for the software as well as the operation area and the language setting for the software can be entered here.

All entries on this wizard page are optional. If this information is not required, you can leave the fields empty. The data on this page is used for display only and does not affect the way Docusnap determines the license balance.

6.2.6 Notes

The sixth step allows you to specify additional information on the current [software product](#), i.e. details for which not dedicated entry or selection fields are available. As with other descriptive fields, you can enter any desired text here.

This can be, for example, special licensing conditions, instructions for use or notes about the licensing method used in the company. This is also the place where you can enter cross-references to other products or information from the software vendor.

6.2.7 Keywords

If you selected a category for automated inventory determination in the [second step](#) of the License Management wizard, you can define suitable keywords here to search for corresponding installations on the inventoried systems without having to specify each single variant of a software. Even if you selected a particular

category, it is still possible to disable the use of keywords by unchecking the corresponding checkbox at the top of the wizard page. This, however, considerably limits the possibilities for automated evaluation. The almost unlimited combination of keywords lets you adjust the keywords individually to each and every situation.

The keywords can be defined in the standard mode or the expert mode.

Standard Mode

Generally, you need to distinguish inclusive and exclusive keywords. Inclusive keywords identify all installations that contain the specified keyword, whereas exclusive keywords identify all installations without the specified keyword. Each keyword, regardless of whether inclusive or exclusive, represents a trifold combination consisting of product name, publisher and version. These three components are additively combined for each keyword type, which means that only if all three individual components match for an installation, the entire keyword will return a positive result. You can combine any desired keywords to identify the corresponding installations as precisely as possible, using both inclusive and exclusive keywords to further narrow down a first interim result. Please note that, when using multiple inclusive keywords, every installation that matches any one of these keywords will be returned and, when using multiple exclusive keywords, all installations will be excluded that match any one of those keywords. If you combine inclusive keywords with exclusive keywords, the specified inclusive keywords will only be applied to that set of installations which still remain after applying the exclusive keywords to the entire set of data available.

If you uncheck the checkbox next to one of the three keyword components, that component accepts any character string. This is indicated by a "%" in the respective field.

As with other Docusnap items, you can edit existing keywords. To do so, select the desired keyword, edit it and then click the *Save* button once editing is finished. To remove a keyword, select it and click *Delete*. A list of all inventoried software installations is displayed at the bottom of the wizard page to help you with selection. This list will not affect any evaluations that performed later and serves exclusively as an aid for entering keywords.

License Management 6.1

Define including and excluding Keywords Standard Expert

Keywords

Product Name	Publisher	Version
Including Keywords		
%Microsoft Office%	Microsoft%	12%
Excluding Keywords		
%Visio%	Microsoft%	12%
%Sharepoint%	Microsoft%	12%

Details for selected Keyword

Keyword Type: Including Keyword Excluding Keyword

Product Name: %Microsoft Office%

Publisher: Microsoft% Version: 12%

Name	Publisher	Version
.NET Reflector 7	Red Gate Software Ltd	7.2.0.143
7-Zip 9.20		
7-Zip 9.20	Igor Pavlov	9.20.00.0
Adobe Flash Player 11 ActiveX	Adobe Systems Incorporated	11.3.300.257
Adobe Reader XI (11.0.03) - Deutsch	Adobe Systems Incorporated	11.0.03

Filter
 Enable Filter
 Apply Filter
 Remove Filter

New Delete Save

Valid keywords are defined. Back Next Cancel

Expert Mode

When switching to the expert mode it is possible to define the keywords in even greater detail. Above all in the expert mode conditions can be grouped and linked with *And* or *Or*.

Select in the column *Field* if the specified value has to match the product name, the name of the publisher or the version of the software product.

Click the button **+** to add another row. Click the button **x** to delete the current row.

▪ Operator

In the column *Operator* you can choose between *Contains*, *Contains not*, *=* and *<>*. It is possible to use wildcards for specify the keywords.

- Contains: The specified value must be contained in the *Software Name*, *Publisher* or *Version*.
- Not Contains: The specified value must not be contained in the *Software Name*, *Publisher* or *Version*.
- =: The value has to match the *Software Name*, *Publisher* or *Version* exactly.
- <>: The value must not match to the *Software Name*, *Publisher* or *Version*.

- And/Or

Once several keywords are specified, select in the *And/Or* column whether the conditions should be linked with *And* or *Or*. If the terms are linked with *And*, then all conditions have to apply to the *Software Name*, *Publisher* or *Version*. If the conditions are linked with *Or*, only one of the terms has to match the *Software Name*, *Publisher* or *Version*.

- Grouping

Use grouping to nest the conditions as needed. For example two terms can be linked with *Or* and then be extended with *And* to include another condition. Click the checkbox to select the conditions, afterward click the  button to group the selected entries to one condition. Only conditions listed one below the other can be grouped. The button  marks the start of the group. Click the  button to revoke the grouping. It is possible to organize the grouping in several levels. Select more than one group and click on the  button to group them into one condition.

Product name and publisher and/or versions, which are listed directly under each other and are linked with *And* will be regarded as one combination. These components are additively combined, which means that only if all the individual components match for an installation, the entire keyword will return a positive result. The next specified product name is considered as a new combination.

- Example

In the expert mode you can define that additionally to the Office Product either Windows 7 or Windows 8 has to be installed, to be taken into account in this software product. Also no VMware tools are allowed to be installed, since they indicate that a system is part of a virtual environment. This scenario can be defined as follows.

▪ Preview

Click *Preview* button to apply the search words and display the installed software the conditions match.

Use of Wildcards

In addition to entering exact keyword strings, you can use wildcards as placeholders for other characters to make your keyword entries even more flexible. The table below briefly shows the available wildcards, which characters they can replace and how the wildcards are applied.

Wildcard	Meaning and application	Example
% or *	Any sequence of zero or more characters. Application: %	%Docusnap% --> returns all entries that contain the word "Docusnap" in any position.
_ (underscore)	Replaces any single character. Application: _	_ocusnap --> returns all entries that end with



Wildcard	Meaning and application	Example
		"ocusnap" and are preceded by any single character.
[]	Any one character contained in a given range of characters. Application: [a] or [abcdef] or [a-f]	Do[ck]usnap --> returns all entries containing the word "Docusnap" or "Dokusnap".
[^]	Any one character not contained in a given range Application: [^a] or [^abcdef] or [^a-f]	Dousna[^b] --> returns all entries that begin with "Docusna" and end with any character except "b".

The wildcards presented in the table above may be embedded into keywords as desired. Thus, for example, four sequential underscores, "_", followed by the string "snap", ("____snap") would return any character string that contains any four characters preceding "snap". The combination "[d][^ab]%" means that the first character of the name of the installation must be a "d", followed by any character that is not an "a" or "b", followed by any combination of characters. Consequently, "Docusnap", would be found by this keyword. Keywords are not case-sensitive. Keywords are especially helpful when looking for all releases of a particular software: the keyword "5.%", for example, would find all minor versions of a major version 5. To achieve an optimum result, the keywords should be as exact as possible and as generic as necessary. Thus, excessive usage of "%" may identify many 'wrong' installations that subsequently have to be excluded by exclusive keywords. In contrast, using keywords without any wildcards probably requires you to define a very long list of keywords in order to cover all potential installations. Please note that both the number of keywords and their complexity may affect the duration of the evaluation, the number of keywords usually having a greater influence, especially if you are scanning a very large network environment.

6.2.8 License Types (Expected)

You can assign multiple licenses to each [software product](#) registered in Docusnap.

These licenses map the real-life software licenses actually purchased or the corresponding license agreements concluded. When performing an [evaluation](#), Docusnap uses the total number of registered licenses to determine the inventory of licenses purchased for a particular product and to compare it with the number of installations actually found. This results in the balance of the licenses which shows an over- or under-licensing status which might exist. In this step, you can completely disable the use of licenses for the current software product by unchecking the checkbox at the top of the window. This means, of course, that Docusnap will stop counting the expected licenses for this product.

Specify a unique name for each license registered for this software product in order to be able to identify the entry later. Additionally, select the license type for the current software product, enter the number of licenses purchased and their expiration date(s). By selecting the corresponding options, you can specify that the current software product is unlimited with respect to the number of licenses and/or their validity period. At the bottom of the wizard window, you can specify whether the license includes a maintenance contract and, if any, and enter its expiration date. Licenses that have expired will no longer be taken into account in the License Management evaluations, however, this is not true for systems assigned to these licenses.

Using the dialogs accessible from the Management ribbon, you can edit or delete existing [license types](#) and [software maintenance types](#) or add new ones. The license types and software maintenance types are for information only and do not affect the behavior of Docusnap when determining the corresponding license balance.

Licenses that have already been entered for the current software product will be displayed in the table at the top of the wizard. The area at the bottom can be used to edit or delete existing licenses or to add new licenses for the current software product.

License Management
6.1

- Company
- Category
- Group
- Product
- Product Info
- Notes
- Keywords
- License Types (Expected)
- Inventory (Actual)
- Summary

Register licenses for current software product

Licenses

Name	License Type	Bought	Valid until	Maintenance Type	Maintenanc...
Office Professional Plus 200...	Volume license	10	Unlimited	Software Assurance	Unlimited

Details for selected License

Name: License Type:

Bought Licenses: Limited to Unlimited License valid: Unlimited Validity Valid until:

Maintenance: Maintenance valid: Unlimited Validity Valid until:

Valid licenses are defined.

6.2.9 System Assignment

If, in the [second step](#) of the License Management wizard, you selected a category which allows you to manually assign licenses to systems, this wizard page will display all identified systems, grouped by domains and subdomains. Please note that the list will only show systems where an operating system is installed that has been selected on the License Management page of in the Options dialog. All previously entered licenses for the current software product as well as any systems that might have been assigned already will be displayed in the list on the right side of the wizard page. Within the context of a software product, systems are always assigned on the license level. Thus, a specific system can only be assigned to a specific license. Generally, multiple assignments are not allowed.

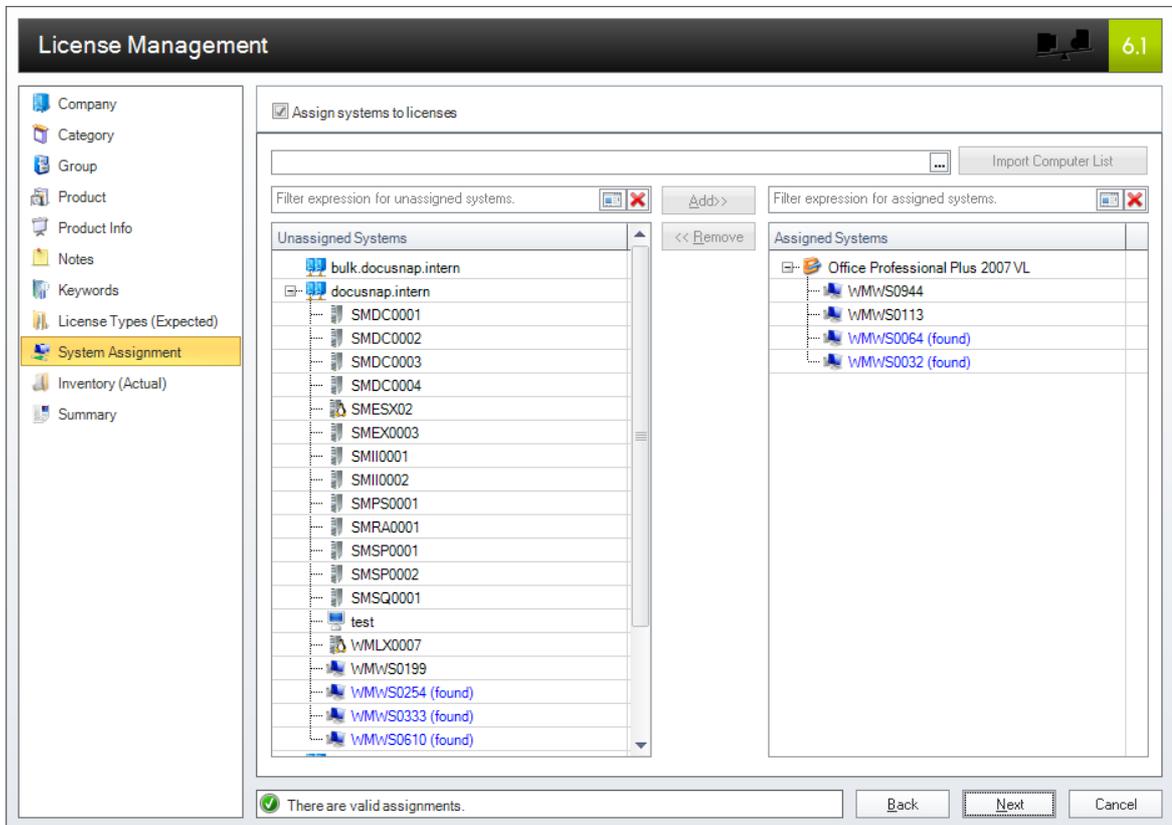
To assign a system to a particular license, select the corresponding system in the list on the left and the corresponding license in the list on the right. Click the *Add >>* button to assign the system to the license. To undo an existing assignment, simply select the desired system in the list on the right and then click the *<< Remove* button. You do not have to select the domain the system belongs, since it will automatically be placed in its correct position. In both cases (adding and removing), you can select multiple systems at a time. To do so, simply hold down the Ctrl key while clicking individual systems with the mouse, or hold down the Shift key to select a contiguous group of systems. Please note that it is not possible to select systems across domain or license boundaries. Theoretically, you can also assign licenses to systems which could not be scanned by the inventory process.

License Management

However, these systems cannot be considered in an evaluation before you have not performed a new, successful inventory scan. If the systems could not be found during the inventory process due to given circumstances, but might be successfully scanned in the future, it might make sense to assign them anyway. All evaluations in the License Management module update automatically to reflect the new data.

Depending on the use case and category you selected, assigning systems to licenses might mean a different thing. In the classic application case, systems where the respective license agreements was accepted are assigned to the individual licenses. This implies that the relevant software product has been installed on these systems and can be found there. The evaluation will consider the number of systems if systems have been assigned, the number of processors if processors have been assigned, and the number of processor cores if processor cores have been assigned. For categories which do not involve automatic determination of the inventory, system assignment may have a different consequence from that described above: In this case, the assigned systems are considered as the identified actual inventory. This procedure replaces the automated determination of installations in cases where it is not possible, such as in a Terminal Server environment.

Theoretically, you can disable systems assignments by clearing the checkbox at the top of the wizard page. However, this approach is not recommended if you add a software product to a category which involves automated inventory determination, since this would considerably limit the available evaluation options.

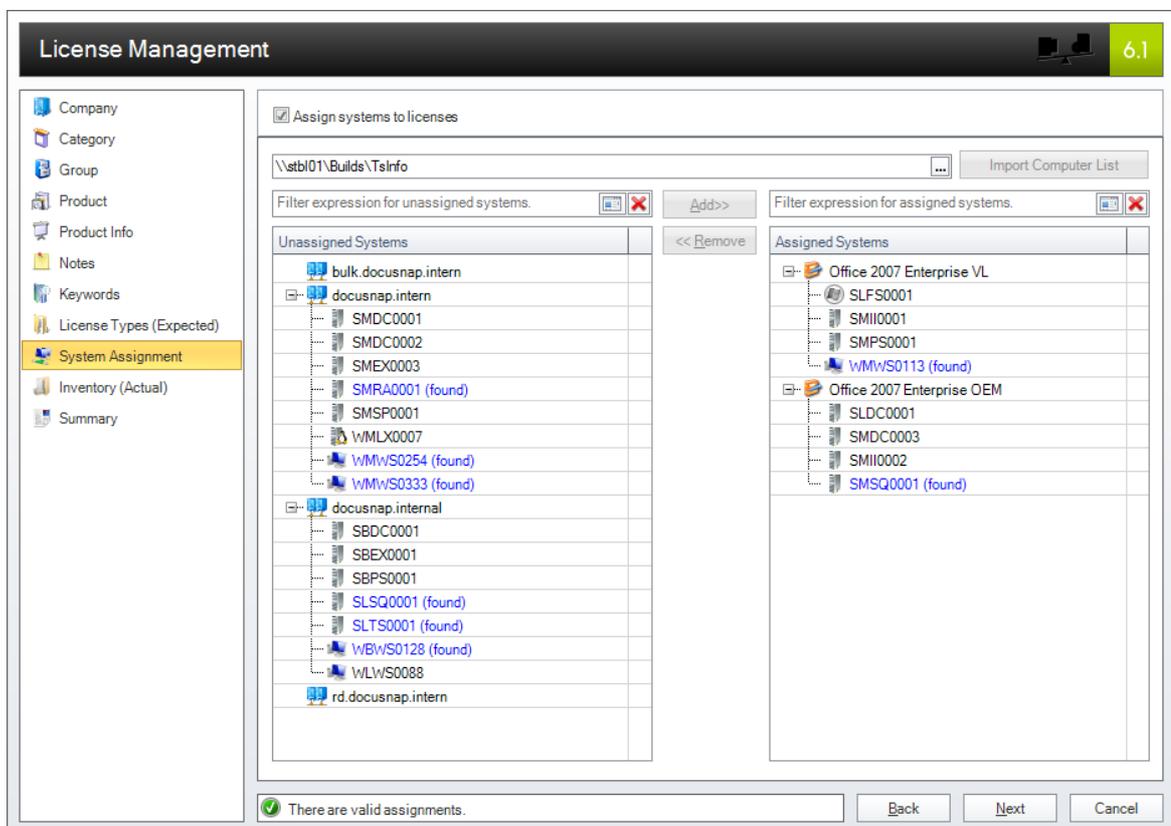


Import Computer List

In Docusnap, you can use the [DocusnapTSInfo](#) application to create a log of all systems which log on to a Terminal Server. Based on the information retrieved, these systems can be assigned to the licenses. This requires, however, that the systems have previously been inventoried by Docusnap.

To import the computer list, first select the path where the XML files are located. Then, select the license. This finally enables the *Import Computer List* button. Click the *Import Computer List* button to search the specified folder for the XML files. All systems listed will be assigned to the selected license.

If necessary, you can assign more systems later or undo the assignment of previously assigned systems.



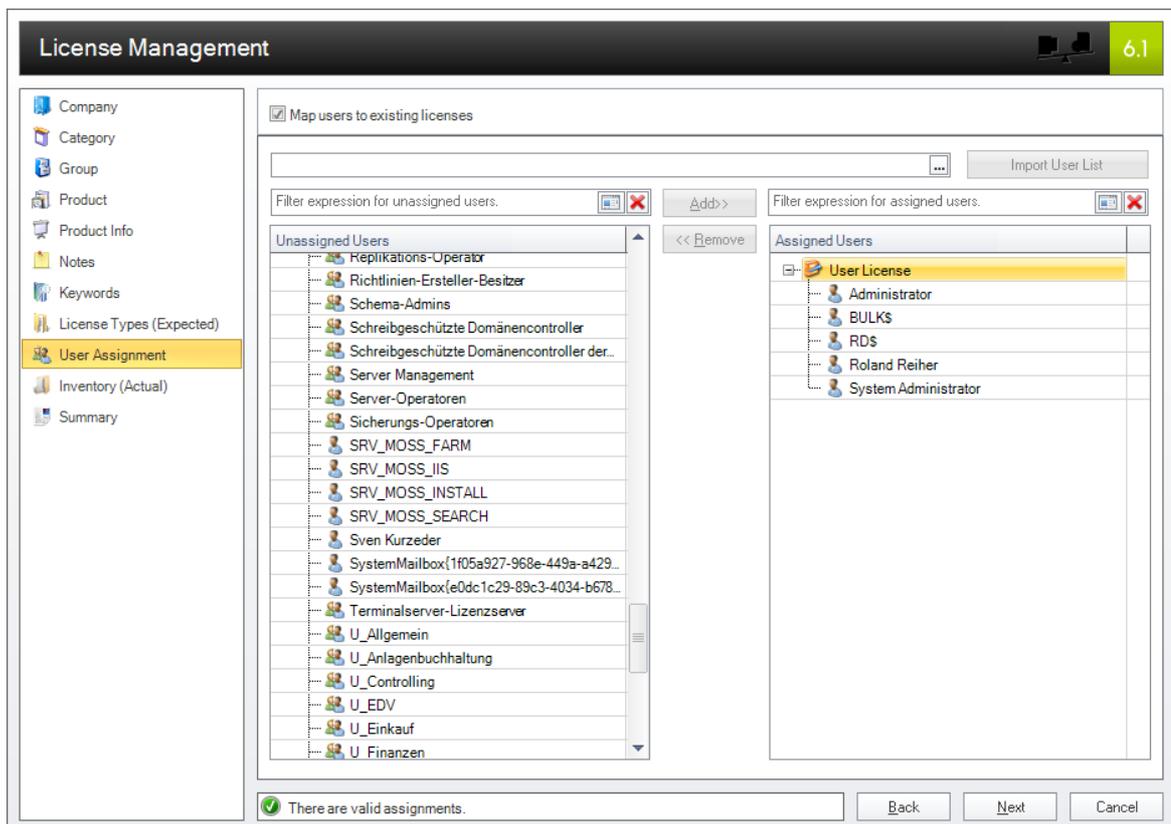
6.2.10 User Assignment

If, in the [second step](#) of the License Management wizard, you selected a category which allows you to manually assign licenses to users, this wizard page will display all Active Directory users and Active Directory groups. You can assign either users or groups. When assigning groups, you have the option to either assign the group itself or all users who have been assigned as members of this group during the most recent inventory scan. Once you have assigned the group, the number of licenses required for this group will be calculated based on the current inventory. For this reason, the number of required licenses may change with each new

inventory scan if other users have been assigned to the group in the meantime.

Assigning users to licenses is similar to [assigning systems to licenses](#).

System and user assignments are mutually exclusive, i.e. a license may only be assigned either to a system or to a user, but never to both at the same time. However, if a specific use case requires this combination, you can work around this issue by creating two separate software products in Docusnap.

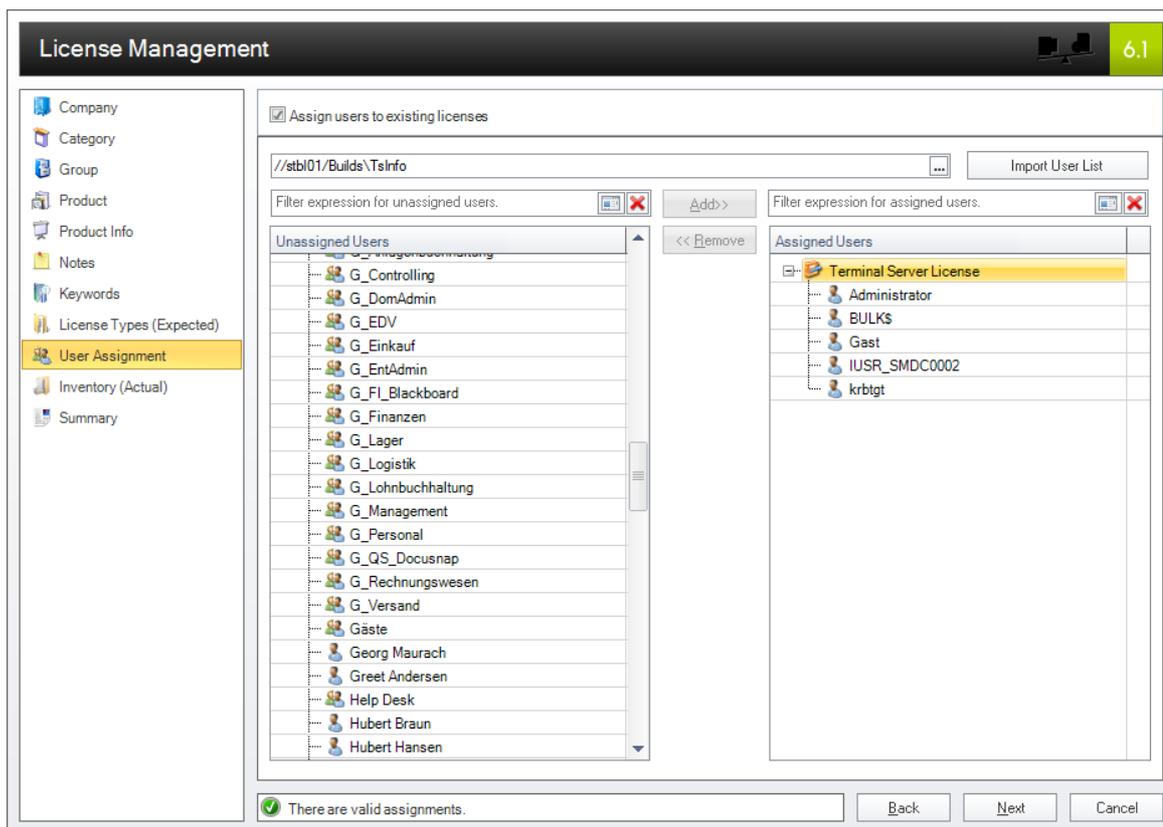


Import User List

In Docusnap, you can use the [DocusnapTSInfo](#) application to create a log of all users who log on to a Terminal Server. Based on the information retrieved, these users can be assigned to the licenses. This requires, however, that the users have been inventoried by Docusnap previously.

To import the user list, first select the path where the XML files are located. Then, select the license. This finally enables the *Import User List* button. Click the *Import User List* button to search the specified folder for the XML files. All users listed will be assigned to the selected license.

If necessary, you can assign more users later or undo the assignment of previously assigned users.



6.2.11 Inventory Determination (Actual)

In this step, you can take corrective action with respect to the automatic determination of the existing installations and the associated evaluations in the context of License Management. At the top of the wizard page, a list will be displayed which contains the current inventory. It shows all systems where a software installation was found which matches the previously entered [keywords](#). If the *Use exclusive assignment* checkbox is enabled, the list only includes those systems which were actually assigned to the current software product in the [System Assignment](#) step. This is an alternative way to assign licenses to systems. This procedure is not available for [user assignment](#). This exclusive assignment will not be reflected in the way how the [software products](#) are displayed in the license tree view. It will, however, be taken into account in the [evaluations](#) and reports.

The number of licenses in use in the company, as determined by the automatic software inventory mentioned above, will be displayed in the *Identified automatically* field. The difference between this number and the number of available, registered, purchased licenses will be shown in the License Balance field. By entering a corresponding correction value in the Correction Value field, you can adjust the license balance manually. This procedure is always necessary if the automatic assignment was not possible for whatever reasons. The correction value may be either a positive or negative number. A positive correction value means that additional installations will have to be added to the installations found, i.e. additional licenses are required. In contrast, a negative correction value means that

the more licenses were found to be in use than are in reality. In this case, you can adjust the automatic inventory to the lower value. A correction value of zero means that the evaluation will only be based on the result from the automatic inventory. Manual correction values are kept beyond the expiration data of the registered licenses.

License Management
6.1

- Company
- Category
- Group
- Product
- Product Info
- Notes
- Keywords
- License Types (Expected)
- System Assignment
- Inventory (Actual)
- Summary

Define correction values for inventory

Current Inventory

Use exclusive assignment - calculation of the actual license assets only considers assigned systems

Name	Operating System	Platform	Processor Name	Count	Cores	
WMW/S0032	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	GenuineIntel	Intel(R) Xeon(R) C...	1	1	1
WMW/S0064	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	GenuineIntel	Intel(R) Xeon(R) C...	1	1	1
WMW/S0254	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	GenuineIntel	Intel(R) Xeon(R) C...	1	1	1
WMW/S0333	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	GenuineIntel	Intel(R) Xeon(R) C...	2	2	2
WMW/S0610	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	GenuineIntel	Intel(R) Xeon(R) C...	1	2	2

Correction Value And Notes

Identified automatically: Systems Correction Value:

Available Licenses: Systems License Balance:

Notes:

✔ Data was loaded successfully.
Back
Next
Cancel

6.2.12 Summary Page

The last step of the License Management wizard presents a summary of all settings specified previously, except the [note fields](#). The changes are only applied to the database when you click the *Finish* button. If you click the *Cancel* button here, all changes made, including any [software groups](#) you might have created, will be discarded.

© 2014 itelio GmbH

Changing Date: 3/21/2014

The screenshot shows the 'License Management' application window. On the left is a navigation pane with options: Company, Category, Group, Product, Product Info, Notes, Keywords, License Types (Expected), Inventory (Actual), and Summary (selected). The main area displays a 'Summary of the selected options' window with a tree view and a table of attributes.

Summary of the selected options.

Summary

- Company

Attribute	Value
Company Name	DocuSnap Inc
- Category

Attribute	Value
Name	Device license
Assignment Method	Hosts
No Automatic Assignment	No
- Group

Attribute	Value
Group Name	
- Software Product

Attribute	Value
Product Name	Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2007
Publisher	Microsoft Corporation
Version	12.x
Undesired Product	No
Correction Value	0
Technical Responsible	Daniel Green
Legal Responsible	Geoffrey Brown
Technical Owner	Daniel Green
Legal Owner	Geoffrey Brown
Technical User	Daniel Green
Legal User	Geoffrey Brown
City	Washington, D.C.

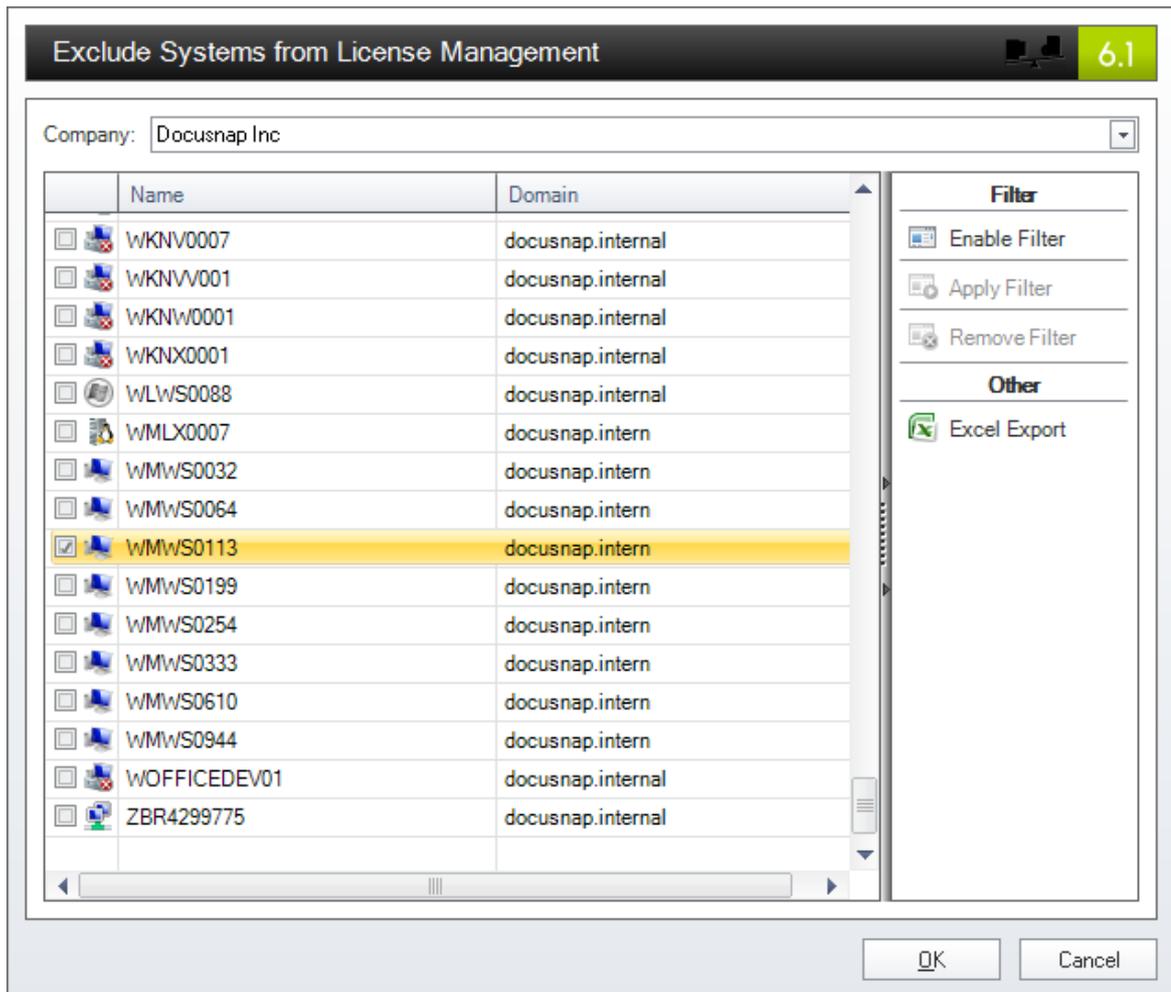
Click "Finish" to save the software product. [Back] [Finish] [Cancel]

6.3 System Exclusions

Systems, and the software installed on them, may be excluded from license management either by means of the *Exclude Systems* button or the *Exclude from License Management* checkbox in the [editor](#) window. Clicking the Exclude Systems button opens a dialog where you can edit the exclusion list.

After you have selected the corresponding company, all systems associated with this company and running an operating system which is taken into account in License Management will appear in the list below it. By enabling the checkbox next to a particular system, you can exclude it from License Management. Accordingly, systems without a checkmark will be included in the License Management process. You can quickly and easily undo a previous system exclusion by clearing the corresponding checkbox again.

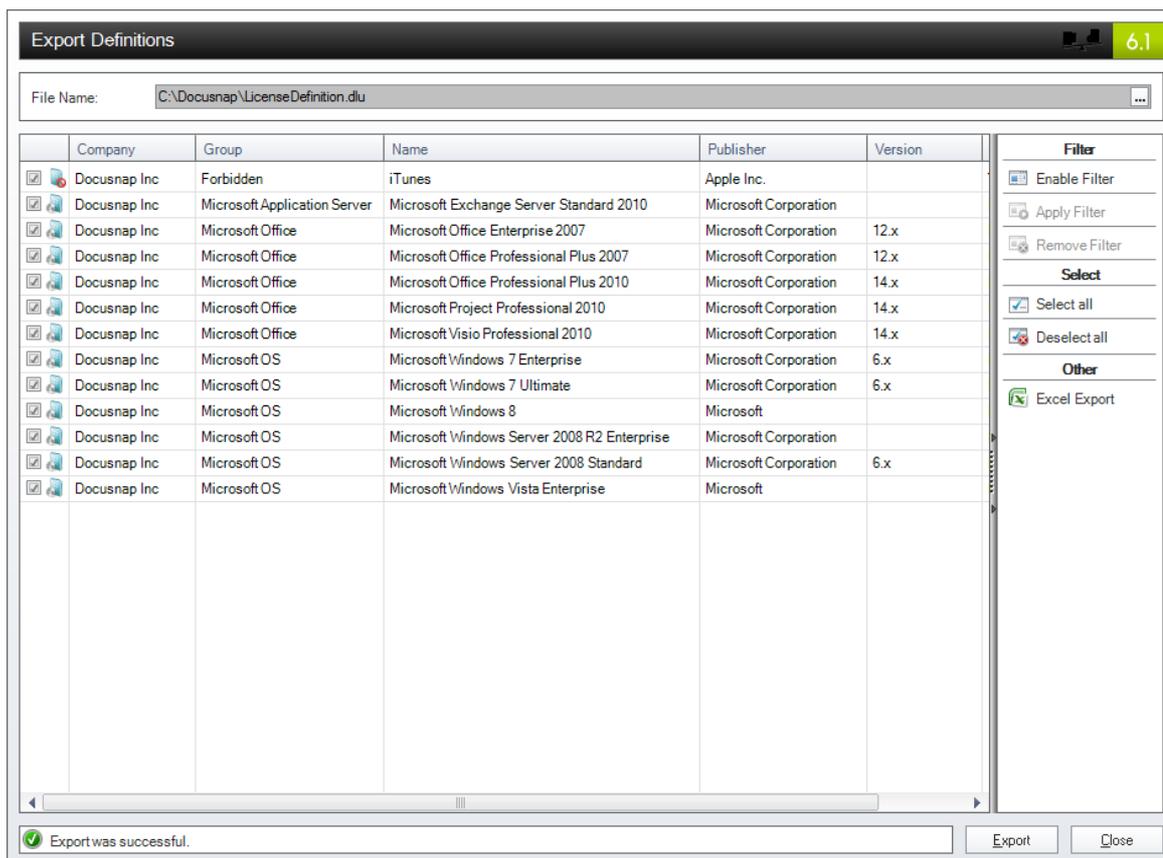
Excluding certain systems from license management may be useful, for example, if a system is operated as a test environment for which no actual license is required. If a company has a great number of inventoried systems, it might be a good idea to use the filter options next to the list to filter the systems, for example, by domain and thus facilitate their selection.



6.4 Export Definitions

You can export all static data related to the registered [software products](#) to an external file, so that these settings need not be re-entered from scratch, for example, when switching between databases. Click the *Export Definition* button in the License Management ribbon to open a dialog where you can save the data on registered software products to an external file.

You can specify the file to which you want to export the corresponding data in a field at the top of the dialog. Clicking the button will open a file/path selection dialog. The table in the Export Definitions dialog shows a list of all products registered for all companies in this database. Click the *Export* button to export all selected software products to the specified file. Please note that only software products whose checkbox is enabled will be exported.



6.5 Import Definitions

You can import previously [exported license definitions](#) to another database. To do so, click *Import Definition* button. A dialog for configuring this import process opens.

After clicking the  button next to the field at the top of the dialog, you can select a previously exported definition file. It is also possible to import data from earlier Docusnap versions into a Docusnap 6 database. For this purpose, you need to set the correct file type in the file selection dialog: *Docusnap 5.x/6.x License Definition (*.dlu)* or *Docusnap 4.x License Definition (*.xml)*.

Select a target company where the corresponding data will be inserted during the import process. To determine if a given software product to be imported already exists for the target company, the name, the vendor and the version of the respective software product will be compared. If the name, vendor and version of the software product match and the checkbox next to the product to be imported is checked, all values related to the current software product will be overwritten in the target company.

When you import Docusnap 4 software products that have not been assigned to any group, Docusnap will create a new group with the name *Import 4.x* and the current date. Corresponding names (e.g. *Import 4.x - No.1*) will be generated in other cases too, such as naming the individual licenses. This is necessary in order to

make a fully automated import process possible without requiring user interaction. You can adjust these automatically created names as desired once the import process is complete.

The checkboxes in the *Import Range* group allow you to select which data will be imported from the import file into the database. Since some of the options are linked, disabling some checkboxes may cause another checkbox to be disabled as well. In addition, there are differences between data imported from the Docusnap version 4 and 5/6 file types. Therefore, not all options are available when you import a Docusnap 4 file.

Import Definitions 6.1

File Name:

Target Company:

Import Range: Software Products Product Info Notes on the Software Products Keywords
 Update Path Licenses Extensions

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group	Name	Publisher	Version	Und
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Forbidden	iTunes	Apple Inc.		Yes
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Application Ser...	Microsoft Exchange Server Standard 2010	Microsoft Corporation		No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Office	Microsoft Project Professional 2010	Microsoft Corporation	14.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Office	Microsoft Visio Professional 2010	Microsoft Corporation	14.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Office	Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Microsoft Corporation	14.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Office	Microsoft Office Enterprise 2007	Microsoft Corporation	12.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft Office	Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2007	Microsoft Corporation	12.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft OS	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise	Microsoft Corporation		No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft OS	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Standard	Microsoft Corporation	6.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft OS	Microsoft Windows Vista Enterprise	Microsoft		No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft OS	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	Microsoft Corporation	6.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft OS	Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate	Microsoft Corporation	6.x	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Microsoft OS	Microsoft Windows 8	Microsoft		No

Filter
 Enable Filter
 Apply Filter
 Remove Filter
Select
 Select all
 Deselect all
Other
 Excel Export

6.6 Evaluations

To evaluate the results in terms of licensing, many different options, that can be adjusted and extended using the Customizing module, are available in Docusnap. Basically, you have the choice between evaluations available directly from the [tree view](#) in the License Management module and evaluations presented as [reports](#). Please note that the report-type evaluations usually provide more functionality, especially when it comes to determining the licenses currently in use in the company. Most automated evaluations will result from applying the defined [keywords](#) to the inventoried software dataset and thus are based on the identified systems where the corresponding installations have been found. [Undesired Products](#) refer to a special form of evaluation that will be explained in a separate



section.

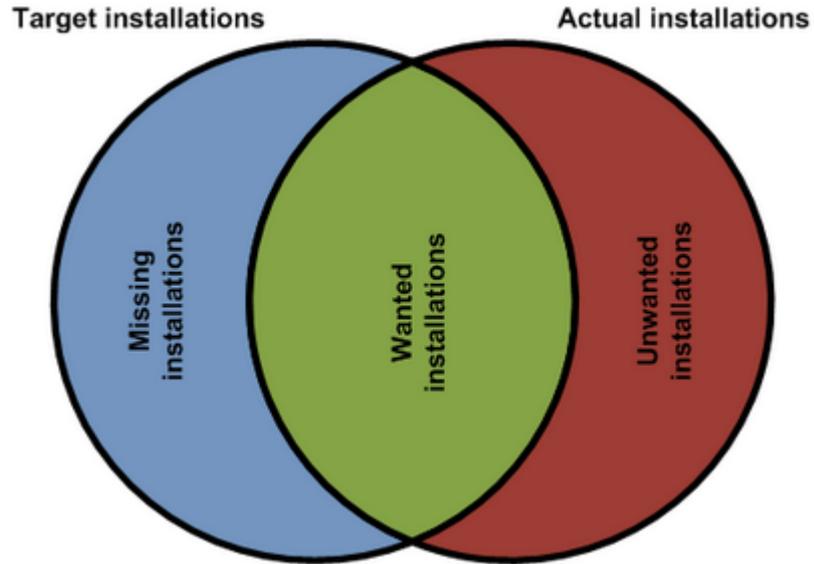
Tree view evaluations

All tree view evaluations described in this section feature a consistent use of icons which enable you to easily differentiate between the various operating systems and system types where the corresponding installation was found. Under the *Found Software* node, you will find the most basic evaluation in the License Management tree view. All software products found on the inventoried systems that match the corresponding combination of keywords are displayed here. Accordingly, installations of products for which no keywords have been defined or categories whose products have been entered manually will not be shown under this caption. Found installations are grouped by name, vendor (publisher), version and operating system. Each node lists all systems where the corresponding installation was found. The icons displayed in the tree help you to identify whether the corresponding installation is wanted or unwanted, the  icon representing a wanted installation and the  icon an unwanted installation. Whether a certain installation is wanted or unwanted, depends on the assignment of systems to individual product licenses. All installations on systems that have been assigned to a valid license for the corresponding product are considered as wanted installations, all others are considered as unwanted installations.

For a quick overview of the current licensing situation, four additional nodes are available in the License Management tree. Under the *Expected Installations* node, you can find the systems assigned to all licenses available for the respective software product in a flat list. The *Actual Installations* node features a list of all systems where at least one installation was found which matches the specified combination of keywords. All systems that have been assigned to a valid license of the current software product and on which at least one installation was actually found by applying the defined keywords are listed under the *Wanted Installations* node. This exactly represents the intersection between the *Actual Installations* and *Expected Installations* categories. Contrary to this, the *Unwanted Installations* node lists all systems to which no valid license for the respective software product has been assigned. The *Missing Installations* node lists those systems where an installation should have been found, but where this was not the case when Docusnap applied the keywords. Ideally, the two categories *Expected Installations* and *Actual Installations* should be identical and exactly the same systems should be found under the *Wanted Installations* node. In a perfect environment, the two categories *Unwanted Installations* and *Missing Installations* would be empty. If any systems are listed under these two nodes, corrective actions are necessary on the network level or with the respective installations.

The figure below graphically illustrates this fact, the circle on the left representing the expected installations and that on the right the actual installations found by the inventory process. The green intersection of the two circles in the figure represents

the wanted installations; this results in the missing installations being the remaining set of the expected installations, depicted in blue, and the unwanted installations being the remaining set of the actual installations, depicted in red. In an ideal environment in terms of licensing, the two circles would be congruent.



Evaluations in Reports

Reports present evaluations at the product, group and company levels.

For these reports, Docusnap calculates the license balance. There are two different evaluation variants.

Product Details and Product Overview

You can create a *Product Details* report and a *Product Overview* report at every level. These reports contain different types of information about the respective product. At the group or company level, all products associated with the group or the company are shown. Additionally, the licenses that have been created for these products are listed.

This evaluation includes a comparison between the actual and the expected values.

The license balance will be displayed in tabular and graphical forms, based on the licenses, keywords, correction values and upgrades.

Variance Analysis	
Available Licenses	13
In use (mapped automatically)	10
Correction Value (manual)	0
Subtotal	3
Correction Upgrade / Downgrade Licenses	0
Total	3

Sum of all valid licenses. If the number of licenses is unlimited the needed amount of licenses is displayed.

Number of systems the software is installed on.

Number of licenses used by update or downgrade paths.

Number of missing or surplus licenses.

License Evaluation

All software products associated with the group or company will be displayed in a license evaluation table. A chart with an overview of missing or unnecessary licenses is displayed below the table.

Company: Docusnap AG						
Group: Microsoft						
Product Name	Available	In use (automatical)	Correction Value (manual)	Subtotal	Upgrade/ Downgrade	Total
Microsoft Office Enterprise 2007	3	3	0	0	0	0
Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	10	1	0	9	0	9

6.7 Undesired Products

Products that should not be installed on any system in the company are referred to as undesired products in Docusnap. You can define this classification at the respective product level either from the License Management wizard or by using the editor. In the tree view, undesired products are identified by a "forbidden" icon (🚫).

The separate *Undesired Products* node at the company level allows you to perform a quick and comprehensive evaluation. Below it, you can find a simple tree structure which displays each affected product and each system where such a product has been found. Aside from this, you can display an aggregate view of all systems found in this category at each level below this node.

6.8 Docusnap TS Info

Docusnap provides the *DocusnapTsInfo.exe* utility to help you identify all systems and users that log on to a terminal server. This makes it easier, in the context of License Management, to assign licenses to systems and users that use the terminal server.

To start the logging process, add the *DocusnapTsInfo.exe* executable file e.g. to the login script for the domain. You can set a particular parameter to define the

directory where the XML files will be stored. As a parameter, you need to specify the path to that location:

```
DocusnapTsInfo.exe "\\STBL01\Builds\TsInfo"
```

This folder contains the XML files that hold information on the logged-in users and devices.

The script is located in the *Bin* folder of the installation path.



Part



7 Organization



Using extensions, you can add extra information to the objects listed in the Explorer. The extensions can be comments, finance data, passwords, contracts or reminders. The tabs for entering comments, finance data, passwords, contracts or reminders will be displayed when you click an object in the Data Explorer, License Management explorer or Organization explorer.

[Extensions](#)

[Organization](#)

7.1 Extensions



Extensions allow you to add some extra information to individual objects in Docusnap. For example, the *Passwords* extension provides a comfortable way to manage credentials, and the *Contracts* extension lets you store and manage contractual agreements.

The following extensions are currently available in in Docusnap:

[Comments](#)

[Finances](#)

[Passwords](#)

[Contracts](#)

[Reminders](#)

The extensions can be created, displayed and managed on additional tabs in the main window. For each of these extensions, you can store attachments, such as purchase contracts, SLAs and more.

[Attachments](#)

7.1.1 Comments

Comments can be used to store additional information about individual objects. You can, for example, store the current configuration file for a firewall (SNMP device). Comments can also be shown on datasheets and in reports.

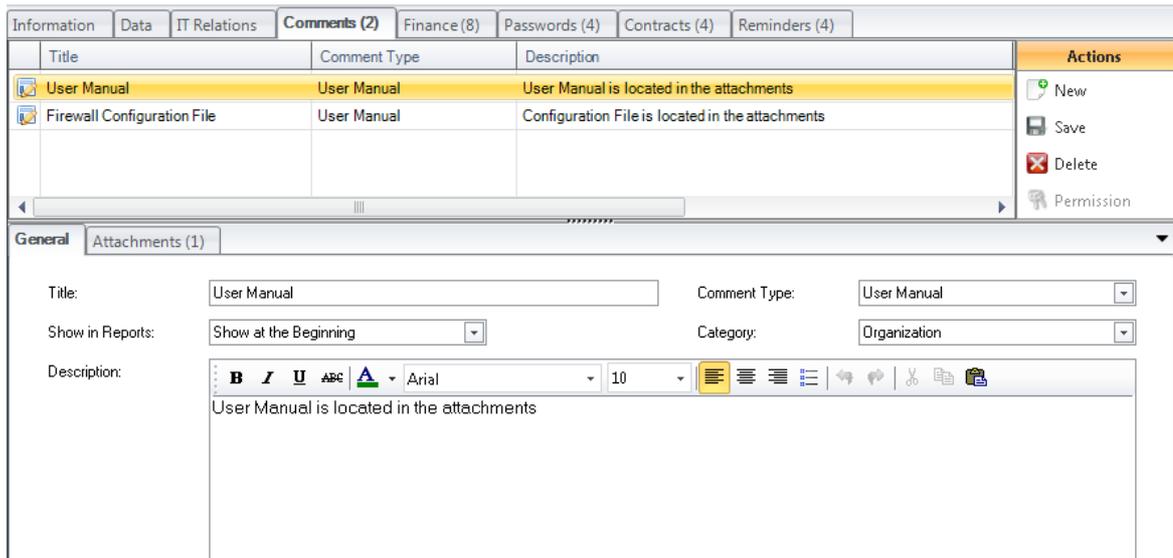
Click the *New* button on the *Comments* tab to add a comment for the selected object. The *Title* and *Comment Type* fields are mandatory and must be filled in. The *Show in Reports* list box allows you to specify for each comment whether it will be shown in reports, and if so, whether it will be displayed at the beginning or at the end of the report. Click the *Save* button to add the comment to the list.

A special feature is that you can save a *.txt* file as a comment. When you use drag & drop to add a *.txt* file to the list, Docusnap retrieves its information and applies it to the corresponding fields (*Title*, *Description*, etc.). Before saving the file, set the comment type in the *Comment Type* dialog.

To edit a saved comment, select it and click the *Edit Selected* button. Its comment will be displayed on the *General* tab. There, you can edit the comment. Click the *Save* button to apply the changes. To delete a comment, click the *Delete* button.

You can also add attachments to an extension. The *Title* field is mandatory. The file name and the size of the selected file will appear in the *File* and *Size* fields. These fields are read-only. The *Description* field is optional.





7.1.2 Finances

The *Finance* extension is used for storing financial data. You can, for example, record and evaluate the costs for the entire life cycle of a server.

Click the *New* button on the *Finance* tab to create a new finance entry. The *Title* and *Amount* fields are mandatory and thus must be filled in. All list fields, such as *Cost Type*, *Payment*, *Depreciation Method* and *Date of Purchase* show a default value that you can change, if necessary. The *Useful Life (Months)* value defaults to 36 months. If no depreciation is applied or a different useful life is targeted, you can delete or change this value. The *Low-Value Asset* checkbox indicates whether the purchased product represents a *low value asset*. The other fields are optional.

To add the financial data entry to the list, click the *Save* button. To edit a saved financial data entry, select it and click the *Edit Selected* button. Its content will be displayed on the *General* tab. You can edit the data in this data entry screen. To apply the changes, click the *Save* button.

Title	Cost Type	Payment	Amount	Description	Document Number	Actions
Mobile Phone	Direct Costs	One-time	499,00	Employee: Robert...	48642315	New
Workstation	Direct Costs	One-time	1.099,00	Location: 3. floor, r...	48642315	Save
Portable Navigatio...	Direct Costs	One-time	399,00	Car: M-IT-123	17742	Delete
Portable Air-Condi...	Direct Costs	One-time	545,00	Location: 2. floor, r...	33547979	Permission

General Attachments (0)

Title: Cost Center:

Document Number: Date of Purchase:

Amount: Useful Life [Months]:

Cost Type: Depreciation Method:

Payment: Special Depreciation:

Low-Value Asset: Category:

Description:

7.1.3 Passwords

Passwords can be simply and quickly organized, saved and retrieved using the *Passwords* extension type. Passwords associated with an object in Docusnap will be encrypted and are thus safely stored in the database.



The *Passwords* tab will only be displayed if you created an encryption file for the selected database. The passwords will be stored in encrypted format in the database and can only be read by users who use the same encryption file. If you did not create an encryption file or fail to select it when switching to another database, the Password feature is not accessible. The encryption file can be created during the [Startup Wizard](#) procedure or from the [Options](#) dialog.

You can add a new password for the selected object by clicking the *New* button on the *Passwords* tab. The *Title*, *Password* and *Password Type* fields are mandatory. The remaining fields are optional. To add the new password to the list, click the *Save* button. To edit a saved password, you select it from the list and click the *Edit Selected* button. Its content will be displayed on the *General* tab.

Click the  icon in the *Password* field to displays the password as plain text. Clicking the icon again will replace the passwords by asterisks again. Using the  icon, you can copy the password to the clipboard. If [Password Logging](#) is enabled, Docusnap will keep a log of all users who copied or displayed the password.



Information	Data	IT Relations	Comments (2)	Finance (8)	Passwords (4)	Contracts (4)	Reminders (4)	
Title	User Name	Password Type	Password Validity	System Name	Actions			
Wlan_Guest Encryption		Wi-Fi Protected Access (WP...	Unlimited	SSID: Wlan_Guest	New			
Wlan_Intern Encryption		Wi-Fi Protected Access (WP...	Unlimited	SSID: Wlan_Intern	Save			
SQL Server - SMSQ00...	user	User Password	Limited	SMSQ0001	Delete			
WMWS-001 Bios Pass...		BIOS Password	Limited	WMWS-001	Permission			

General Attachments (0)

Title: Password Type:

User Name: System Name:

Password: Password Valid: Unlimited

URL: Valid Until:

Category:

Description:

B I U ABC A 10 Arial

7.1.4 Contracts

DocuSnap provides the *Contracts* extension type which allows you to store contracts and contractual data for individual objects. This can be, for example, the maintenance agreement for a server. If you entered an expiration date for this maintenance agreement, you can choose to be notified about its expiration.

Click the *New* button on the *Contracts* tab to add a new contract for the selected object. The *Title*, *Start Date* and *Contract Type* fields are mandatory and thus must be filled in. The *End Date* field is only needed if the contract has a limited duration.



You can set the DocuSnap server to send [notifications](#) when the contract has expired.

To edit a saved contract, select it from the list and click the *Edit Selected* button. Its content will be displayed on the *General* tab. Edit it and click the *Save* button.

Information								Data	IT Relations	Comments (2)	Finance (8)	Passwords (4)	Contracts (4)	Reminders (4)
Title	Contract Number	Contract Partner	Customer Number	Street	ZIP Code	City	Actions							
Employment Contr...	12344950	Docusnap AG		36 Old Jewry	London EC2R 8...	London	New							
RO-IT-5675 Leasi...	1251568405	Leasing GmbH	007882472	Half Moon Stree...		London	Save							
Sales Contract WL...	48423451355	Computer AG	1382452305	Edgware Rd 42		London	Delete							
Service Level Agr...	464867	SLA Client	9178972	Innstr. 22	80331	Munich	Permission							

General | Attachments (0)

Title: Contract Number:

Contracting Partner: Customer Number:

Street: ZIP:

City: Country:

Post Office Box: Phone Number:

Email: Website:

Start Date: Contract Type:

End Date: Category:

Description:

B *I* U ABC A | Arial | 10

7.1.5 Reminders

The *Reminders* extension type allows you to enter meetings, reviews and other events.

Thanks to the [Notifications](#) feature in Docusnap, you can have the program automatically send an e-mail if the reminder date is the same as the current date or lies ahead. This causes the due reminders to be listed in the e-mail attachment.

Click the *New* button on the Reminders tab to add a new reminder to the selected object. The *Title*, *Priority* and *Reminder Type* fields are mandatory and thus must be filled in. By clicking the *Save* button, you add the reminder to the list. To edit a saved reminder, you must select it from the list and click the *Edit Selected* button in the ribbon. Its content will be displayed on the *General* tab. Edit it and click the *Save* button.



Reminders (4)							Actions
Title	Reminder Type	Priority	Reminder Date	Description	Date Created		
Staff Meeting - 1pm	Meeting	High	26.08.2013	Agenda as Attachment	27.12.2011		New
Call Mr. Miller	Phone Call	High	06.09.2013	Bruce Miller	11.10.2012		Save
E-Mail Facility Management	E-Mail	High	04.10.2013	Repair	11.10.2012		Delete
Proposal to Mr. Jones	E-Mail	High	21.08.2013	Stephen Jones	11.10.2012		Permission

General | Attachments (1)

Title: Priority:

Reminder Date: Category:

Reminder Type:

Description:

7.1.6 Attachments

For each extension, you can add attachments. To manage attachments for an extension, click the *Attachments* tab next to the *General* tab in the editing dialog of the extension.

Adding Attachments

There are two ways to add attachments.

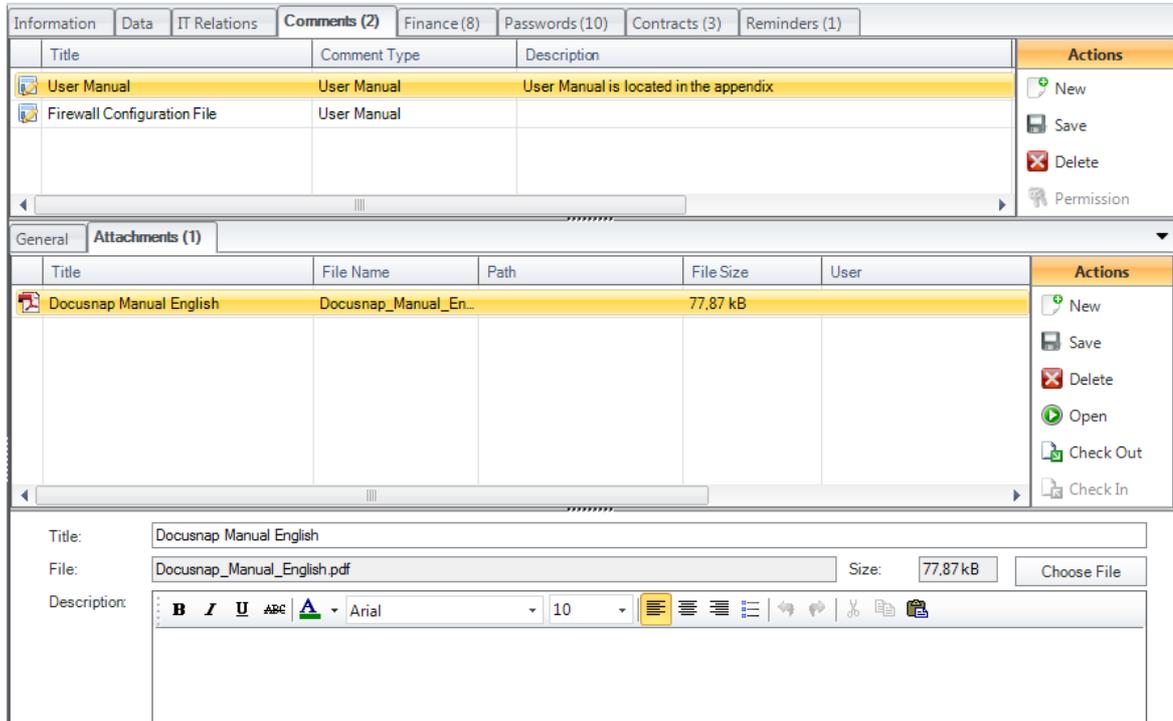
- Click the *New* button on the *Attachments* tab to enable the data entry screen where you can define the attachment. When you click the *Choose File* button, a dialog opens where you can select the desired file. After you have selected the desired file, the *Title* text box will automatically be populated with the file name. Optionally, you can enter a description of this attachment. To save the attachment data (*file, title, description*) in the database, click the *Save* button.
- You can also use *drag & drop* to add files to the attachments. Simply drag the desired file into the table on the *Attachments* tab and drop it there. If you use *drag & drop* to add a directory or multiple files to the table, all files, or the files in the directory, will be added simultaneously. The attachments added by *drag & drop* will immediately be stored in the database. For each added file, its file name will be used as title. You can change it and then apply your change by clicking the *Save* button.

Opening Attachments

To open an attachment in an application, first select the file. Then click the *Open* button

Editing Attachments

Attachments can be edited at any time. To edit the file, you must select it. Then, click the *Check Out* button. The file will be stored in the *check out path*. *Checking out* a file prevents the file from being edited by multiple users at the same time, which would introduce inconsistencies. To make the checked-out file available to other users again, release it by clicking the *Check In* button. *Checking in* the modified file saves it back to the database.

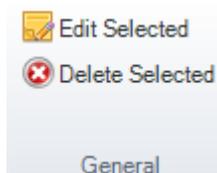


7.2 Organization

When you select the *Organization* option from the Navigation pane, the *Organization* ribbon will appear. The *Organization* module allows you to view all extensions.

The organization tree is displayed in the Explorer pane. It contains all extensions, both summarized under the *All* node and grouped by company. Additionally, reports for evaluating the extensions are available.

The extensions are displayed on tabs in the data window. The *Edit Selected* and *Delete Selected* buttons on the ribbon are only enabled when an extension is selected in the data window.



To open the selected extension in the editing window, click the *Edit Selected* button.

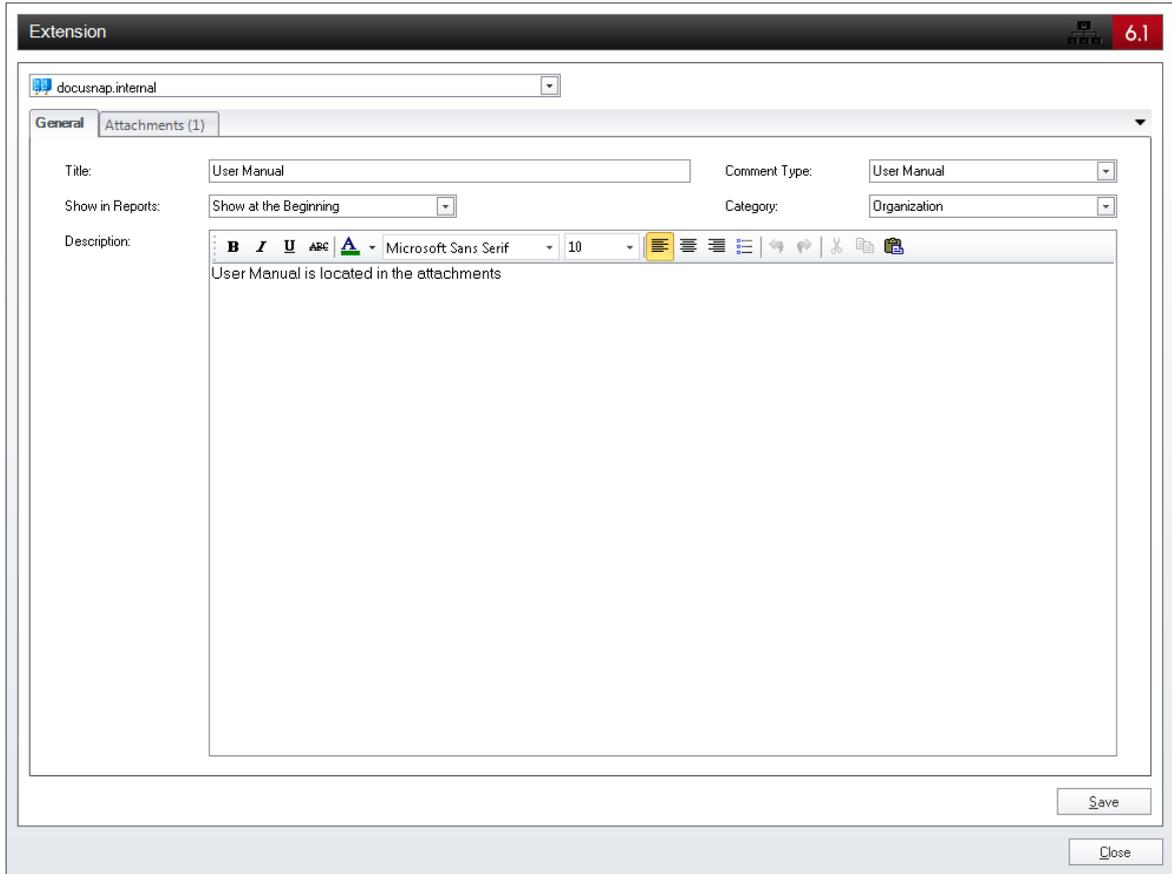
To remove the selected extension, click the *Delete Selected* button. This also deletes the extension node at its original position from the tree view.

From the *Organization* ribbon, it is possible to create new extensions. From the *New* group, comments, passwords, financial elements, contracts and reminders can be added. Clicking one of the button there opens the corresponding dialog.



The same dialog displays for creating new extensions and for editing existing ones. The only difference is that for editing, the dialog will be populated with the values for the selected extension.

The list box in the upper left corner indicates where the extension is located within the tree structure. When you create a new extension, select the object for which you are creating the extension from this list box. When editing an existing extension, you can use this list box to select a different node in the tree view where to place the current extension. The *General* tab contains a data entry screen. It is similar to the data entry screen used for entering new extensions. If you modify a data entry screen, the user interface of the editing dialog will reflect these changes. To save the edited or newly created extension, click the *Save* button. To undo the changes, click the *Close* button. When you are in the process of creating a new extension, clicking the *Close* button will discard everything you entered so far for the extension.



Attachments

Attachments can be added to each extension. Clicking the *Attachments* tab next to the *General* tab opens a dialog that allows you to select the file to be attached. The *Title* field is mandatory. The file name and the size of the selected file will appear in the *File* and *Size* fields. These fields are read-only. The *Description* field is optional. To save the file as an attachment in the database, click the *Save* button.

You can also add files to the attachments using *drag & drop*. To do so, select the file, hold down the left mouse button and drag the file to the table. When you use drag & drop to add an entire directory or multiple files to the table, all respective files will be added in one go. For each added file, its file name will be used as title. You can change it and then apply your change by clicking the *Save* button. The attachments added by *drag & drop* will be immediately saved in the database. There is no need to add them by clicking the *Save* button.

Opening Attachments

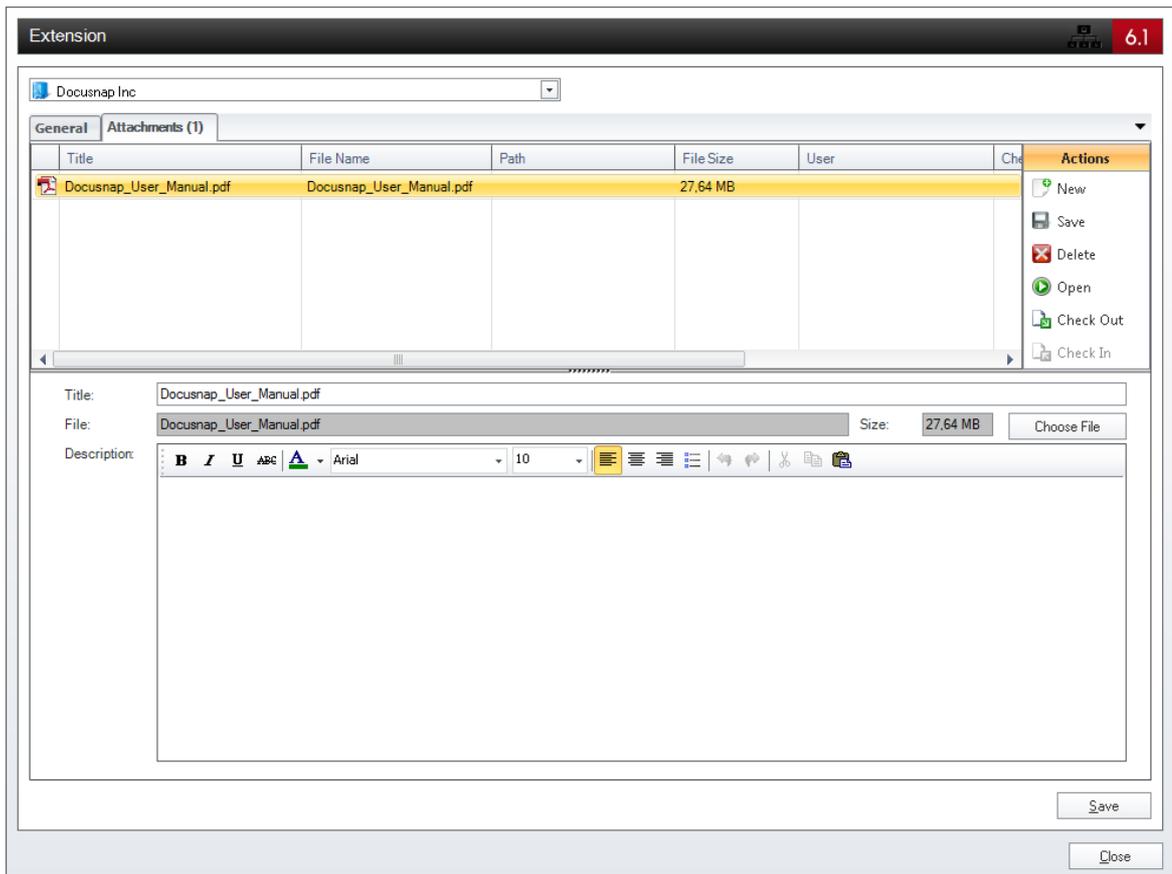
To open an attachment in an application, first select the file. Then click the *Open* button to open the file in the default application set for this file type in the system. The file will be saved in the *Temp* folder.

Editing Attachments



Attachments can be edited once you have saved them. To edit the file, you must select it. Then, click the *Check Out* button to open the path selection dialog. The file will be saved in the folder you specify here.

Checking the *Execute file after completing action* checkbox below the path specification will open the folder. You can open the file from this folder. After saving the changes, you can update the file in the database by clicking the *Check In* button. The file will not be deleted from the hard disk.



7.3 Password Logging

With its *Password Logging* feature, Docusnap allows you to track which user copied which password and /or displayed it in plain text.

Password logging can be enabled and disabled from the *General* page of the *Options* dialog.

The *Password* field on the data entry form on the *Passwords* tab includes two buttons. Each time you click one of these two buttons to copy or display a saved password in plain text, Docusnap logs the respective user including a timestamp of the action.

This allows you to find out who knows a particular password.

The list of users who displayed passwords is shown in the Organization tree view.

Organization

The password log for an individual password will be shown below the respective password, the password log for all passwords will be shown at the company level.

You can filter the general password log overview by user to see all passwords viewed by a certain user.

The screenshot shows the 'Organization' window in Docusnap 6.1. The left sidebar displays a tree view of the organization structure, including 'Docusnap Inc', 'Comments', 'Finance', 'Passwords', 'SQL Server - SMSQ001', 'WLAN_Intern Encryption', 'WMLX0007 - Linux', 'WMA0001 - Mac', 'Wlan_Guest Encryption', 'WMIWS013 Bios Password', 'WMIWS01 Bios Password', 'Docusnap Homepage', 'Password Log', 'E-Mail (user@docusnap.com)', 'WMLX0001 - Linux', and 'SMSQ001 - SQL Server'. The 'Password Log' folder is expanded, showing a list of users and their associated passwords. The main area displays a table with the following data:

User	Title	Used Button	Date	User Name	System Name
DOCUSNAPabl	WMA0001 - Mac	Show Password	23.01.2013 13:50:21	admin	WMA0001
DOCUSNAPbva	WMIWS001 Bios Password	Show Password	14.02.2013 10:19:22	admin	WMIWS001
DOCUSNAPcda	WMA0001 - Mac	Show Password	08.01.2013 14:20:33	admin	WMA0001
DOCUSNAPdfe	Docusnap Homepage	Show Password	10.01.2013 08:32:52	admin	www.docusnap.com
DOCUSNAPede	WMA0001 - Mac	Show Password	11.01.2013 08:28:32	admin	WMA0001
DOCUSNAPefg	WMA0001 - Mac	Show Password	06.01.2013 16:35:45	admin	WMA0001
DOCUSNAPefg	Docusnap Homepage	Show Password	26.01.2013 17:45:01	admin	www.docusnap.com
DOCUSNAPher	Docusnap Homepage	Show Password	28.01.2013 08:40:55	admin	www.docusnap.com
DOCUSNAPjhe	Docusnap Homepage	Show Password	13.03.2013 18:22:10	admin	www.docusnap.com
DOCUSNAPmki	Docusnap Homepage	Show Password	16.02.2013 17:21:53	admin	www.docusnap.com
DOCUSNAPpha	WMA0001 - Mac	Show Password	13.02.2013 08:48:45	admin	WMA0001
DOCUSNAPpor	E-Mail (user@docusnap.com)	Show Password	16.01.2013 07:20:52	user	
DOCUSNAPrvo	Docusnap Homepage	Show Password	29.01.2013 11:36:55	admin	www.docusnap.com

You can set [permissions](#) to limit the right to view the password log to particular users.

7.4 Categories and Permissions

To restrict access to the extensions, you can use categories and permissions.

Categories

Click the *Categories* button on the *Advanced* ribbon to open the Manage Categories dialog. This dialog enables you to create [Categories](#). These categories are linked to roles and the role determines which categories will be visible to a user with this role. In the data entry screens for extensions, the categories you created are listed in the *Category* drop-down list box for selection. If you select the *<No selection>* category for an extension, it remains visible to all users.



Manage Categories 6.1

Name:

German Text: English Text:

Role	Category	Visible
Administration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Organization	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Inventory	<input type="checkbox"/> Administration	<input type="checkbox"/>
Organization	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - Trainees	<input type="checkbox"/>
License Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Technology - General	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - Infrastructure	<input type="checkbox"/>
Customizing	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - Technical Sales	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - External Employees	<input type="checkbox"/>
Permission Analysis	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IT Documentation		
IT Relations		

When you select a category, the extension will only be displayed if the current user has been assigned a role to which this category is visible.

Information | Data | IT Relations | **Comments (2)** | Finance (8) | Passwords (4) | Contracts (4) | Reminders (4)

Title	Comment Type	Description	Actions
User Manual	User Manual	User Manual is located in the attachments	<input type="button" value="New"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Permission"/>
Firewall Configuration File	User Manual	Configuration File is located in the attachments	

General | Attachments (1)

Title: Comment Type:

Show in Reports:

Description:

Category:

- Organization
- Administration
- Management
- Organization
- Technology - External Employees
- Technology - General
- Technology - Infrastructure
- Technology - Technical Sales
- Technology - Trainees

Access restrictions for extensions also apply to the *organizational hierarchy*. For this reason, extensions are only displayed to authorized users. If a user has been assigned the *Administrator* role, all extensions are shown. Extensions that should not be displayed due to categorization are flagged as (*hidden*).

Permissions

In addition to assigning a category, you can define the access to extensions by clicking the [Permission](#) button. In the *Object Permissions* dialog, you can specify whether a person to whom this role was assigned may *Read*, *Write*, *Delete* and / or *Insert* the extension.



Part



8 IT Relations

The IT Relations module in Docusnap allows you to map the relations between the components of your IT environment. This enhances the transparency of your network organization.

IT relations may be modeled both at an organizational and at a technical level.

At the organizational level, you can display the interrelations of servers, workstations, etc. This allows you, for example, to identify the systems that would be affected by the failure of a particular component or to set up suitable maintenance schedules for individual components.

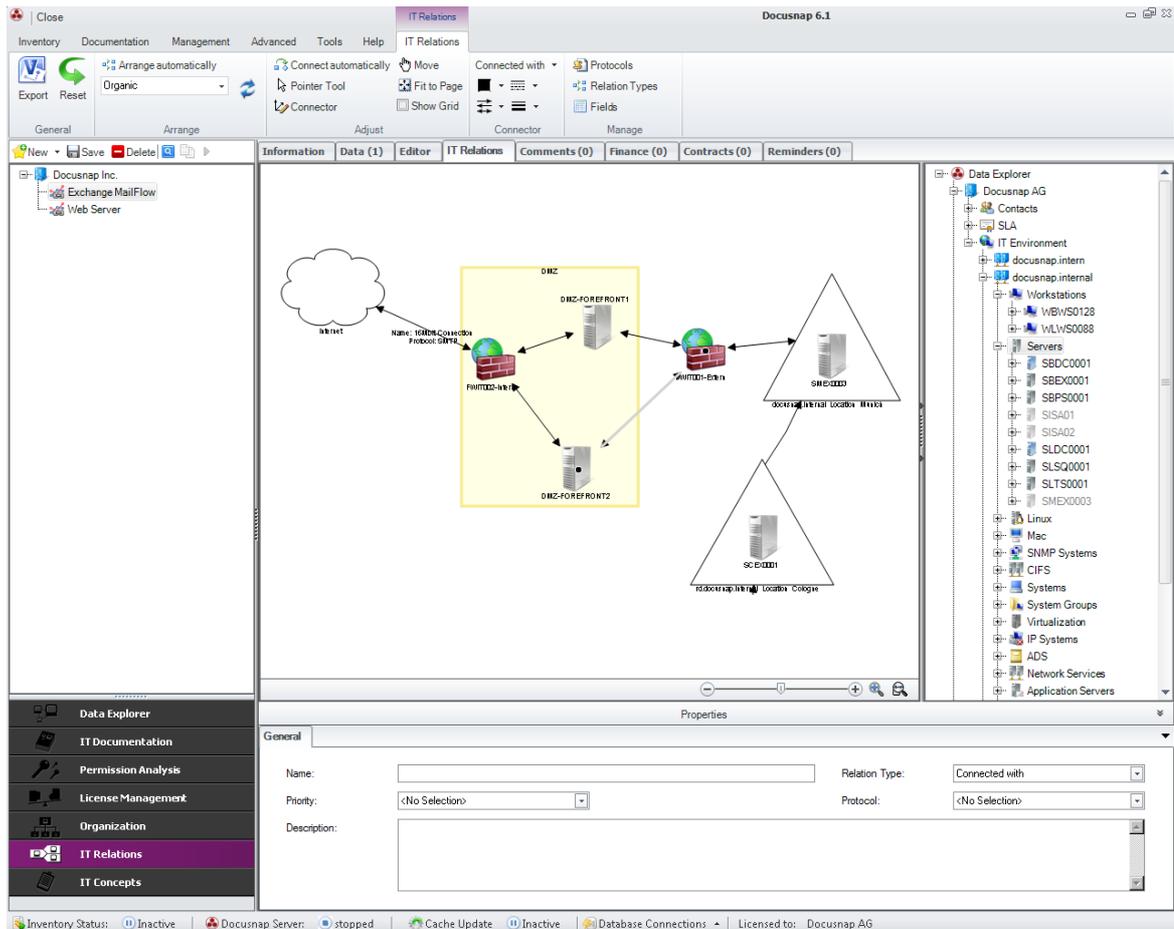
On the communications level, IT relations help you to determine the various connection types and the protocol used for each connection.

8.1 Create IT Relations

To create a new IT relation, navigate to the IT Relations module. First, selected the desired company in the tree view, then create a new relation by clicking the *New* button above the tree and selecting IT Relation. Specify a name for the relation. Now you can create a diagram on the *IT Relations* tab.

The right pane shows the Data Explorer tree. It contains the data from the most recent network inventories.

Select a component and drag it to the *IT Relations* tab while holding down the left mouse button.



Ribbon

The *IT Relations* ribbon allows you to define additional settings for creating the relations.

Use the *New*, *Save* and *Delete* buttons above the tree view to create or delete new relations or save changes made to existing relations.

General: You can export the current diagram to a Visio file by clicking the *Export* button. Clicking the *Reset* button will load the last saved version of the diagram again.

Arrange: Use the *Arrange* group on the ribbon to select an algorithm for automatic arrangement of the objects.

With the *Connect automatically* button enabled, each new component will be connected to the most recently selected component.

The *Pointer Tool* allows you to select individual components by a mouse click.

If the *Connector* button has been selected, you can create a relation connector using the mouse. Do so so, click a component and drag the mouse (while holding down the mouse button) to the second component. This will connect the two components.

To move the entire diagram, click the *Move* button.



Clicking the *Fit to Page* button resizes the diagram so that it fits the page.

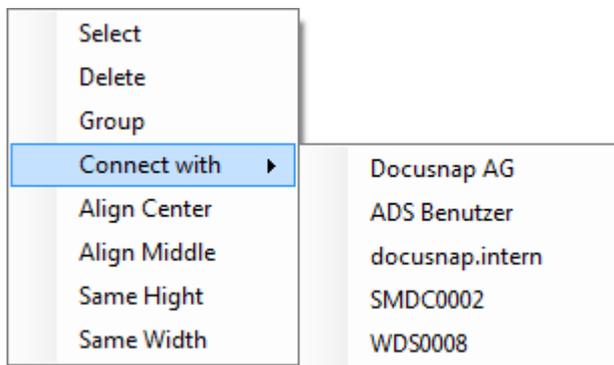
Connector: The desired type and design for a connector can be selected from the *Connector* group.

Manage: By clicking the buttons in the *Manage* group, you can open [management dialogs](#) for protocols, connection types and displayed fields.

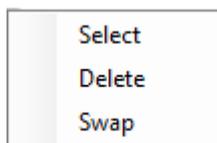
Context Menu

A context menu is available when you right-click the components and connectors.

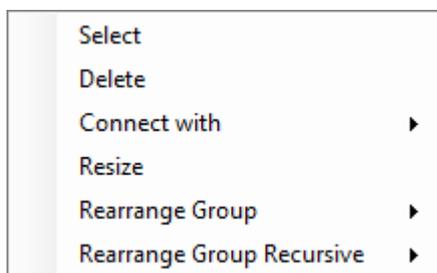
This menu contains options to delete the current object or to connect it with other objects. When selecting multiple objects, you can align them horizontally or vertically or set them to the same height or width.



The connectors can be deleted from the context menu. What is more, you can swap the starting and ending points or select a different starting or ending point.



Using the context menu options, it is also possible to rearrange groups or resize them.



Properties

Once a connector has been selected, the *Properties* entry screen appears. Here, you can specify additional information about the selected connector. The properties will be displayed along with the connectors. You can select the properties to be

displayed from the *Display Fields for Relations* dialog. Optionally, you can add to the properties by editing the *tRelLink* table in the *Manage Metatables* dialog. Adding objects to the databases and entry screens is described in the Administrator Manual.

Opening IT relations from other tree views

The *IT Relations* tab is displayed for each object you select in the Data Explorer. If the selected object is used in a diagram, that diagram will be displayed on this tab and can be edited or deleted.

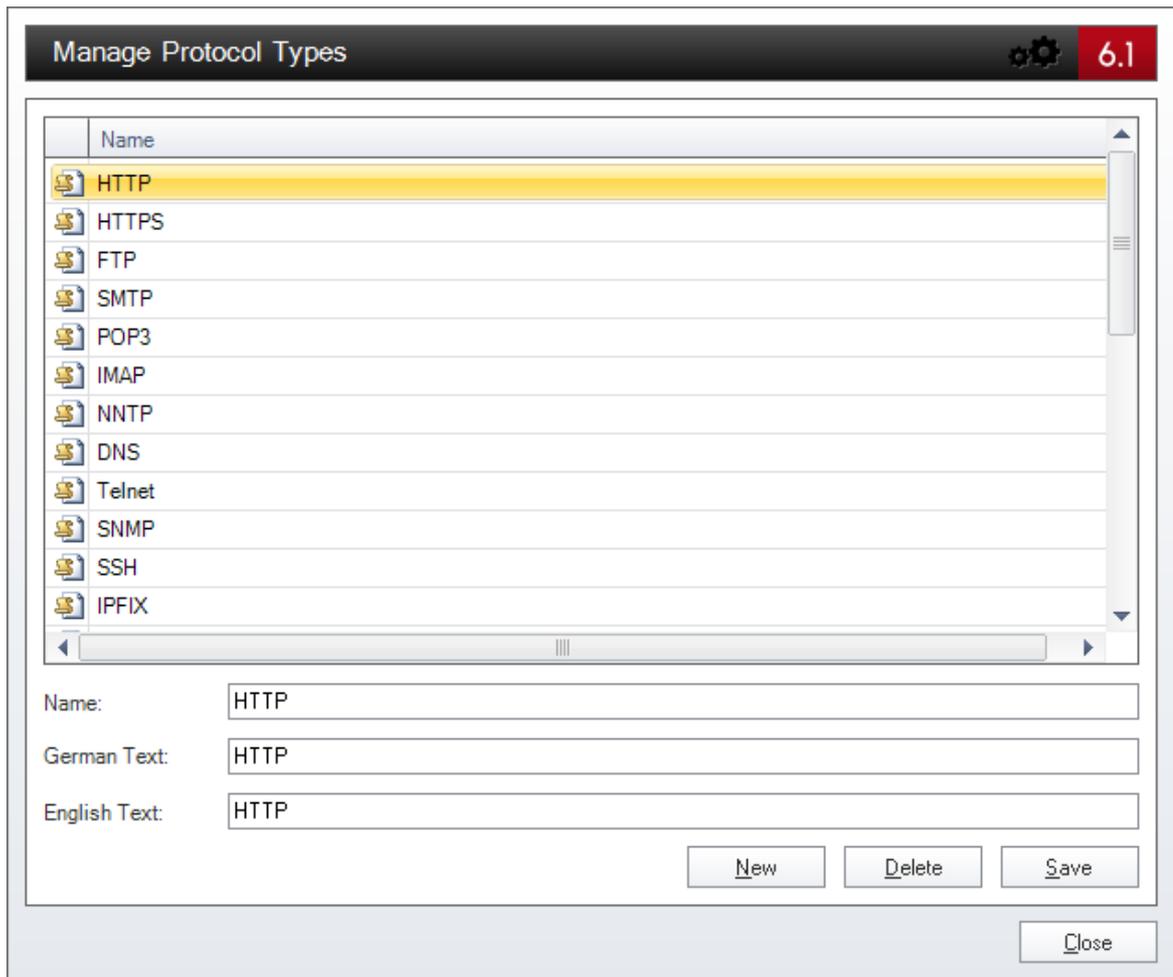
The screenshot shows the Docusnap 6.1 application window. The top menu bar includes 'Inventory', 'Documentation', 'Management', 'Advanced', 'Tools', and 'Help'. The 'IT Relations' tab is active, showing a toolbar with options like 'Arrange automatically', 'Connect automatically', 'Move', 'Fit to Page', 'Show Grid', 'Relation Type', 'Protocols', 'Relation Types', and 'Fields'. Below the toolbar is a 'Choose Diagram' dropdown set to 'Exchange MailFlow'. The main workspace displays a network diagram with a central yellow box labeled 'DMZ-FORREONT1' containing a 'FWIT001' firewall and two servers. To the left is an 'INTERNET' cloud, and to the right is a 'DMZ-FORREONT2' box containing another 'FWIT001' firewall and a server. The diagram is connected to a 'docusnap.internal Location: Mirok' and a 'docusnap.internal Location: Cologne' server. The left and right Data Explorer panels show a hierarchical tree of system components, including 'Docusnap Inc', 'Contacts', 'SLA', 'IT Environment', 'docusnap.internal', 'Workstations', 'Servers', 'Linux', 'Mac', 'SNMP Systems', and various server models like 'ASWIT001' through 'ASWIT007', 'fwi001', 'LJ2015DN', 'MFP4730KELLER', 'NPI861789', 'NPID1A23', 'NPIE82629', 'NPFI3D6CF', 'P2015/verwaltung', 'PMAFBPL01', 'Print Server dlink-6E8C7A', 'SAN_2_16V_1', 'SAN_2_16V_2', 'CIFS', 'Systems', 'System Groups', 'Virtualization', 'IP Systems', 'ADS', and 'Network Services'. The bottom status bar shows 'Inventory Status: Inactive', 'Docusnap Server: stopped', 'Cache Update: Inactive', 'Database Connections', and 'Licensed to: Docusnap AG'.



8.2 Userdefined Settings

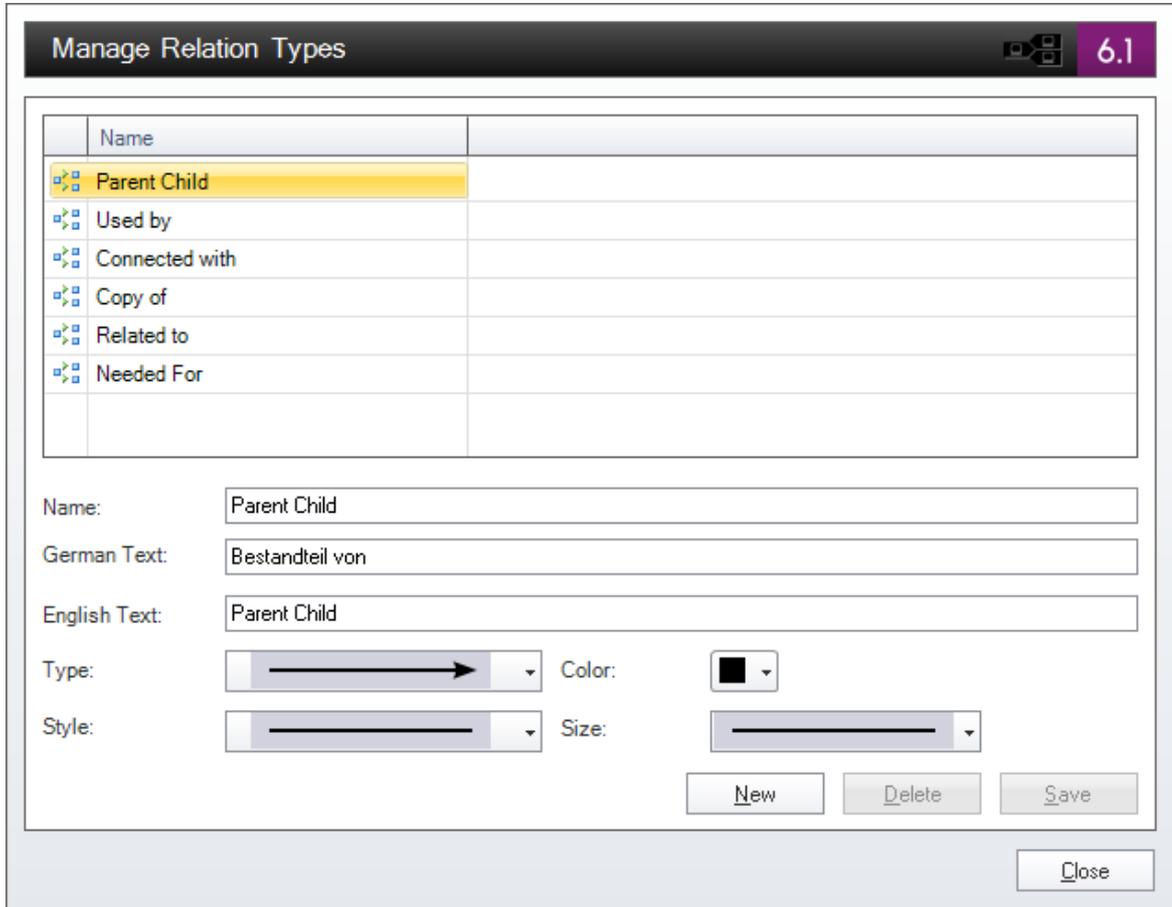
Protocols

For each connector, you can select the protocol to be used for the corresponding connection from the Properties entry screen. Docusnap provides a number of predefined protocols. In the Manage Protocol Types dialog, you can create additional protocols.



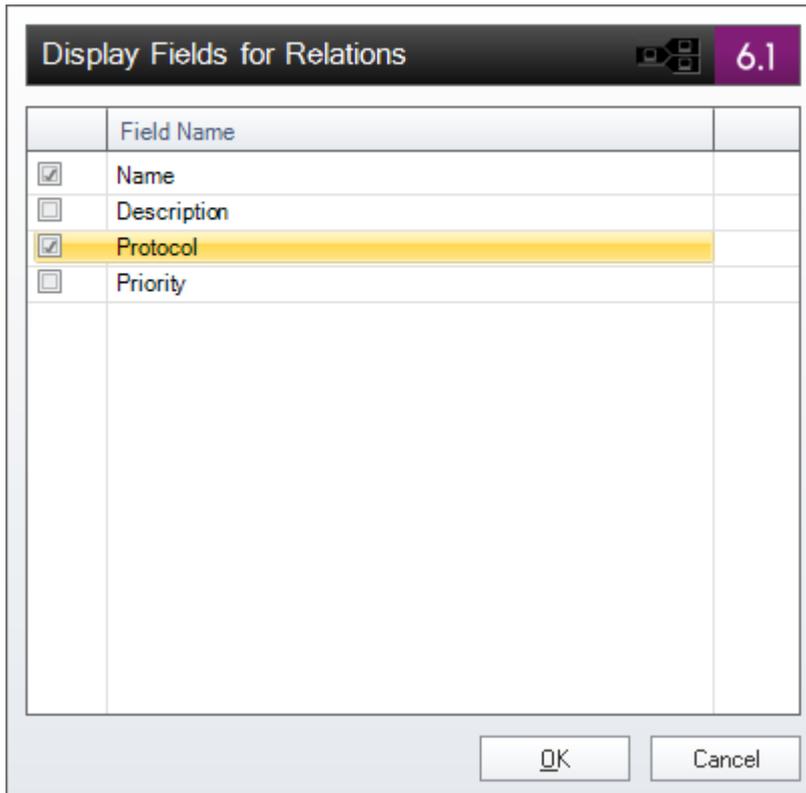
Relation Types

You can map the connection between two components using a relation type. If required, you can add more relation types in the Manage Relation Types dialog.



Display Fields

Each connection has properties, such as a name, a description, a priority, etc. that you can select for display in the relation diagram. Individual properties can be defined from the *Manage Tables* dialog. Major changes to the table, however, are only possible through the Customizing module. Then, you can add the new fields to the display. For each relation, you can select the fields to be displayed from the *Display Fields for Relations* dialog.



Part

IX

9 IT Concept

The IT Concepts module in Docusnap allows you to create concepts by using the whole set of retrieved data, associated documentation, and IT relations so that there is no need for an additional word processor.

What is more, the inventoried data and documentation are always updated to keep the concept current at any time. It is also possible to insert variables, such as the name of a workstation or the last inventory data, into the various text areas.

Once the concept is complete, it can be exported to the desired format (.docx, .pdf, .html, or .rtf) and thus becomes available for further use.

The creation and export of the document can be automated using the Scheduling feature, allowing timed updates of the document.

Ribbon

Creating an IT Concept

Versioning

Templates

Designs

Styles

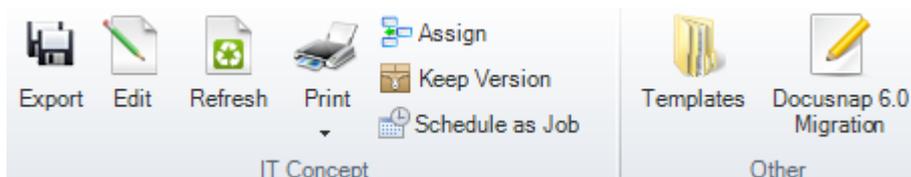
Export and Scheduling

Assignment

Conversion

9.1 Menu Ribbon

The IT Concepts ribbon displays when you have selected IT Concepts in the Navigation pane. Using this ribbon, you can edit and change concepts.

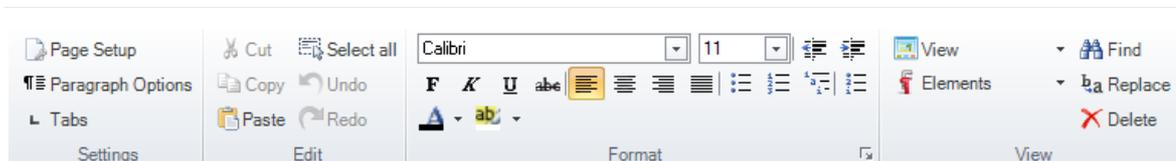


IT Concepts

- Export: Using the *Export* button, you can export your concept to Word, PDF, or other formats.

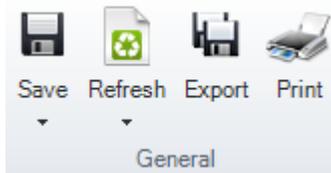
- **Edit:** A click on the *Edit* button launches the IT Concept Editor where you can edit the selected IT concept.
- **Refresh:** Use the *Refresh* button to update the IT concept. This reloads the data for data elements, reports, etc. and recreates the table of contents.
- **Print:** By clicking the *Print* button, you can print the selected IT concept.
- **Assign:** Clicking this button opens the *Assign IT Concepts* dialog which allows you to insert the desired concept into other tree views. It is also possible to add an *IT concept folder* to a node in one of the other trees.
- **Keep Version:** Since only a certain number of versions of a document can be stored, you can click this button to select and keep a certain version. This prevents the current document version from deletion.
- **Schedule as Job:** Clicking this button opens a wizard which allows you to schedule creation of an IT concept for a certain date and time.
- **Templates:** Clicking the *Templates* button opens the *Manage IT Concept Templates* dialog.
- **DocuSnap 6.0 Migration:** If the database still holds DocuSnap 6.0 concepts which have not been migrated to the new IT Concept format, you can start the migration by clicking the *DocuSnap 6.0 Migration* button.

Text Editor



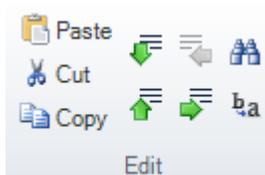
General

- **Save:** After clicking the *Save* button, you can decide whether to simply save the concept, to save it as a new version, or to save it as a template.
- **Refresh:** Use the *Refresh* button to update the IT concept. You can specify whether you would like to refresh the entire IT concept or just the document outline. A refresh of the entire document reloads the data for data elements, reports, etc. and recreates the table of contents. When you just refresh the document outline, the system recreates the table of contents and reloads the entries in the navigation pane.
- **Export:** Using the *Export* button, you can export your concept to Word, PDF, or other formats.
- **Print:** By clicking the *Print* button, you can print the open IT concept.



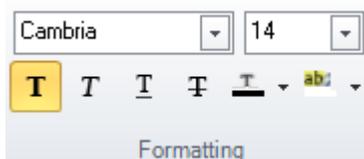
Edit

- Paste: Using the *Paste* button, you can insert elements from the clipboard into the text area.
- Cut: This button allows you to cut selected text elements.
- Copy: This button allows you to copy selected text elements to the clipboard.
- Hierarchical structure: By clicking the arrows, you can change the hierarchical level and order of the headings in your IT concept.
- Find: The  button allows you to quickly find particular parts in the entire text quickly and easily.
- Replace: The  button allows you to find and replace certain text parts.



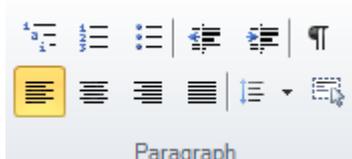
Formatting

This group contains buttons that can be used to change the font, color, and typeface of your text.



Paragraph

The buttons in the *Paragraph* group allow you to adjust the alignment and formatting of the paragraphs in your text area.



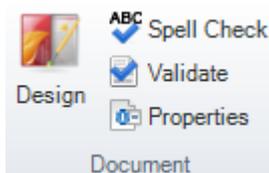
Styles

For text formatting, [Styles](#) are available which allow you to edit the text in your entire document in a centralized way. These styles are also needed when creating the table of contents.



Document

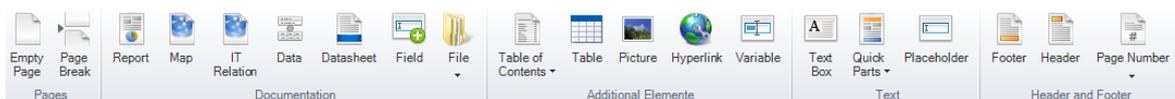
- **Design:** Clicking the *Design* button opens the *Designs and Styles* dialog. This dialog allows you to individually define the design of your IT concept.
- **Spell Check:** Click the *Spell Check* button to start the integrated spell checker.
- **Validate:** By clicking the *Validate* button, you can check the IT concept for validity. Any errors found will be displayed in the error list. An error is present if, e.g., an inserted relation was deleted or if a report does not exist any longer.
- **Properties:** Click the *Properties* button to open a window which lists the properties of your IT concept. Here, the title and author of the IT concepts may be changed. You can also enter an additional description. The properties also include additional information such as the date when the IT concept was last modified.



Insert

Use the Insert ribbon to insert different [elements](#) into your IT concept.

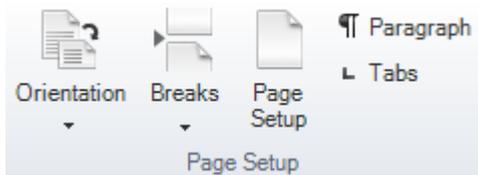
- **Header and Footer:** Use the Header or Footer button to open an additional tab where you can specify your header and footer settings.



Page Layout

- **Orientation:** The options below this button can be used to specify portrait or landscape format.
- **Breaks:** Click the *Breaks* button to insert a page break. Two different types of page breaks, i.e. *Continuous* and *Next Page* can be selected.
- **Page Setup:** Click the *Page Setup* button to adjust the margins, paper size, header and footer, columns, and borders of your document.

- Paragraph: This button opens a dialog that allows you to change the formatting, indents, frame, and page breaks of your document.
- Tabs: This button opens the *Tabs* dialog where you can set and change various indents.



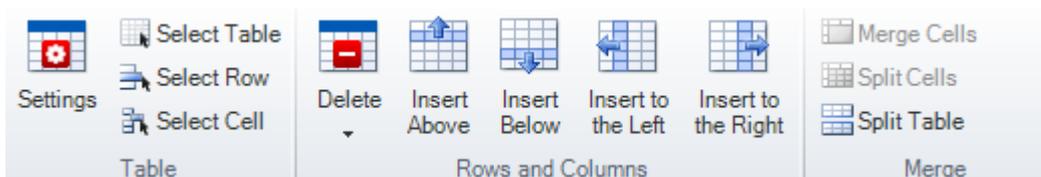
Data Elements

If you highlight a certain element such as a map, a relation, or a data element, an additional ribbon displays.

- Settings: When you click the Settings button, you can specify further settings for the selected element.
- Refresh: For elements such as *data elements*, *maps*, or *relations*, you can click the *Refresh* button to load their current version.
- Delete: Click the *Delete* button to delete the selected element.



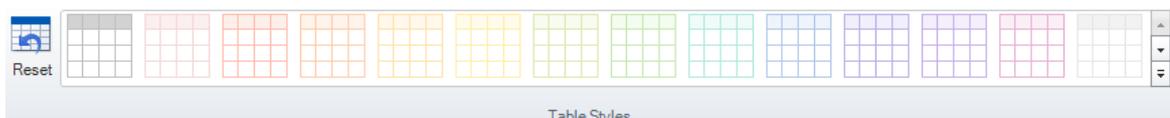
Table Tools



The Table Tools ribbon display when you insert a new table or select an existing table.

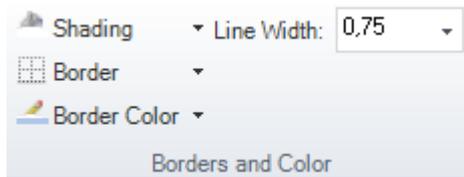
Table Styles

Various styles are available for tables. Click the little arrows next to the buttons and select the desired basic shading for your table.



Borders and Color

In the *Borders and Color* group, you can select the shading, border color, border, and line width for the selected part of the table.



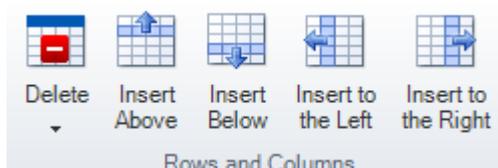
Table

- **Settings:** Here, you can change table properties such as the distance from text or the cell height.
- **Select Table:** Click the *Select Table* button to select the entire table.
- **Select Row; Select Cell:** These two buttons can be used to select the row or cell where the cursor is currently placed.



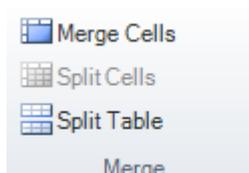
Rows and Columns

- **Delete Table; Delete Columns; Delete Rows:** These options can be used to delete the entire table, selected columns, or selected rows. These options display when you click the *Delete* button.
- **Insert Above; Insert Below; Insert to the Left; Insert to the Right:** These four buttons can be used to insert more columns and lines into an existing table.

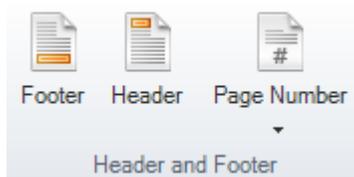


Merge

- **Merge Cells:** Click this button to merge the selected cells into one.
- **Split Cells:** Clicking this button allows you to split the highlighted merged cell again.
- **Split Table:** Click this button to split the existing table into two.



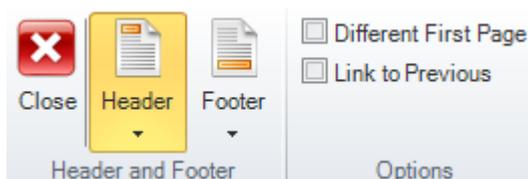
Header and Footer



This ribbon allows you to create headers and footers.

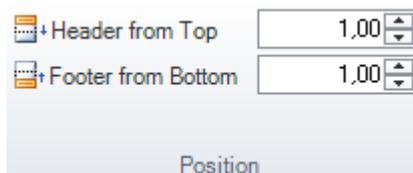
Header and Footer

- **Close:** Click this button to end the editing of your headers and footers. You are taken back to the *General* ribbon.
- **Header; Footer:** Use these buttons to enable, disable and modify your headers and footers.
- **Different First Page:** Tick this checkbox to create a special header and footer for the first page of your document.
- **Link to Previous:** If you enable the *Link to Previous* feature, a document with multiple sections will always use the header and / or footer of the previous section.



Position

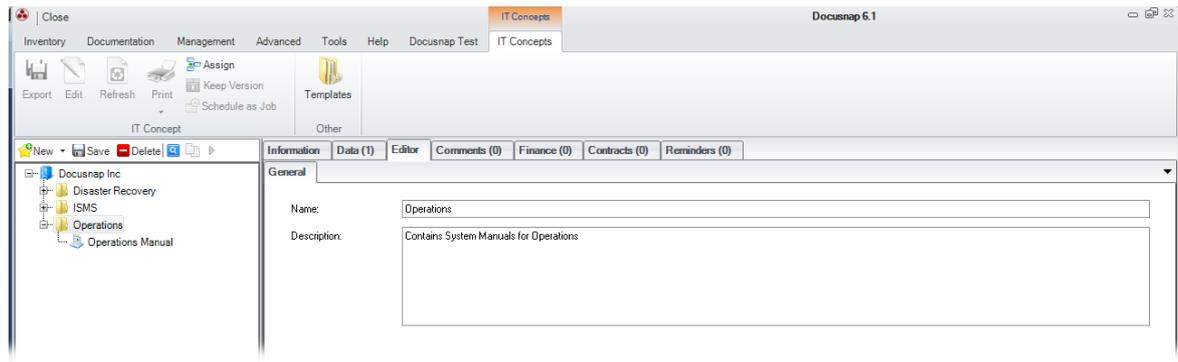
In the *Position* group, you can change the position of your headers and / or footers.



9.2 Create Concept

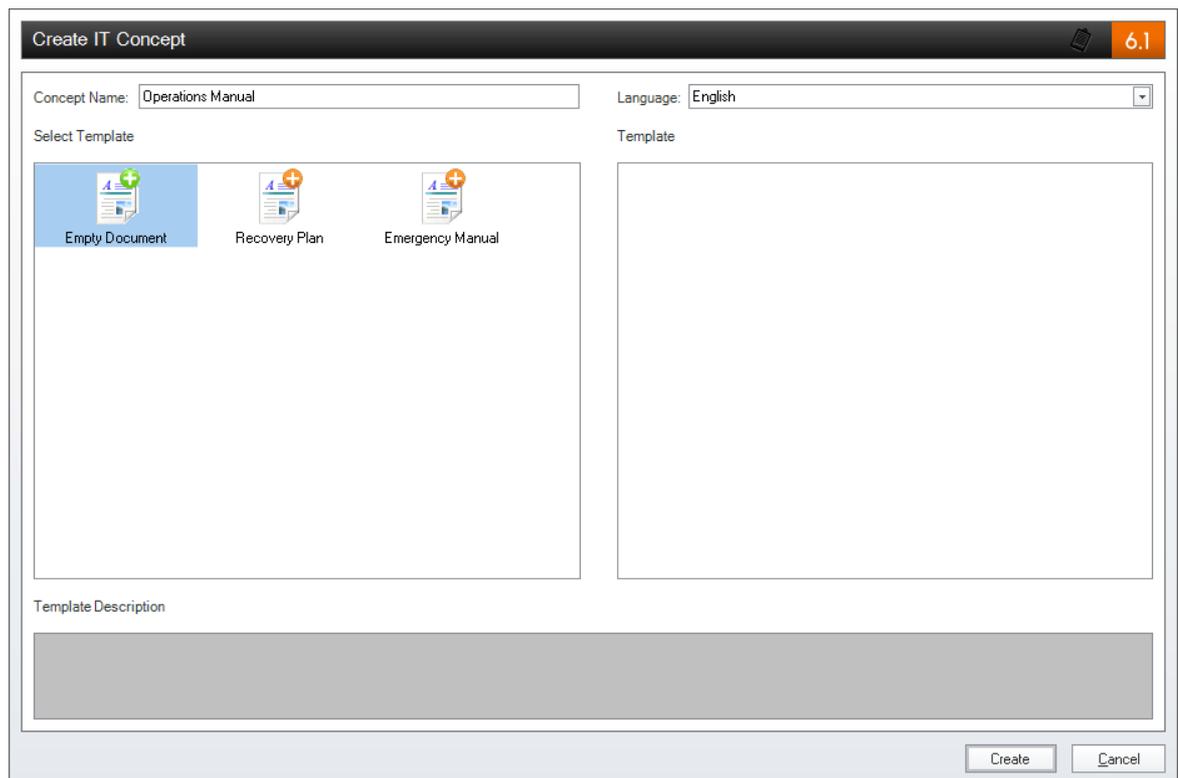
To create a new IT concept, change to the IT Concepts module. You can either create a directory below the company where the IT concepts will be stored or integrate your IT concepts directly below the company.

To create a new directory, select the desired company in the tree view, click the *New* button and select IT Concept Directory. After naming the directory, you can save it so that it will be displayed in the IT Concepts explorer. You can also enter an additional description.



To create a new document for your IT concept, you must either select a company - if the document is to be located under a company node - or a directory where the document will reside after its creation. Then, click the *New* button and select *Create IT Concept*.

This opens the *Create IT Concept* dialog where you can either create an empty document or use a template to create your new document. Enter a name for the IT concept and click the *Create* button. The concept then opens automatically in the *IT Concept Editor*.



IT concepts are created and managed in Docusnap. For editing IT concepts, the [IT Concept Editor](#) is available.

9.2.1 General

When you create an IT concept, the files are stored in the directory you have selected for IT concepts in the [Options](#) dialog. To enable multiple persons to work

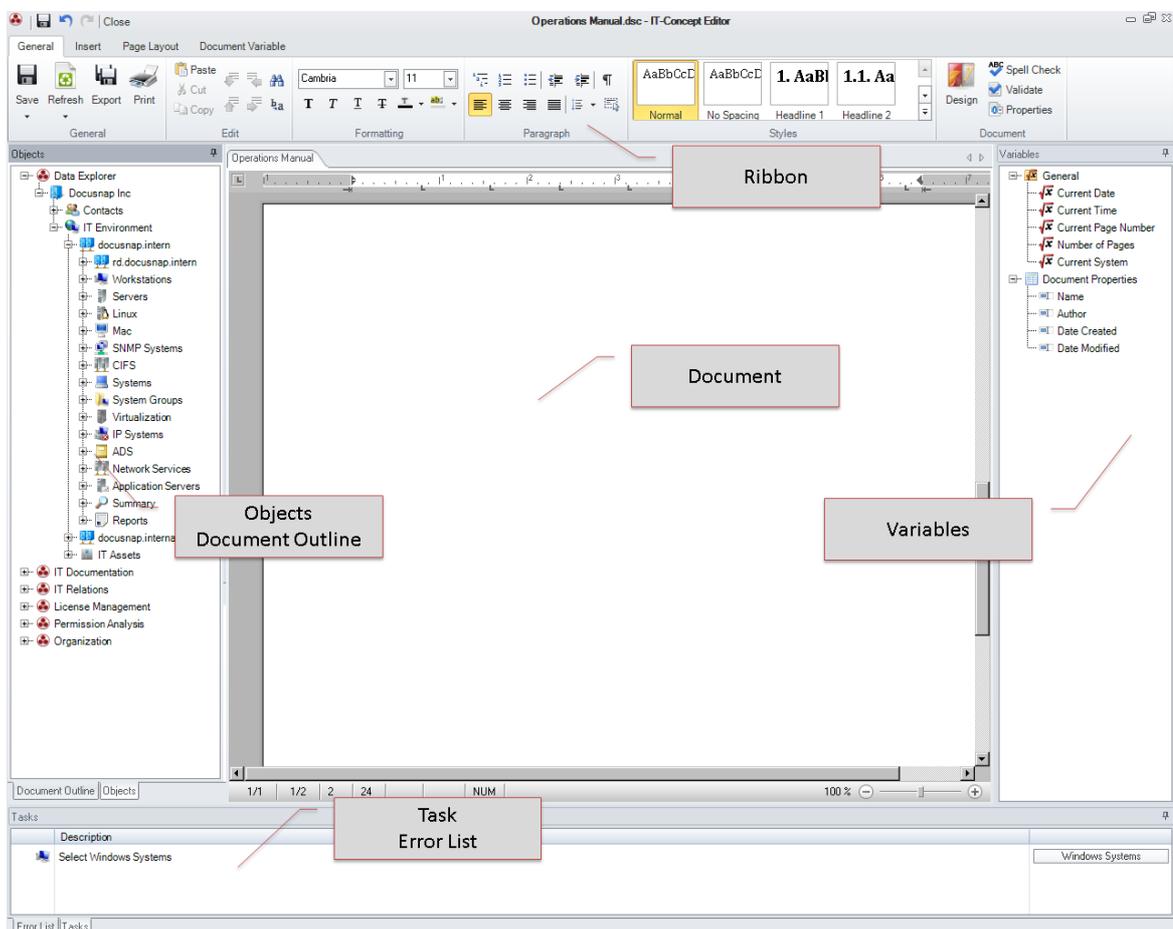
on the same concepts, you can select to store the concepts on a network drive. Every IT concept is assigned to a single company set up in a database. Once Docusnap is connected to this database, the corresponding IT concepts are displayed in the Explorer.

When you select an IT concept in the Explorer, the *IT Concept* ribbon is displayed. Clicking the *Edit* button opens the concept in the *IT Concept Editor* where it can be edited.

The various elements can be inserted either through the buttons located on the *Insert* ribbon or by dragging and dropping them from the object tree. For some elements such as maps, overviews, or data, further settings can be selected. To access the settings, either click the *Settings* button, select *Edit* from the context menu of the respective element, or double-click the element. The *Settings* button is located in an additional ribbon which is displayed as soon as you select the element in the page document.

9.2.2 IT Concept Editor

For creating and editing IT concepts, the IT Concept Editor is available. The IT Concept Editor opens automatically when you create a new IT concept or when you open an existing IT concept for editing.



Ribbons

The [Ribbons](#) allow you to define the settings for formatting, content, and view, etc. of your IT concept.

Document

Use the document area to create your IT concept. In this area, you can enter the text and drag all elements such as reports, data elements, etc. there.

Objects

The *Objects* window displays all Explorers from the various modules. From this area, you can drag documents, reports, data elements, etc. and drop them into your IT concept.

Document Outline

The *Document Outline* window lists the headings to which one of the *Headline* styles is assigned. By clicking on a heading here, you can jump to the corresponding section in your document. This way, it is easier to navigate in your document, especially if it is large.

Variables

The *Variables* window provides variables you can insert into your IT concept. The variables can also be inserted by clicking the Variable button from the *Insert* ribbon.

Tasks

If [Placeholders](#) were defined for a document, a description of each placeholder will be displayed in the *Tasks* window. Click the respective button in the *Tasks* window to open the selection window for data which is available for this placeholder. Once you have selected the data, it replaces the placeholder.

Error List

By clicking the *Validate* button, you can check the IT concept for validity. Any errors found will be displayed in the error list. An error is present if, e.g., an inserted relation was deleted or if a report does not exist any longer.

Layout

The windows can be arranged as desired by dragging and dropping. The position of each window is saved locally and will be remembered each time you open the IT Concept Editor.

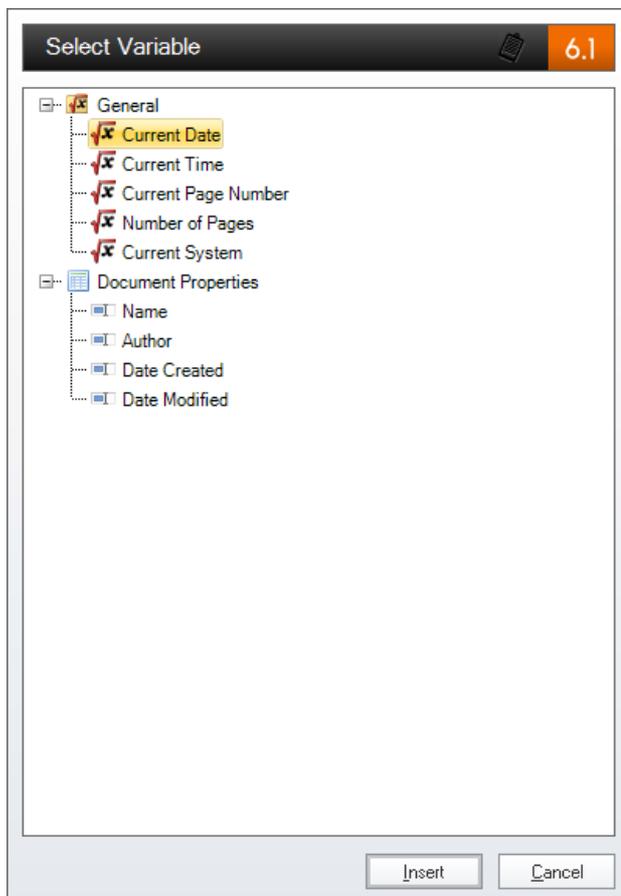


9.2.3 Text

The text you enter can be edited the same way as in other word processors. The buttons on the *Insert* ribbon allow you to embed additional tables, variables, headers and footers, or hyperlinks.

Variables

It is possible to use variables in your text and place information such as the date and time, page numbers, but also information about the IT concept such as the author or the creation date in your concept. Clicking the *Variable* button on the Insert ribbon opens a dialog where you can select the desired variable.



Alternatively, variables may also be dragged from the Variables window on the right-hand side of the IT Concept Editor and dropped onto the document.

Header and Footer

You can also add headers and footers to your IT concept. Use the *Header* and *Footer* buttons to open the additional *Header and Footer* ribbon.

Clicking the *Header* button opens a header area in the document where you can enter the desired data. Proceed the same way for creating footers. To format your entries, use the existing ribbons.

By enabling the *Different First Page* option, a different header and/or footer can be created for the first page of the concept.

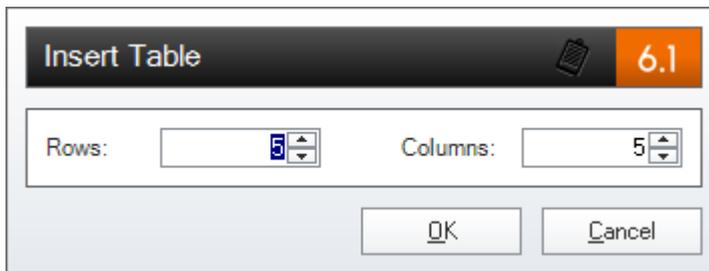
If an IT concept has multiple sections, you can enable the *Link to Previous* checkbox to use the header and/or footer from the previous section for the current header and/or footer.

The fields in the *Position* group can be used to change the header or footer position.

When you have completed the header and/or footer, you can close the ribbon by clicking the *Close* button and continue working in the text area.

Inserting tables

It is possible to insert tables into your concept. To do so, click the *Table* button. The *Insert Table* dialog opens.



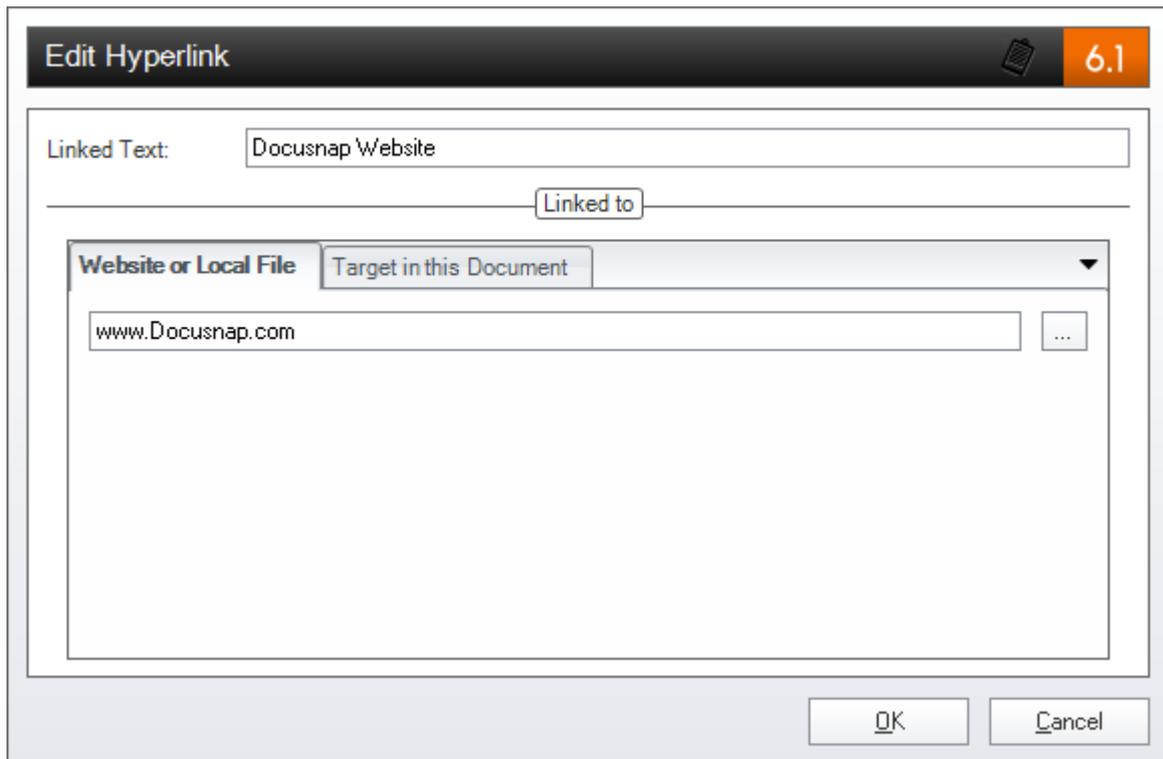
Here, you can specify the number of rows and columns for the table. Once you have created the table, the *Table Tools* ribbon becomes available to edit it.

Other buttons to modify the table such as options to insert columns or rows or to delete columns, rows or the entire table are can also be found in the [Table Tools](#) ribbon.

Inserting Hyperlinks

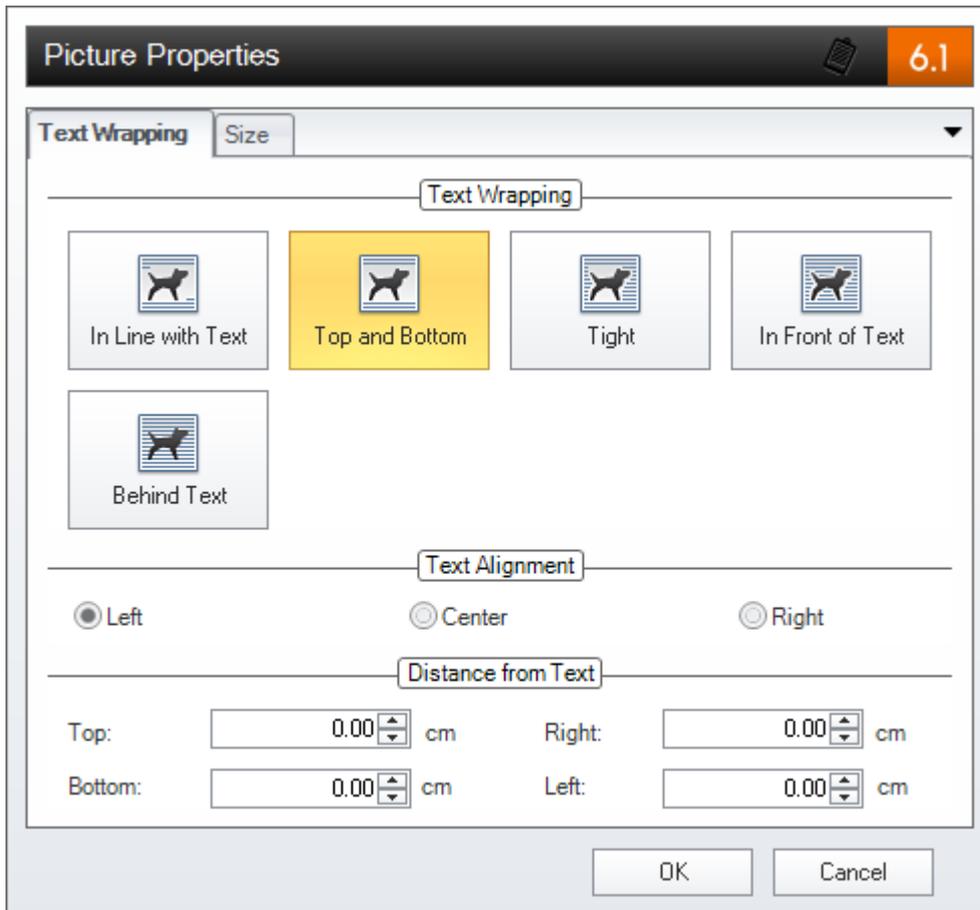
Click the *Hyperlink* button to open the *Edit Hyperlink* dialog. In the uppermost field, enter the text to be linked. On the *Website or Local File* tab, you can either enter a URL or select a locally saved file. On the *Target in this Document* tab, you can select a heading from the current IT concept to be linked.

After creating the hyperlink, you can use the *Settings* option from the context menu of the hyperlink to open the *Edit Hyperlink* dialog.



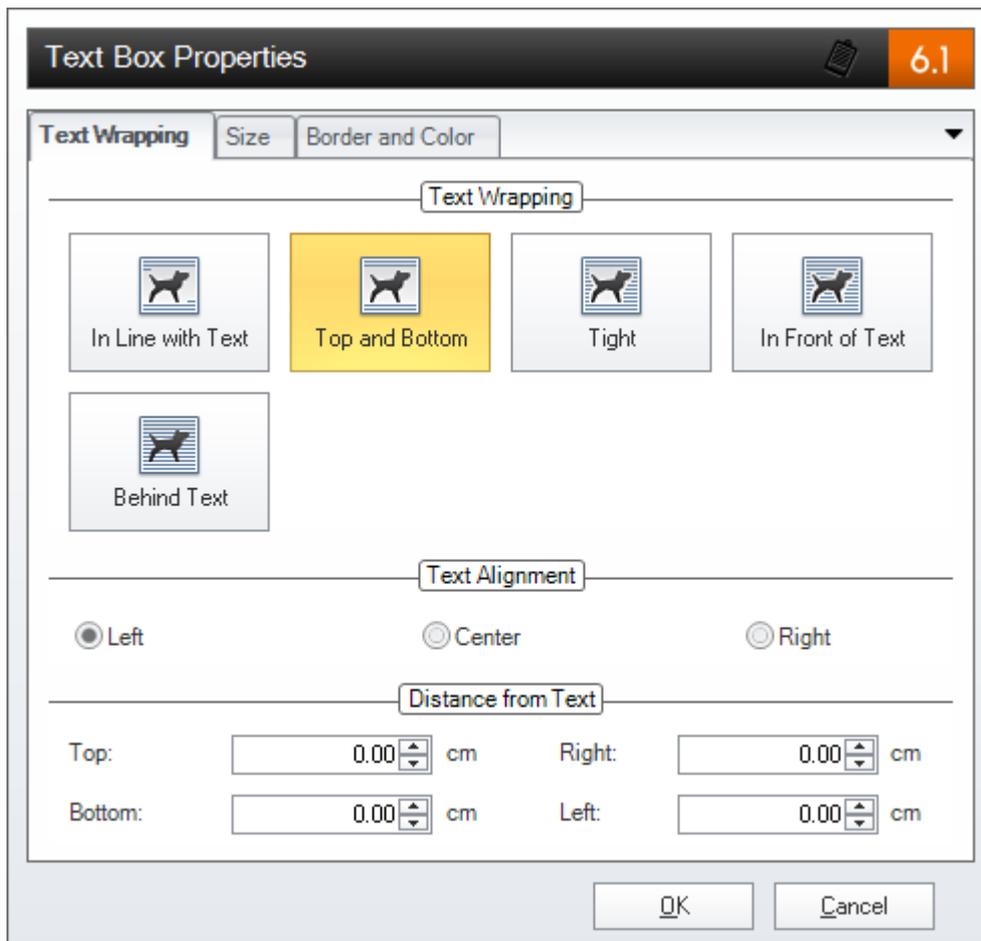
Picture

It is possible to add pictures to your IT concept. Click the *Picture* button to open a dialog where you can select a picture file to be inserted into the document. When you select the picture, the additional *Picture Tools* ribbon displays. To change the properties of a picture, either click the *Settings* button in the *Picture Tools* ribbon or select *Settings* from the context menu of the picture.



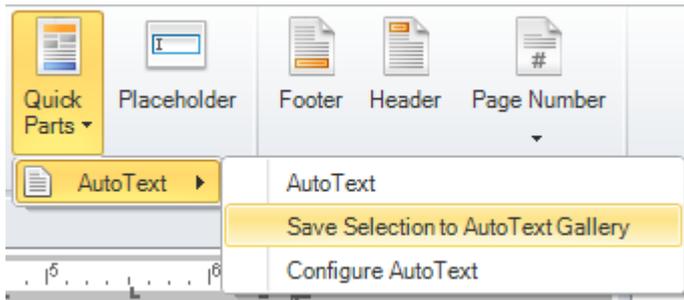
Text Box

To add a text box, click the *Text Box* button. A text box is an object which allows you to place and enter text at any desired location in the document. When you select a text box, the additional *Text Box* ribbon displays. To change the properties of a text box, either click the *Settings* button in the *Text Box* ribbon or select *Settings* from the context menu of the text box.



Quick Parts

Quick parts are stored, reusable contents which can be accessed repeatedly. You can store AutoText in the AutoText gallery by selecting the text to be reused, clicking *AutoText*, and then clicking *Save Selection to AutoText Gallery*. This opens the *Enter AutoText Title* dialog. The name you enter here will be listed in in the AutoText submenu where it is available for selection. The text saved under this name can be re-inserted as desired.

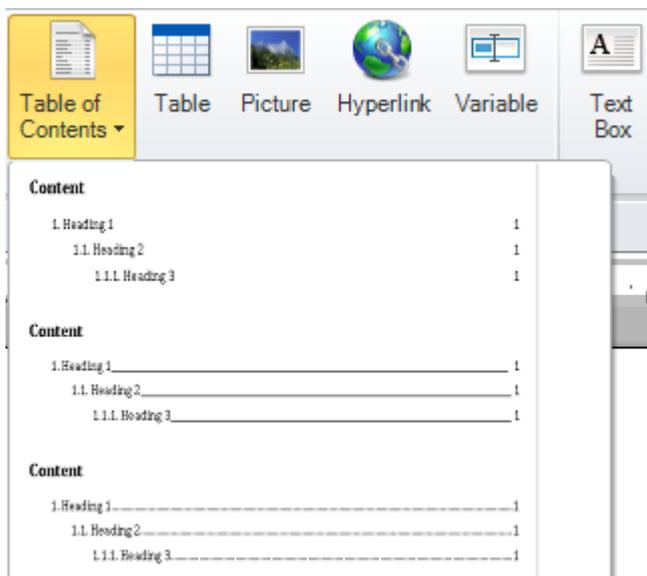


By clicking *AutoText* and then selecting *Configure AutoText*, you can open the dialog for managing the existing AutoText items.

9.2.4 Table of Contents

Click the *Table of Contents* button to add a table of contents to your IT concept. The captions of the individual elements are listed in the table of contents together with their page number. To create a table of contents, you must apply heading styles to the text you want to include, e.g. *Headline 1*, *Headline 2*, etc. The IT Concept Editor scans the concept for these headings and then generates the table of contents.

When you click the *Table of Contents* button, various designs are displayed that can be selected for the table of contents.

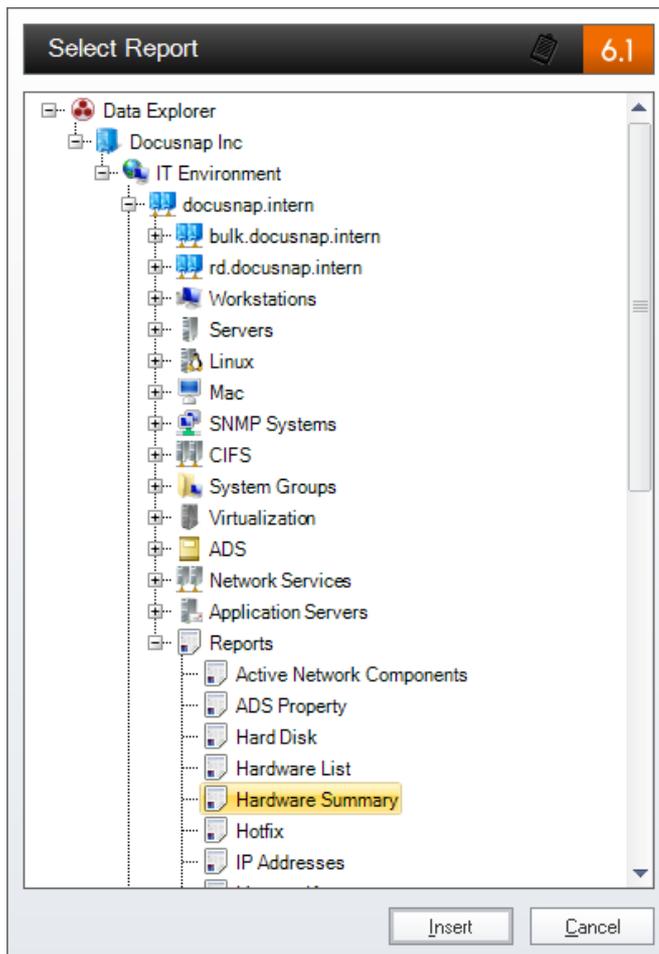


To update the table of contents, click the *Refresh* button in the *General* ribbon.

9.2.5 Report

The *Report* element allows you to insert any report existing in Docusnap into your concept. When you insert a report covering multiple inventory archive versions, Docusnap will always add the most recent inventory data to the IT concept.

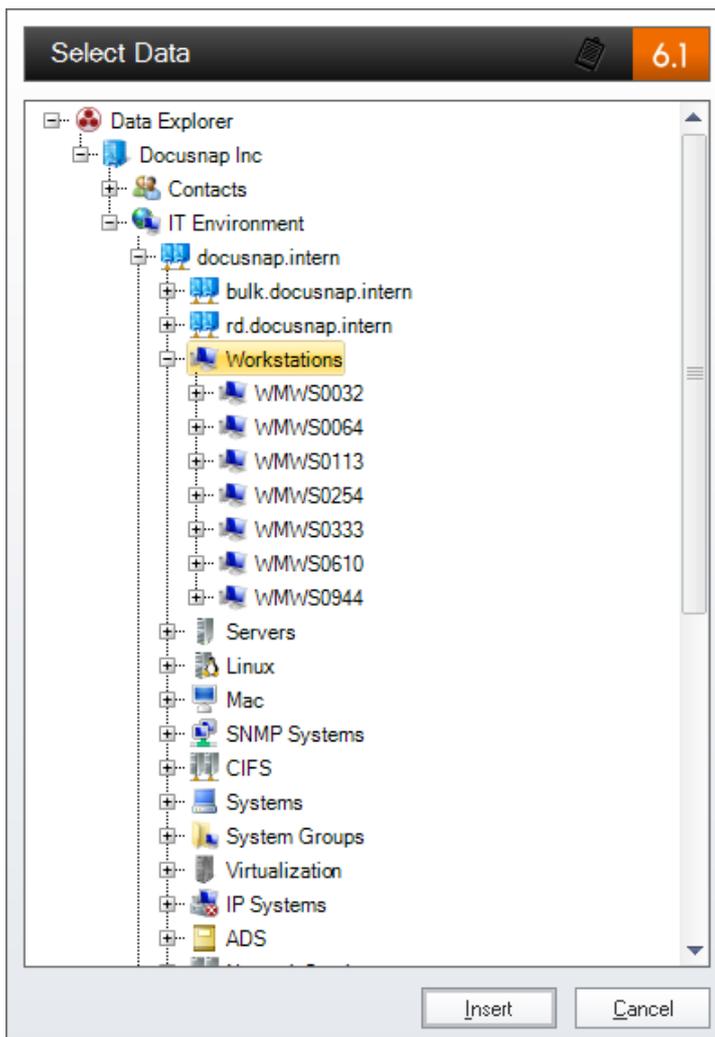
To insert a report into the document, either click the *Report* button from the *Insert* ribbon or can drag it from the object tree and drop it directly onto the desired location in the document.



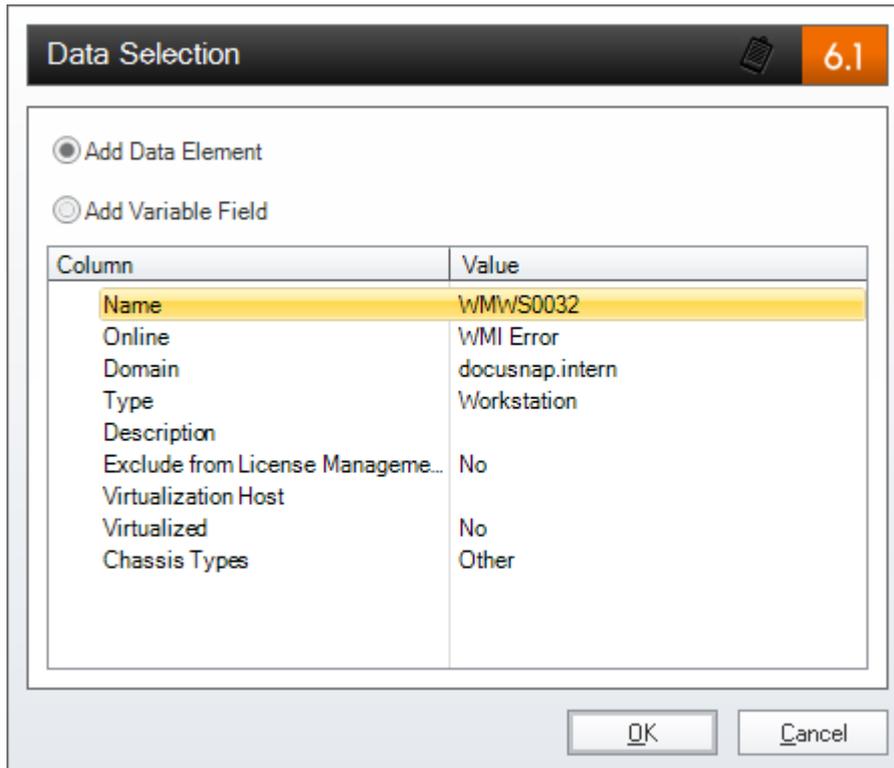
9.2.6 Data Element

You can insert current data from Docusnap into the IT concept. This loads table content into the IT concept. Any changes to the dataset automatically update the content.

Click the *Data* button to open the *Select Data* dialog. This dialog displays the existing trees and allows you to select the desired data. If you want to add the workstations table, for example, select the *Workstations* heading and click the *Insert* button to insert the data into the IT concept.

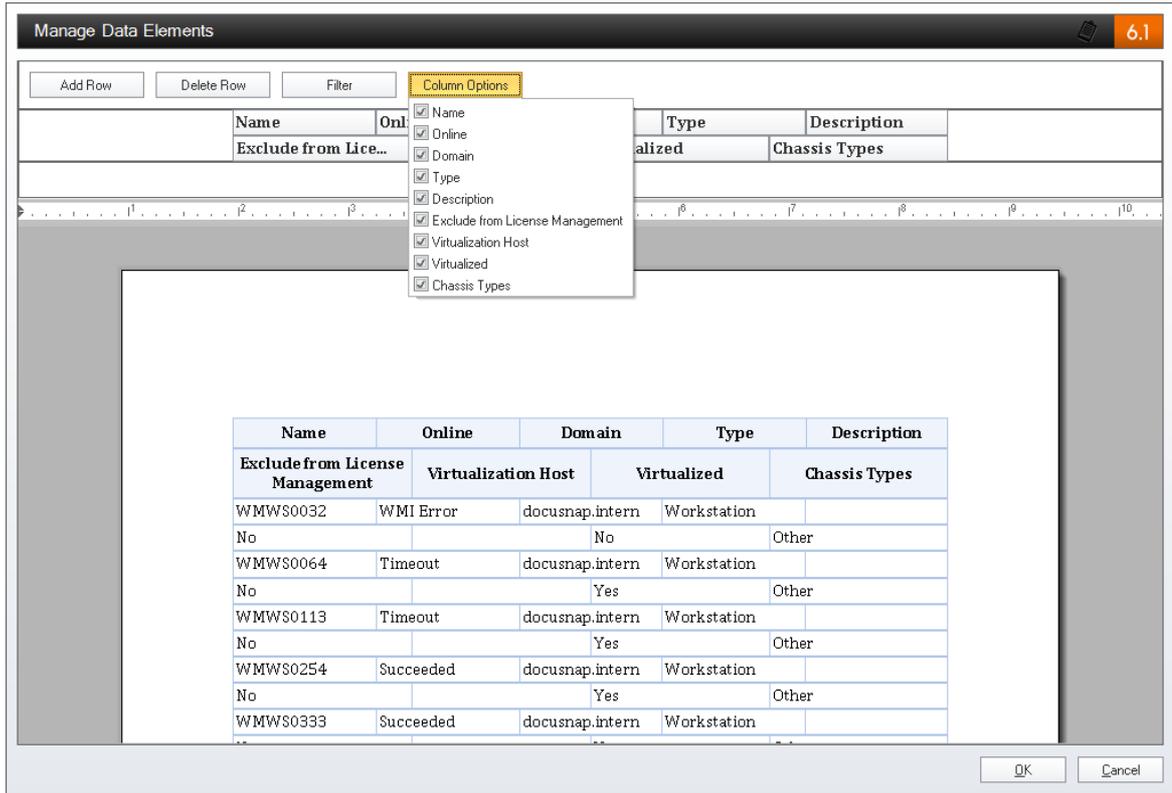


Alternatively, you also can select the desired table content from the *Objects* window and insert it by drag and drop. When you drag data from the object tree and drop it onto the concept, the *Data Selection* dialog opens. In this dialog, you can select to add a data element or a variable value.

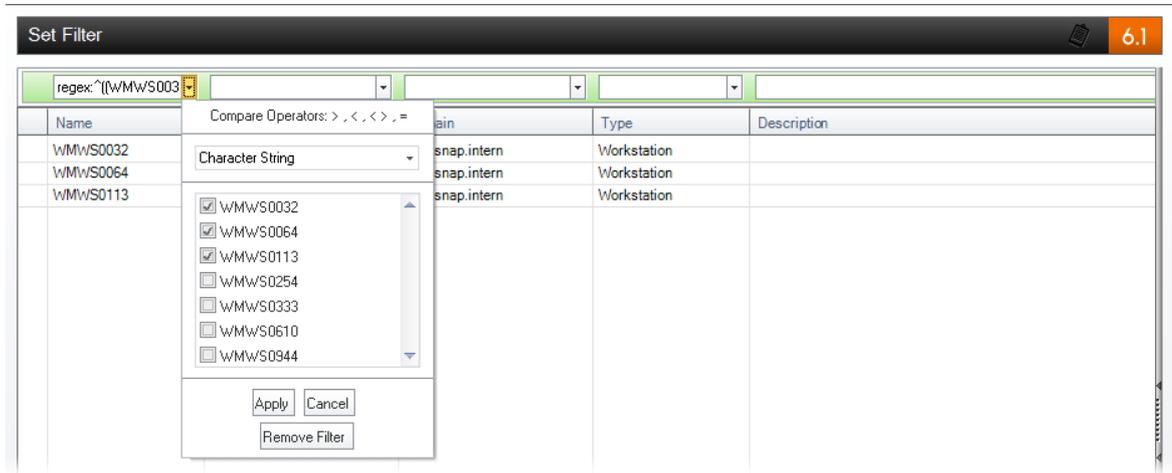


After the table with its data has been inserted into the IT concept, you can adjust the way its content will be output. When you select the data element, an additional *Data Element* ribbon displays. By clicking the *Settings* button or by selecting the *Settings* option in the context menu of the data element, you can open the *Manage Data Elements* window. You can drag and drop columns to a different position. The *Add Row* button allows you to add another row. You can move the columns to this row. By clicking the *Delete Row* button, you can remove the bottom row and distribute the columns which are still part of that row to the remaining rows.

With the *Column Options* button, you can set the columns to be displayed.



The filter allows you to filter the data that will be displayed in the IT concept. The filter options shown here are similar to the [filter in the main window](#).



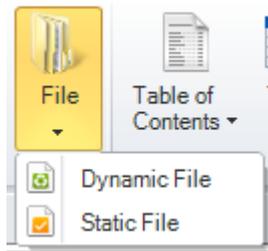
9.2.7 File

Use the *File* button to load external data into the concept.

You can insert files of types such as doc, xls, txt, jpg, png, etc. Inserting PDF files, however, only works to a limited extent. After a PDF file has been inserted, it will be displayed, but not with its correct formatting. XML files are imported as readable plain text.

There are two different ways to insert files: To select the desired way, first click the *File* button and then select the desired option.





Dynamic File

When you insert a file as a dynamic file, its content is invariable. This method is advantageous in that the inserted file will be updated within the IT concept if the underlying original file is modified.

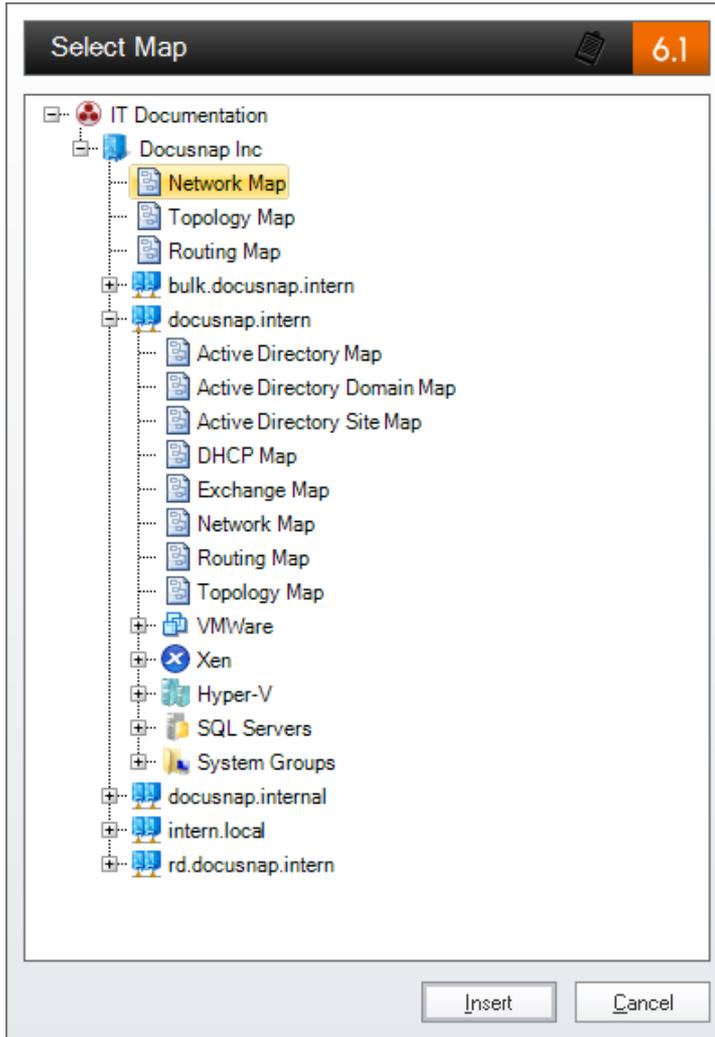
Static File

When you insert a file as a static file, its content is added and can subsequently be modified. In this case, changes to the original file will not be reflected in the the IT concept.

9.2.8 Map

Maps can also be integrated into an IT concept.

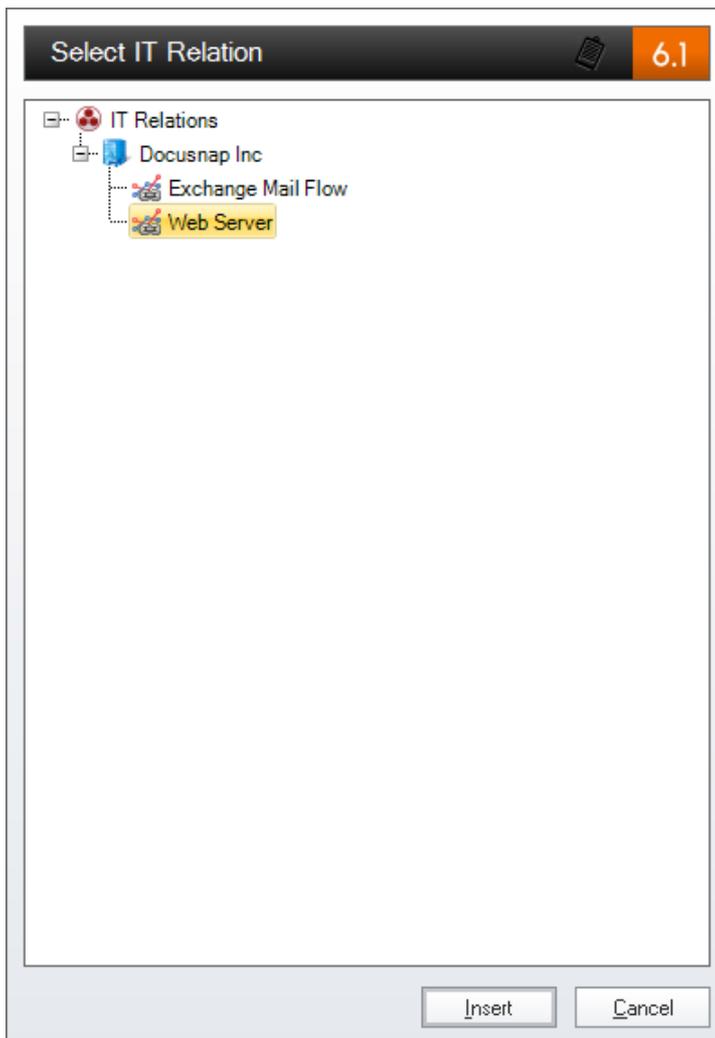
Click the *Map* button in the *Insert* ribbon to open the *Select Map* dialog. Here, you can select a map by expanding the IT Documentation node and selecting the desired map. Then, click the *Insert* button to open the associated Documentation wizard. Now, you can create the map as described in the [IT Documentation](#) section. The settings you specify in the wizard are only used to create this map within the IT concept. They do not affect the maps generated previously in the *IT Documentation* module. If you want to modify a map you generated previously, select it and click the *Settings* button to reopen the map generation wizard. This allows you to modify existing map properties. It is also possible to drag and drop the map onto the output element. This action also opens the map generation wizard.



9.2.9 IT Relation

Relations created in the *IT Relations* module can also be integrated into an IT concept.

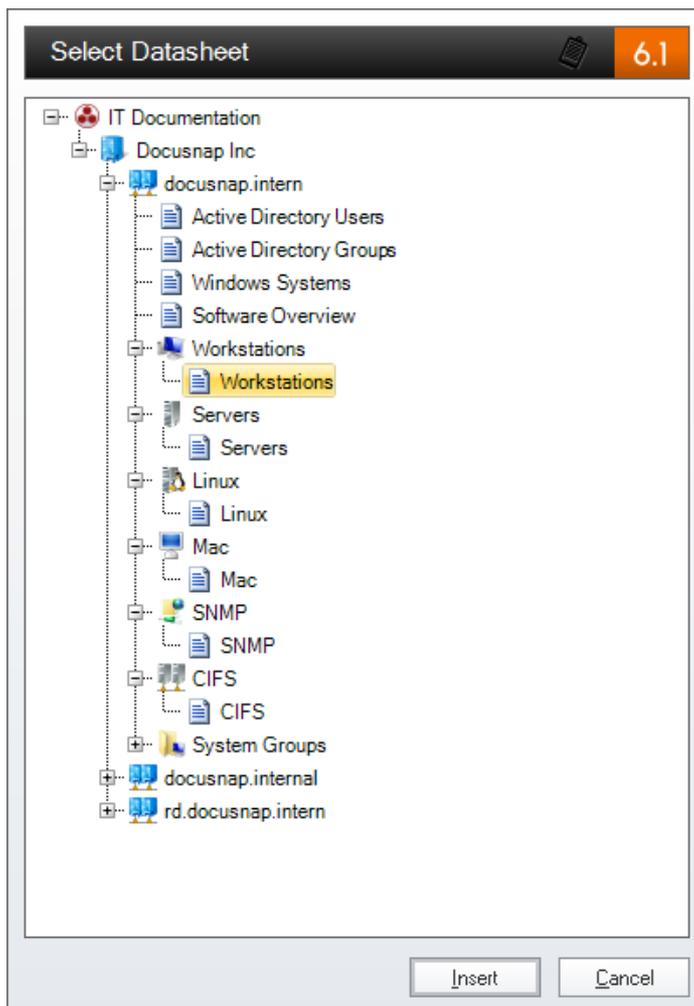
Click the *IT Relation* button on the *Insert* ribbon to open the *Select IT Relation* dialog. There, you can select an IT relation from the *IT Relations* explorer. To add the IT relation to your concept, select it and click the *Insert* button.



9.2.10 Datasheet

Overviews and datasheets can also be embedded into an IT concept.

Click the *Datasheet* button to open the *Select Datasheet* dialog. Here, you can select the desired overview or datasheet. This opens the associated documentation wizard. The datasheets or overviews can be created as described in the [Documentation](#) chapter. The settings in the wizard are used for creating the respective overview or datasheet in the output element and do not affect the existing overviews and datasheets in the *IT Documentation* module.



If you want to modify this new datasheet or overview, click the *Settings* button to reopen the Documentation wizard where you can generate datasheets or overviews. This allows you to modify existing properties. You can also drag a map or a datasheet and drop it onto the document. This will also open the Documentation wizard.

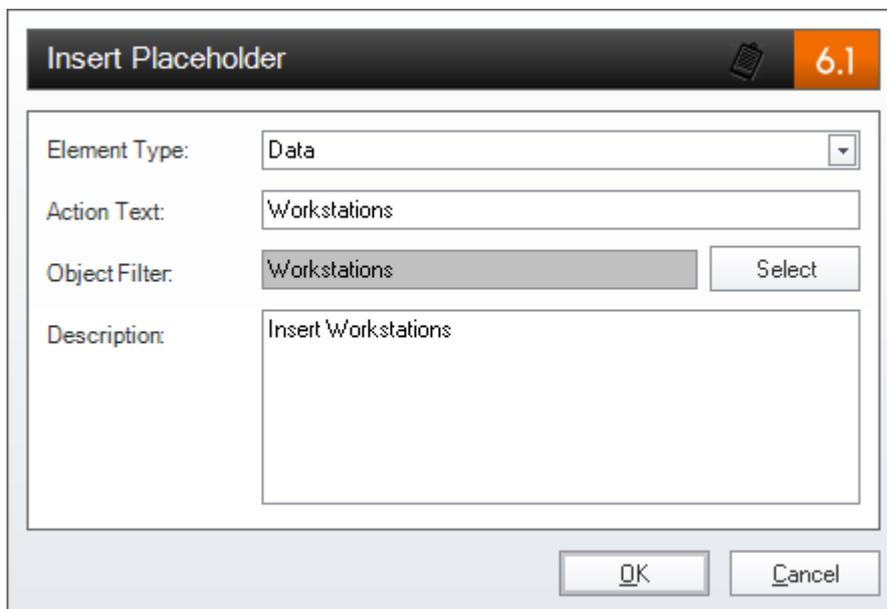
9.2.11 Placeholder

Using placeholders, you can identify the locations where particular information is to be inserted. This allows you to define a structure a user should follow when

creating a concept.

Creating Placeholders

Click the *Placeholder* button in the *Insert* ribbon to open the *Insert Placeholder* dialog. A placeholder can be defined for data, reports, maps, text, etc. Select the desired type from the *Element Type* dropdown list. The action text you specify is displayed in the document before the placeholder will be replaced with the corresponding data. The *Object Filter* field allows you to define that, e.g., only network maps or the data of workstations may be inserted. Click the *Select* button to open a window which displays the data available for the selected type. For example, if you want to insert only workstation data at a certain location, select the *Workstations* sub-node and click the *OK* button. The specified description will be displayed in the *Tasks* window at the bottom of the editor. Finally, click *OK* to add the placeholder to your document.



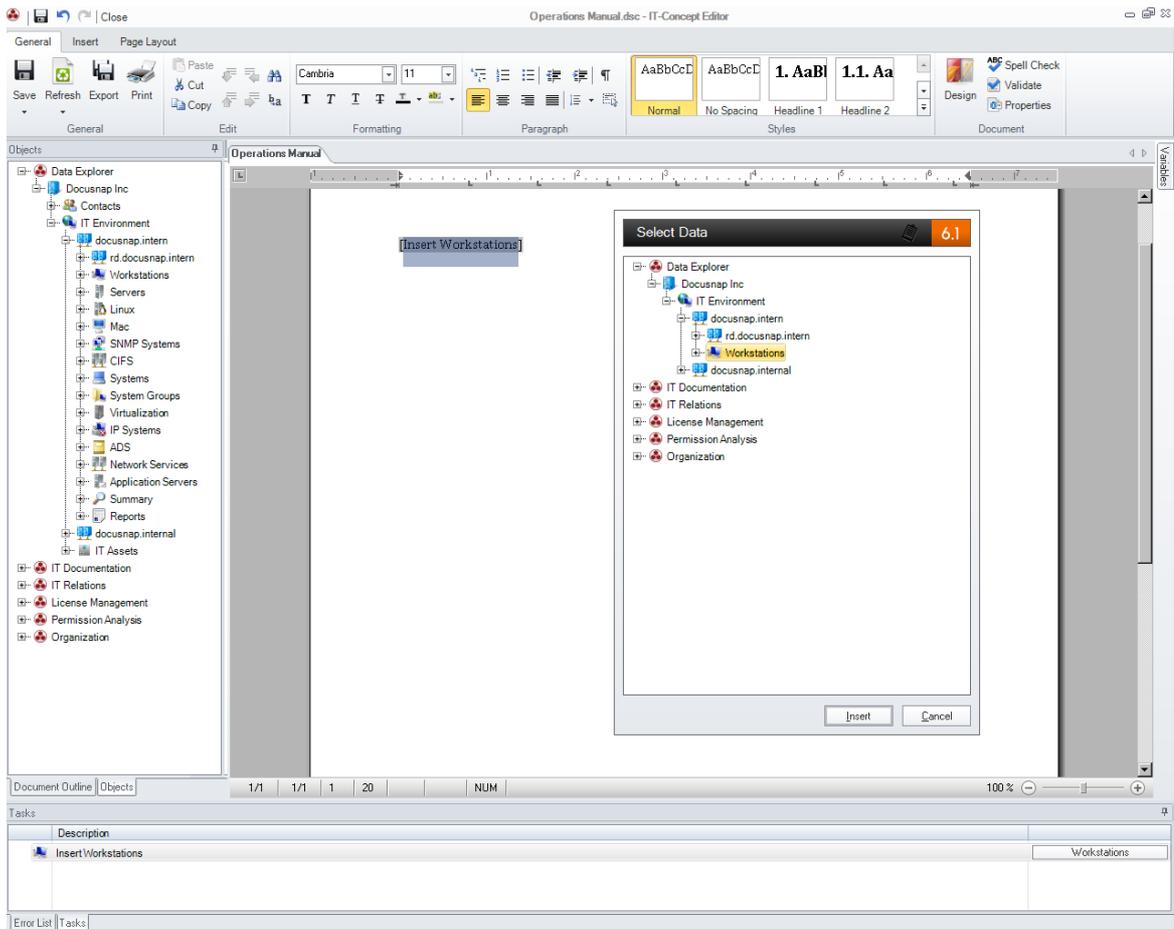
The screenshot shows the 'Insert Placeholder' dialog box. The title bar is dark gray with the text 'Insert Placeholder' and a version indicator '6.1' in an orange box. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- Element Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Data' selected.
- Action Text:** A text input field containing 'Workstations'.
- Object Filter:** A text input field containing 'Workstations' and a 'Select' button.
- Description:** A text area containing 'Insert Workstations'.

At the bottom of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Applying Placeholders

If a document contains placeholders, they will be highlighted in gray. In the *Tasks* window, the description of each placeholder will be displayed. Click the button with the action text in the *Tasks* window to open the selection window for the data which is available for this placeholder. Once you have selected the data, it replaces the placeholder.



9.3 Versions

To save an IT concept, click the *Save* button. This opens a submenu where you can decide whether to simply save the concept, to save it as a new version, or to save it as a template. When you select *As New Version*, the current state of the concept will be saved as a separate version. Versions are displayed together with their save date below the IT concept node in the Docusnap tree view. You can also enter an additional description. This description is displayed behind the version.

For each IT concept, you may create up to ten different versions. When this number is reached and you save a new version, the oldest version will be deleted. To exclude a version from deletion, you can click the *Keep Version* button and set this version as not to be deleted. A version flagged as to be kept will be excluded from the count of ten versions that can be stored.

9.4 Templates

You can save any previously created concept as a template and use it later to create a new concept based on this template.

Save as Template



After creating your concept, you can save it as a template for further concepts. After a click on the *Save* button, you can select *As Template* to open the *Save IT Concept Template* dialog. Enter a name for the template in this dialog. The template will then be saved to the *ITConceptTemplates* folder under the folder specified in the local settings or in the team settings. To make the templates available to multiple users, you need to select the same folder for the team settings.

The template is created for the language in which the concept was written. After entering the name, you can save the template which will then be available when creating new concepts.

	Name	Date Created	Date Modified	Size
	Emergency Manual	3/26/2013 1:52:15 PM	3/26/2013 1:52:16 PM	5.52 kB
	Recovery Plan Server	3/26/2013 1:55:39 PM	3/26/2013 1:55:39 PM	5.5 kB

Name:

Manage IT Concept Templates

Existing templates can be deleted from the *Manage IT Concept Templates* dialog that can be opened by clicking *Templates* from the *IT Concepts* ribbon. In addition, you can add a description to each template. Use the *Language* drop-down list to select the German or the English templates to be listed.

Manage IT Concept Templates 6.1

Language:

Select Template

Name	Date Created	Date Modified	Size
 Emergency Manual	3/26/2013 1:52:15 PM	3/26/2013 1:52:16 PM	5.52 kB
 Recovery Plan Server	3/26/2013 1:55:39 PM	3/26/2013 1:55:39 PM	5.5 kB
 Recovery Plan Workstation	3/26/2013 1:56:51 PM	3/26/2013 1:56:51 PM	5.53 kB

Template Description

Creating a Document from a Template

When creating a new document, you can either start with an empty document or select an existing template from the *Select Template* list. Depending on the language selected for the concept, the available templates are offered for selection.

When creating a document, you must specify a name for it. A click on the *Create* button creates a new document based on the selected template.

Create IT Concept 6.1

Concept Name: Language:

Select Template

Empty Document

Recovery Plan Server

Recovery Plan Workstation

Emergency Manual

Recovery Plan

Emergency Manual

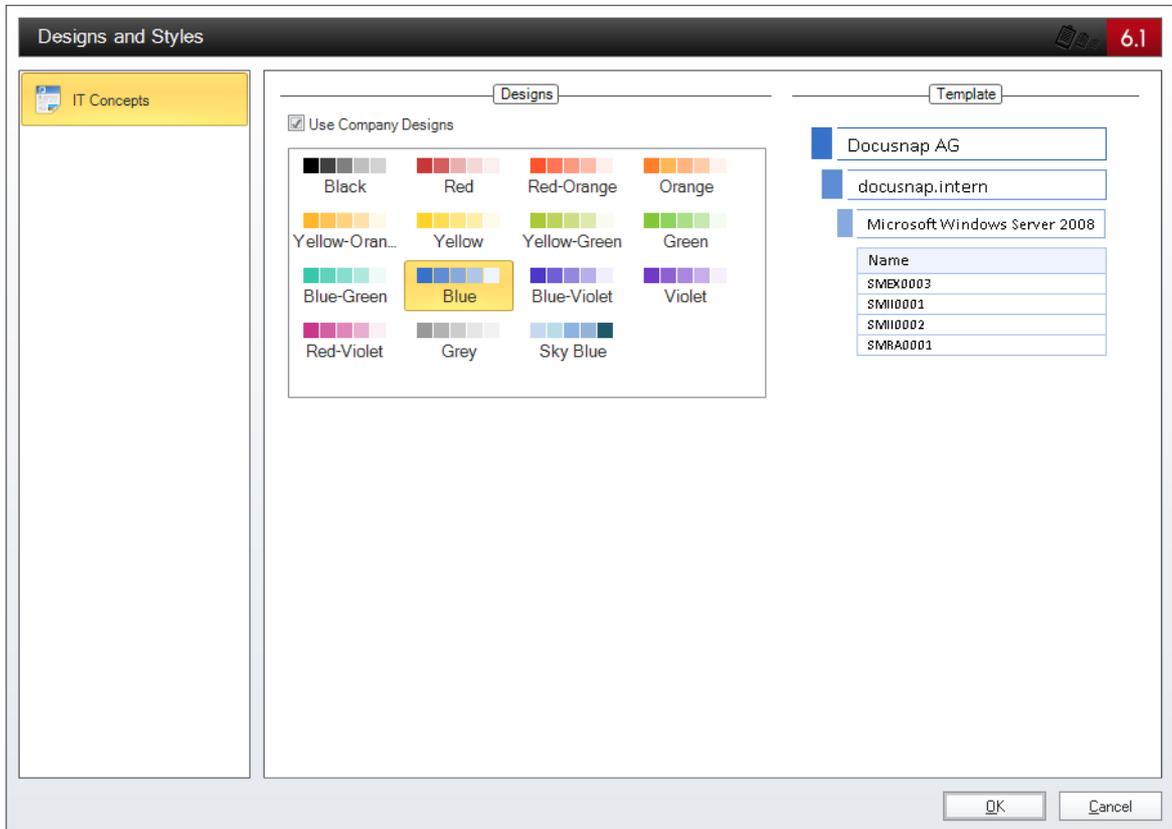
Template

- [-] Recovery Plan
 - [+] 1. Responsibilities
 - [+] 1.1. Responsible System Manager
 - [+] 1.2. Responsible technical manager for the affected business proces
 - [+] 1.3. Responsible manager for recovery implementation
 - [+] 2. Required Components for the emergency and regular operation
 - [+] 2.1. Required Systems
 - [+] 2.2. Interfaces and Dependencies
 - [+] 2.3. Required Infrastructure
 - [+] 3. Providing the Components
 - [+] 3.1. Internal and external alternatives in emergency operation
 - [+] 3.2. Procurement of components for emergency operation and for re
 - [+] 3.3. Replacement options or Replacement
 - [+] 4. Restart / Recovery in emergency and regular operation
 - [+] 4.1. Recovery Times
 - [+] 4.2. Order for the restart of the IT systems and applications in emerg
 - [+] 4.3. Order for the restart of the IT systems and applications in regula

Template Description

9.5 Designs

The design selected in the *Designs and Styles* dialog will be used for the IT concept. It is possible to choose an individual design for each concept. Clicking the *Design* button opens the *Designs and Styles* dialog. There, you can select a design for the currently open IT concept.

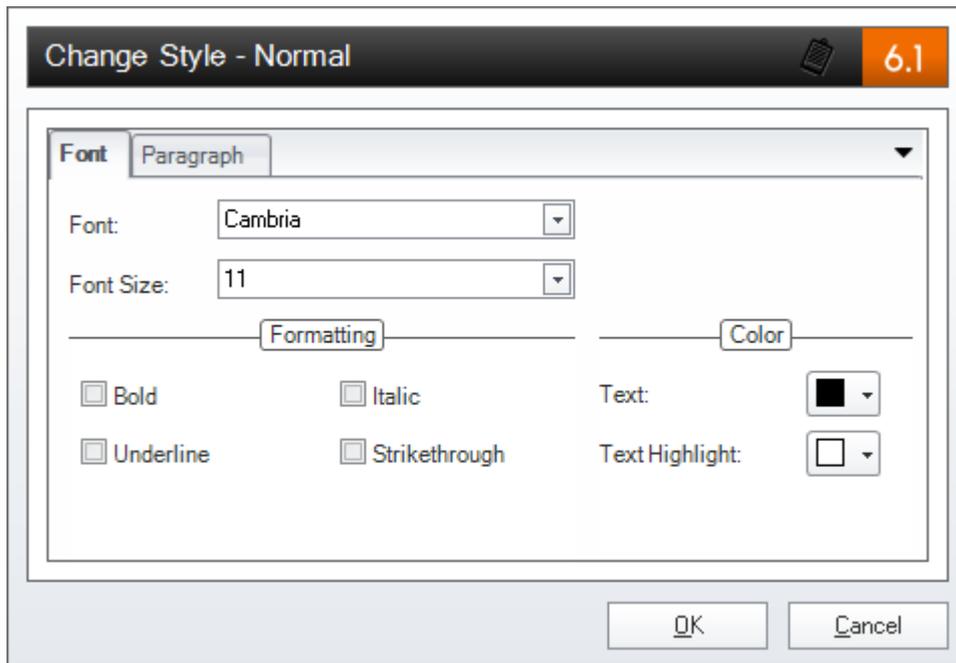


9.6 Styles

Styles are used to achieve centralized formatting of text.

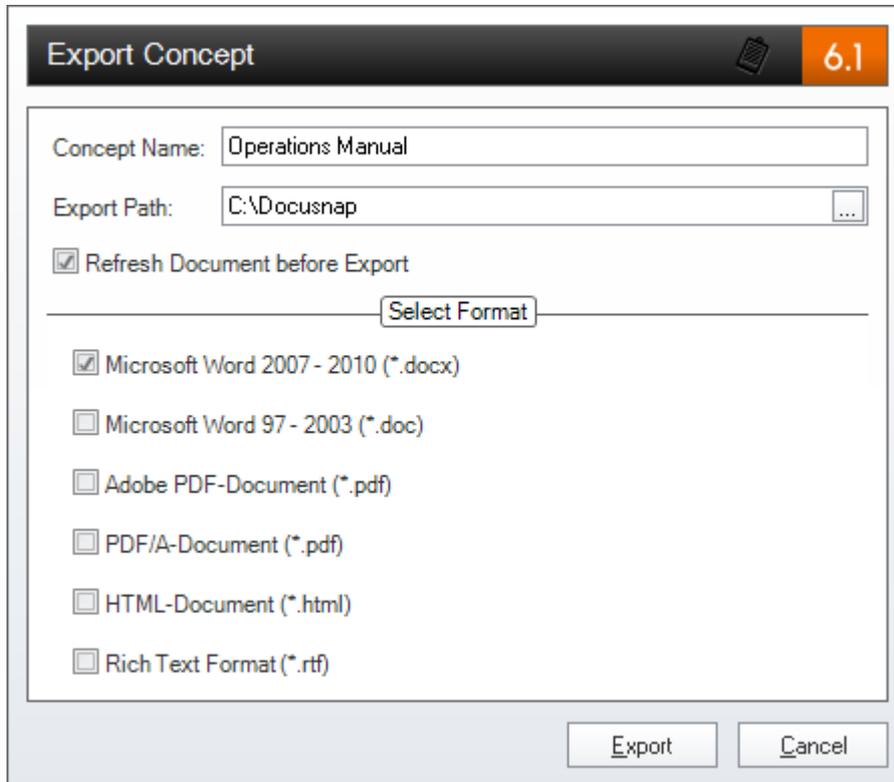
The *Headline 1* through *Headline 4* styles are used for headings. In addition, they are taken into account when creating the [Table of contents](#) and for the entries in the [Document Outline](#) window.

The context menu for each style in the Styles group allows you to modify the formatting. Click the *Modify* option to open the *Change Style* dialog. In this dialog, you can adjust the formatting for the selected style.



9.7 Export and Scheduling

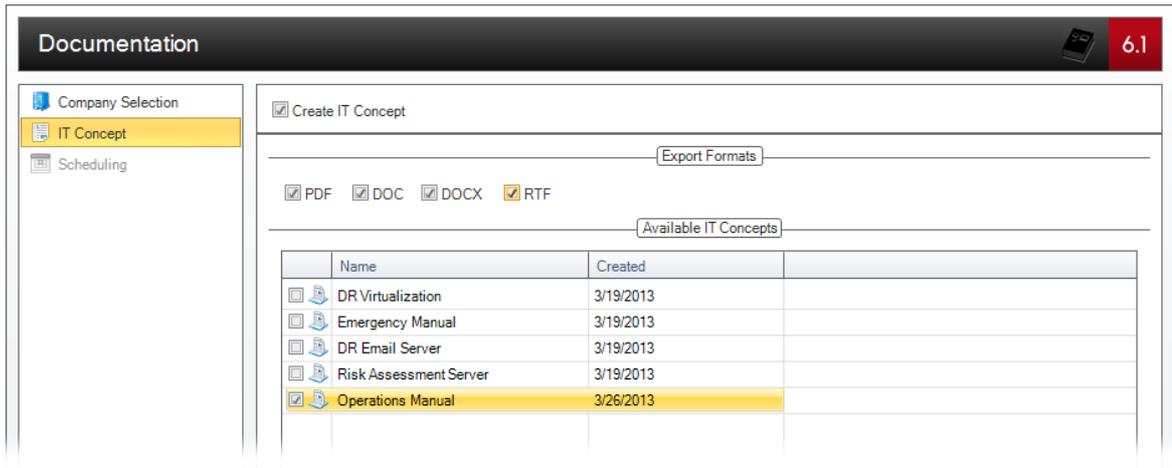
Using the *Export* button, you can export the selected IT concept to various formats. In the *Export Concept* dialog, you can enter the name of the file and select the path and file type to export the IT concept to.



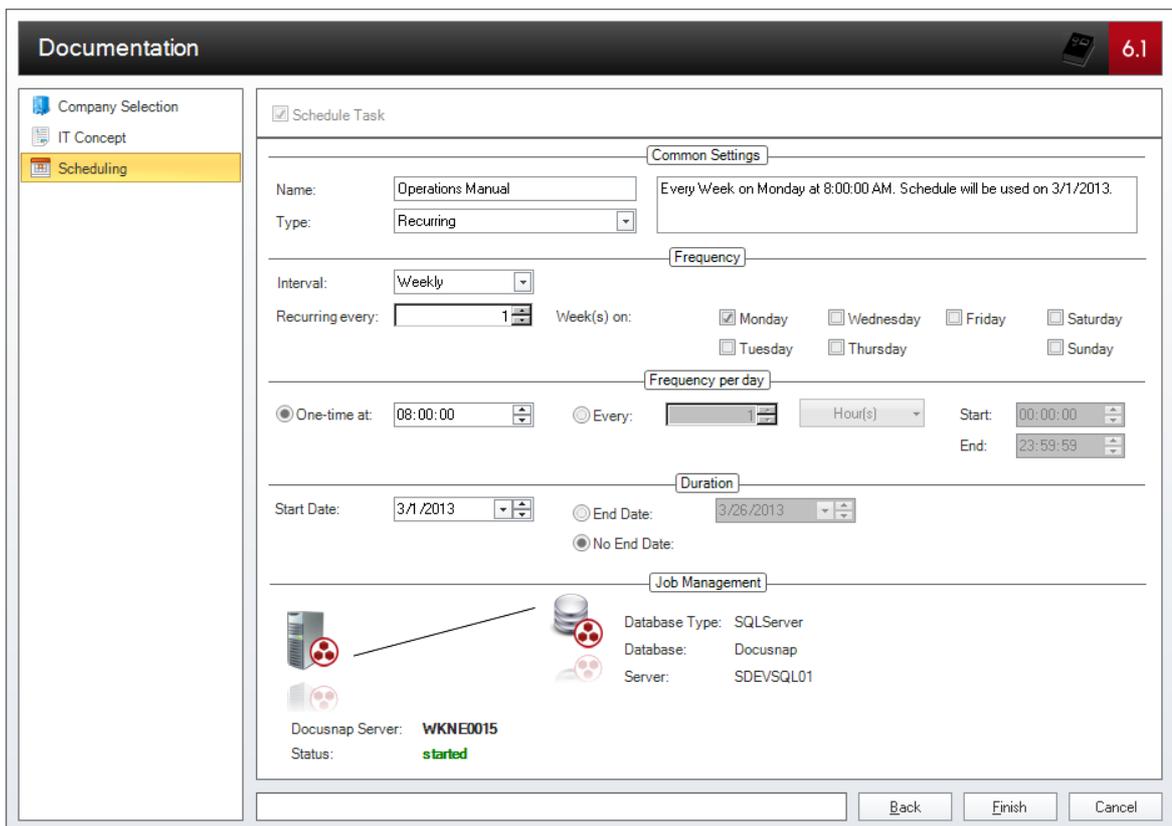
When creating an IT concept, you can also use the Scheduling feature. Click the *Schedule as Job* button on the IT Concepts ribbon to launch the Documentation wizard.

For an description of the basic steps in this wizard, refer to the [Basic Steps](#) section of the Documentation chapter. In the *IT Concept* step, proceed as follows:

Under *Export Formats*, select the file type to which you want to export the concept. From the *Available IT Concepts* table, you select the IT concepts to be exported. The table lists all existing IT concepts.

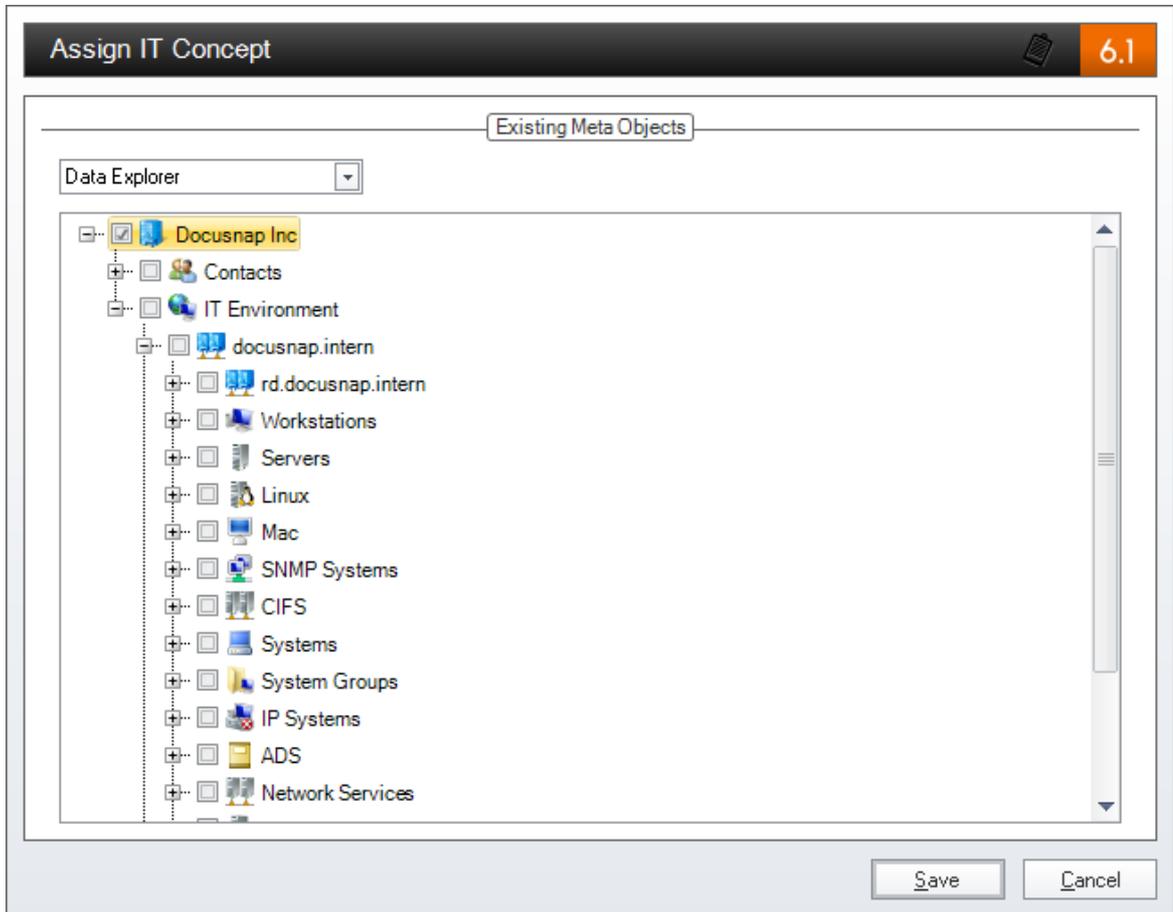


For proper scheduling, specify a name, the schedule type, the interval, the number of recurring executions, the starting date and time. Furthermore, the [Docusnap Server](#) must have been configured successfully. For more information on *Automatic Scheduling*, refer to the [Scheduling](#) chapter.



9.8 Assignment

The *Assign* button in the IT Concept ribbon allows you to insert existing concepts and directories at any desired position in the Explorer. To assign an IT concept, select it and click the *Assign* button to open the following dialog.



Use the drop-down list to select the desired Explorer and tick the checkbox for the hierarchical level where you want to insert the concept or the directory. The inserted concept or directory is always located directly below the desired node in the selected Explorer.

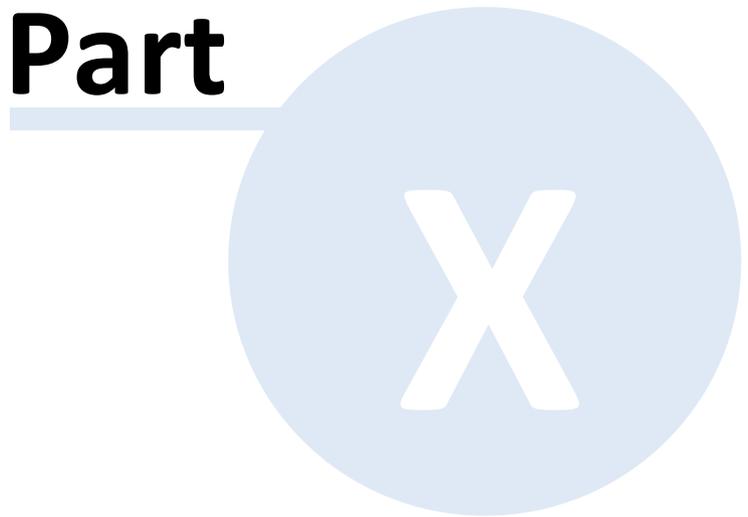
9.9 Conversion

For Docusnap version 6.1, a new IT concept was developed. To reuse IT concepts created in Docusnap 6.0, you need to convert them. If legacy IT concepts or IT concept templates exist upon startup of Docusnap 6.1, they are suggested in the *Upgrade Wizard* for conversion.

From the *IT Concepts* tab, you can select the IT concepts to be converted. From the *Templates* tab, you can select the templates which still exist in the Docusnap 6.0 format for conversion. The IT concepts will be stored in the folder specified for IT concepts in the Options dialog.

Click the *Start* button to start the conversion.

Part



10 IT Assets

Using the IT Assets functionality, it is possible to inventory systems which cannot be scanned automatically by Docusnap. This can be done manually or by [data import](#).

Docusnap comes with different predefined IT asset types. They can be extended and added to, as required, by creating additional types or classes with minimum effort. Docusnap generates the required data entry screens automatically.

The different IT assets can be embedded into IT concepts, IT relations, reports, and maps.

10.1 IT Assets Structure

Click the *Manage IT Assets* button in the *Management* ribbon to open the *Manage IT Assets* dialog. Use this dialog to create the structure of your IT assets. User-defined Structures are prefixed with a lowercase x.

Categories

Click the *New* and select *Category* to create a new category. You can enter a name and labels in English and German for the category. You can also enter a description in both languages. Below any category, you can create IT assets or subcategories.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage IT Assets' dialog box. The left pane displays a tree view of IT asset categories. The right pane shows the configuration for the 'Mobile Phones' category.

Manage IT Assets (6.1)

Category

Name: Active

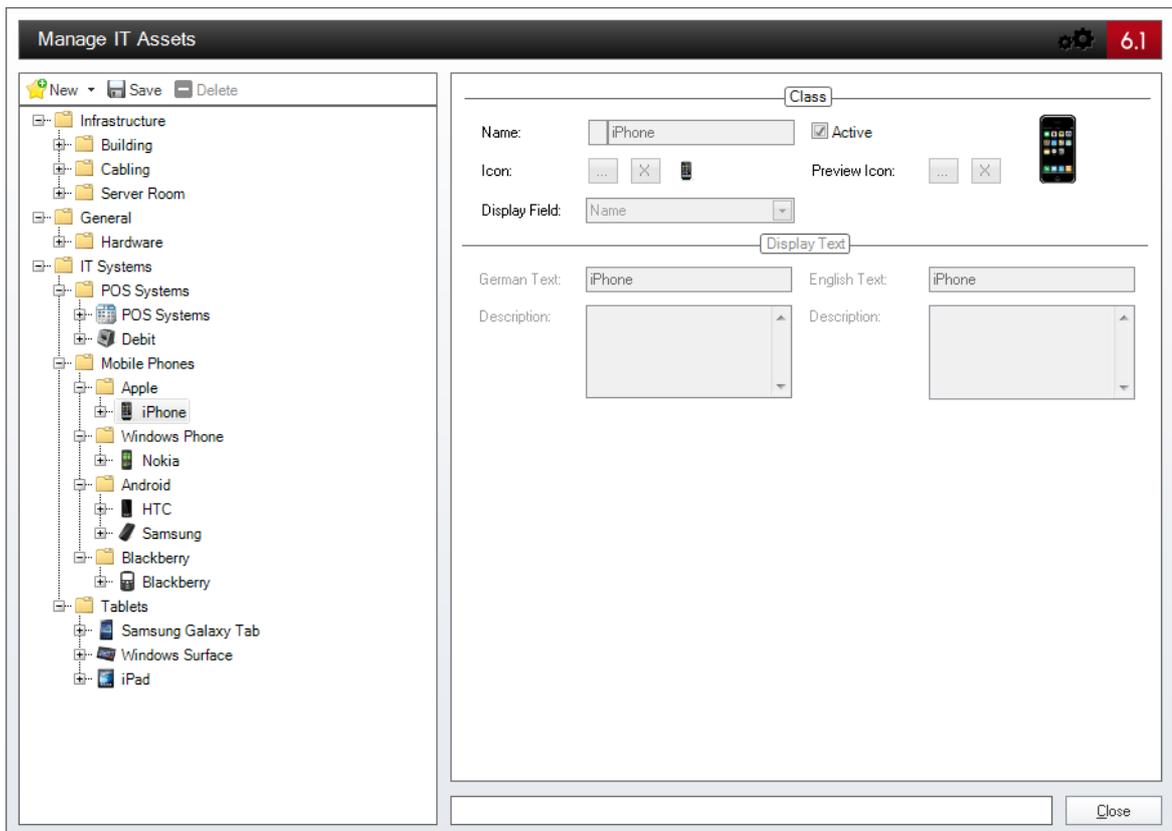
Display Text

German Text: English Text:

Description:

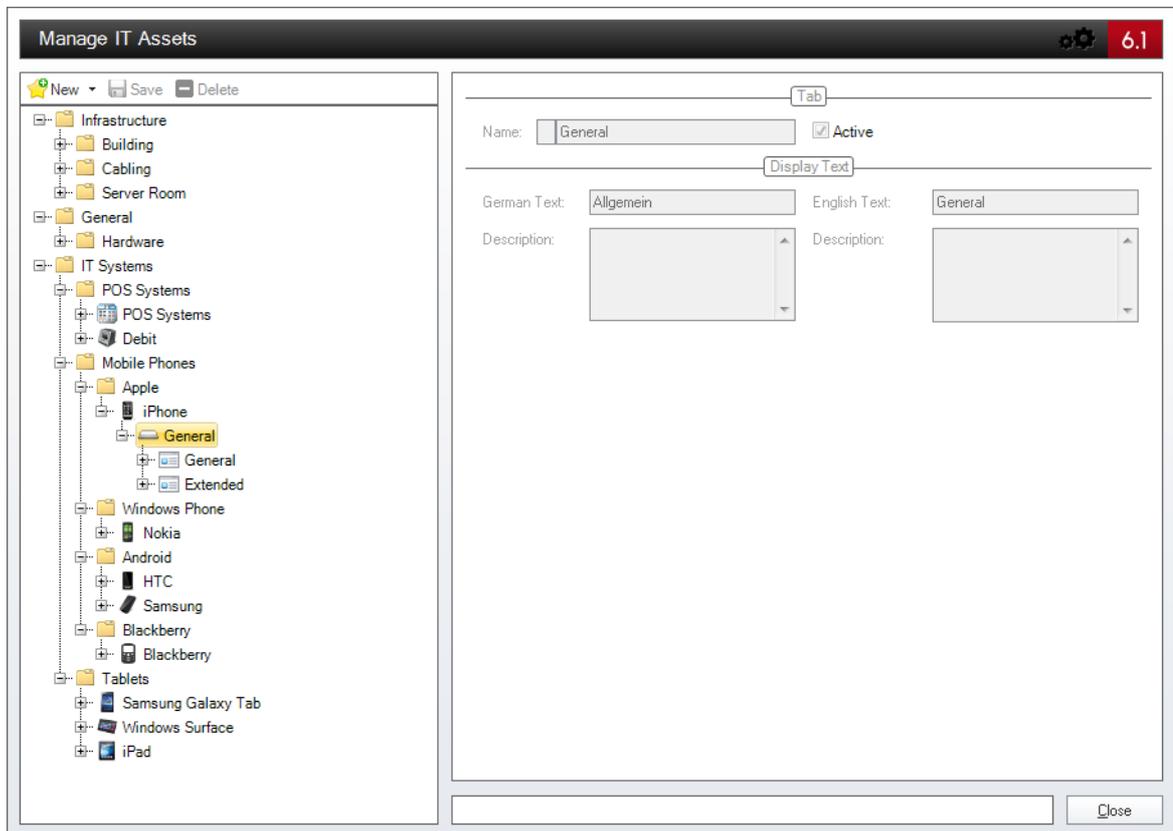
Class

Click *New* and then *Class* to create an IT asset under the selected category node. You can enter a name and labels in English and German for the IT asset. Docusnap suggests a particular icon for each *class*. You can change this icon using the  button. By unchecking the *Active* checkbox, you can deactivate the class so that it is no longer selectable when you create new IT assets. In the display field, select the property whose value should be displayed in the tree view. After you have saved the class, Docusnap creates the *General* tab and the *General* section. Subclasses may be created under each class.



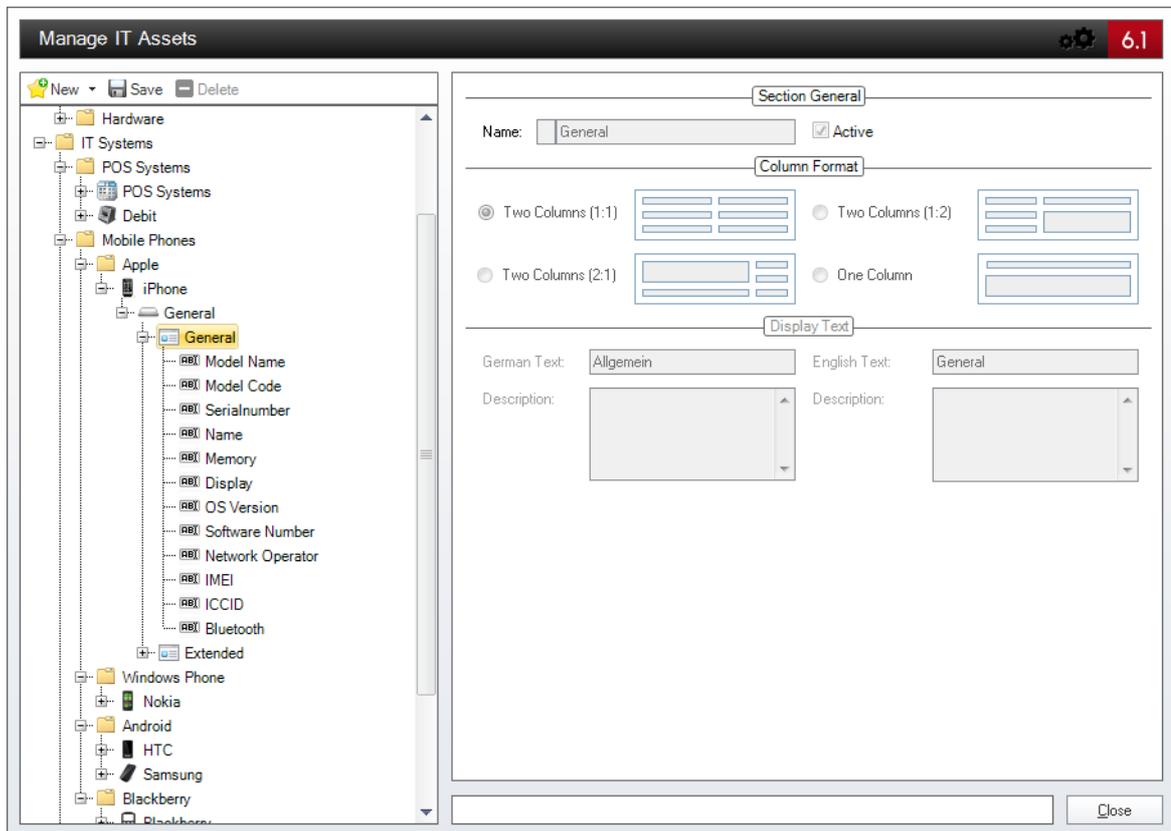
Tab

In addition to the *General* tab, which is created for each class and which cannot be deleted, you may create other tabs. These will be displayed as additional tabs when you create IT assets. Besides the name, you can enter labels in English and German for each tab. The *Active* checkbox allows you to enable/disable the tab.



Section

For each class, Docusnap creates a *General* section. You can rename or delete this section. Sections are used to group the properties of the IT assets in the editor area. You can enter a name and labels in English and German for each section. The *Active* checkbox allows you to enable/disable the section. The *Column Formats* allow you to define how to arrange the properties in the editor area.



Properties

Properties are used to specify values for the IT assets. Create the properties under the desired section. Click the *New* button and select *Property* to define new properties. You can enter a name and labels in English and German for each property. The *Active* checkbox allows you to enable/disable the property. Various property types are available:

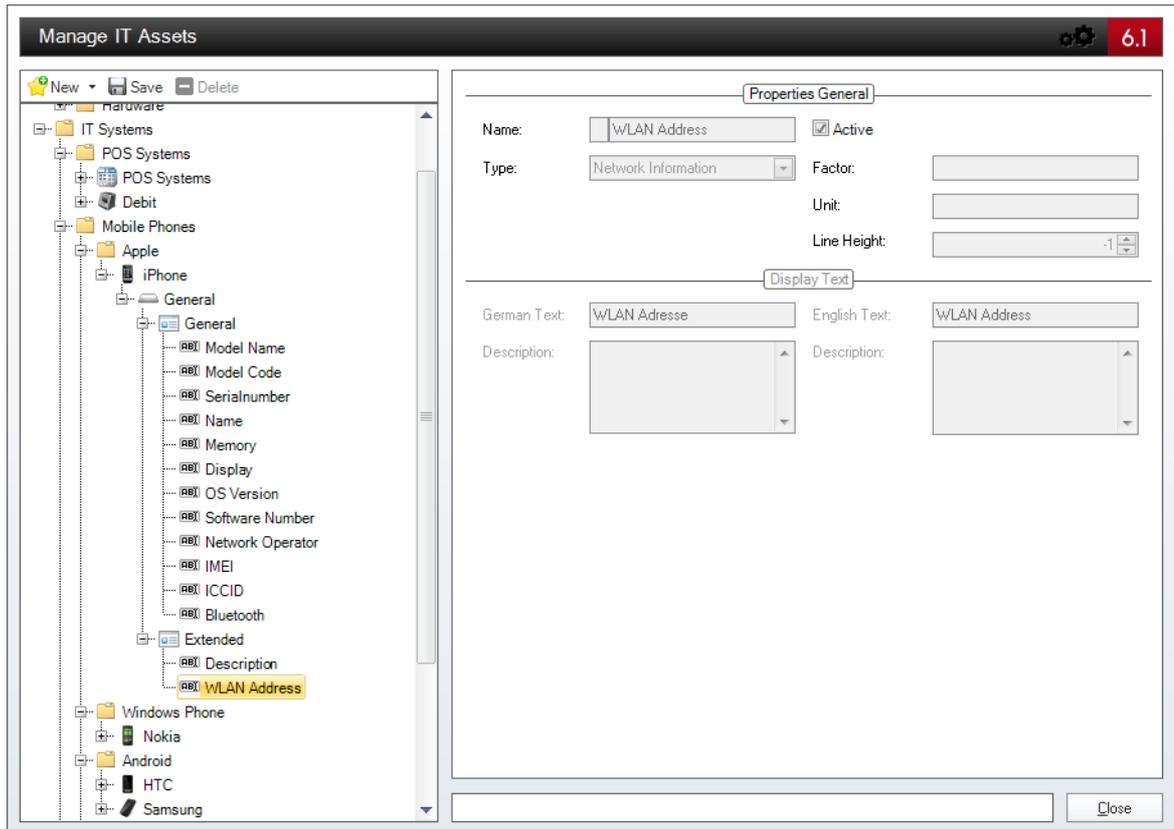
- **Date:** If you select the *Date* type, a date selection for specifying the date will be provided in the editor area.
- **Decimal:** If you select the *Decimal* type, only decimal numbers can be inserted into the text box.

In addition, you can set a factor for the conversion of numeric values. Example: A factor of 1024 would convert a value from bytes into kilobytes.

Here, you can define the formatting of numeric values according to standard conventions. Valid placeholders are the # character for any numeric value and the

digit 0 for numeric values which are padded with leading zeros if they are too small. The comma is used as the thousands separator, and the period as the decimal separator. Examples: #,##0.00 MB, 00 h

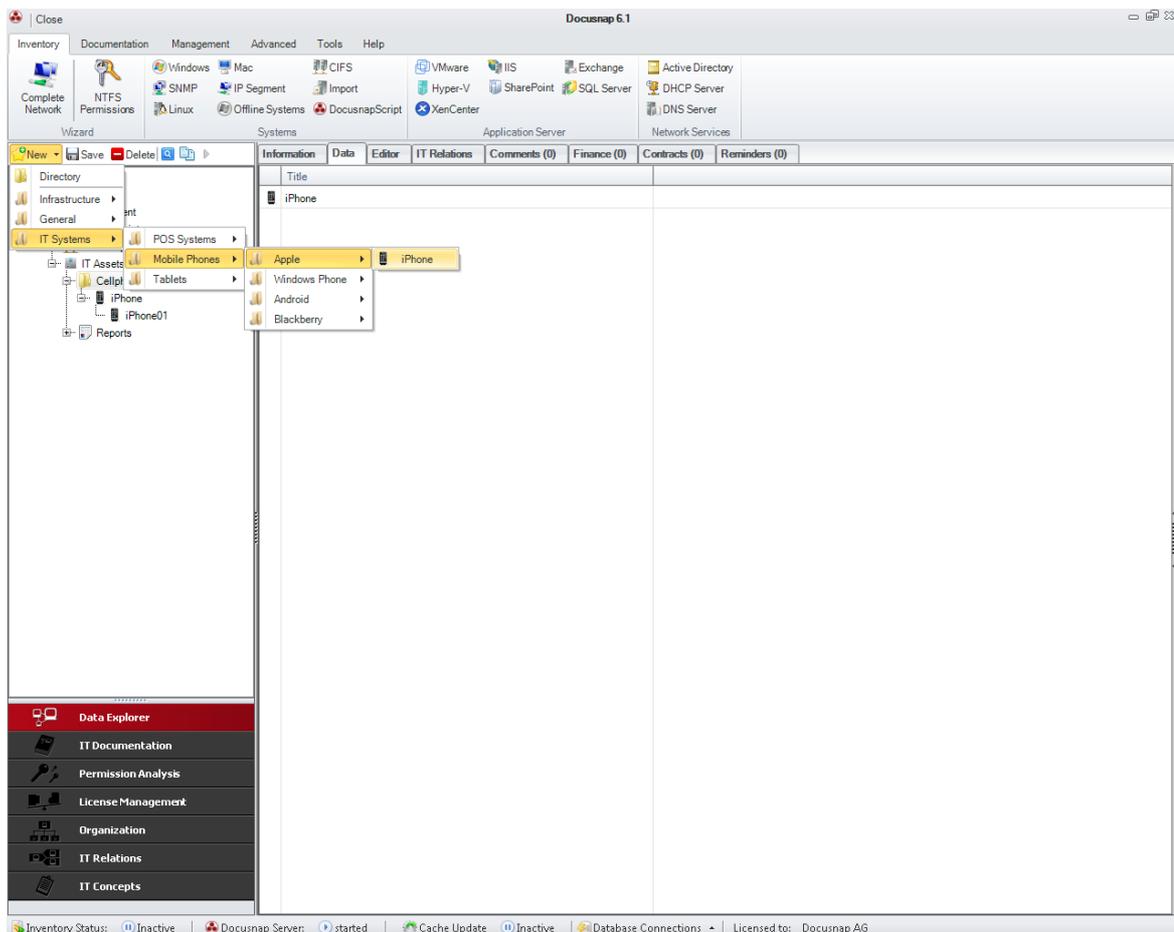
- Yes/No: For a property of the *Yes/No* type, a checkbox will be displayed in the editor area.
- List: If you select the *List* type, you can use the *List Values* button to define entries which will subsequently be selectable in a drop-down list in the editor area.
- Multi-Line Text: If you select the *Multi-Line Text* type, you can enter text without any length limitation. For this type, you can specify the height of the text box in the *Line Height* field.
- Network Information: If you select the *Network Information* type, you can specify the *IP Address*, the *Subnet Mask*, and the *MAC Address* for this IT asset. This information can then also be added to the network maps.
- Text: If you select the *Text* type, Docusnap will display a text box in the editor area.
- Number: If you select the *Number* type, the text box will only accept integers. In addition, you can set a factor for the conversion of numeric values. Here, you can define the formatting of numeric values according to standard conventions.
- ADS Assignment: With the type *ADS Assignment* users or groups from the ADS inventory can be assigned to an IT asset. When creating the IT asset the name of wanted user or group can be entered. Once the first letter is typed, the matching entries are suggested. Users and groups can be added via enter key or selection via the mouse from the suggestion list. Click the button to open the dialog for the advanced search. In this dialog the selection of users and groups can be filtered by several conditions. Afterwards the selected user or group can be assigned to the IT asset. You find further information on the filter in the chapter [Permission Analysis](#).
- Number Server: The number server can be defined in the *Advanced* ribbon and can be used to assign a continuous number to every new generated IT asset. In the *Settings* an existing Number Server can be chosen, when you select the type *Number Server*. You find further information on the definition of *Number Servers* in the configuration manual.



You can move classes and categories or change the order in which the properties are listed in the editor area by drag&drop.

10.2 Create IT Assets

IT assets are created from the Data Explorer. In the first step, create a directory under the *IT Assets* heading. Then, you can create the IT assets under this directory by clicking the *New* button and selecting the desired category. It is possible to clone existing IT assets. When you clone an IT asset, all values except the value defined for the display field will be copied.



In addition to creating IT assets manually, you can import the content of CSV files as IT assets using the [Data Import](#) feature.

Under the *IT Assets* heading in the tree structure, you can open the Reports node where two reports are displayed which list the values of the IT assets.

10.3 Other Inventory

Docusnap 6.1 enables you to manually create IT assets to create data for equipment which cannot be inventoried automatically. In Docusnap 6.0, these were covered by the Other Inventory type. To centralize the output of these entries, the Other Inventory items will be transferred to the IT assets when converting a Docusnap 6.0 database to the Docusnap 6.1 format.

Inventory items created on the Company level are output as IT assets below the

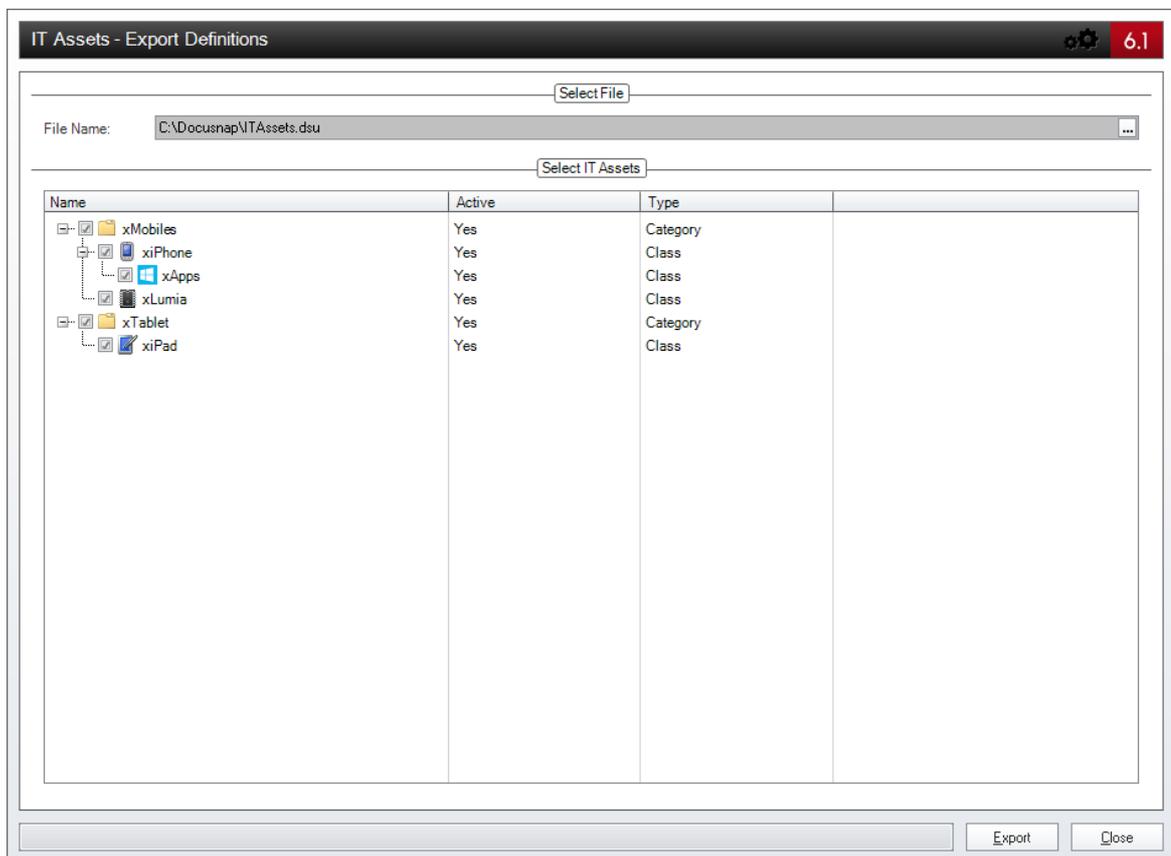
Account Inventory heading. If inventory was defined on the domain level, a separate IT Assets heading is created for each domain and the inventory is listed under that node.

10.4 Export

You can export the configuration of the IT assets to an external file and then import the configuration data into another Docusnap database.

Click the *Export Schema* button in the *Management* ribbon to open a dialog where you can save the structure of the IT assets to an external file.

You can specify the file to which you want to export the corresponding data in the field at the top of the dialog. Clicking the button will open a file/path selection dialog. The list below shows the IT asset structures of this database. Click the *Export* button to export all selected categories and classes to the specified file.



10.5 Import

Click the *Import Schema* button in the *Management* ribbon to open the dialog for importing IT asset structures.

Each newly created category and class will be assigned a unique ID. Tick the *Overwrite Existing Data* checkbox to overwrite the existing data if, upon the import

of a category or class, Docusnap detects that the respective item already exists. In case a category or class with an identical name exists, you can define a postfix. The specified postfix will be appended to the name of the category or class using an underscore (_).

In the Select IT Assets table, you can select the IT assets to be imported. Start the import by clicking the *Import* button.

IT Assets - Import Definitions 6.1

Select File

File Name: C:\Docusnap\ITAssets.dsu

Existing Objects

Postfix for Existing Name: odl

Overwrite Existing Data

Select IT Assets

Name	Active	Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> xMobiles	Yes	Category
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> xLumia	Yes	Class
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> xiPhone	Yes	Class
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> xApps	Yes	Class
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> xTablet	Yes	Category
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> xiPad	Yes	Class

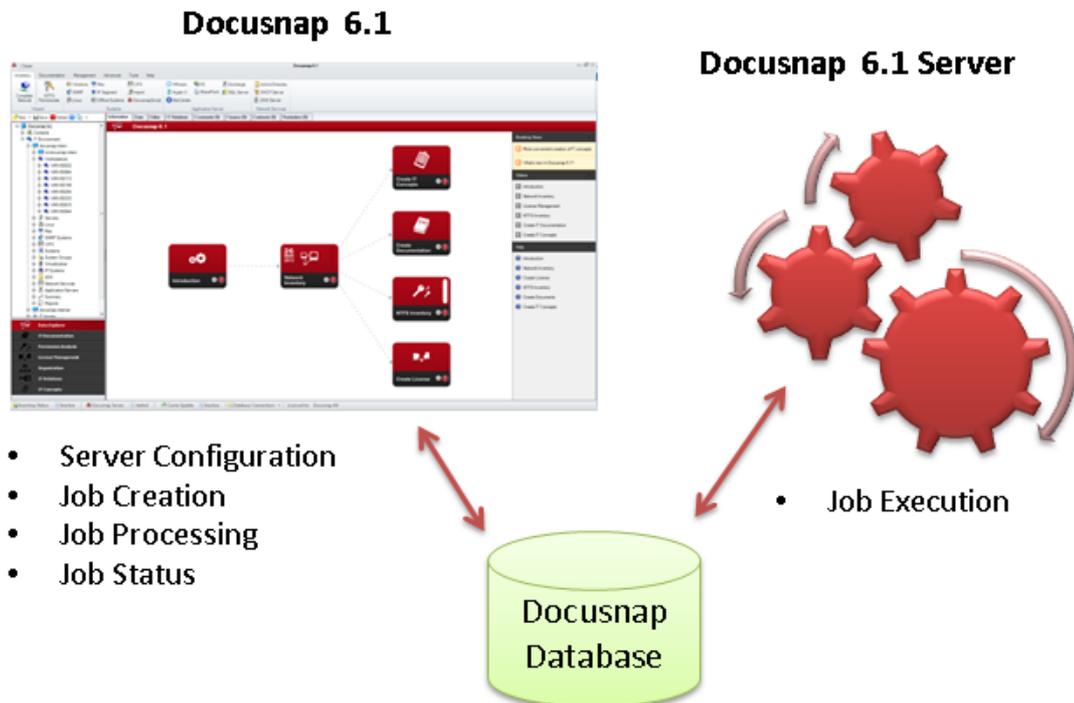
Import Close

Part

XI

11 Docusnap Server

The server component of Docusnap allows you to fully automate some processes, such as creating an inventory or the associated documentation. This section explains the underlying concept and the configuration of Docusnap Server.



Docusnap

To create, process or monitor jobs, you will use the Docusnap application. Once the Scheduling feature has been enabled in the *Option* dialog (see [Options](#)), an additional Scheduling step is added to the inventory and documentation wizards (see [Scheduling](#)). In the *Scheduling* step, you can schedule the automated execution of the current inventory or documentation job for later or repeated execution. The jobs will be saved in the Docusnap database and are immediately available for execution by the Docusnap Server.

The *Job Management* dialog allows you to edit, monitor, delete and, if necessary, start the scheduled jobs (see [Job Management](#)).

For Docusnap 6.1, the Docusnap Server Administration dialog was integrated directly in Docusnap in order to centralize control and configuration.

DocuSnap Server

The DocuSnap Server is installed as a Windows service and is therefore the central element for the timed execution of scheduled jobs. The DocuSnap Server can be configured using the [Configuration wizard](#) in DocuSnap. As already described previously, the jobs are configured, scheduled and saved in the DocuSnap database. The jobs will be loaded by the DocuSnap Server upon startup or during normal operation and executed as scheduled.



Since Microsoft Access databases tend to cause problems in network operation, we recommend to rely on Microsoft SQL Server databases.

By default, the DocuSnap Server service will be installed using the local system account. At this point, make sure that the specified account has sufficient access rights to the SQL Server, since otherwise, the DocuSnap Server service cannot be started.

11.1 Configuration

Click the *Configuration* button in the *DocuSnap Server* group of the *Management* ribbon to open the configuration dialog for the DocuSnap Server.

Server Start Settings

Select the startup type *Manual* or *Automatic* for the service in the *Server Start Settings* step. In addition, you can turn on the debug mode for the DocuSnap Server here.

By default the service runs under the system local account. To ensure the connection to the database, it is recommended to provide a SQL Server Authentication in the wizard step *Server Database*.

Configuration 6.1

Configure Docusnap Server:

General

Startup Type:

Change Server Login

User:

Password:

Execute Inventory in Own Process

Remark: If no user and password is entered, Docusnap Server uses the local system account. If the system account doesn't have permissions for the database, Docusnap Server exits with an error.

Debugging

Enable Debug Mode

Debug Level:

Target Storage Location:

It is also possible to specify a user, who is used for the execution of the service.

Configuration 6.1

Configure Docusnap Server:

General

Startup Type:

Change Server Login

User:

Password:

Execute Inventory in Own Process

Remark: To start the inventory in an own process, the local security policy 'Replace a process level token' is required for the specified user. For further information, refer to the help manual (F1).

Debugging

Enable Debug Mode

Debug Level:

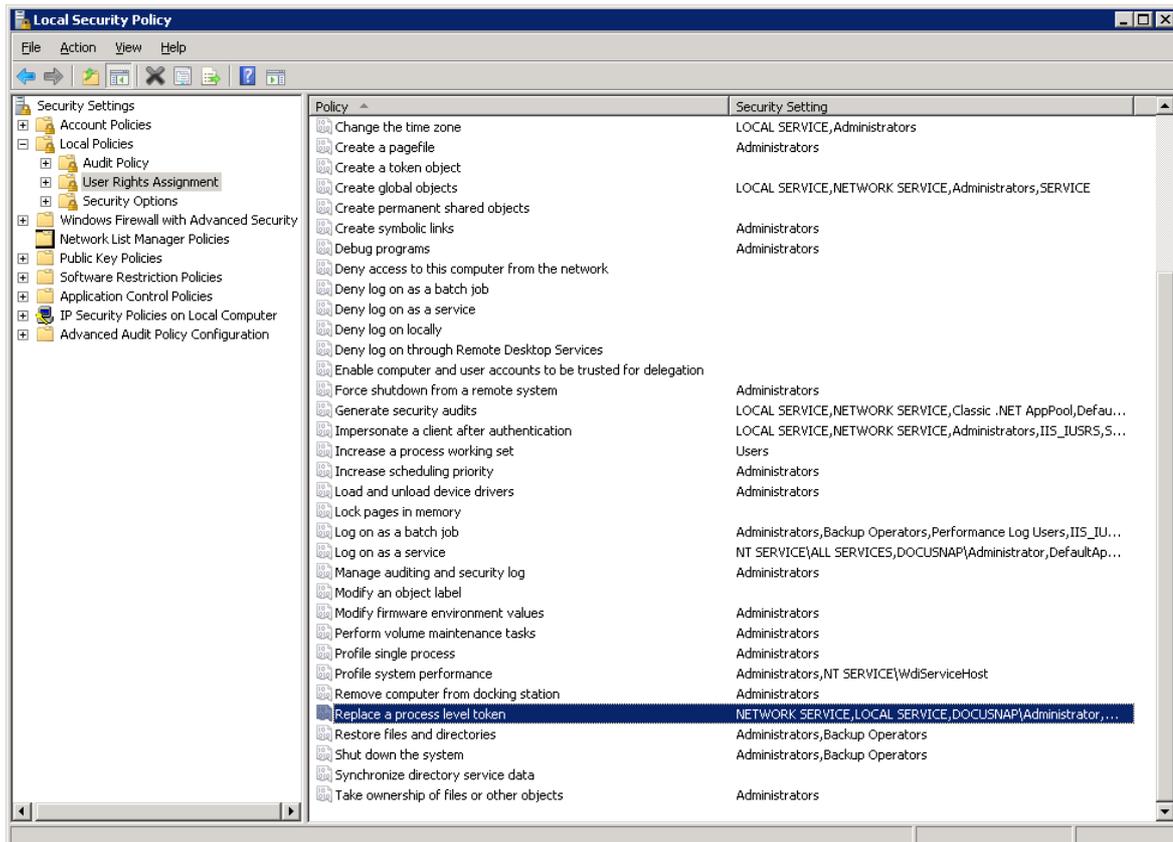
Target Storage Location:



In order to execute a correct inventory, the local security policy *Replace a process level token* must be set for the specified user.

Check the checkbox *Execute Inventory in Own Process* to confirm that the security policy has been set.

If a user is entered, but the local security policy has not been set or the checkbox has not been checked, than several inventory processes might not be executed correctly.



Server Database

The Docusnap database is the key element for performing the jobs. It holds the jobs to be processed by the Docusnap Server.

If you run multiple Docusnap Server instances, the following rules apply:

- If multiple *Docusnap Servers* connect to the same database, the jobs will be executed by the server component which had been first to register with the database.
- If you terminate the *Docusnap Server* which had registered first, the jobs will be performed by the Docusnap Server which had been second to register.





Since Microsoft Access databases tend to cause problems when used in a network, we recommend to rely on Microsoft SQL Server databases.

By default, the DocuSnap Server service will be installed using the local system account. At this point, make sure that the specified account has sufficient access rights to the SQL Server, since otherwise, the DocuSnap Server service cannot be started.

By default, the timeout for database queries is 30 seconds. For large databases, however, it may happen that database queries take longer. To execute these queries nonetheless, the query timeout can be increased.



The change of the Timeout will be stored in a configuration file located on the computer where DocuSnap is running and will be used for every connection to a database.

Server Mail Settings

DocuSnap provides notifications for particular occasions, e.g. when a contract has expired. These notifications are sent out by e-mail.

In the SMTP Settings group, you can enter the SMTP server data and select additional options for authentication and SSL encryption. If the SMTP server requires authentication, the *User* and *Password* text fields will be enabled so that

you can enter the required information.

After you have entered a value in the *SMTP Server* or *User* field, click the *Check Settings* button to send an e-mail to a test recipient to verify the e-mail settings specified here. Only if this test was successful, the *Next* button will be enabled so that you can go to the next step.

If you do not want to use the e-mail settings, leave the corresponding text fields blank or disable this step by removing the checkmark from the *Configure Email Settings* checkbox.

Server Settings

Use the *Documentation Path* field to specify the location where the documents (overviews and datasheets) will be stored by the DocuSnap Server. Click the  button to select the folder for storing the documents.

When creating the documentation, DocuSnap uses the system account permissions for executing the service. For this reason, make sure that the system account has a write permission to the selected documentation path. Alternatively, you can specify a user or service account with sufficient permissions for the *DocuSnap Server* Windows service.

The files and templates used by DocuSnap may either be stored on the local hard disk, on a server or on another computer in the network. DocuSnap will use the path selected for the *Team Settings*, it specified. If no path was selected for the

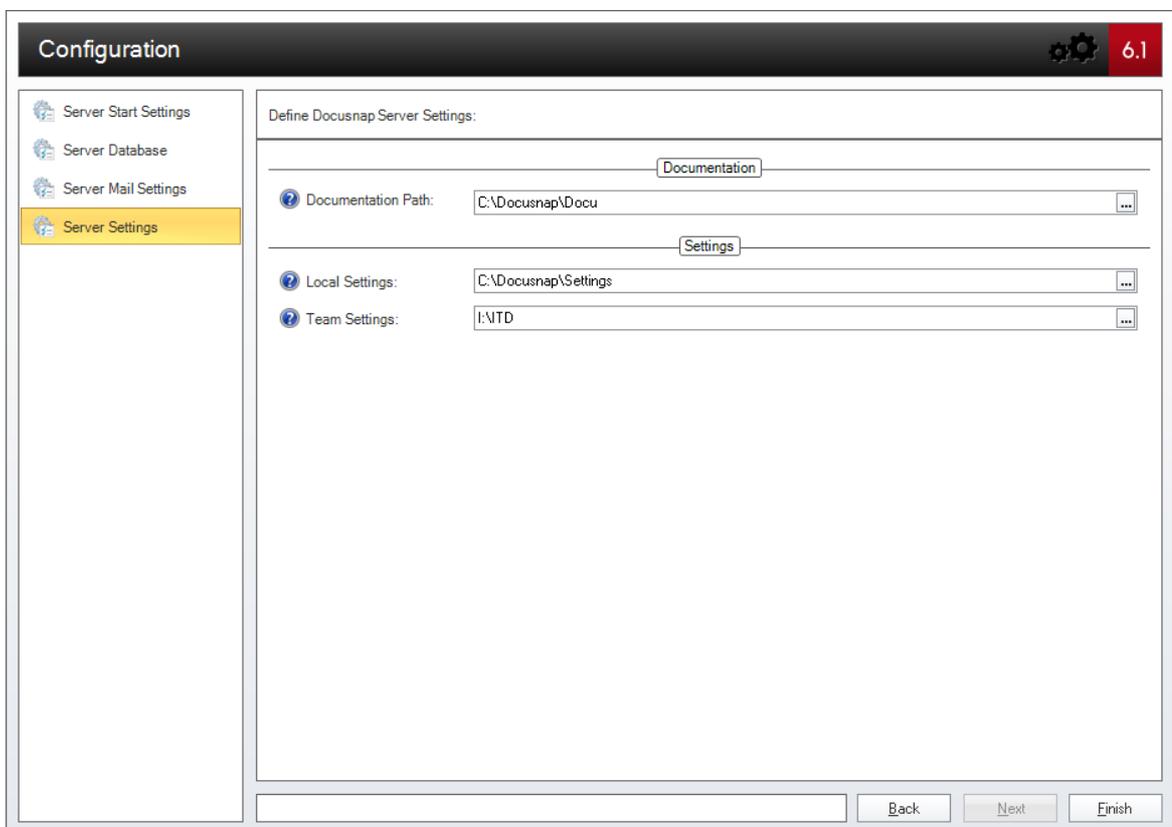
Team Settings or if that path no longer exists, the path specified for the *Local Settings* will be used.

The [IT concepts](#) you created are saved under the IT Concept path.



The *DocuSnap Server* only supports UNC addresses for the path specifications to be used.

When creating the documentation, DocuSnap relies on templates. During the configuration, DocuSnap loads these templates into the local or team settings directory. If neither path is available at the time when the job is processed, DocuSnap will use the templates from the program directory.



Click the *Finish* button to apply the settings and start the DocuSnap Server.

11.2 Job Management

The Job Management feature in DocuSnap provides advanced management options for your jobs. Click the *Jobs* button in the *Management* ribbon, to open the dialog for organizing and editing jobs.

This dialog displays all jobs defined for the database selected in DocuSnap. The *Scheduled Jobs* list shows the scheduled jobs including the most important details, such as Type , Creation Date, Last Execution. If the job has been executed before, its results will be displayed in the *Job Details* group.

The *Cancel*, *Delete*, and *Start Now* buttons to the right of the *Schedule Jobs* list allow you to manage the configured tasks. You can abort an active job by clicking the  *Cancel* button. To delete a job from the database, select it and click the  *Delete* button. Clicking the  *Start Now* button immediately starts the selected job, provided that no other job is currently in progress. When you click the  *Edit* button, the scheduled job will be opened in its associated wizard where you can edit it.

Server Status

The current status of the Server service and the database to which it is currently connected will be displayed when you click the  button in the Server Status *bar*.

The *Server Status* pane reflects the current status of the DocuSnap Server. You can control the DocuSnap Server service by means of the *Stop* and *Restart* buttons. If the advanced user management feature is enabled, you will not be able to start and stop services manually (no permission). For this reason, when you attempt to start or stop the DocuSnap Server, the Windows User Account Control opens so that you can run the service as an administrator.



Every ten seconds, *DocuSnap* checks the status of the DocuSnap Server service. This may cause delays in outputting the current status.



Job Management 6.1

Scheduled Jobs (4 total)

Job Status	Name	Type	Progress	Creation Date	Last Execution	Next Execution
executing	Windows Inve...	Inventory	43%	27.02.2012 10:31:58	21.06.2013 10:00:02	21.06.2013 16:31:45
planned	Network Inven...	Inventory		27.02.2012 10:32:43	21.06.2013 09:59:52	21.06.2013 20:00:00
executing	Create Datash...	Documentation	58%	27.02.2012 10:33:23	21.06.2013 10:00:02	21.06.2013 21:00:00
stopped	AD Inventory	Inventory		27.02.2012 10:33:57	27.02.2012 13:00:00	

Job Details

Server Status

Docusnap Server: WKNE0015
Status: started

Database Type: SQLServer
Database: Docusnap
Server: SDEVSQLO1

Controls: Stop, Restart

Close

11.3 Automation

In Docusnap, you can schedule various jobs and tasks (inventory, documentation, etc.) and have the Docusnap Server execute them automatically at a later time.

The following tasks can be performed automatically by the Docusnap Server:

Inventory

Inventory of Windows systems, SNMP systems, Linux systems, Mac systems, IP segments, offline systems, CIFS, VMware infrastructures, Hyper-V, XenCenter, IIS, Exchange Server, SQL Server, Active Directory, DHCP servers, DNS servers, SharePoint environments.

XML Import

By executing *DocusnapScript.exe* you can save the information from a particular system in an XML file. The location for these files can be defined by means of various parameters in the *DocusnapScript.exe* file. For example, you can use the logon script to define the share to be used for saving these files when *DocusnapScript.exe* is executed. These files can be automatically retrieved and imported through the automation of this process. For details on this topic, refer to the [Importing Scripts](#) section.

Permission Analysis

You can schedule the inventory of NTFS permissions and the creation of the associated documentation for a particular date and time.

Documentation

Datasheets and overviews can be created automatically in the documentation process. This, however, does not apply to the creation of Visio maps.

IT Concepts

The server also allows the time-controlled creation of IT concepts.

Notifications

The [Notification](#) feature sends an e-mail, for example, when a license or contract expires.

Reports

It is possible to schedule the creation of reports and have them created at any desired time. The reports will be exported to the selected format.

Docusnap Connect

It is also possible to schedule the export of data to SQL databases, XML files, or CSV files.

11.4 Logging

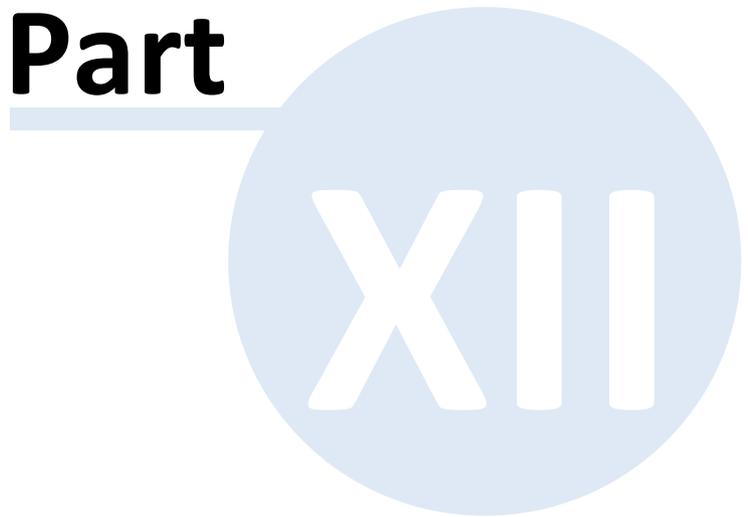
The debug mode helps you to obtain supporting information in case of problems. This information will be used by the Docusnap Support Team for efficient troubleshooting. Once this mode is enabled, any errors as well as additional information will be saved in the database. For more information on this topic, refer to the [Troubleshooting](#) chapter.

The debug mode for the Docusnap Server can be enabled in the first step of the [Configuration](#) wizard.



Enabling debug mode results in a multitude of debug information being recorded in the database. Make sure to enable this mode only in case of need, as it dramatically reduces the performance of Docusnap due to the analysis executed at runtime.

Part



XII

12 DocuSnap Connect

Data from DocuSnap can be exported and made available for processing in other applications.

You can either export the data to an SQL database or save it as an XML or CSV file.

Configuration

In the table configuration dialog, you can specify the data to be exported.

When you create a new database or update a DocuSnap 6.0 database to DocuSnap 6.1, a package for HelpLine is generated. It contains data on the systems inventoried by DocuSnap that can then be processed by HelpLine.

Schedule Package

Once you configured your packages, you can schedule their export. The data can either be exported immediately or at a later time using the DocuSnap Server.

Import and Export

You can export your configurations and then import them to another database.

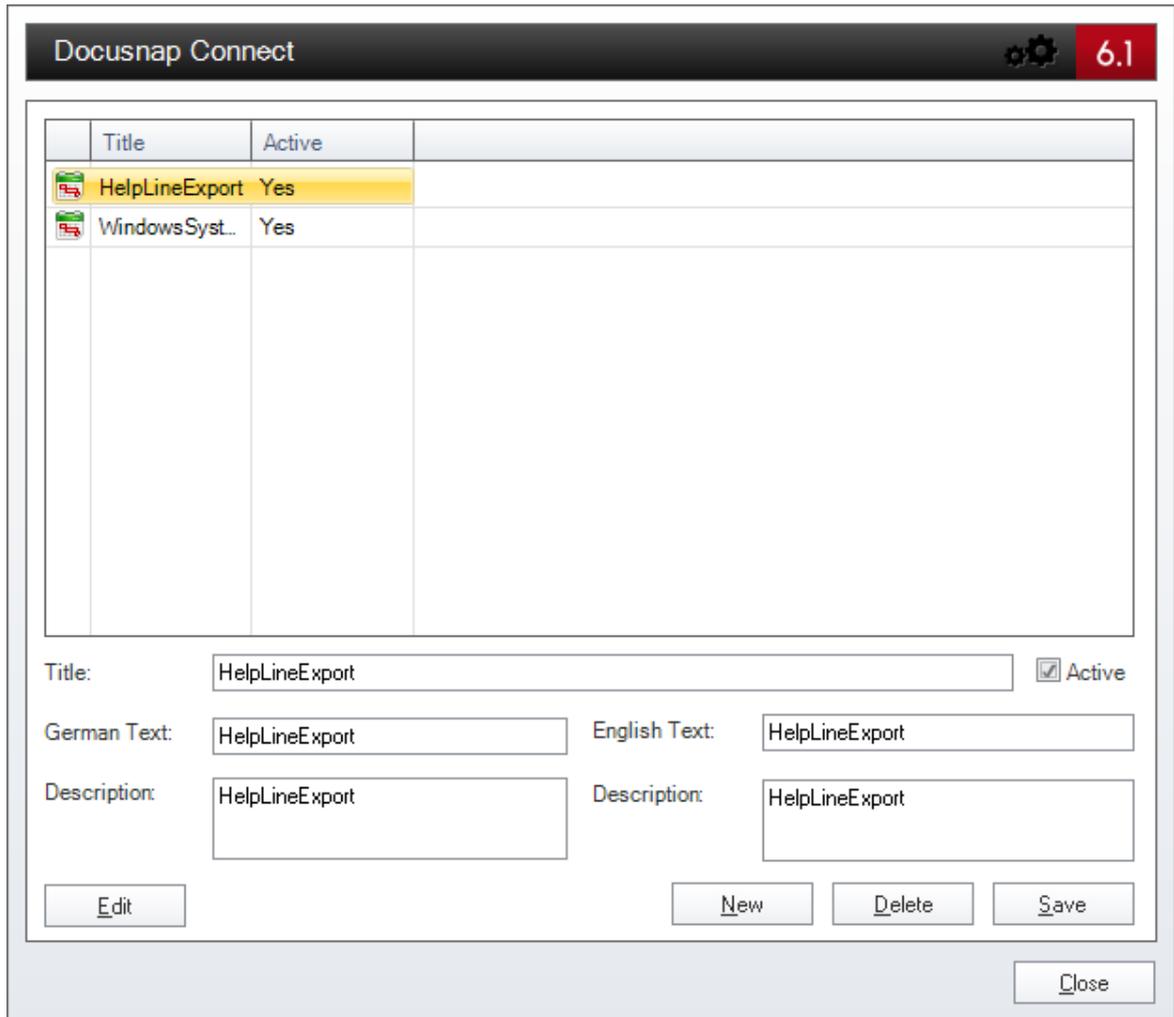
12.1 Configuration

In this first step, you will define the data to be exported.

Click the *Configuration* button in the *DocuSnap Connect* group of the *Management* ribbon to open the configuration dialog for DocuSnap Connect packages.

To create a new package, click the *New* button. For each package, an English and a German name must be assigned. In addition, you can enter a description. Enable the *Active* checkbox to make the package available in the Scheduling wizard.

By clicking the *Edit* button, you can open the package configuration dialog.



Configuration of DocuSnap Connect

The tree structure displays all entries from the Data Explorer. Tick the checkbox to the left of each table that you want to select for export. The selected tables are listed in an overview table at the bottom of the dialog.

To export multiple tables, click the *New* button to add more tabs where you can configure the data for additional tables.

Enter the name to be assigned to the table after the export in the *Table Name (Target)* field.

- **Column:** By double-clicking a field in the *Column* list, you can display the columns of the selected table. Select the desired column there. If you no longer need a column, you can remove it by either selecting *Delete* from the context menu or select the line and press the *Del* key on your keyboard.
- **Alias:** In the *Alias* column, you can specify the name of the column in the exported table.
- **Display:** If you enable the *Display* checkbox, the column will be displayed in the

exported table. By disabling it, you can hide fields that are only used for data filtering.

- **Reference:** For columns with a reference specified in the *Manage Tables* dialog, the reference can be added to the export. If you enable the *Reference* checkbox, the number in the column will be replaced with the corresponding reference text. When exporting, you can select the language in which you want the reference to appear.
- **Sort Order:** Using the *Sort Order* column, you can define the column order.
- **Grouping:** Here, you can select whether the respective column will be used for grouping or whether to calculate the count, maximum, minimum, sum, or average of the column.
- **Filter:** Here, you can enter any valid SQL condition (e.g. = 1). The clause can further be extended by additional fields or conditions. To hide the column used for filtering, you can disable the *Display* checkbox for this column.

The screenshot shows the 'Windows Hosts' configuration window in Docusnap Connect. The interface includes a tree view on the left showing a hierarchy of folders like 'Company', 'IT Environment', 'Domain', and 'Workstations'. On the right, a table lists selected tables and filter meta objects. At the bottom, a configuration table defines the columns to be exported.

Table Name	Filter Meta Object
vRAM	Company.Domain.Workstations.Workstation Scans.RAM
vRAM	Company.Domain.Servers.Server Scans.RAM
IDocuWindows	Company.Domain.Servers.Server Scans.General
IHosts	Company.Domain.Servers
IDocuWindows	Company.Domain.Workstations.Workstation Scans.General
IHosts	Company.Domain.Workstations

Column	Alias	Display	Reference	Sort Order	Grouping	Filter
vRAM.Capacity	Capacity	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		4	Sum	
IHosts.HostName	HostName	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		1		
IHosts.Online	Online	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2		= 1
IDocuWindows.OS	OS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		3		
IHosts.HostID	HostID	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		0	Group	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0		

Once you have selected the tables and columns, you can click the *Preview* button to check the table output. By default, the first ten table records are shown in the preview. You can change this value in the *Limit Data Rows to:* field.

The screenshot shows the 'DocuSnap Connect Preview' window. At the top, there is a title bar with a gear icon and the version number '6.1'. Below the title bar, there is a 'Limit Data Rows to:' field set to '10' and a 'Refresh' button. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Software (10 Entries)' and 'Windows Hosts (10 Entries)'. The 'Windows Hosts' section contains a table with the following data:

HostID	HostName	Online	OS	Capacity	ONC
27	WBWS0128	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	2147483648	[1.1][1.2][2.4][2.5][27.6]
9	WMWS0944	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 8 Enterprise	4294967296	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][9.6]
10	WMWS0610	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	273804165120	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][10.6]
11	WMWS0333	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	2147483648	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][11.6]
30	WMWS0032	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	1073741824	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][30.6]
17	WMWS0064	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	1073741824	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][17.6]
12	WMWS0254	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise	1073741824	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][12.6]
16	WMWS0113	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows XP Professional	402653184	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][16.6]
13	WMWS0199	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 8 Enterprise	2147483648	[1.1][1.2][1.4][1.5][13.6]
20	SBPS0001	Succeeded	Microsoft Windows 2000 Server	536870912	[1.1][1.2][2.4][2.12][20.13]

At the bottom right of the window, there is a 'Close' button.

For the export, an additional column named *PrimaryONC* will be added to the data. This column identifies each object unambiguously so that, during an update of the SQL database, the objects can be mapped without problems. This column is also used for [DocuSnapLink](#) when switching from another application to this DocuSnap node.

Special Features

ADS

When exporting ADS users, the system will add another table to the table selected for export. This table, with the *_Values* suffix, contains the additional properties of the users, such as account options, first name and last name, etc. The *ADSObjectID* column can be used to establish the corresponding relation.

IT Assets

When exporting IT assets, the system will also export two tables. The first one contains the values of the IT assets class. The *ParentID* column is used to map an existing hierarchy. The second table, with the *_Values* suffix, contains the values of the properties of each IT asset. The *ITAssetID* column is used to establish the relation between the two tables.



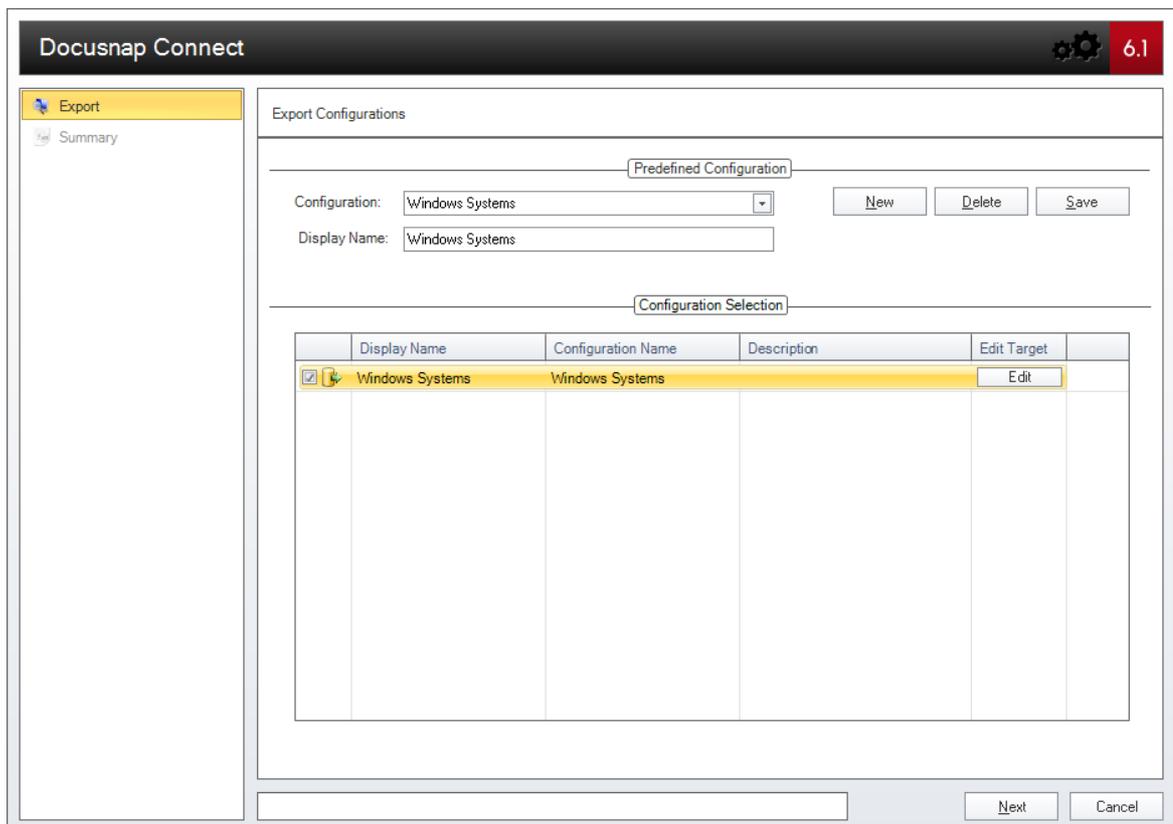
12.2 Schedule Package

Once you configured your packages, you can export the corresponding data.

Click the *Schedule Package* button in the *Management* ribbon to launch the *Docusnap Connect* wizard. In the first step, select the package to be exported. To do so, click the *New* button. Then, save your selection and configure the target.

You can select as many packages for export as desired. In addition, it is possible to export them to different targets.

To open the target configuration dialog, click the *Edit* button.

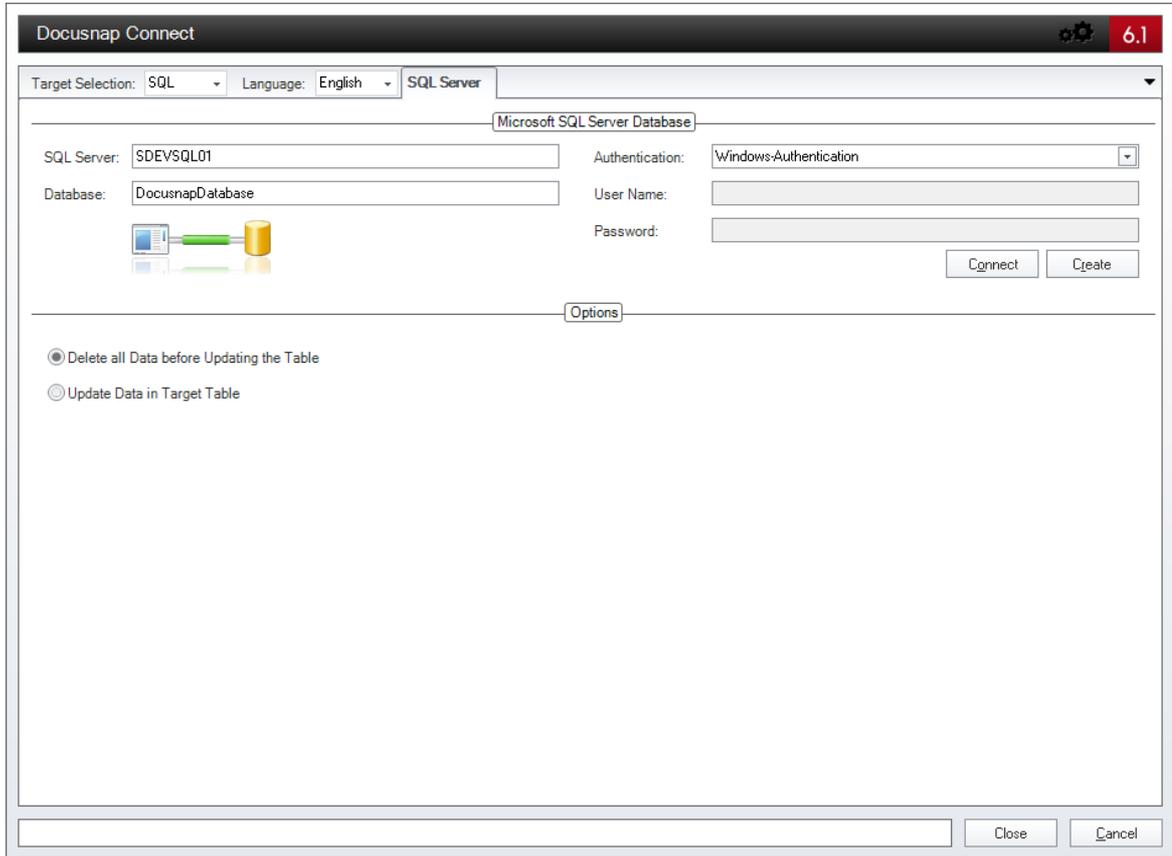


Configuring Docusnap Connect Targets

You can export data to an SQL database or to a CSV or XML file from within Docusnap. First, select the target in the *Target Selection* field. In the *Language* field, select the language in which you want the references to be written.

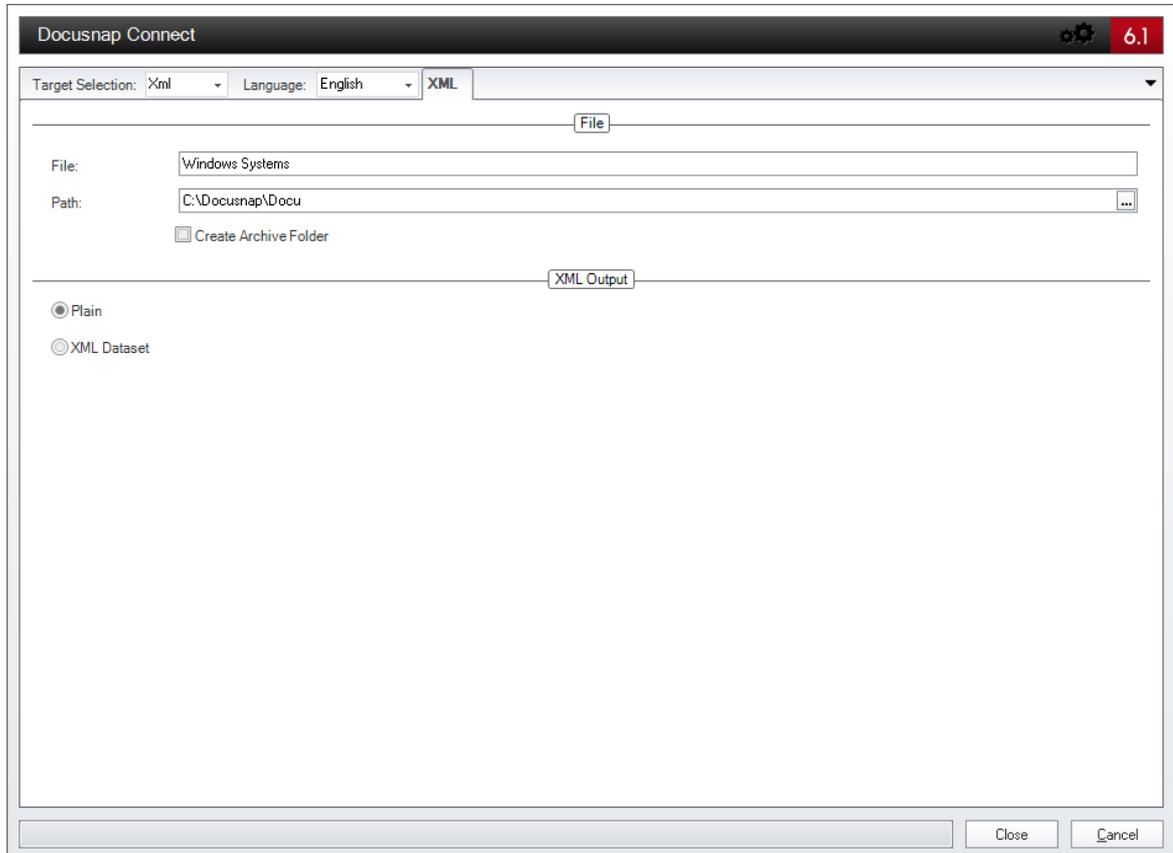
SQL

Before you can export the data to an SQL database, the connection to the SQL server and the desired database must be checked. If the specified database does not exist on the SQL server, it may be created. When exporting data to an SQL database, you can specify whether previously exported data should be updated or if you want to delete all data and populate the tables with the new export data.



XML

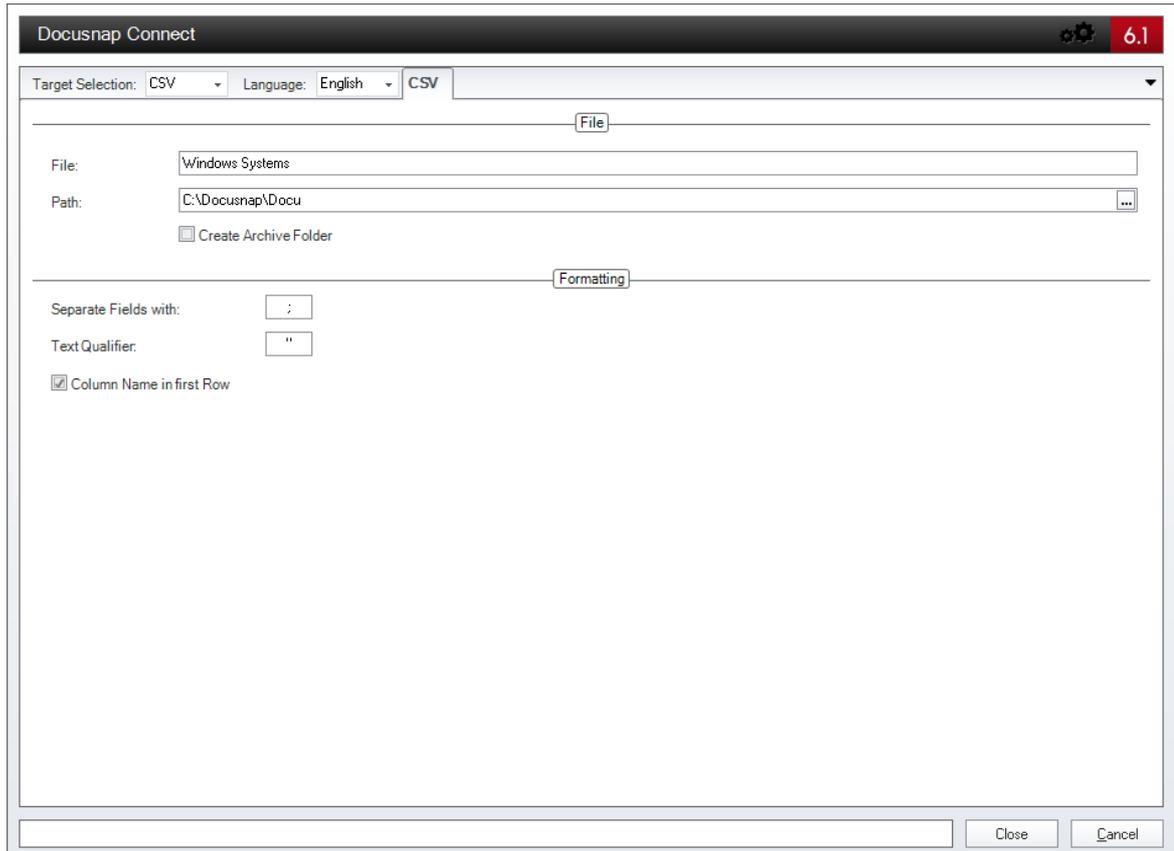
When exporting data to an XML file, you must specify its name and path. By enabling the *Create Archive Folder* checkbox, you can move older files to an archive folder. For the output, you can select a plain format or XML Dataset.



CSV

When exporting data to a CSV file, you must specify its name and path. In the *Separate Fields with* field, you can specify the field separator. The character you specify in the *Text Qualifier* field defines all text between two occurrences of this character as a unit. By ticking the *Column Name in First Row* checkbox, you can specify that the column names will be included in the output.

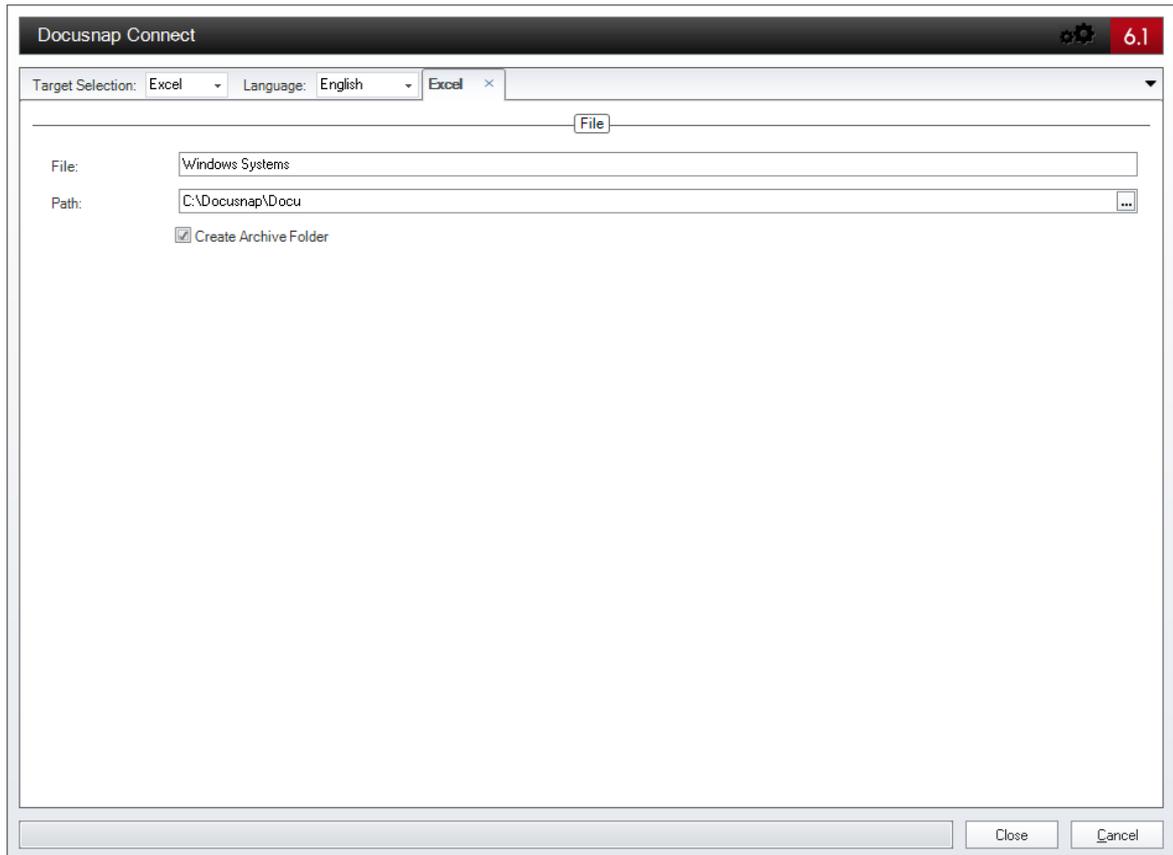
When you configure your package so that data will be exported to multiple tables, a separate CSV file will be created for each table.



The screenshot shows the 'Docusnap Connect' configuration window for CSV export. The window title is 'Docusnap Connect' with a version number '6.1' in the top right corner. The 'Target Selection' is set to 'CSV', and the 'Language' is set to 'English'. The 'File' field contains 'Windows Systems' and the 'Path' field contains 'C:\Docusnap\Docu'. There is a 'Create Archive Folder' checkbox which is currently unchecked. The 'Formatting' section includes 'Separate Fields with' set to ';', 'Text Qualifier' set to '"', and a checked 'Column Name in first Row' checkbox. At the bottom right, there are 'Close' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Excel

When exporting data to an Excel file, you must specify its name and path. By enabling the *Create Archive Folder* checkbox, you can move older files to an archive folder. If during configuration you decide to distribute the data output to multiple tables, a separate worksheet is created in the Excel file for each table.



MySQL

Before you can export the data to a MySQL database, the connection to the MySQL server and the desired database must be checked. If the specified database does not exist on the MySQL server, you create it in this dialog. When exporting data to a MySQL database, you can specify if previously exported data should be updated or if you want to delete all data and populate the tables with the new export data.

The Driver drop-down list lists all installed MySQL ODBC drivers.



The MySQL ODBC driver is not supplied with Docusnap and must be installed manually. You can download the driver from the MySQL website. Follow the instructions and make sure you download and install the correct version.

Docusnap requires the 32-bit version of the MySQL ODBC driver!

Docusnap Connect 6.1

Target Selection: MySQL Language: English MySQL

MySQL Server Database

Driver: MySQL ODBC 5.2 ANSI Driver User Name: admin

SQL Server: 192.168.100.104 Password: *****

Database: Docusnap Port: 3306

Connect Create

Options

Delete all Data before Updating the Table

Update Data in Target Table

Close Cancel

Summary

The Summary page shows all packages to be exported.

Scheduling

By using the [Scheduling](#) feature, you can specify that the automatic start of the data export starts at a later time. The Scheduling feature must be enabled in the [Options dialog](#).

In order to use this feature, the Docusnap Server component must be configured for this database on a system in the network.

Status

After the export has started, the dialog will display its progress. To abort the export process, click the *Cancel* button. All packages flagged as *Completed* have already been exported. They will not be deleted.

Final Report

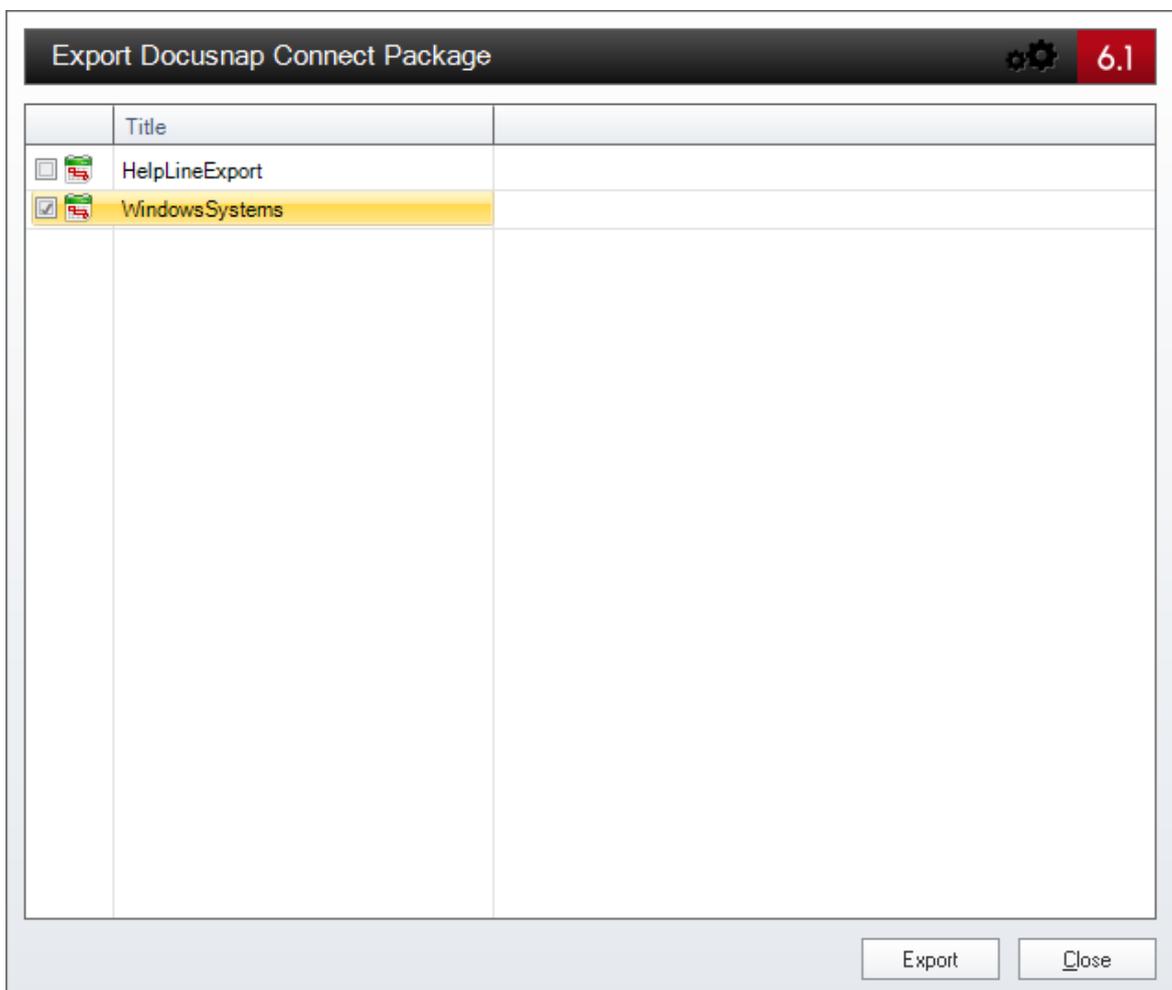
The final report shows which packages could be exported successfully. To exit the wizard, click the *Close* button.

12.3 Import and Export

The packages you configured can be exported and then be imported to another Docusnap database. By importing the configuration, you can export data from the current database without having to create the configuration again.

Export

Click the *Export Package* button on the *Management* ribbon to open the *Export Docusnap Connect Package* dialog. It lists all configured packages. Tick the checkboxes for all packages to be exported. Then, click the *Export* button and specify the name and path for the exported file. The Docusnap Connect packages included in this file can subsequently be imported to a different database.



Part



XIII

13 Data Import

To process large data volumes which cannot be inventoried in Docusnap, you can use the data import feature. It allows you to import data which have been stored in a CSV file to Docusnap.

This data can be imported to IT assets, extensions, and any desired tables.

13.1 Wizard

Click the *Data Import (csv)* button in the *Advanced* ribbon to open the data import wizard.

Import

In the first step, you can specify where to import the data. The following options are available: IT Assets, Extensions, and Table. Under IT Assets, all existing classes can be selected as the target. For the import to tables, you can select any available real tables. Under Extensions, you can select the Comments, Finances, Reminders, Contracts, or Passwords category. The import of passwords is only possible if an encryption file has been selected.

The screenshot shows the 'Data Import' wizard interface. The window title is 'Data Import' and the version is '6.1'. The interface is divided into a sidebar on the left and a main content area on the right. The sidebar contains a tree view with the following items: 'Import' (selected), 'Source', 'Target', and 'Data Assignment'. The main content area is titled 'Import Definition' and contains a 'Select Definition' button. Below this button are three rows of options, each with a checkbox and a dropdown menu:

Option	Checkbox	Dropdown
Table	<input type="checkbox"/>	
IT Assets	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	iPhone
Extensions	<input type="checkbox"/>	

At the bottom right of the main content area, there are two buttons: 'Next' and 'Cancel'.

Source

Once you have selected the import type, specify the import file in the next step. The

preview shows the first ten entries of the selected file. In the Delimiter group, you can specify the character used as separator for the data. The character specified in the *Text Qualifier* field defines all text between two occurrences of this character as a unit. Tick the *First Row as Header* checkbox to specify that the first row contains headers that should not be treated as data.

Data Import 6.1

Source

Select File

File: C:\DocuSnap\iPhoneList.csv

Delimiter

TabStop Space Comma Semicolon Other:

Options

Text Qualifier: " First Row as Header

Preview

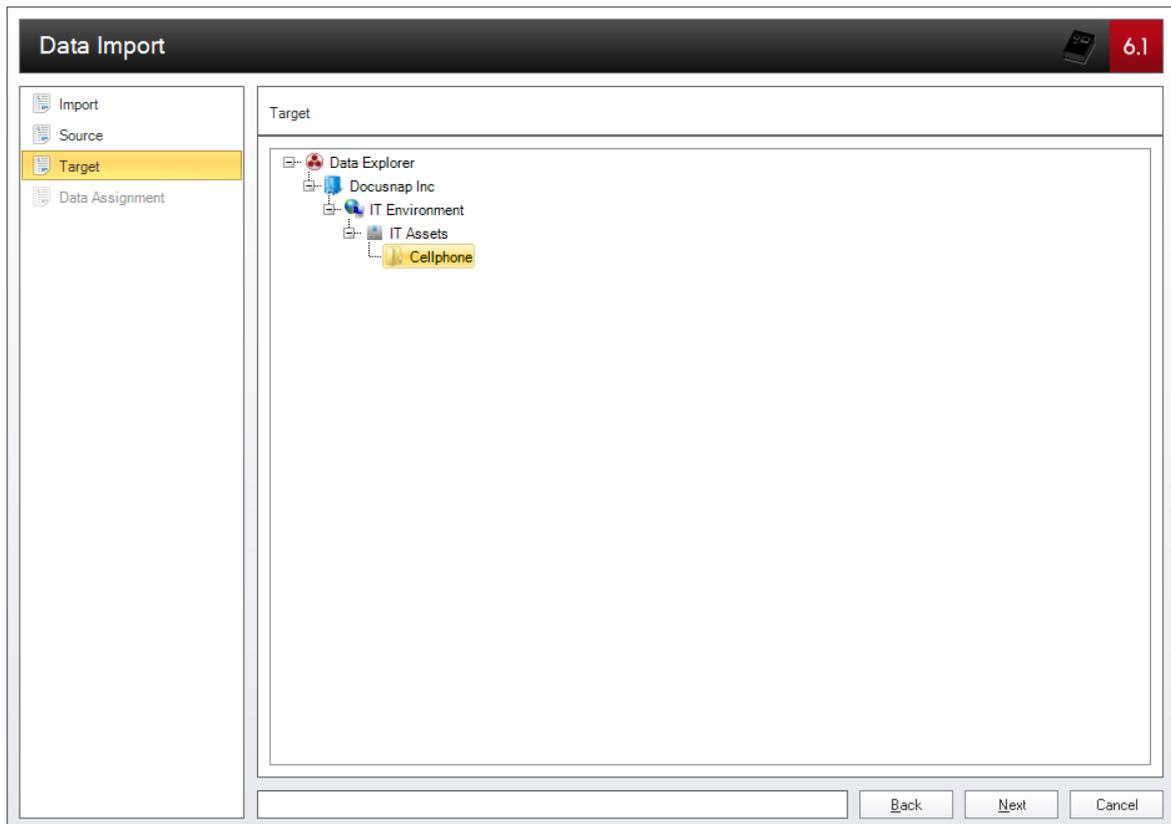
Name	ModelName	SerialNumber	Memory	OSVersion	IMEI
iPhone_01	iPhone 5	12332423	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323751
iPhone_02	iPhone 5	12332421	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323752
iPhone_03	iPhone 5	12332422	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323753
iPhone_04	iPhone 5	12332424	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323754
iPhone_05	iPhone 5	12332425	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323755
iPhone_06	iPhone 5	12332426	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323756
iPhone_07	iPhone 5	12332427	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323757
iPhone_08	iPhone 5	12332428	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323758
iPhone_09	iPhone 5	12332429	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323759
iPhone_10	iPhone 5	12332420	1 GB	iOS 6	49-015420-323750

Back Next Cancel

Target

The window for the *Target* step is only shown when you import IT assets or extensions.

- **IT Assets:** In the case of IT assets, select the folder for the IT assets to be imported.
- **Extensions:** Extensions are assigned to existing static objects. When importing extensions, specify the object to which the data should be associated. All static objects are available for selection.



Data Assignment

In the Data Assignment step, you can specify the columns to be used for storing the data to be imported. Mandatory fields, i.e. fields that must be filled in the database, are flagged by a yellow exclamation mark.

The *CSV Values* field lists the column headers from the CSV file. The *Target Settings* field shows all columns available in the selected table or all properties of the selected IT asset. To assign a field from the *CSV Values* field to a field listed in the *Target Settings* field, select the respective field and click the *Assign* button to link it. To delete all assignments, click the *Reset Assignment* button.

When you click the *Save Assignment* button, an XML file which contains all specified assignments will be saved to the folder where the selected CSV file resides. If you later select the same CSV file, whose contents may have changed, again for import, load the assignments from this XML file by clicking the *Load Assignment* button. This way, you need not define the assignment again.

Columns filled with an auto-increment value will be hidden by default. To display them, enable the *Ignore Auto-Increment* checkbox.

If you want to update previously imported data or compare new data with the previously imported data, enable the *Import as Update* checkbox. Then, you can specify settings related to the update in the *Update* step which displays next.

Data Import
6.1

- Import
- Source
- Target
- Data Assignment
- Status
- Report

Data Assignment

CSV Values	Target Settings		Assignment
<div style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">IMEI</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ICCID Date Display Network Operator Software Number Model Code WLAN Address Bluetooth <li style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">IMEI Description 	<div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Assign</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Delete Assignment</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name --> Name ModelName --> Model Name SerialNumber --> SerialNumber Memory --> Memory OSVersion --> OS Version
		<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Reset Assignment</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Load Assignment</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Save Assignment</div>	

Ignore Auto-Increment
 Import as Update

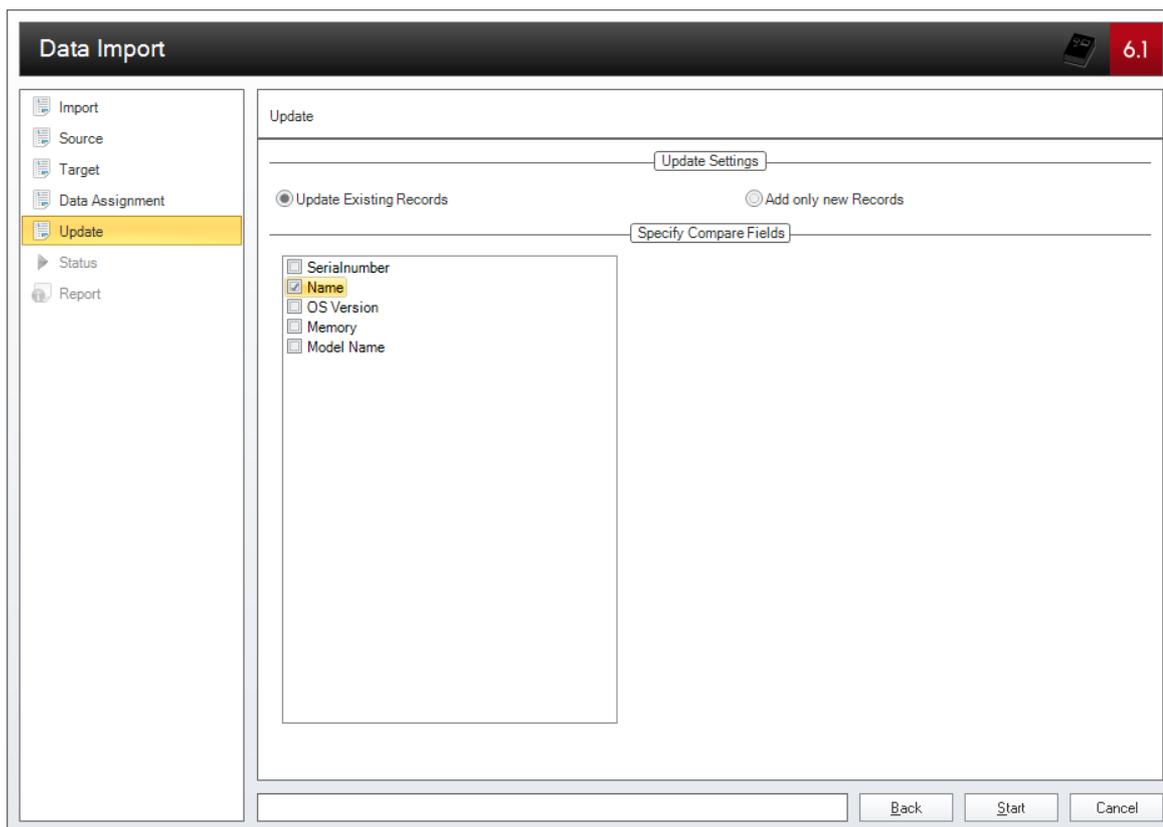
Back
Start
Cancel

Update

Under Update Settings, you can choose to update existing records or only add new records. If you select *Update existing records*, new records will be added and records which have changed will be updated.

To enable the data comparison, you must select one or more values which are unique and therefore comparable, e.g. customer number, first name and/or last name. If a value occurs multiple times, none of the entries will be updated. These entries will be listed as skipped in the final report.





Status

The Status page displays information about the status and progress of the current import process.

Final Report

The final report lists the number of records imported successfully and specifies whether the import of any records failed.

Part



14 Docusnap Link

With DocusnapLink, you can switch from external programs to Docusnap and expand the Data Explorer to show a specific node.

To use this feature, start *DocusnapLink.exe*. The Docusnap 6.1 installer places this executable in the *Tools* folder. Two parameters must be passed when starting this program: The first parameter is `'-ONC'` and the second parameter is the actual ONC path enclosed in single quotes. The ONC path determines the object to be expanded. If you enter an invalid or no ONC path at all, Docusnap will only be launched, but no node will be selected in the Explorer.

If Docusnap is not running while you start the DocusnapLink feature, the system looks for a valid installation and starts it, if one is found. If Docusnap is active, the Docusnap window will get the focus.



ONC (Object Numbering Convention) refers to a coded path which takes you to an actual node in the Docusnap tree views. It uniquely identifies each node in Docusnap. When data is exported using *Docusnap Connect*, the ONC for every single entry is exported as well. This ensures that the ONC value is available when a database exported through [Docusnap Connect](#) is used.

Part



15 Settings

In the next two sections, you will learn about the settings available in Docusnap 6.1. You can find them in the [Options](#) dialog and in the [Define Company Settings](#) dialog. Section three will discuss data management topics.

Options

In the Docusnap Options dialog, you can specify settings that relate to the entire Docusnap application or to individual areas, such as inventory, documentation, license management or reporting.

Designs

For some modules such as Reporting, Documentation or IT Concepts, you need to select the design to be used. In the Designs and Styles dialog, you can select a common design to be applied to all modules.

Define Company Settings

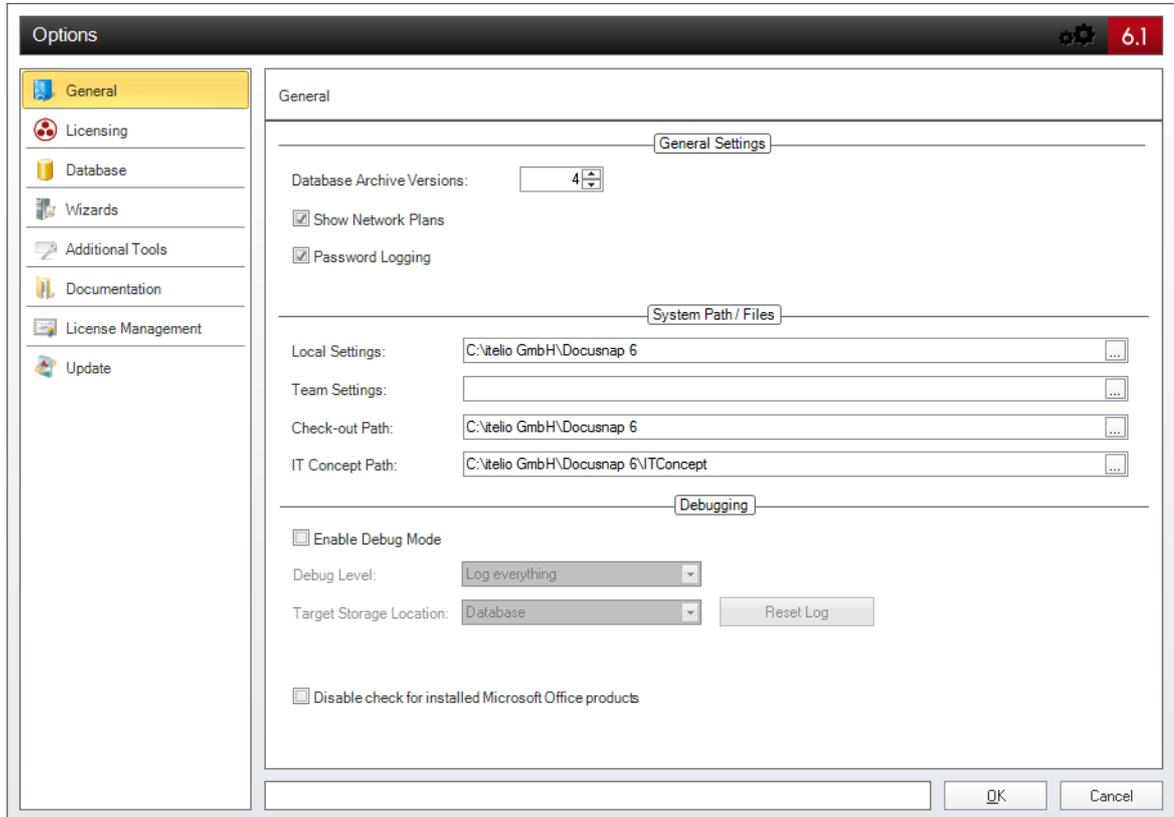
Company settings are helpful if you have to manage multiple companies in Docusnap. It may be necessary, for example, to define specific headers and footers for the reports generated for a certain company.

Management

In the Management area, you can define custom types and states. If, for example, you would like to add an additional equipment type named "Beamer" to the *Other Inventory*, you can do so in the corresponding dialog.

15.1 Options

As described in the [Tools](#) section, you can open the Options dialog from the Docusnap *Tools* ribbon.



The Options dialog consists of the following pages:

[General](#)

[Licensing](#)

[Database](#)

[Wizards](#)

[Additional Tools](#)

[Documentation](#)

[License Management](#)

[Update](#)

15.1.1 General

[General Settings](#)



The value specified in the *Database Archive Versions* field determines how many inventory scans of an object will be stored. If you set the *Database Archive Versions* field to 4, this means that the data of four inventory scans, e.g. for a Windows server, will be kept. When you perform the next inventory scan of that server, the scan with the oldest timestamp will be deleted so that the total number of inventory scans remains four. If particular inventory scans should not be deleted, you can exclude them from the automatic deletion using the [Manage Snapshots](#) dialog.

If the *Show Network Maps* option is enabled, created network maps will be displayed on the [Documents](#) tab. Loading large network maps may take a long time. For this reason, it is possible to disable the output and automated loading of network maps.

The *Password Logging* feature allows you to track which user copied which password and / or displayed it in plain text. By toggling the *Password Logging* checkbox, you can enable or disable the password logging functionality.

System Path / Files

In order to use Docusnap in a multi-user environment, settings can be stored centrally so that they are accessible to each user. These so-called *team settings* will then be loaded from the path defined in the *Team Settings* field. If no path has been defined in the *Team Settings* field or if the path no longer exists, Docusnap will use the path defined under *Local Settings*.

When you create Docusnap extensions (e.g. contracts, passwords, etc.), you can add attachments. Attachments are stored in the Docusnap database. If you need to edit an attachment, first load it from the database and then store it temporarily in a local directory. In the *Check-out Path* field, you can specify the path to be used for this purpose.

IT concepts are all stored in the same file path. Use the *IT Concept Path* field to select the directory where your IT concept will be stored. If multiple users access the same concepts, you can select a network drive.

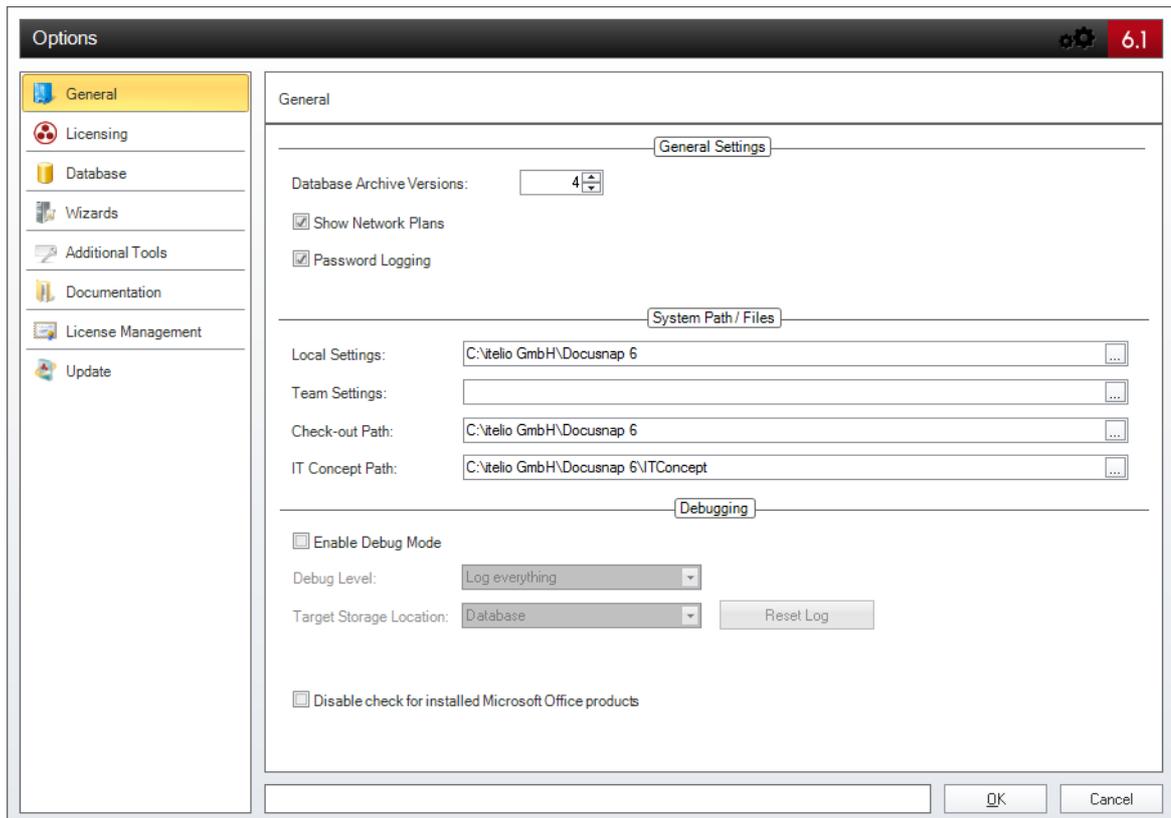
Debugging

The debug mode helps you to obtain supporting information in case of problems. This information will be used by the Docusnap Support Team for efficient troubleshooting. Once this mode is enabled, any errors as well as additional information will be saved in the database. For more information on this topic, refer to the [Troubleshooting](#) section.



Enabling debug mode leads to a multitude of debug information being recorded in the database. This mode should only be enabled if errors occur, since the performance of Docusnap will be significantly reduced

by the analysis carried out at runtime.



15.1.2 Licensing

The *Licensing* page of the Options dialog shows information about the license currently in use. By clicking the button, you can load the desired license file. To remove the file, click the Remove button next to it.

In the *Licensed Modules* list, you can see the modules included in the current license. Modules not covered by the license will be automatically disabled in Docusnap. To enable disabled modules, you need to purchase a corresponding license.

The *License Mode*, *License Type*, *Company* and *Address* of the company, as well as the number of licenses for *Windows*, *Linux* and *Mac* systems are displayed on the left side.

Three different *license modes* are available:

- Full version: license without any time limits
- Time-limited license: valid for a certain period of time
- Trial version: time-limited license for trial and evaluation

Two different *license types* are available:

- Multi-license: with this license type, multiple companies can be created.
- Individual license: with this license type, only one company can be created.

The number of Windows, Linux and Mac systems indicates how many systems can be inventoried using this license.

The screenshot shows the 'Options' dialog box with the 'Licensing' tab selected. The 'Docusnap License Information' section displays the following details:

- Select License: DocusnapAG_61_Full.xml
- License Mode: Full Version
- License Type: Multi License
- Company: Docusnap AG
- Street: Franz-Larcher-Straße 4
- Zip Code: 83088, City: Kiefersfelden
- Number of Windows Systems: 999999
- Number of Linux Systems: 999999
- Number of Mac Systems: 999999

The 'Licensed Modules' list includes:

- Viewer
- Basic Module
- Windows Module
- Linux Module
- Mac Module
- License Management
- Permission Analysis
- Exchange Module
- VMware Module
- DHCP Module
- DNS Module
- SQL Module
- SharePoint Modul
- Finance Module
- Contract Module

A status bar at the bottom indicates 'License check successful'.

15.1.3 Database

On the *Database* page of the Options dialog, you can specify the database where the data will be stored. Docusnap supports both Microsoft SQL Server and Access databases.

SQL Server Database

In addition to the Microsoft SQL Server retail products (Standard 2005/2008 & Enterprise 2005/2008), the Express versions (2005/2008) of SQL Server are also supported.

When using an SQL Server in your network, make sure that the server has been configured for remote access via TCP/IP and that the permissions for Windows or SQL authentication have been set properly.

Settings

The following icons indicate the database connection status:



No connection to the database

Successfully connected to the database

Options 6.1

Please select a database type: SQL Server Database Access Database

Microsoft SQL Server Database

SQL Server: sdevsql01 Authentication: SQL Server-Authentication
Database: DocusnapDatenbank User Name: sa
Password: *****

Status

Activity	Progress	Status
Checking Basic Data ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Basic data updated successfully
Checking Type Data ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Type data updated successfully
Checking Settings ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Settings updated successfully
Checking SNMP Schema ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	SNMP Schema updated successfully
Checking ADS Schema ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	ADS Schema updated successfully
Checking Metaschema ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Metaschema updated successfully

Settings

Query Timeout in Seconds: 30

Encryption Module

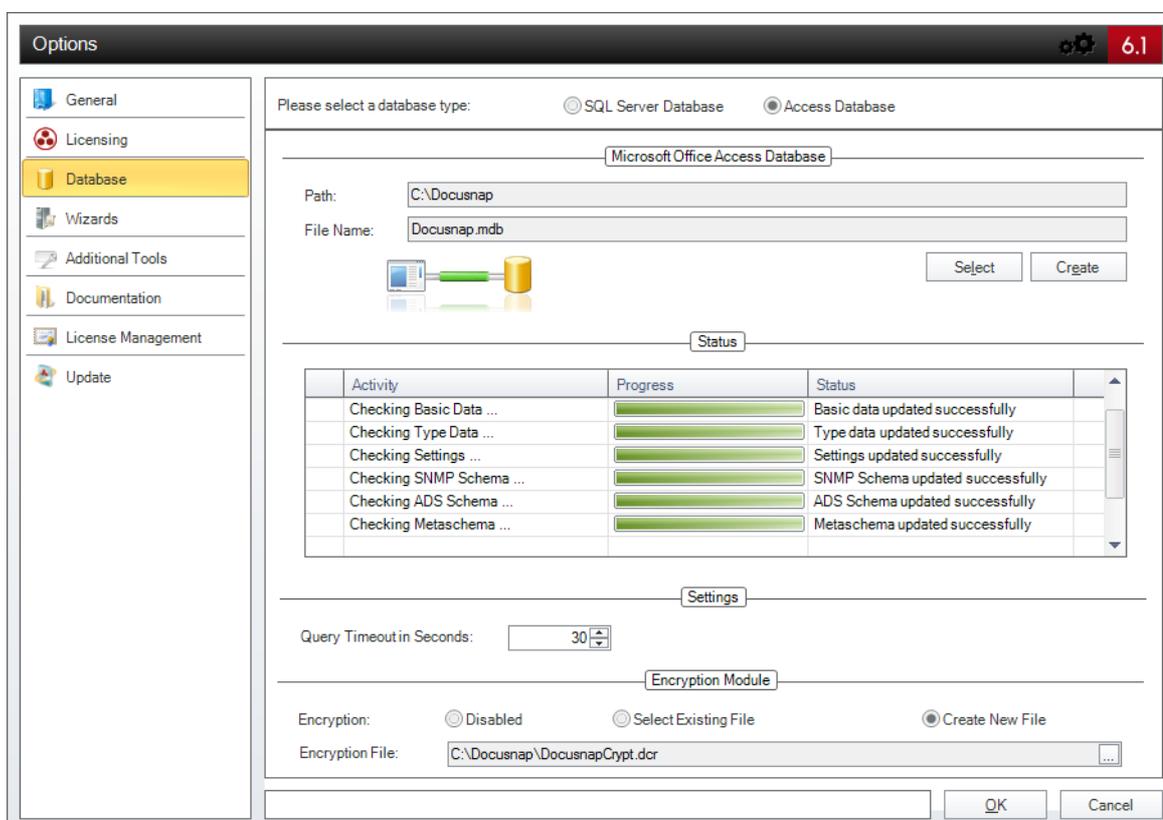
Encryption: Disabled Select Existing File Create New File
Encryption File: C:\Docusnap\DocusnapCrypt.dcr

OK Cancel



Access Database

You can select an existing Access database or create a new one.



Query Timeout

By default, the timeout for database queries is 30 seconds. For large databases, however, it may happen that database queries take longer. To execute these queries nonetheless, the query timeout can be increased.



The change of the Timeout will be stored in a configuration file located on the computer where Docusnap is running and will be used for every connection to a database.

Encryption Module

In order to enable the *Passwords* module in the main window, you need to create an encryption file. Encryption ensures that the passwords will be stored in the database in encrypted form. These passwords can only be read by users who use the same encryption file. If you do not create an encryption file, the *Passwords* module will remain hidden.

Make sure to treat the encryption file with great care, since it is not possible to replace or re-create this file should it become lost.

15.1.4 Wizards

Multi-Processing

In order to accelerate tasks such as inventorying Windows systems, Docusnap performs multiple tasks in parallel. By default, 30 concurrent processes can be performed.

The *Timeout in Seconds* field indicates how long Docusnap will wait for the completion of a process during an inventory scan before a timeout occurs. If, for example, a Windows server is scanned over a WAN, it may take longer than 180 seconds until all information has been gathered. If the defined time period is exceeded, Docusnap will terminate the inventory process with a "Timeout" error.



In case of problems during an inventory scan performed over a WAN, reduce the number of concurrent processes and, at the same time, increase the timeout value. Docusnap uses roughly 250 kbits/s for each process.

- *Ping Timeout in Seconds*: This option enables you to increase the ping timeout value for the systems during an inventory process up to 20 seconds.
- *Set Scan Mode*
Remote or slow networks may cause information retrieval problems as too many concurrent processes are transferring data across the network.
 - If you select the *WAN* mode, Docusnap automatically reduces the number of parallel processes to two and doubles the *Timeout* value.
 - If you select the *LAN* mode, the settings from the *Multi-processing* group will be applied.

Show Features in Wizard

In Docusnap, you can extend the wizards by including additional steps (Scheduling, Export Settings, etc.).

- *Name Snapshots*
For each inventory scan, Docusnap creates a snapshot. Snapshots will be automatically named *Inventory from*, with the current timestamp appended to it. After enabling the *Name Snapshot* checkbox in this dialog, you can name the snapshots as desired.
- *Scheduling*
Using the Scheduling feature, you can specify that inventory and documentation processes will be started automatically at a specific date and time. When you enable this feature, the Scheduling option will be added as the last step to the



Inventory, Documentation, and Script Import wizards. In this step, you can define a scheduled job and save it.

- *Additional Tools*

Additional tools are used to integrate external utilities into the inventory process for Windows systems. You can add these tools on the [Additional Tools](#) page of the Options dialog.

- *Software Search*

Software Search allows you to find software that cannot be scanned automatically due to a missing registry entry. If you enable the Software Search feature on the Options dialog, the wizards will include the additional Software Search step that you can use to list and select defined software products (see: [Software Search](#)).

- *Exporting Settings / Importing Saved Settings*

You can use the *Import* step in the wizards to load a saved configuration. This option is particularly helpful if you need to perform inventory scans repeatedly and with the same settings. When you select the desired configuration file, the settings saved in this file will be reused. Only the authentication step must be repeated.

You can save the current configuration of the wizard using the *Export* step and reload it by selecting the *Import* step, as needed. This option is particularly helpful if you need to perform inventory scans repeatedly and with the same settings.

Inventory Settings

- *Alternative Windows Inventory*

By default, Windows systems will be inventoried using remote WMI queries. If this results in problems, due to, for example, erroneous DCOM settings on the remote system, the system can be inventoried using an alternative method. This involves copying of the [DocusnapScript.exe](#) file to the remote system to be executed there. The information retrieved in this process will be saved in the Docusnap database.

- *Inventory Hidden Software Components*

If you enable the *Inventory Hidden Software Components* checkbox, Docusnap will also include invisible software categories in the inventory scan (some software providers define their software such that not all areas are visible).

- *Use Alternative DNS Suffix (Windows Systems)*

To inventory Windows systems with a DNS suffix other than the domain name, Docusnap provides the *Use Alternative DNS Suffix* feature in the Options dialog.

- *Disable CIFS Online Check*

To inventory CIFS which do not respond to a ping, you must disable the CIFS

online check. This way, the CIFS inventory starts without waiting for a response from CIFS.

- *Synchronized Port Checking*

A Windows, Linux, Mac, or IP inventory process searches the network for the systems available for scanning. This search runs asynchronously. If systems which exist in the network are not listed, you can alternatively enable the *Synchronized Port Checking* feature in the Options dialog. A synchronous search takes more time.

- *Alternative Method for Scheduled Tasks*

To also retrieve the user account data for tasks scheduled with a system that runs under Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, enable the *Alternative Method for Scheduled Tasks* checkbox. This way, the PsExec tool for retrieving the user account data will be executed locally on the system to be inventoried during the inventory process. If you do not enable the alternative method, the data of all tasks will be read in anyway, but without any user account details. For systems running under Windows Vista or a later operating system, this setting does not affect the way scheduled inventory tasks are performed.

- *Alternative Software Inventory*

If you enable the alternative method for inventorying software, Docusnap will not access the registry via WMI, but rather directly (using RemoteRegistry).



Only enable this mode if sufficient permissions for access to the remote registry of the Windows system have been granted. If such permissions are missing, scanning the software products may not be possible.

- *Disable NetBIOS Check*

By default, Docusnap checks the NetBIOS name during the authentication for domain login. If the NetBIOS name in the Active Directory configuration does not match the data entered on the Credentials dialog (User Name: NetBIOS\User), logging onto the domain will fail.

If the NetBIOS check has been disabled, NetBIOS names will not be verified.

- *Inventory DNS Root Zone (.)*

If you enable the *Inventory DNS Root Zone (.)* checkbox, Docusnap will also determine the (.) root zone entries in the forward lookup zones when inventorying the DNS servers.

- *Don't Inventory Topology*

Enable this checkbox if you do not want the topology of the SNMP devices to be scanned during an SNMP inventory process.

- *No domain authentication for Hyper-V and IIS*

In order to scan Hyper-V and IIS devices that are not attached to any domain, you need to disable domain authentication.



- *Use Dedicated Domain Controller*

By enabling *Use Dedicated Domain Controller*, you can specify the domain controller to be used for listing the systems found during the inventory scan. For example, if the domain controllers are distributed to multiple sites, this can dramatically reduce the response times when querying the Active Directory. If this option is enabled, you need to specify the name of the dedicated domain controller in the Authentication step of the Inventory wizard.

- *Using the DNS or Device Name for SNMP Inventory*

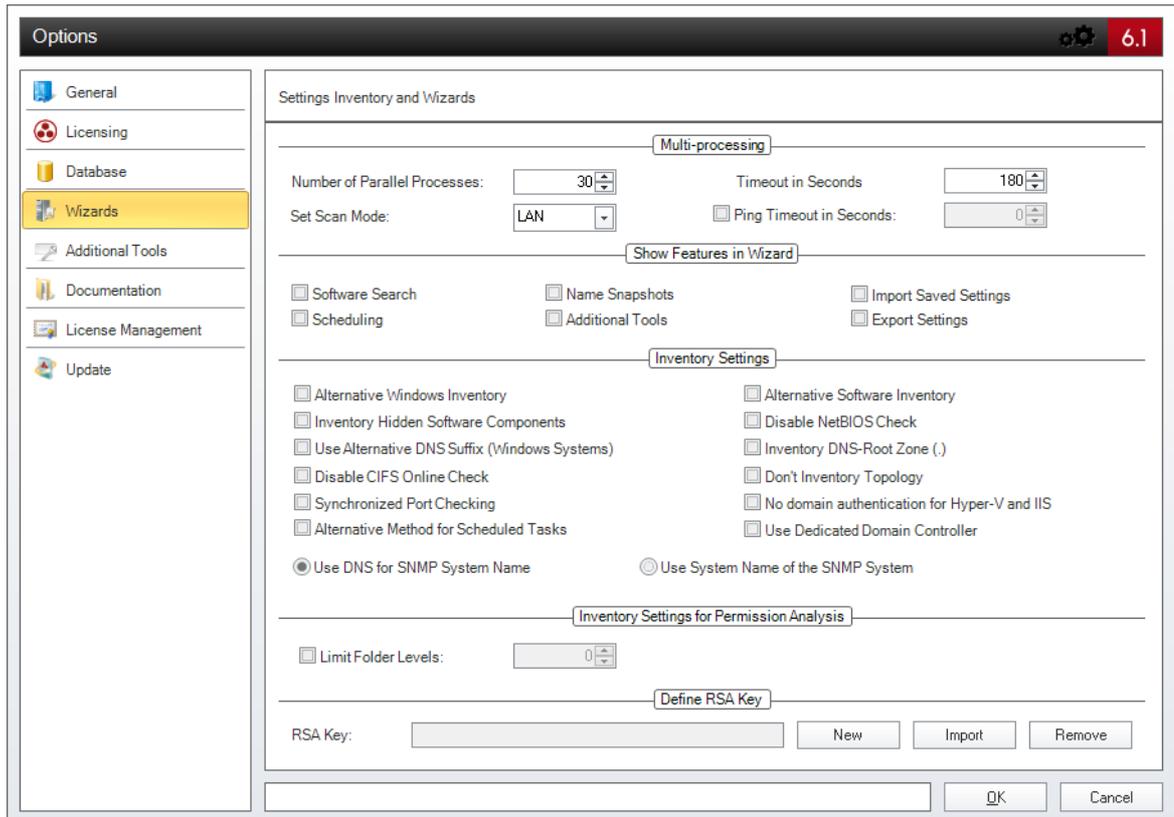
If multiple SNMP systems in the network have the same device name, these will be considered as one single device. To avoid this, you can specify that the SNMP Inventory process uses the DNS to find the SNMP systems. If no DNS name has been defined, the system name will be used in both cases.

Inventory Settings for Permission Analysis

When performing the inventory scan of NTFS permissions, the system will read the permissions of all folders on the selected systems. The *Limit Folder Levels* option allows you to specify the number of folder levels to be scanned. This can be helpful if, starting with a certain level, the permissions are always inherited.

Define RSA Key

Click the *New* button to create a new RSA key or click the *Import* button to import an existing RSA key. The use of this key facilitates the inventory process for [Linux](#) devices. This means that, after creating the key, you will have to first perform a Linux inventory scan where you will be prompted to enter your user name and password. When performing a new Linux scan, you will no longer be prompted for the password again. This way, the inventory scan is possible without a password.



15.1.5 Additional Tools

Docusnap allows you to execute certain utilities when performing a Windows system inventory scan.

An example of such an additional tool is the *Systeminfo.exe* application. Docusnap will start *Systeminfo.exe* after using the defined arguments after completion of the inventory scan. The result data returned by the tool will be saved in the database.

To add a desired tool, click the *New* button. You can choose the name freely. The name you specify will also be used as the results file name. Enter the name and path of the executable in the *Program Path* field or select it by clicking the button. The parameters you specified will be provided to the tool upon execution. Indicate optional parameters by square brackets ("["]").

For the *Type* field, two options are available:

- File

When you select *File*, the tool will create a temporary file on the hard disk where the returned results will be saved. When the inventory scan has completed, this file will be imported and saved in the database.

You can use the `%targetfile%` parameter to redirect the data into a results file. For example: "`Systeminfo.exe > %targetfile%`" causes the resulting data to be saved in

the results file defined in the text field.

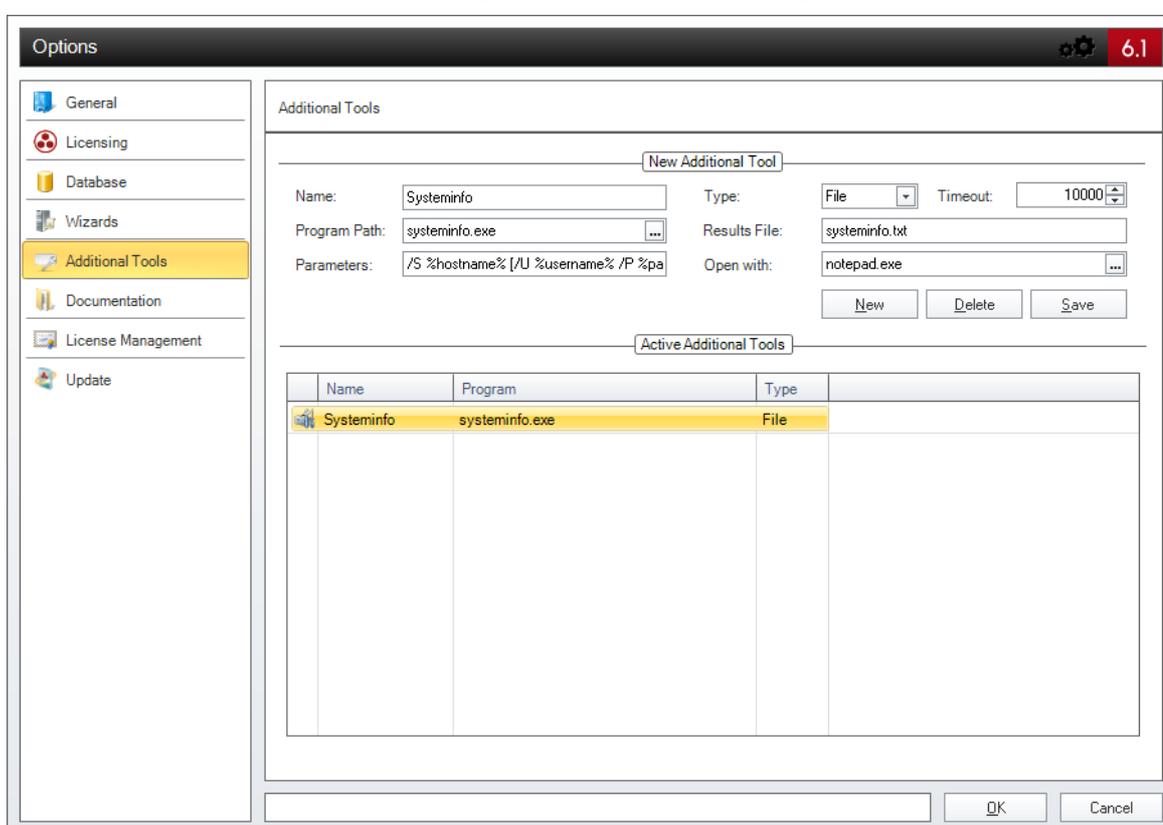
▪ Stream

If you select the *Stream* option, the results from StdOut will be written to the database immediately. In this case, however, the cmd.exe program will be visible for a short time.

In the *Timeout* field, you can indicate how much time the tool may take to complete. If this period is exceeded, the tool will be terminated by Docusnap.

In the *Open with:* file, you can define the program to be used for opening the results file.

Before you can select additional tools for the inventory process, the *Additional Tools* checkbox on the [Wizards](#) page of the Options dialog must be enabled.



Docusnap provides the following environment variables:

- %Hostname%, %Computername%
- %Ipadress%, %Ipadresse%
- %Domainname%, %Domain%, %Domäne
- %Username%, %Benutzer%
- %Password%, %Passwort%

- %Targetfile%, %Zieldatei%
- %Description%, %Beschreibung%
- %Tool%, %Toolname%
- %accountname%
- %accountid%
- %domainid%
- %hostid%
- %docuid%



Exception: single sign-on:

If a user name and password are not required for logging onto the domain in the Authentication step (single sign-on), you should declare the %username% and %password% parameters as optional parameters in square brackets. This ensures that no empty user name or empty password will be used.

Examples:

A:

Description: System info

Program Path: systeminfo.exe

Parameters: /S %hostname% [/U %username% /P %password%] > %targetfile%

Type: File

Results File: systeminfo.txt

Open with: notepad.exe

B:

Description: System info

Program Path: systeminfo.exe

Parameters: /S %hostname% [/U %username% /P %password%]

Type: Stream

Results File: systeminfo.txt

Open with: notepad.exe



15.1.6 Documentation

In the *Documentation Path* field, you can specify the location where documents (overviews and data sheets) will be stored when the program creates the documentation. Click the button to select the folder for storing the documents.

General Settings

Changes to the font only affect the information area in the various Visio maps.

By specifying the *Document Archive Versions Limit* using the checkbox of the same name and the number field, you can set how many versions of the documents created using the [Documentation](#) module will be archived in the archive folder.

When you create maps, reports are created along with them. These are saved in the *Reports* folder which is a subfolder in the documentation path. If you do not want these reports to be created, disable the *Create Additional Reports* checkbox.

Network Map

In network maps, it is possible to link documents to various devices and overviews. Using the *Word*, *HTML*, *PDF*, *Excel*, and *ODT* checkboxes, you can specify the document types to be linked. If additional tools were used when inventorying Windows systems, the results file can also be linked with the Visio maps.

Exclude VMware Adapter: When creating the network map, you can choose that network adapters created by the VMware Player/VMware Server software will be ignored. This checkbox is also available when you display the network map preview. You can change the setting there, too.

Datasheets

Datasheets contain a summary of the data for Windows, Server, Linux Mac, and SNMP systems. For each device, a separate data sheet will be created. Datasheets can be created in Word, HTML, PDF, Excel or ODT format. In the *Datasheet Settings* group, you can determine which files will be created by default.

If you enable the *Export Additional Tools Results* option, the files will be saved in an additional folder below the folder containing the documents.

Comments can be created for all devices. In addition, you can add files as attachments to the comments. The comments will be shown on the datasheets if the *Export Comments* checkbox is enabled. If you also check the *Export Attachments* option, the attachments will be stored in a subdirectory and linked with the corresponding datasheet.

In Docusnap, you can send the entire set of documentation directly to a printer. To use this feature, datasheets, overviews, and other information must be saved in a special file format (.mdc). If you tick the *Print Preparation (MDC)* checkbox, all

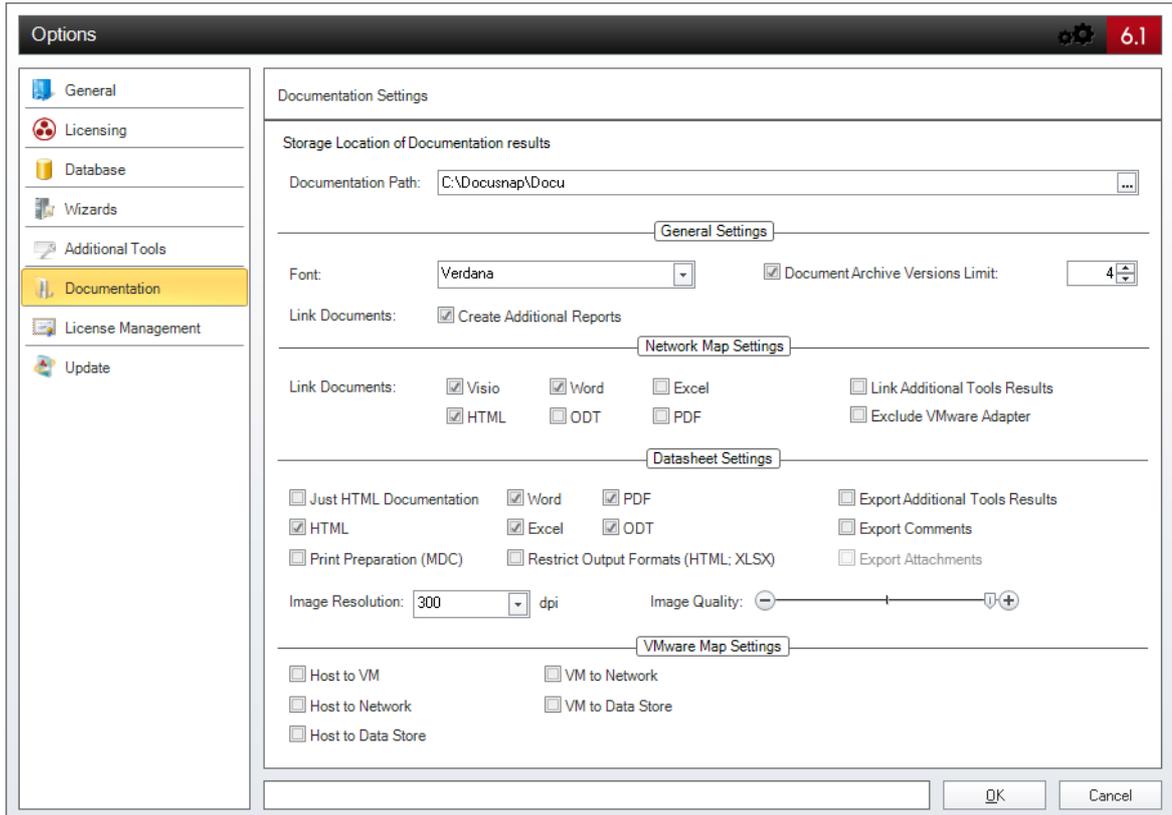
Settings

documents will be generated in this format as well.

The quality of the images contained in the documents, overviews, and maps can be defined in the Image Resolution field.

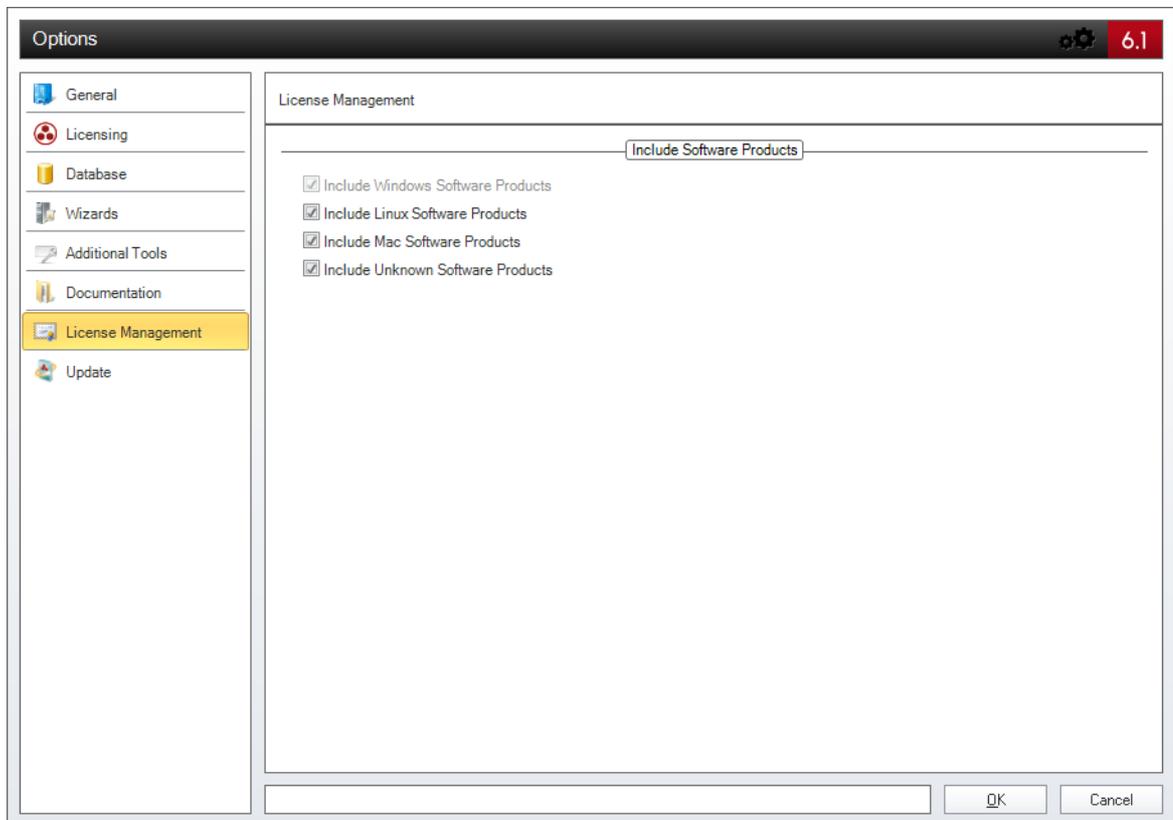
VMware Map Settings

In this group, you can specify the VMware maps to be created by default in Docusnap. (For more information, see [VMware Maps.](#))



15.1.7 License Management

If you wish to exclude the software products for a certain operating system from license management, you can clear the *Include Linux Software Products*, *Include Mac Software Products* and *Include Unknown Software Products* checkboxes.



15.1.8 Update

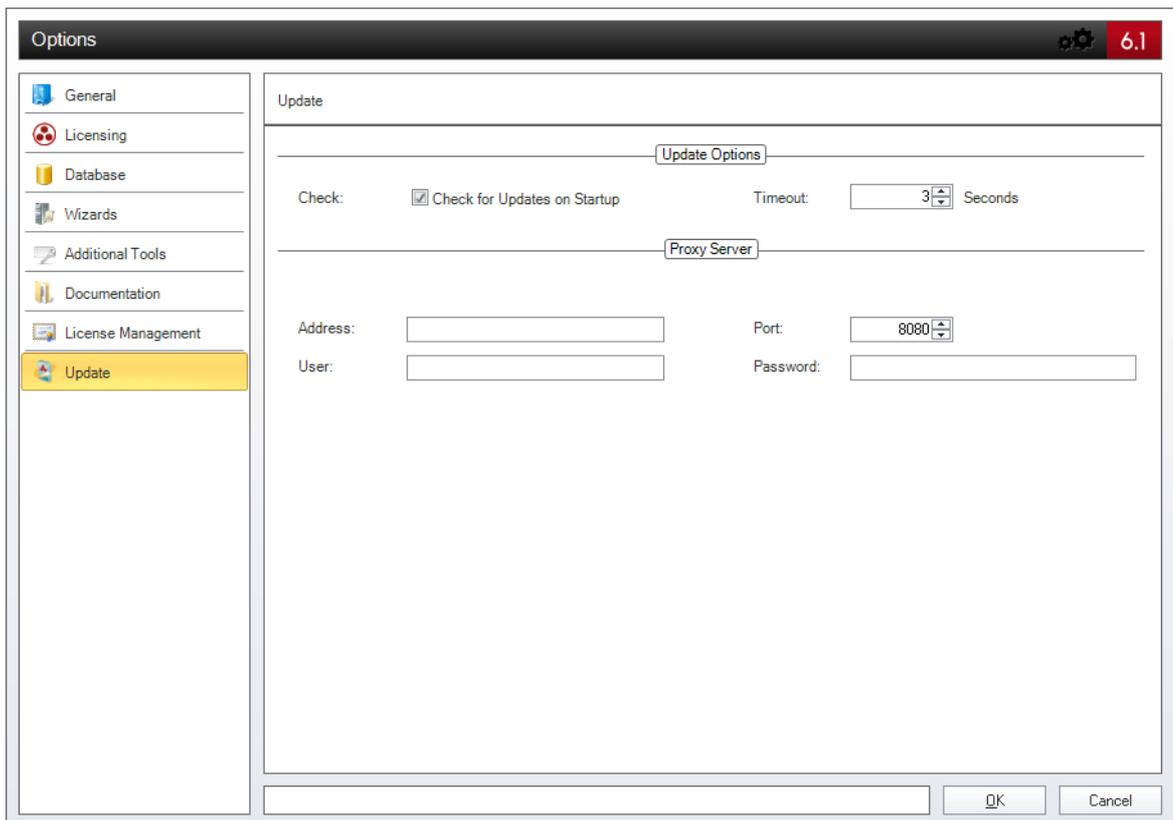
Update Options

If the *Check for Updates on Startup* checkbox is enabled, Docusnap checks for new updates each time you start the program. To avoid the update check upon startup, clear the *Check for Updates on Startup* checkbox. The Update feature can also be started during program operation by clicking the *Update* button on the *Help* ribbon.

In the *Timeout* field, you can specify (in seconds) how long the update routine will try to connect to the update server before a timeout occurs.

Proxy Server

By default, the proxy server set in the Internet Options of your machine will be used. If a different proxy server should be used for the update process, specify the details for this server in the Proxy Server group.



The screenshot shows the 'Options' dialog box with the 'Update' tab selected. The 'Update Options' section includes a checked checkbox for 'Check for Updates on Startup' and a 'Timeout' field set to '3' seconds. The 'Proxy Server' section contains four input fields: 'Address', 'Port' (set to '8080'), 'User', and 'Password'. The dialog has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

15.2 Designs

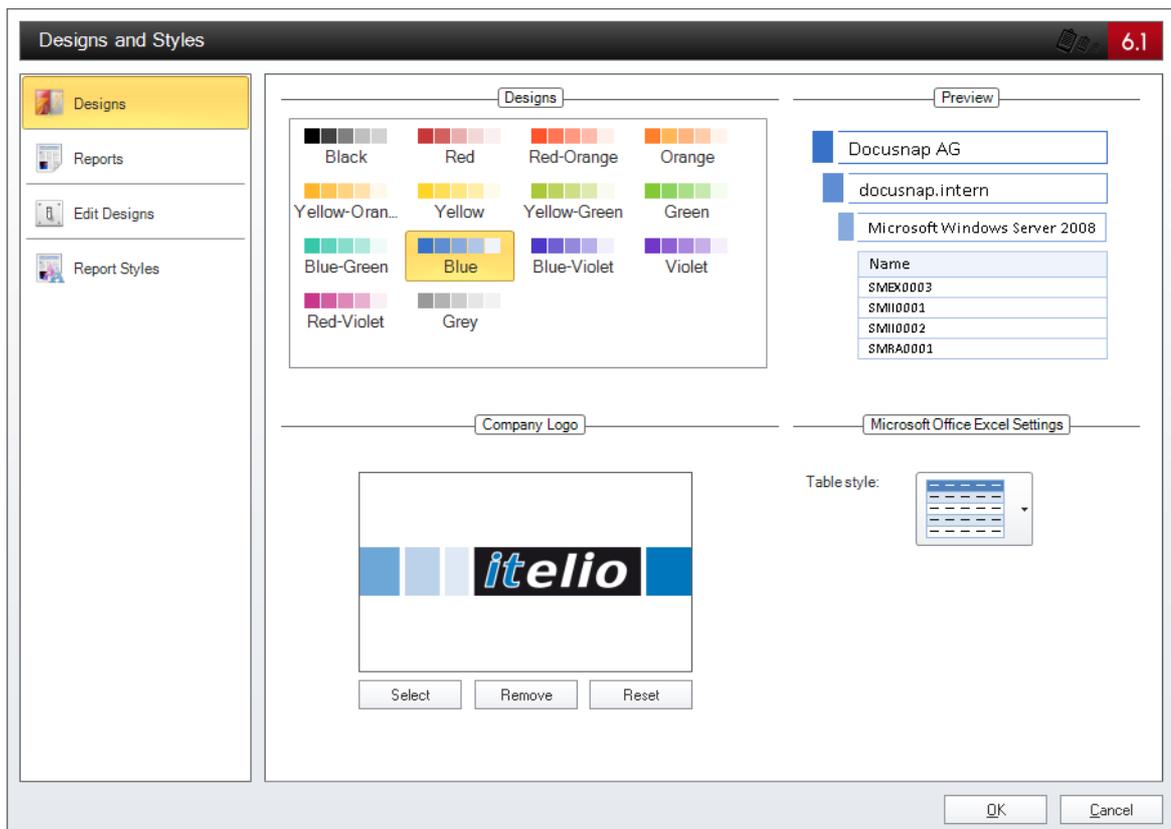
For some modules such as Reporting, Documentation or IT Concepts, you need to select the design to be used. In the Designs and Styles dialog, you can select a common design to be applied to all modules. In addition, you can change the settings for reports and IT concepts.

All changes made to settings are only valid on the current computer.

15.2.1 Designs

On the Designs page, you can select one of several predefined designs. The design you select here will be applied to reports, datasheets and maps. The selected design will determine the colors used in the IT concepts you create.

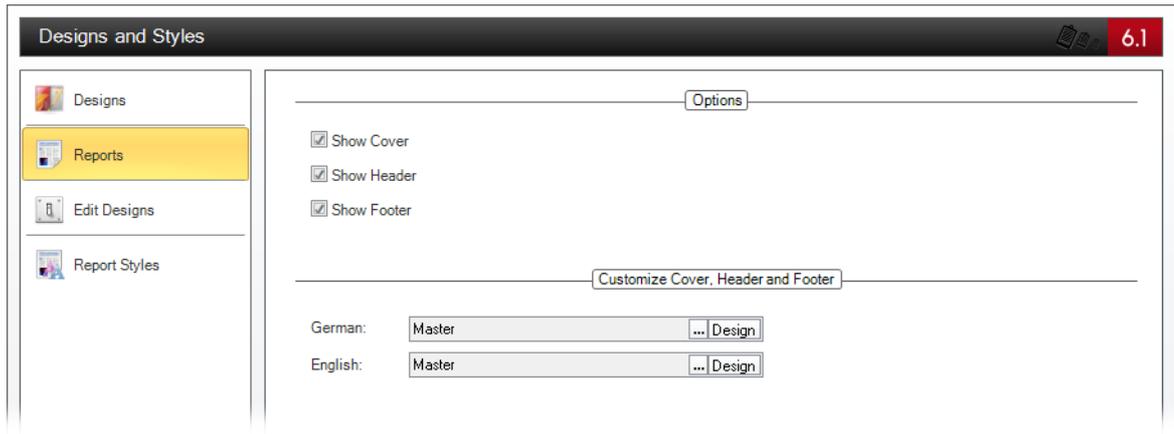
Additionally, you can select a customized image (company logo) in this dialog. This image will be shown in the header of the various documents and reports.



15.2.2 Report Settings

Using the *Show Cover*, *Show Header* and *Show Footer* checkboxes, you can specify whether those report elements will be included in the report.

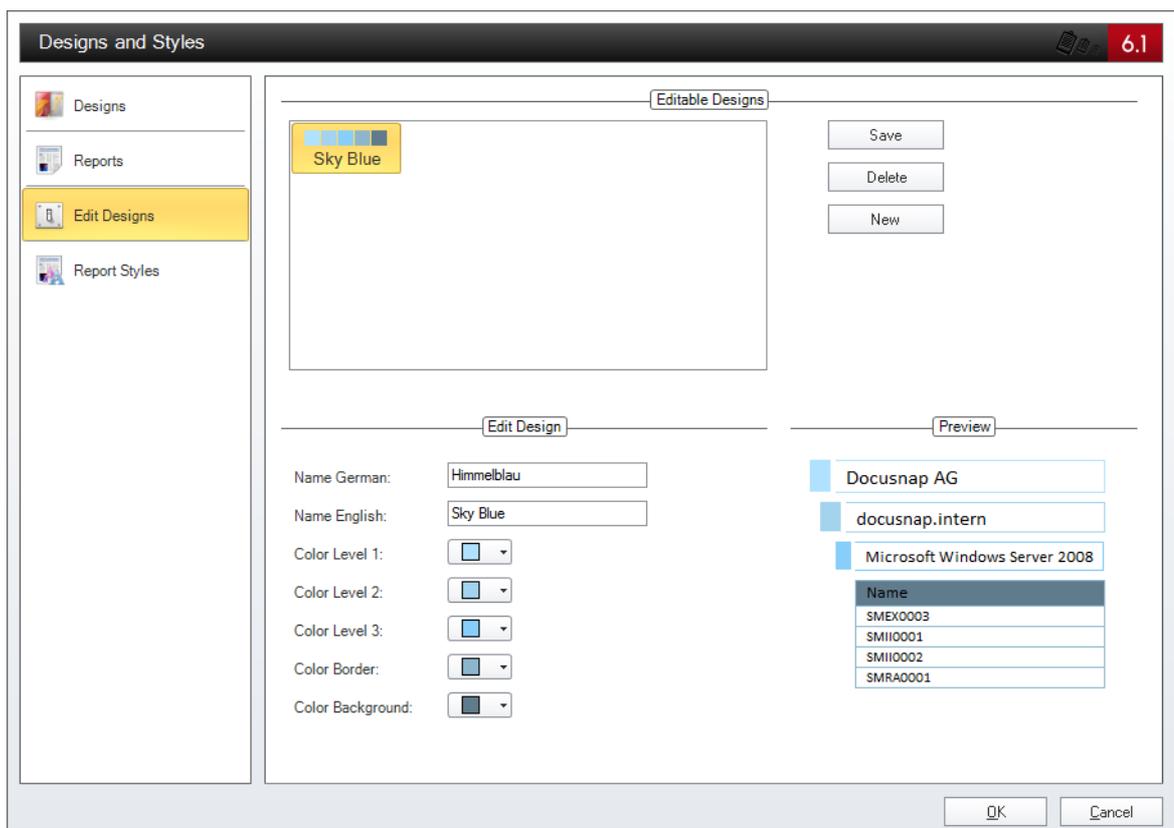
The report title is shown in the header. In addition, the header may include a logo. Page numbers will be inserted in the footer. The cover page will include the report title, a description (if specified), the report creation date, the author and the page count. By clicking the **Design** button, you can open the report in the Designer to customize it.



15.2.3 Edit Designs

You can add to the predefined designs by creating your own designs. Click the *New* button to create a new design for which you need to specify a name in English and German. You can then define colors for the various levels of your design. Click the *Save* button to save the design.

To use a custom design, you need to select it on the *Designs* page.



15.2.4 Edit Styles

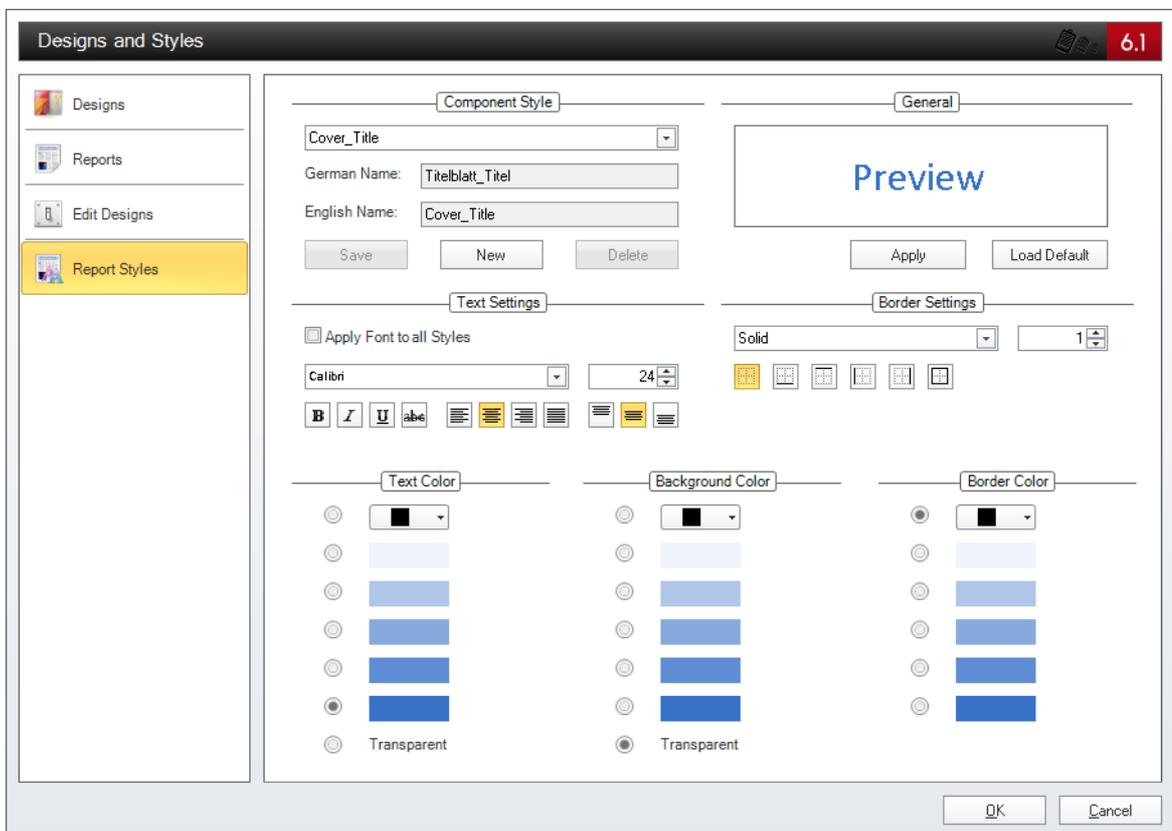
On the *Report Styles* page, you can modify the formatting of each style or create new styles.

You can define text settings, border settings, and colors for your styles. The settings are saved for the style that is currently selected in the dropdown list. If desired, you can apply the selected font to all styles. For the border, you can set the type and the border style to be applied.

The color can be set to the various shades available for the selected design. A shade set as the color for the text, the background, or the border will still be used when you select another design. The color defined through the drop-down list will also still be used when you select another design.

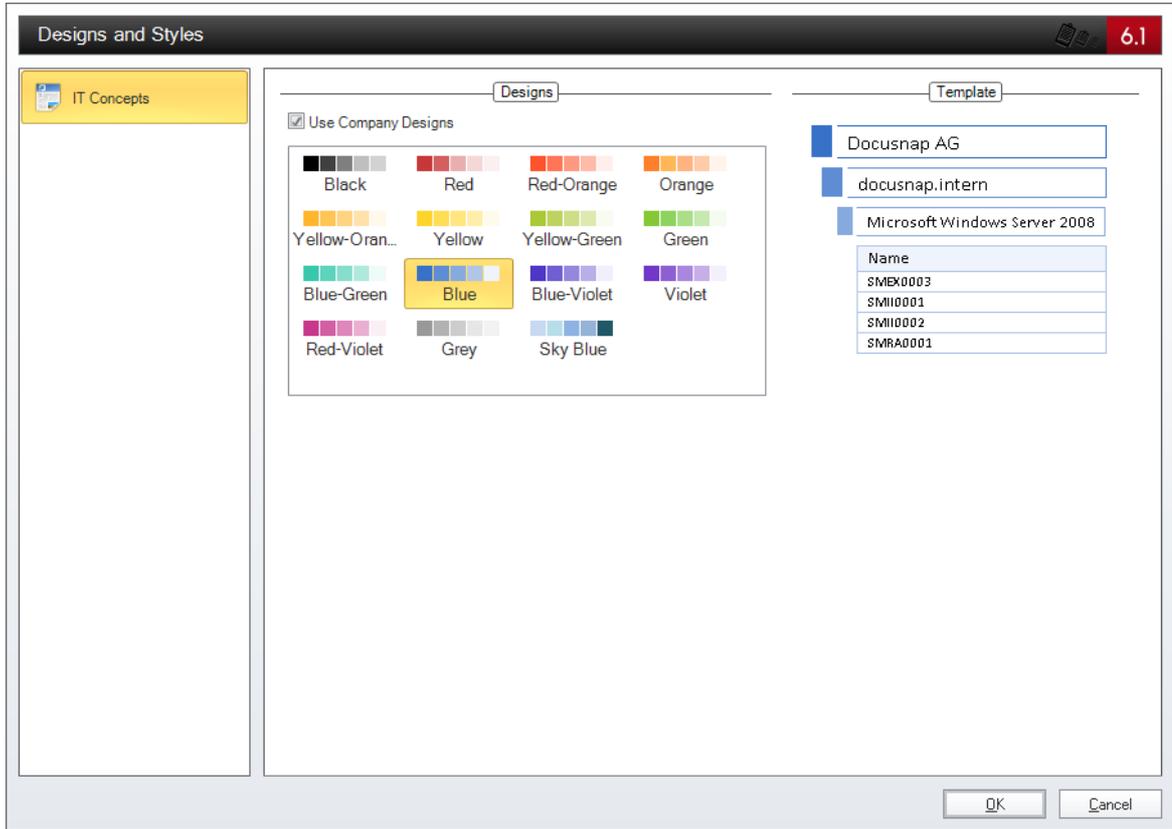
To save modifications to existing styles, click the *Apply* button. Clicking the *Load Default* button deletes all custom styles and restores the original design settings.

Click the *New* button to create a new style. After assigning a name for the design in English and in German, you can save the style and then define its formatting.



15.2.5 IT Concept

On the *Designs* page of the *Designs and Styles* dialog, you can select a color scheme to be applied to your documentation and IT concepts. When you create an IT concept, Docusnap uses the currently selected design. If you want to use a different design for IT concepts, you can select it individually for each IT concept in the [IT Concept Editor](#).



15.3 Company Settings

To define the settings for the designs for reports, the IT concept, and the documents, created in the documentation process, open the [Designs and Styles](#) dialog. In contrast, the *Company Settings* allow you to customize the design to match the CI of your company. These settings will be saved in the database and will always be available when Docusnap is connected to this database.

To open this dialog, click the *Company* button on the *Management* ribbon.



All settings you define here only apply to the company selected under *Select Company*. Confirm the settings by clicking *OK*. If you switch to another company after modifying a setting, the settings for the previously selected company will be reset. For this reason, you first should save the changes for a company by clicking



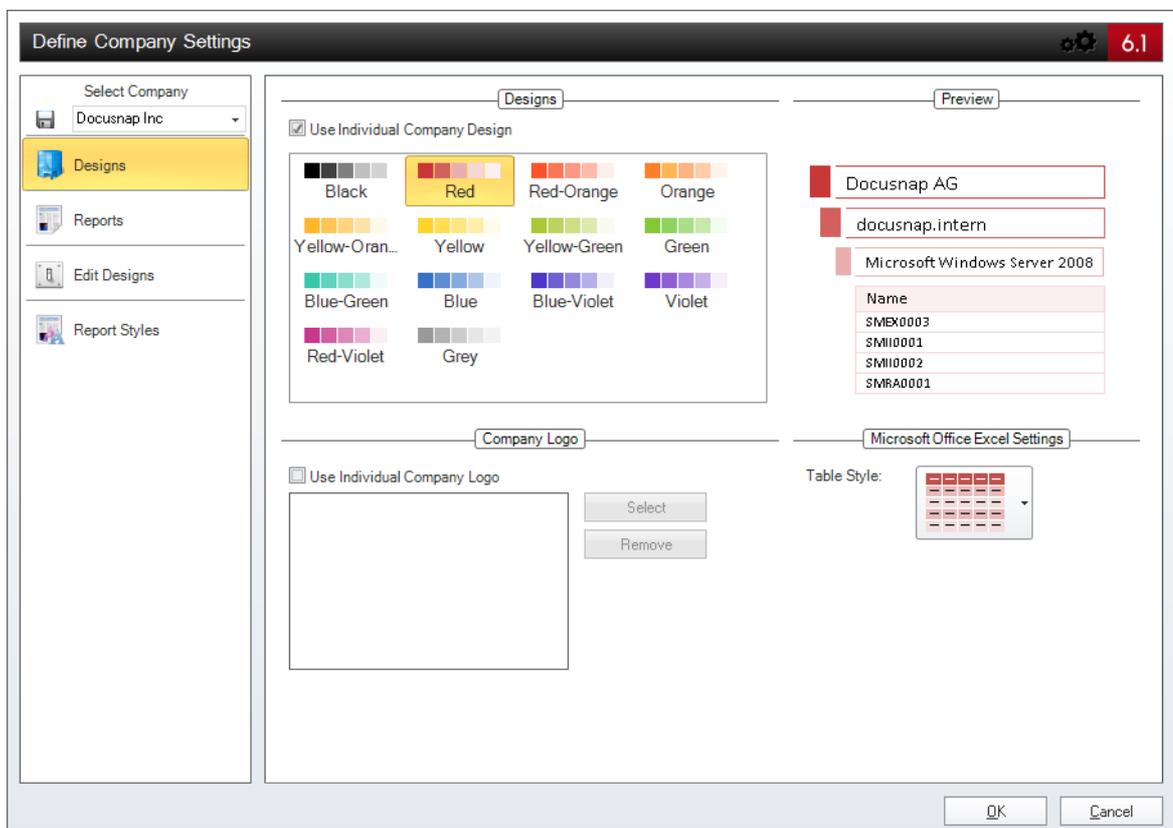
. To define settings for a different company, change the selected company.

15.3.1 Desgins

On the Designs page, you can select a design for the selected company. This design will be used for reports, documents, maps, and IT concepts. Only if the *Use Individual Company Design* checkbox is enabled, you can select a design to be applied specifically to this company. Otherwise, the local design will be used.

In addition, you can select a specific company logo. This logo will be saved in the database and will always be available when Docusnap is connected to this database.

The company logo will be shown on the reports, in the documents, and the maps along with the logo defined in the [Designs and Styles](#) dialog.



15.3.2 Report Settings

In Docusnap, you can define a cover page, as well as a header and footer, for each individual report. In the *Define Company Settings* dialog, you can now customize the settings and the [design](#) to be used with the selected company.

Structure

On the Report Settings page, you can select one of the following Status settings:

Master Settings, Do not Use or Individual Settings.

- *Master Settings*

If you select the Master Settings option, the system uses the default specified on the [Designs](#) page. If you only want to change the color of the header, footer or cover page for the selected company, it is sufficient to customize the design from the *Designs* page.

- *Do not Use*

If you select the *Do not Use* setting, the header, footer and cover page will not be used in the reports.

- *Individual Settings*

If you select the *Individual Settings* option, you can create a company-specific report with a customized header, footer and cover page. Click the  button to select a report. Docusnap provides pre-formatted reports that include headers, footers and cover pages. The corresponding files are stored in the Reporting folder under the current system path. As the system path, Docusnap uses the path specified for the local settings or for the team settings in the Options dialog. The files containing the header, footer and cover page definitions are available in English (EN_MasterReport.mrt) and German (DE_MasterReport.mrt).

It is recommended to use these files. If you want to use a different header, footer or cover page for the company, you can copy the files from the Reporting folder and save them under a different name. Then, you can select the desired file from the *Define Company Settings* dialog and open it in the Report Designer by clicking the *Design* button to change it as required

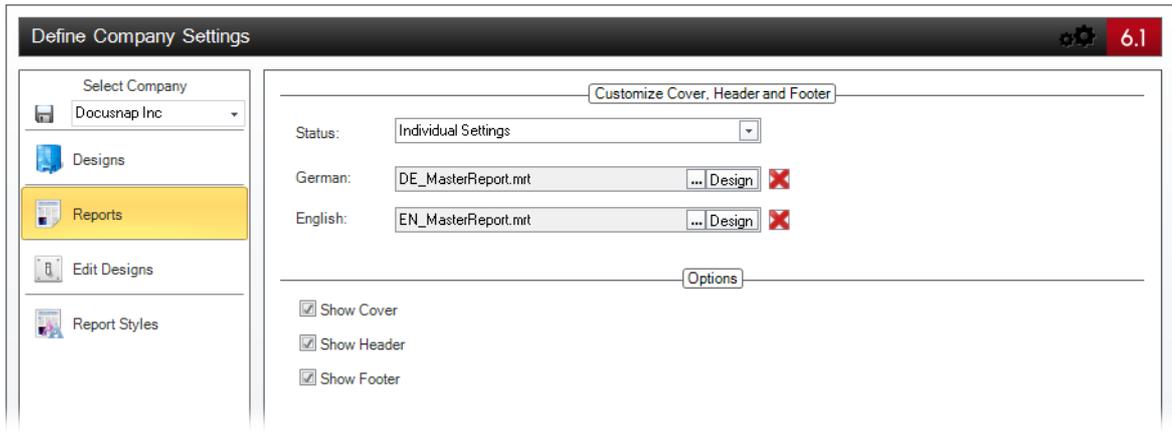
Styles

In the Report Designer, you can assign a style to each element (data band, text box, line, etc.). By editing these styles, you can change the appearance of all reports simultaneously. Styles can be used to modify the font, color, frames and other properties. In addition, the size and position of the elements can be specified in the Report Designer as required.



If you define a style for an element, these format settings will be always be used rather than the format settings applied in the Report Designer.

For more information about how to create customized reports, see the Administrator Manual.

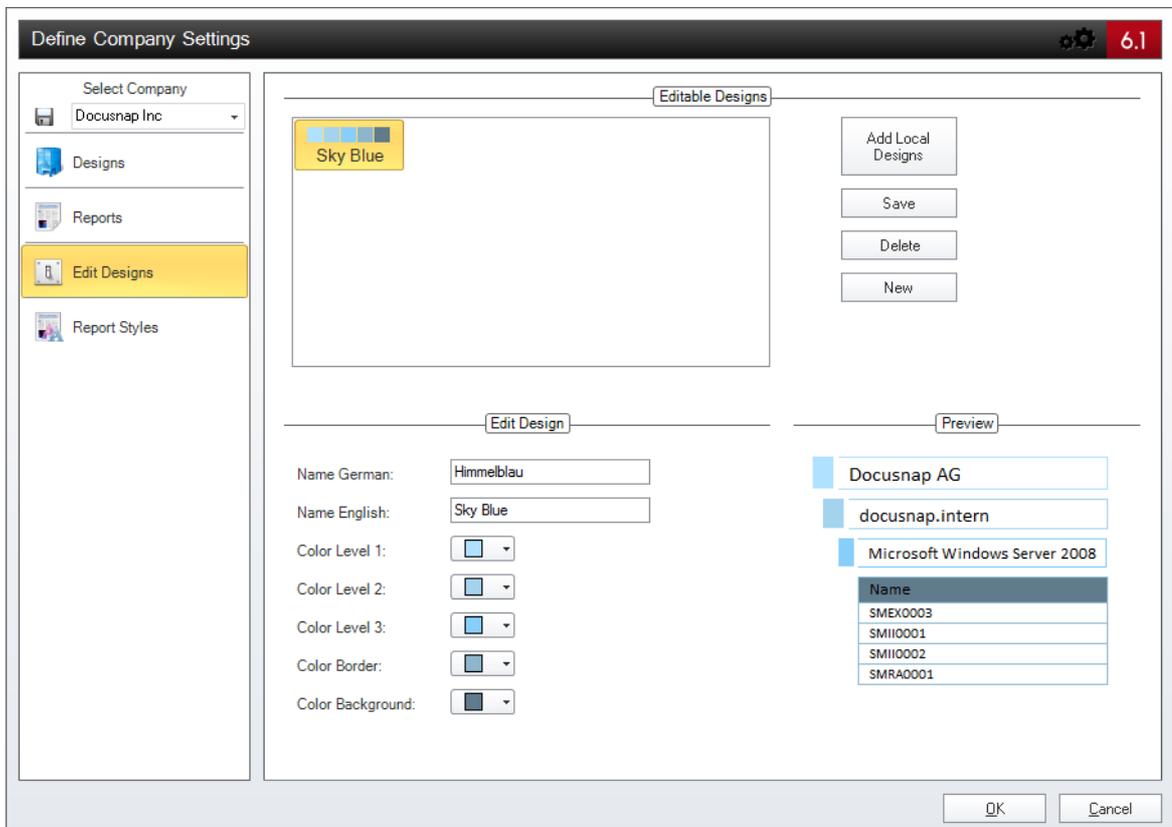


15.3.3 Edit Designs

You can add to the predefined designs by creating your own designs on the company level. Click the *New* button to create a new design for which you need to specify a name in English and German. You can then define colors for the various levels of your design. Click the *Save* button to save the design.

Click the *Add Local Designs* to load the local designs which you can then customize for your company.

To use your custom design, you need to select it on the *Designs* page.



15.3.4 Edit Styles

On the *Report Styles* page, you can modify the formatting of each style or create new styles.

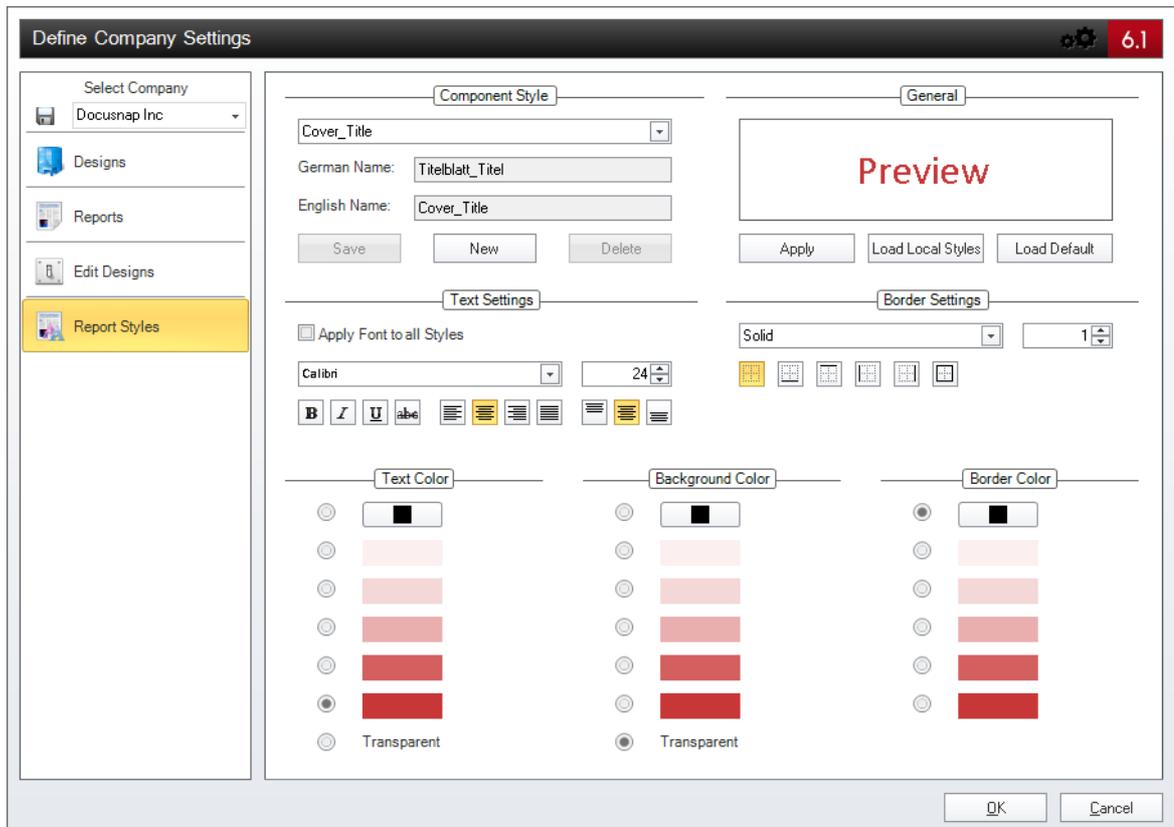
You can define text settings, border settings, and colors for your styles. The settings are saved for the style that is currently selected in the dropdown list. If desired, you can apply the selected font to all styles. For the border, you can set the type and the border style to be applied.

The color can be set to the various shades available for the selected design. A shade set as the color for the text, the background, or the border will still be used when you select another design. The color defined through the drop-down list will also still be used when you select another design.

To save modifications to existing styles, click the *Apply* button. Clicking the *Load Default* button deletes all custom styles and restores the original design settings.

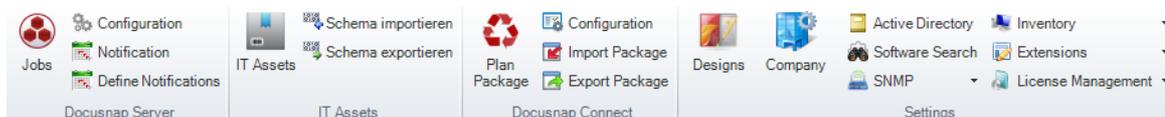
Clicking the *Load Local Styles* button loads the custom styles you defined locally.

Click the *New* button to create a new style. After assigning a name for the design in English and in German, you can save the style and then define its formatting.



15.4 Management

Using the buttons on the *Management* ribbon, you can edit the predefined Docusnap types or create new ones.



Inventory Group

From the Inventory group, you can manage the following: SNMP types, SNMP Mibs, server roles, inventory types, inventory status, Software Search, Active Directory and NTFS filters.

License Management

In the License Management group, you find the buttons for managing software categories, license types and maintenance types.

Extensions

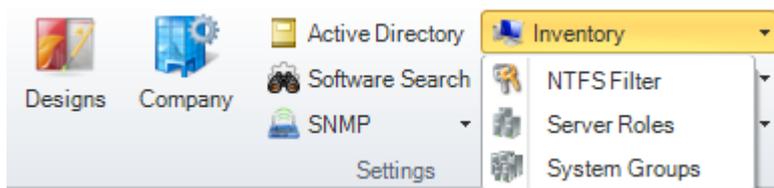
From the Extensions group, it is possible to open dialogs where you can define new extension types and edit or delete existing ones.

User

Within Docusnap, you can assign users to various roles. These roles control a user's permissions in Docusnap. This allows the administrator to define a granular control of a user's permissions.

15.4.1 Inventory

The Inventory group contains buttons you can use to open management dialogs for items related to the inventory process.



SNMP Types

SNMP types can be used to specify the SNMP devices found by Docusnap more precisely.

SNMP Mibs

Using the Manage MIBs dialog, you can import single MIBs and import or export all MIBs for external use.

Server Roles

Usually, each server has a specific role (e.g. mail server). In order to easily identify the role of each server, you can assign a role to the server service started for it.

Software Search

The Software Search feature enables you to search for Windows software that has not been registered using the Windows Installer. In this case, the search is performed using either the program's file name or its properties.

Active Directory

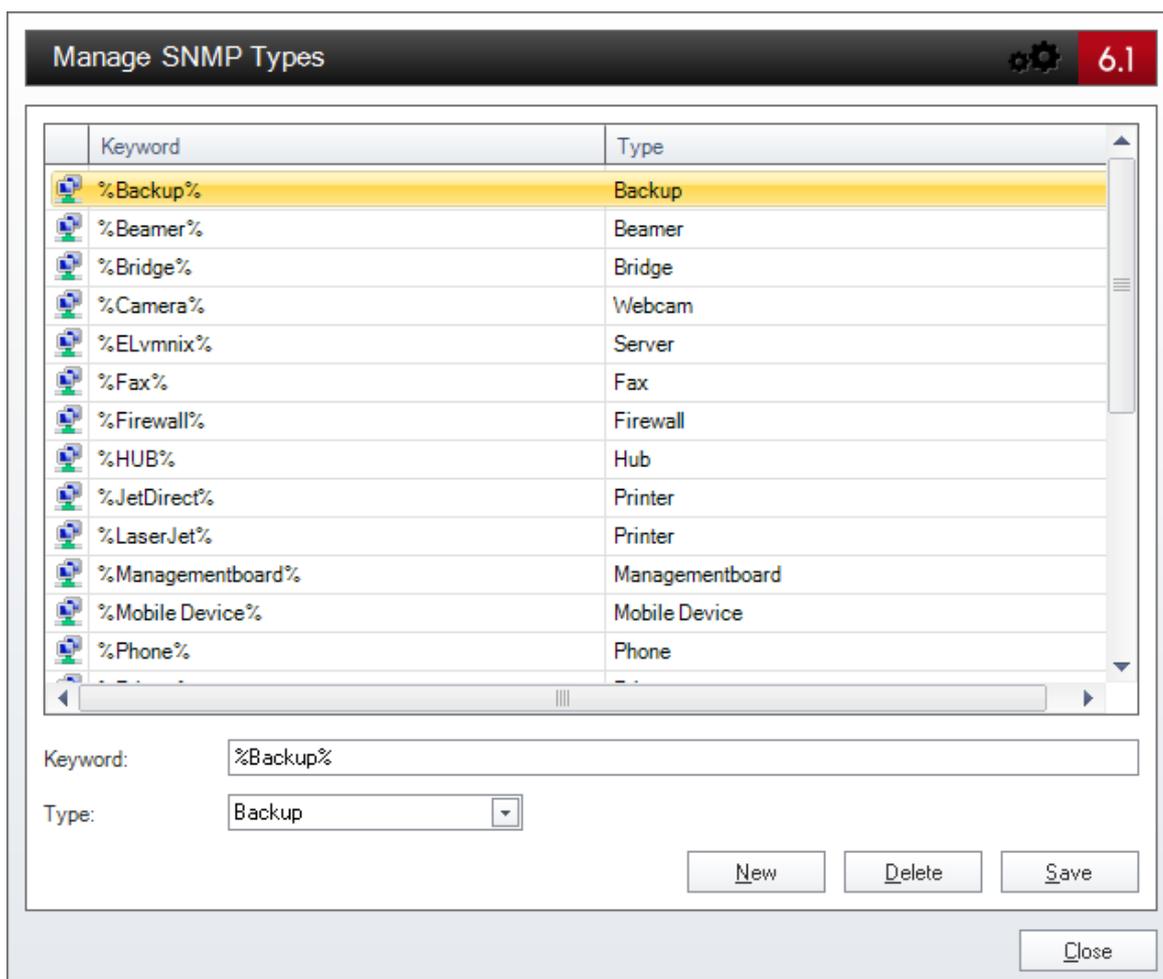
In the Manage Active Directory dialog, it is possible to customize the scope of the AD inventory process and the Active Directory data output. The settings for classes, properties and assignments from this dialog will be taken into account when Docusnap scans the Active Directory system.

15.4.1.1 SNMP Types

When performing an [SNMP inventory scan](#), Docusnap looks for the available SNMP devices. However, no information is returned on the type of the identified device, for example, whether it is a switch, a router or a printer. In the *Manage SNMP Types* dialog, you can define keywords that will be compared with the identified SNMP equipment. Then, Docusnap is able to indicate the correct type in the Data Explorer. The value that will be used for comparison with the keyword is specified in the *Description* column of scanned equipment.

The Manage SNMP Types dialog lists predefined keywords that are often used for SNMP devices. Click the *New* button to add an additional SNMP type. Enclose the keyword in percentage symbols (%). These symbols are placeholders; they replace the remaining words in the description. The keyword you enter must exist in the description of the SNMP device. Otherwise, the correct type will not be found.





15.4.1.2 SNMP Mibs

In Docusnap 6.1, you can include your own or third-party MIBs in the [SNMP Inventory](#).

By adding, importing and enabling different MIBs, you can restrict SNMP systems scans to certain device types for which manufacturer information should be considered during the scan.

The Manage MIBs dialog allows you to manage the MIBs. There, you can add MIBs to the list by clicking the *Import* button. In addition, you can export the entire schema and import it into a new database. Thus, it is possible to reuse the schema elsewhere.

First select an MIB, then use the checkboxes next to the entries to determine the manufacturer information to be retrieved for the individual systems.

Settings

Manage MIBs
6.1

Manage MIBs

Search MIBs

SNMPv2-SMI

- Printer-MIB
- RFC1213-MIB
- BRIDGE-MIB
 - Q-BRIDGE-MIB

- All
- Backup
- Beamer
- Bridge
- Fax
- Firewall
- Hub
- Managementboard
- Mobile Device
- Network COM
- Network USB
- Phone
- Printer
- Router
- SAN Hub
- SAN Switch
- Scanner
- Server
- Storage
- Switch
- Thinclient
- USV
- Webcam
- WLAN
- Workstation

Manage MIBs
6.1

Manage MIBs

Search MIBs

SNMPv2-SMI

- iso.org
 - dod
 - internet
 - directory
 - mgmt
 - mib-2
 - system
 - transmission
 - snmp
 - dot1dBridge
 - interfaces
 - at
 - ip
 - printmib
 - icmp
 - tcp
 - udp

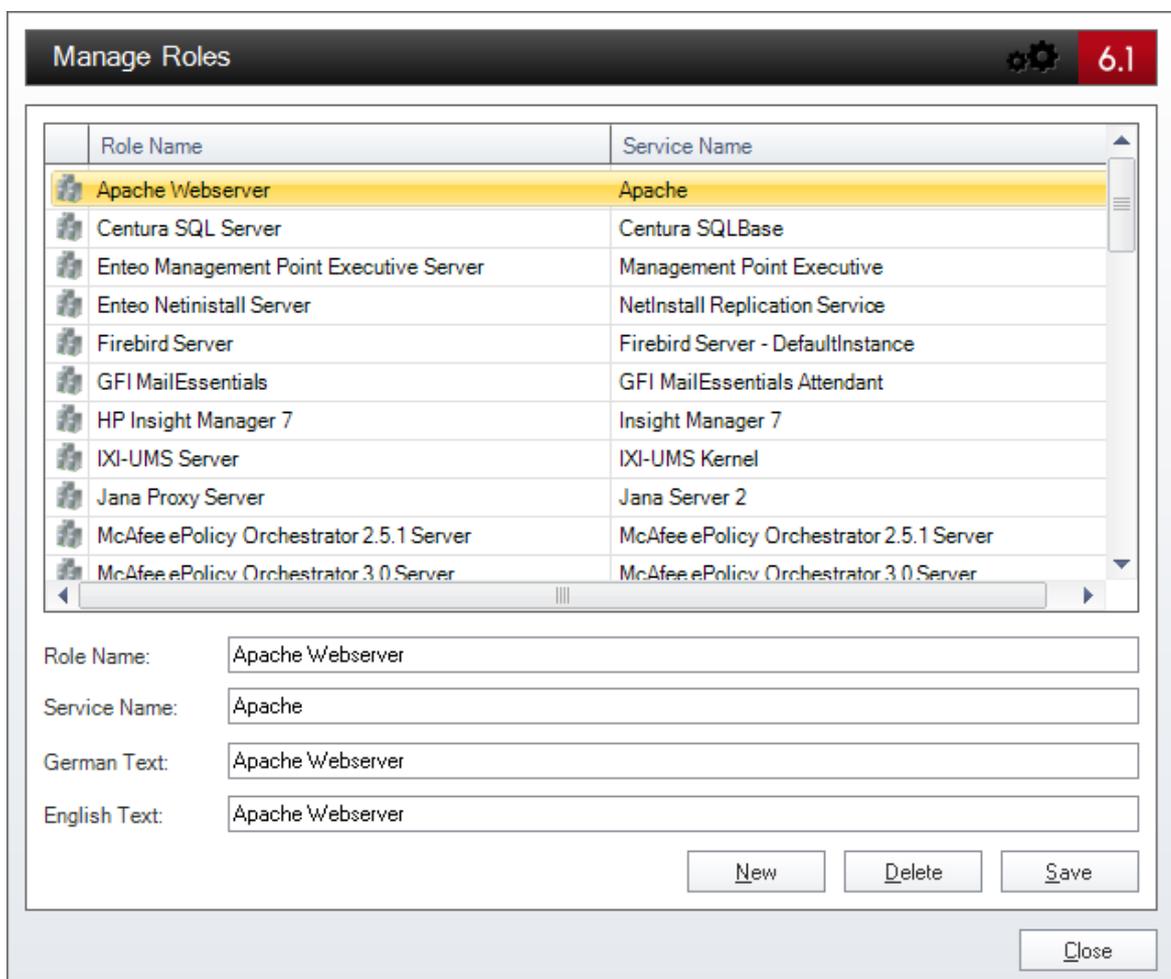
Label	Value
Name	BRIDGE-MIB
Oid	1.3.6.1.2.1.17
Oid Path	iso.org.dod.internet.mgmt.mib-2.dot1dBridge
Type	ObjectIdentifier
Syntax	
Children Count	7
Enabled	Yes



15.4.1.3 Server Roles

Servers may have various roles. These roles can be defined in the *Manage Roles* dialog. When you perform an inventory scan of the servers, all services are retrieved that are present on the server at the time of the scan. By having a look at the services that have been started, you can see which tasks they fulfill.

In the Manage Roles dialog, you can enter the role name and the service that defines it. Enter any meaningful name for the role and English and German designations. The name of the service must match the designation of the service identified by Docusnap. If the user interface language is English, the role name will be displayed in English. When you switch to German, the German name will be shown.



15.4.1.4 Active Directory

In the Manage Active Directory dialog, it is possible to customize the scope of the [ADS inventory process](#) and the Active Directory data output. The classes, properties and assignments from this dialog will be available when inventorying the Active Directory systems.

ADS Classes

Settings

DocuSnap provides a number of predefined ADS classes. If required, you can add more classes. To add new items, click the *New* button. Then, enter the required information and confirm by clicking the *Save* button. To delete an item, select it and click the *Delete* button.



You can only delete classes that have not been used yet in an inventory scan. You can only change or delete user-defined classes.

You need to fill in all text fields when creating a new item. Specify any class name you like. When setting the filter, make sure that it exactly matches the designation used in the Active Directory. If the name and the designation are not identical, it will not be possible to scan the desired information.

Classes for which the *Active* checkbox has been ticked will be taken into account when scanning the Active Directory.

Class Name	Class Filter	Active
BuiltInContainer	builtincontainer	Yes
BuiltInDomain	builtindomain	Yes
Computer	computer	Yes
Contact	contact	Yes
Container	container	Yes
ForeignSecurityPrincipal	foreignSecurityPrincipal	Yes
Group	group	Yes
GroupPolicyContainer	groupPolicyContainer	Yes
InetOrgPerson	inetOrgPerson	Yes

Name: BuiltInContainer
 Filter: builtincontainer
 German Text: Standardordner
 English Text: BuiltInContainer
 Class Type ID: 4 Active

New Delete Save Close

ADS Properties

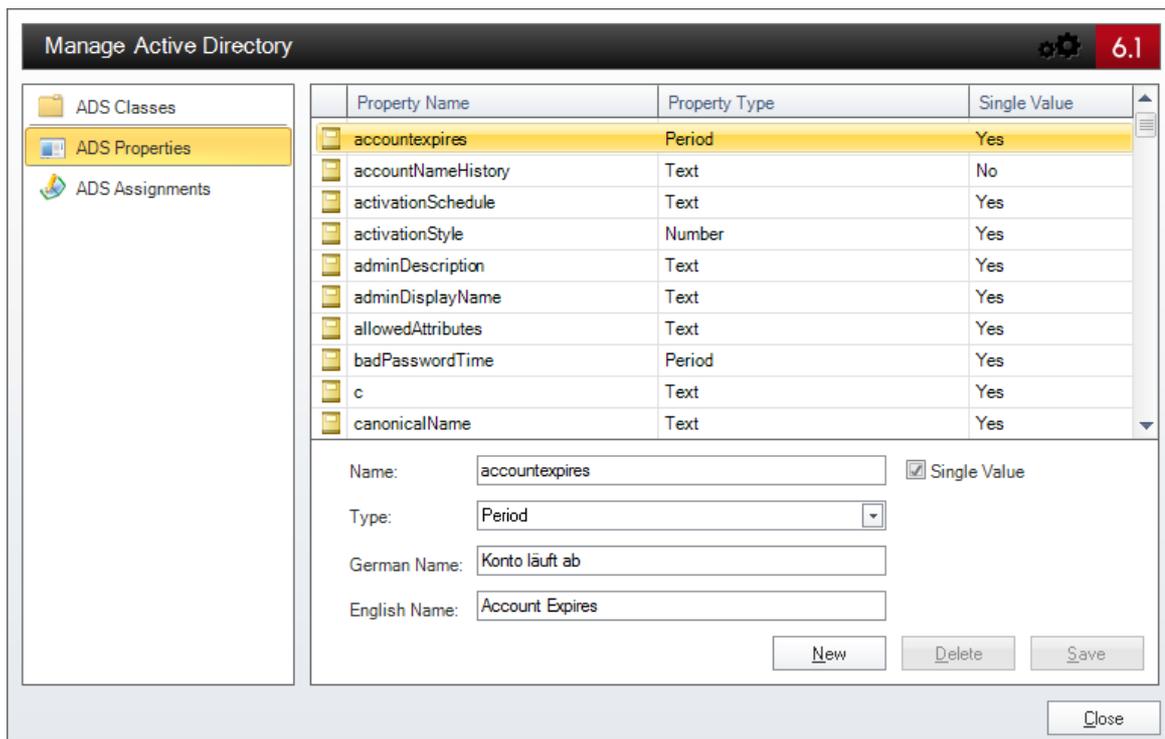
On the ADS Properties page of the dialog, you can define attributes. Here again, you can only change or delete user-defined entries.

The name of the property must exactly match the designation of that property or attribute in the Active Directory. The selected type must be the same as the property type.

The *Single Value* checkbox indicates whether this property may exist more than once in each class (e.g. e-mail addresses) or whether it exists only once (e.g. a



name).



The screenshot shows the 'Manage Active Directory' console. On the left, the 'ADS Properties' pane is active, displaying a list of properties. The 'accountexpires' property is selected. The right pane shows the details for this property:

Property Name	Property Type	Single Value
accountexpires	Period	Yes
accountNameHistory	Text	No
activationSchedule	Text	Yes
activationStyle	Number	Yes
adminDescription	Text	Yes
adminDisplayName	Text	Yes
allowedAttributes	Text	Yes
badPasswordTime	Period	Yes
c	Text	Yes
canonicalName	Text	Yes

Below the table, the details for the selected property are shown:

Name: Single Value

Type:

German Name:

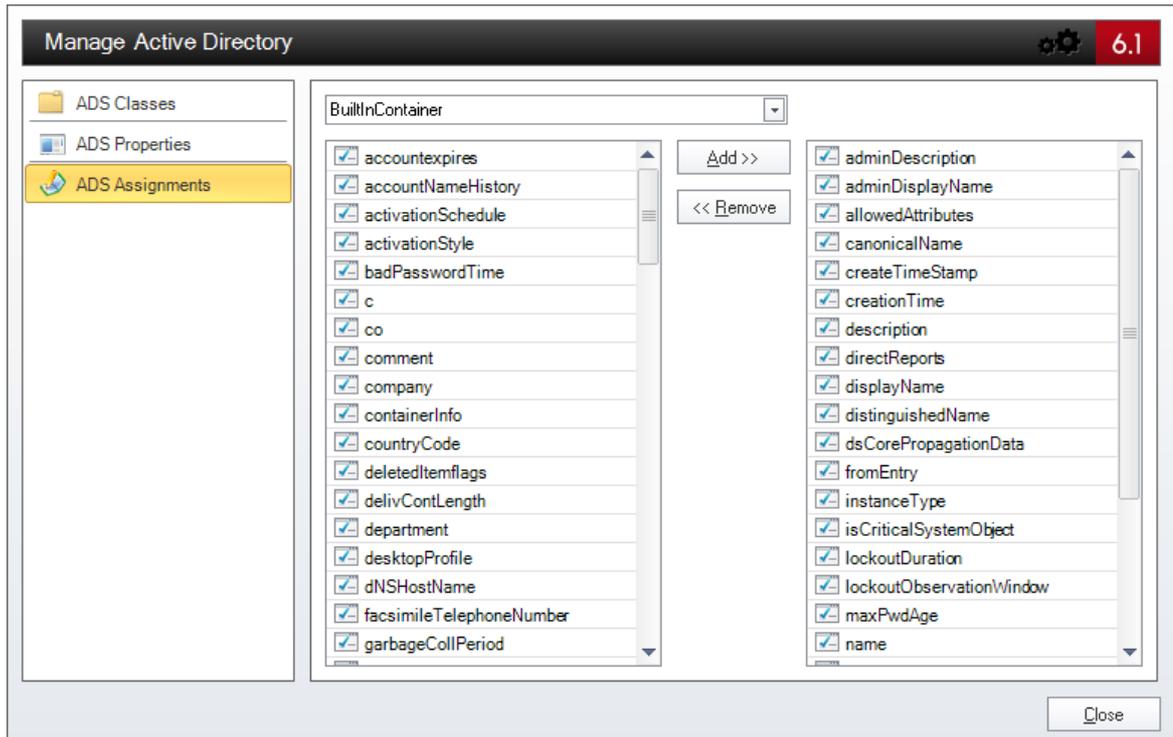
English Name:

Buttons: New, Delete, Save, Close

ADS Assignments

In the Active Directory, properties or attributes are assigned to the respective classes. An attribute may be assigned to several classes.

The assignment is made for the class selected in the list box. All available properties are displayed in the list on the left. The pane on the right contains the properties that have already been assigned.



15.4.1.5 Software Search

The Software Search feature enables you to search for Windows software that has not been registered using the Windows Installer. Software Search is one of the steps executed as part of the inventory process for [Windows Systems](#).

This option is disabled by default and must be enabled from the Options dialog.



Manage Software Search Dialog

This dialog can be used to add software entries for the Software Search. Click the *New* button to add a new entry. Enter the required information and confirm by clicking *Save*. Now, the entry will be listed in the table. The *Software Name* and *File Name* fields are mandatory. You can enter any information in the Software Name, Publisher and Version fields. Their content is only used for display in Docusnap and does not affect the search. The *File Name* field, however, must exactly match the name of the file you are looking for. The *File Size* and *Date modified* fields can be used to limit the search results. If you know that multiple files with the same file name exist in a system, it would be a good idea to use these fields because

DocuSnap terminates the search for a certain system as soon as one file matching the search criteria has been found. Specify the file size in bytes. The search path is optional, but if specified, it may significantly reduce the search time in some cases. To remove one or more entries from the list, select them and click the *Delete* button.

Name	Publisher	Version	File Name	File Size	Date Mod
PuTTY		0.62	putty.exe	0,37 MB	

Software Name: PuTTY

Publisher:

Version: 0.62

File Name: putty.exe

File Size: 384642 Byte

Date modified: . .

Search Path: C:\

New Delete Save Close

15.4.2 License Management

For the License Management module, it is possible to edit existing types or create new ones.

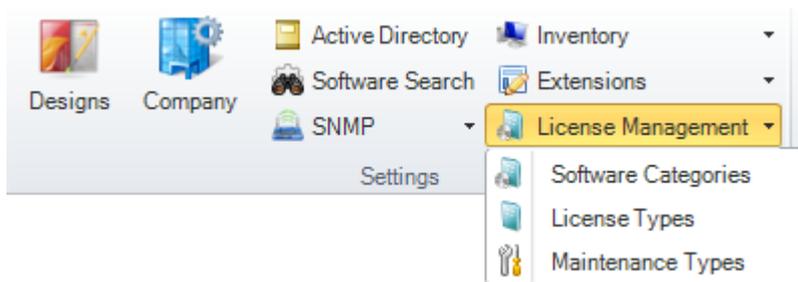
Using [Software Categories](#) you can define for software products whether the licenses will be assigned to devices, processors, processor cores, users or not at all.

In the [Manage License Types](#) dialog, you can define the type of a license.

In addition to the licenses, you can also enter software maintenance agreements

that were bought together with the licenses. In the [Manage Maintenance Types](#) dialog, you can add new types and edit or delete existing ones.

These management dialogs can be opened by clicking the corresponding buttons in the License Management group on the *Management* ribbon.



15.4.2.1 Software Categories

When you create a software product from the License Management module, you can assign it to a category. Docusnap provides predefined categories. In the Manage Software Categories dialog, you can edit the existing categories or create new ones.

The categories can be named both in English and German. The name itself may be chosen freely.

The assignment of a category determines the basic settings, such as the type of licensing, for the product. The category you select here determines whether it will be possible to use keywords and create [system assignments](#) or [user assignments](#) in later wizard steps. The selected *assignment* determines whether the licenses in this category will be assigned to devices, processors, processor cores, users, or not at all.

If you prefer not to use a keyword-based assignment, tick the No Automatic Assignment checkbox.

The word *Manual* in the names of the predefined categories indicates that no keyword-based search will be used. Rather, the licenses in use need to be entered manually.

Manage Software Categories  **6.1**

Name	Assignment Mode	No Automatic Assignment
 StandardLicense	No Assignment	No
 DeviceLicense	Hosts	No
 UserLicense	Users	No
 CPULicense	Processors	No
 CPUCoreLicense	Processor Cores	No
 StandardLicenseManual	No Assignment	Yes
 DeviceLicenseManual	Hosts	Yes
 UserLicenseManual	Users	Yes
 CPULicenseManual	Processors	Yes
 CPUCoreLicenseManual	Processor Cores	Yes

Name: Assignment:

German Text: Search: No Automatic Assignment

English Text:

15.4.2.2 License Types

Purchased licenses can be of various types, depending on how they were bought, e.g. volume licenses, package licenses or OEM products. When running the License Management wizard, you can select the appropriate purchase type. The license types are only shown for your information. They do not affect the behavior of Docusnap when determining the corresponding license balance.

Docusnap provides predefined license types. You can add more types, if required. Click the *New* button to create an additional license type. You can enter any desired name and designations in English and German. To add the new entry to the list, click the *Save* button.

Name
VolumeLicense
PackageLicense
OEM
Systembuilder
PackageLicenseUpgrade

Name:

German Text:

English Text:

15.4.2.3 Maintenance Types

Not only the licenses, but also the associated maintenance contracts can be managed from the License Management dialog. When creating a new license in the [wizard](#), you can also add software maintenance agreements. The Manage Maintenance Types dialog lists the predefined types. You can add new types, if required. To create new software maintenance types, click the *New* button. You can



enter any desired name and designations in English and German. Enter the desired information and add the new entry to the list by clicking the *Save* button.

Name
Software Assurance
Software Update
No Assurance
UnknownType

Name: Software Assurance

German Text: Softwarewartung

English Text: Software Assurance

New Delete Save

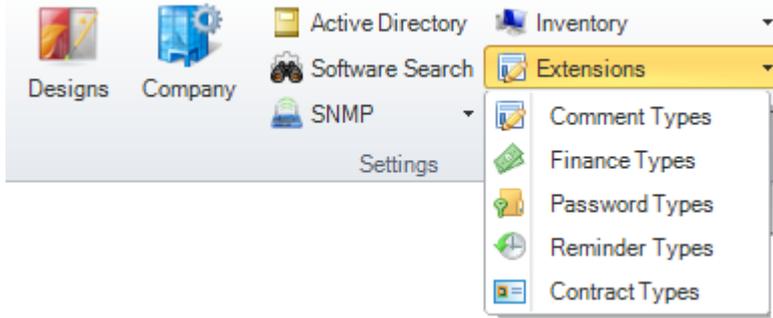
Close

15.4.3 Extension Types

Extensions allow you to store comments, financial data, passwords, contracts and reminders for selected objects in the tree view. To learn more about how to work with extensions, see the [Extensions](#) section.

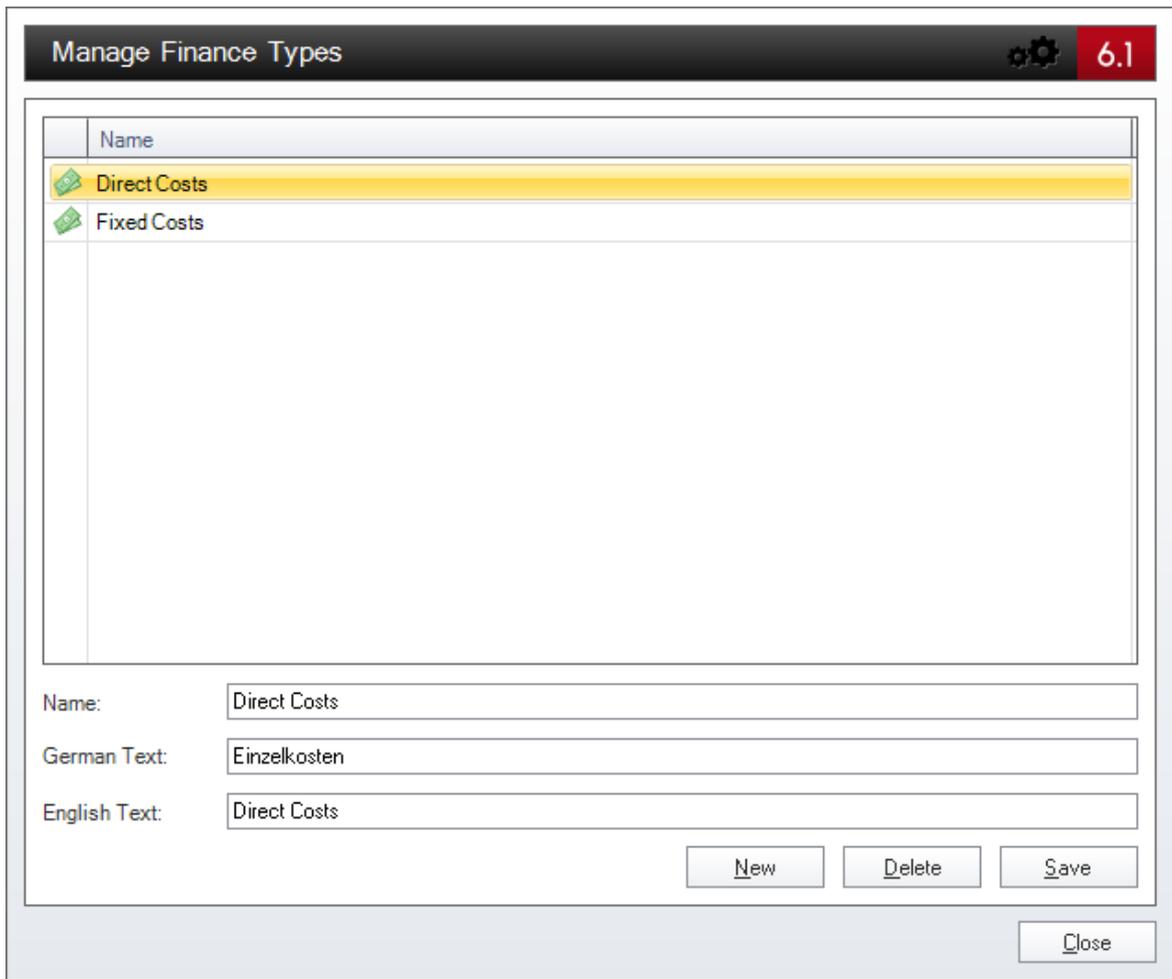
DocuSnap provides different types of extensions that can be used to define the content of the extension more precisely. In DocuSnap, predefined types are available that can be extended as required.

The management dialogs for the different types can be opened from the Management ribbon.



15.4.3.1 Financial Types

Click the *New* button to add a new type. You can choose any name you like, but it is recommended to enter a meaningful name. If the user interface language is English, the names of the finance types will by default be displayed in English in the Cost Type list box of the data entry screen. These names are also available in German. To edit a finance type in the Manage Finance Types dialog, highlight it. Then, you can edit the English or German designation in the text fields.



15.4.3.2 Contract Types

Click the *New* button to add a new type. You can choose any name you like, but it is



recommended to enter a meaningful name. If the user interface language is English, the names of the contract types will be displayed in English in the Contract Type list box of the data entry screen. These names are also available in German. To edit a contract type in the Manage Contract Types dialog, highlight it. Then, you can edit the English or German designation in the text fields.

Manage Contract Types  6.1

Name
 Service Level Agreement
 Operational Level Agreement
 Underpinning Contract
 Sales Contract
 Service Contract
 Leasing Contract
 Employment Contract

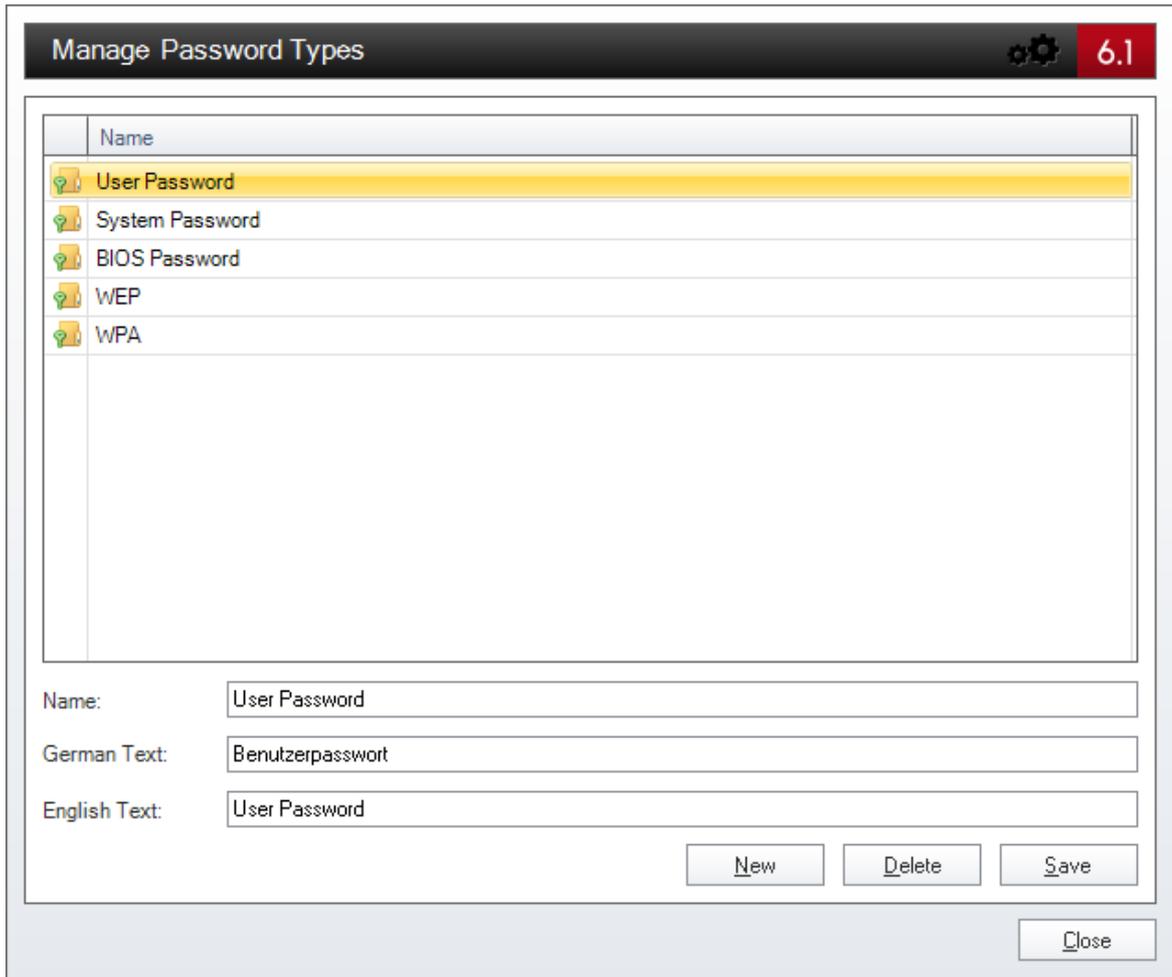
Name:

German Text:

English Text:

15.4.3.3 Password Types

Click the *New* button to add a new type. You can choose any name you like, but it is recommended to enter a meaningful name. If the user interface language is English, the names of the password types will by default be displayed in English in the Password Type list box of the data entry screen. These names are also available in German. To edit a password type in the Manage Password Types dialog, highlight it. Then, you can the English or German designation in the text fields. Click the *Save* button to apply your changes.



15.4.3.4 Reminder Types

Click the *New* button to add a new type. You can choose any name you like, but it is recommended to enter a meaningful name. If the user interface language is English, the names of the reminder types will by default be displayed in English in the Reminder Type list box of the data entry screen. These names are also available in German. To edit a reminder type in the Manage Reminder Types dialog, highlight it. Then, you can edit the English or German designation in the text fields.

Name
Inquiry
E-Mail
Reminder
Fax
Meeting
Privat
Miscellaneous
Phone Call
Revision
Service

Name:

German Text:

English Text:

15.4.3.5 Comment Types

Click the *New* button to add a new type. You can choose any name you like, but it is recommended to enter a meaningful name. If the user interface language is English, the names of the comment types will by default be displayed in English in the Comment Type list box of the data entry screen. These names are also available in German. To edit a comment type in the Manage Comment Types dialog, highlight it. Then, you can edit the English or German designation in the text fields.

Name
User Manual
Datasheet
Additional Information
Warranty Information
Manufacturer Information
Contact Information
Invoice
Draft
Miscellaneous
Technical Documentation
Technical Specification

Name:

German Text:

English Text:

15.4.4 User Management

DocuSnap features an integrated user management. The User Management feature enables you to grant users access to the DocuSnap controls and features and allows them to use extensions. User management will be enabled once you have created and saved the first user. If no users have been defined, any user who connects to this database may use all of the controls and the entire DocuSnap functionality.

Roles

In the *Manage Roles* dialog, you can create and edit roles that can later be assigned to a user in the *Manage Users* dialog. Roles define which user interface controls will be enabled or disabled. DocuSnap provides predefined roles. You may, however,

create your own roles.

Users

In the *Manage Users* dialog, you can create users and assign roles to them. Once you have created and saved the first user, User Management will be enabled. When you create users, make sure that at least one of them has a role that allows this user to open the User Management dialog. Otherwise, it will no longer be possible to access this feature.

Categories

Categories control which extensions are visible to which users. First, create the desired categories in the *Manage Categories* dialog. Then, these categories are available for assignment to the extensions.

15.4.4.1 Roles

In the *Manage Roles* dialog, you can create and edit roles that can later be assigned to a user in the [Manage Users](#) dialog. Roles define which user interface controls will be enabled or disabled.

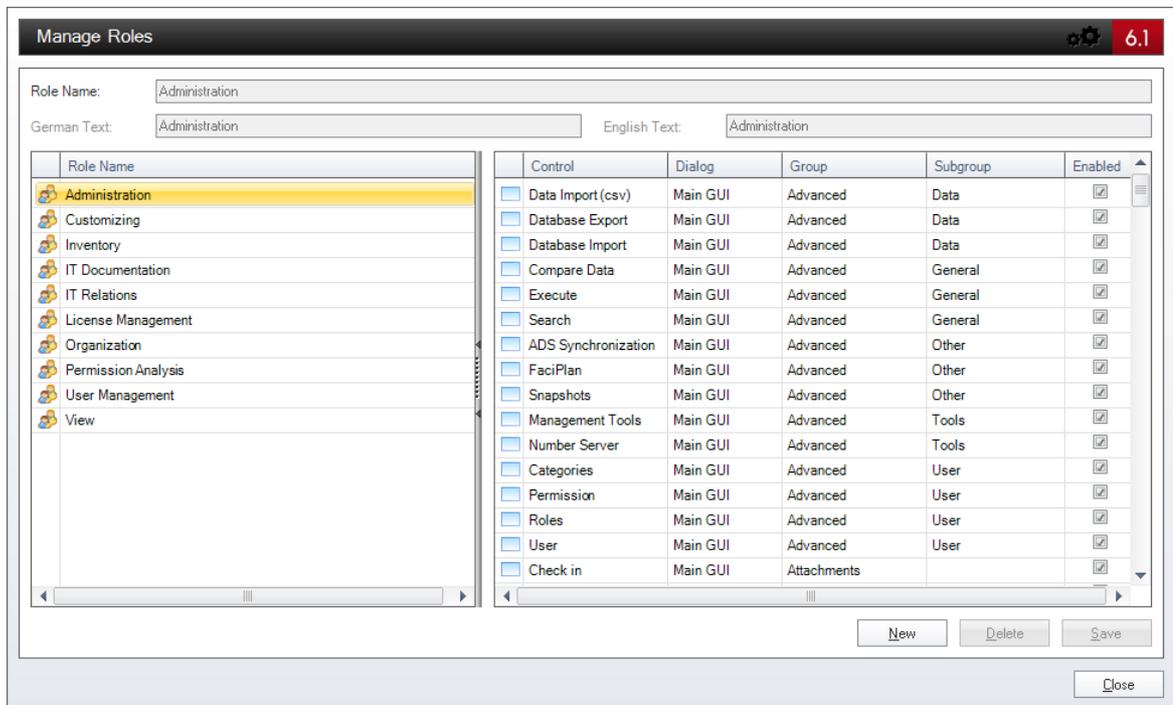
The left pane lists the existing roles and the right pane contains a list of the controls that have been enabled or disabled for the selected role. To enable a control for a role, tick the checkbox in the *Enabled* column. You can add new roles or edit or delete existing roles as desired.

Predefined Roles:

Role	Description
Administration	Includes all controls, users or groups with this role have access to entire Docusnap functionality.
Customizing	Includes only the controls needed for customization tasks.
IT Documentation	Includes only the controls required to create documentation.
Inventory	Includes the controls required to perform inventory scans.
License Management	Includes the controls required for license management.

Settings

Organization	Includes the controls required for administrative tasks.
Permission Analysis	Includes the controls required to perform permission analyses.
Relations	Includes the controls required for the definition of relations.
User Management	Includes the controls required for user management.
View	Includes only the controls that turn Docusnap into a viewer. This means that users with this as their one and only role can do nothing but view existing data.



15.4.4.2 Users

In the *Manage Users* dialog, you can assign different roles that have been previously created in the [Manage Roles](#) dialog, to individual domain users or domain groups.

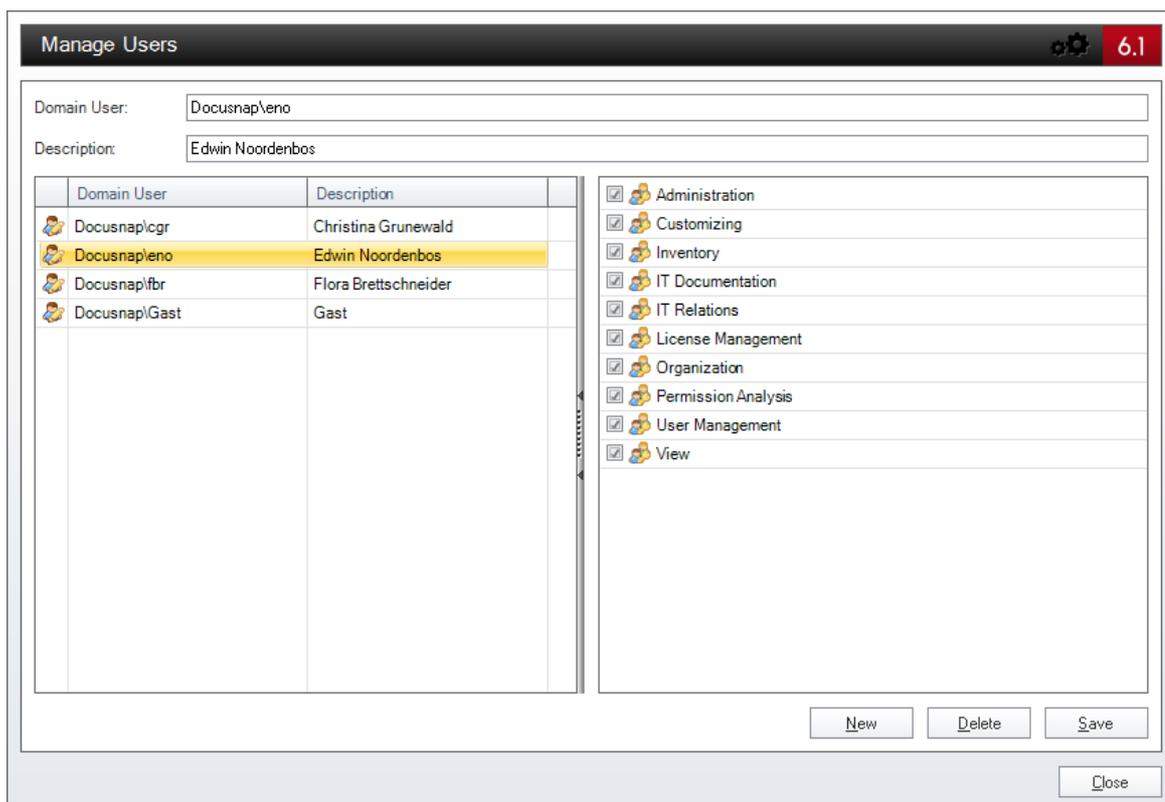
If no users or groups have been defined, any user who connects to this database may use all of the controls and the entire Docusnap functionality. Once the first user or group has been created, the User Management feature will be enabled.

The left pane lists the users or groups to whom roles can be assigned. Make sure to specify the user names in the following format: **domain\username**. To define a



group, enter its name as follows **domain\groupname**. The right pane lists the individual roles that can be assigned to the users or groups. To assign a role to a user or a group, select the desired entry in the left pane and tick the desired checkbox in the right pane. Please note that role assignments are additive. This means that the controls enabled for the individual roles add to each other.

When creating users or groups, make sure to assign a role that has the permission to manage at least one user or one group. Otherwise, User Management will no longer be accessible.



15.4.4.3 Categories

When defining [Extensions](#) it is possible to assign categories defining which user or user group may access this extension.

You can create as many categories as desired in the *Manage Categories* dialog. Some categories are predefined. In addition, you can add your own categories, such as *High priority*, *Medium priority*, and *Low priority*.

To create a new category, click the *New* button. For each category, enter a name and a designation (text) in English and German to be displayed with the extensions. For each extension type, the categories you created are displayed in the *Category* drop-down list. Whether or not a category is visible, depends on the role to which it was assigned.

The *Role* list displays the available roles. For each role, you can select the categories

that will be visible when a user with that role wants to work with extensions. If the current user has been assigned a role for which the category is visible, the respective extensions are displayed, otherwise, they are hidden.

If you select the *<No selection>* category for an extension, it remains visible to all users.

Manage Categories
6.1

Name:

German Text: English Text:

Role	Category	Visible
Administration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Organization	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Inventory	<input type="checkbox"/> Administration	<input type="checkbox"/>
Organization	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - Trainees	<input type="checkbox"/>
License Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Technology - General	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - Infrastructure	<input type="checkbox"/>
Customizing	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - Technical Sales	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	<input type="checkbox"/> Technology - External Employees	<input type="checkbox"/>
Permission Analysis	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IT Documentation		
IT Relations		

15.4.5 Permissions

In User Management, you can specify whether a user has the permission to use certain functions.

By assigning permissions, it is possible to specify which data a user may read, edit or delete. These permissions are determined at the record level. You can define permissions for data in the tree view and permissions for extensions.

The *Permission* feature can only be used after users and groups have been defined in the Manage Users dialog.

Permissions can be set at the record or object level. This means that a user may only process data of a certain workstation or of all workstations.

If permissions to an object have not been set, all users can process all entries. As soon as an object has been assigned a permission, this permission becomes active and only users to whom the corresponding role has been assigned will be able to see these entries.

To open the *Object Permissions* dialog, select the desired object in the tree view, right-click and select *Permissions* from the context menu or click the *Permission* button on the *Management* ribbon.

The dialog displays all roles that are currently defined in the Docusnap database. Both the object selected in the tree view as well as the type of the object are displayed below the role node. Permissions set for the selected object will only apply to this single object. However, if you set permissions for the object type, they will apply to all objects assigned to that type, e.g. to all workstations. In case you have defined permissions for a *related type* object type from the *Manage Objects* dialog, these permissions on the type level will apply to the *related type* as well.

The permissions are granted additively. This means that, if a user is granted a permission for a certain role, and the same permission has not been set for another role he is assigned to, the permission will be granted all the same. The highest permission level is the one that matters.

The following permissions can be granted in this dialog: *Read*, *Write*, *Delete* and *Insert*. If the *Read* permission is granted, the entries in the tree view will be displayed. If the *Write*, *Delete* and *Insert* permissions are granted, the *Save*, *Delete* and *New* buttons on the ribbon will be enabled. To enable the *Save*, *Delete* and *New* buttons, the user must also be assigned a role which has the right to use these buttons.

Object Permissions 6.1

Roles and Target Objects	Read	Write	Delete	Insert
<input type="checkbox"/> Administration				
<input type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Customizing				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Inventory				
<input type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IT Documentation				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> IT Relations				
<input type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> License Management				
<input type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Organization				
<input type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Permission Analysis				
<input type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Management				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Object: Docusnap Inc	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Type: Company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> View				



Part



16 Data Organization and Analysis

The Data Organization and Analysis section covers Docusnap features that enable you to analyze and organize the data resulting from an inventory scan.

Comparing Data

Using the Compare Data function, you can compare the data resulting from two scans (snapshots) to find the differences.

Managing Snapshots

Using the Manage Snapshots feature, you can delete individual snapshots or flag them as undeletable.

System Groups

Using the Docusnap System Groups feature, you can group systems logically and create network maps for partial networks based on particular system groups.

FaciPlan

FaciPlan is a facility management software. You can manage any inventoried equipment from within Docusnap. FaciPlan can access this data and integrate it into building plans.

ADS Synchronization

Using the Active Directory Synchronization feature, you can make sure that the Docusnap database does not contain any Windows systems that no longer exist in the Active Directory system.

Database Import

Using the Database Import feature, you can import Docusnap databases into other Docusnap databases.

Database Export

Using the Database Export feature, you can export the content of the current Docusnap database into another Docusnap database.

Moving Systems

Using the Docusnap Move feature, you can move systems from one domain to another.

Merging Systems

In Docusnap, you can merge the data resulting from the inventory of different

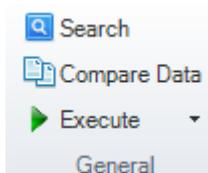
systems into one single system.

16.1 Comparison

Using the *Compare Data* feature, you can compare system configurations at various points in time.

Multiple snapshots can be compared with each other. The differences found by the comparison will be shown in a report. You can only open the *Compare Data* dialog after selecting a node in the tree view.

To open the *Compare Data* dialog, click the button of the same name in the *General* group of the *Advanced* ribbon.



The Start Point indicates the node where the comparison will begin.

A tree can have many levels. In order to compare only a certain number of levels, you can specify a limit value in the *Levels* field. To compare all levels, tick the *Compare all Levels* checkbox. If you want to restrict the comparison to the differences, enable the *Show only Differences* checkbox. The captions will, however, always be shown in order to clarify the structure.

The changes will be highlighted in color according to the following pattern:

Changed	red
New	green
Deleted	blue
Unchanged	black

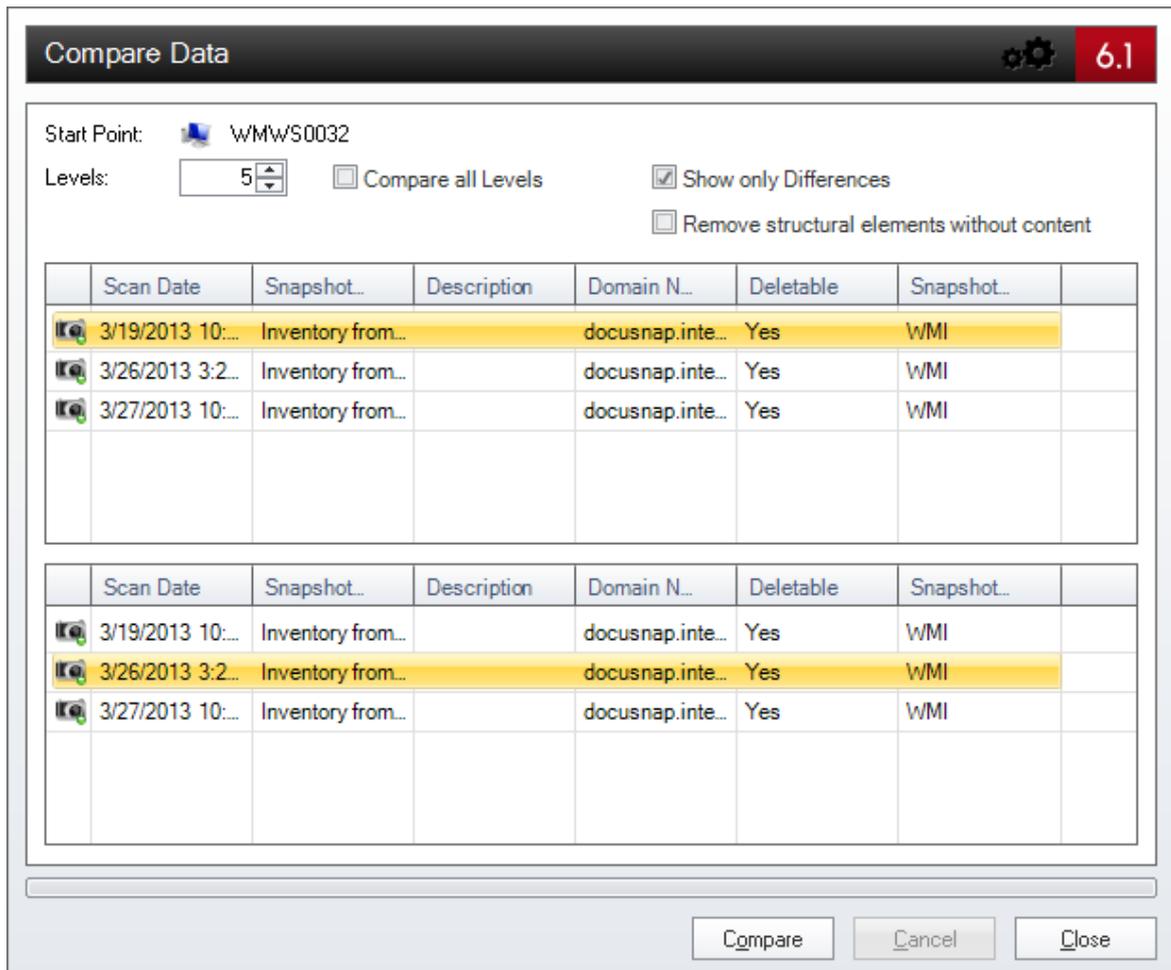
If the *Show only Differences* option has not been checked, the final report will include all data (even the unchanged ones).

The available snapshots for the selected nodes are displayed in two lists. Docusnap always displays the snapshots that are located at the same level as the selected node or below it. If you select a node for which no corresponding snapshots exist, Docusnap will provide the snapshots that are located above that node for comparison.

In order to obtain relevant results, you should only compare snapshots resulting from scans of the same systems. When you click the *Compare* button, the snapshots will be compared and the results will be shown in a report. To cancel a running comparison, click the *Cancel* button. To close the dialog, click the *Close*

button.

The report can be exported from the [Reporting](#) ribbon. For the export, several file formats are available. You can select the desired format by clicking the *Export* button. When you click a format, a dialog appears where you can specify the range of report pages to be exported. Click the plus sign to expand the settings dialog. Then, you can select format-specific settings. If you want the file to open automatically after it has been saved, enable the *Open After Export* checkbox.



16.2 Snapshot Management

To open the Manage Snapshots dialog, click the *Snapshots* button on the *Advanced* ribbon.



Each time you perform an inventory scan, Docusnap creates a snapshot. Its name is *Inventory from*, with the current timestamp appended to it. This dialog lists all snapshots that have been saved to the database. If required, you can rename a snapshot. Enter the new name in the *Name* field.

You can add a description to each snapshot. If you want to compare two snapshots,

the descriptions can be very helpful in selecting the correct ones.

In Docusnap, only a certain number of snapshots is saved for each system. You can set this number in the [Options](#) dialog. If this number is exceeded, the oldest snapshots will be deleted. If you want to retain a snapshot, exclude it from the automatic deletion process by clearing the *Scan is Deletable* checkbox. Undeletable snapshots will not be counted among the number of archived snapshots.

To delete a snapshot, select it and then remove it from the database by clicking the *Delete* button.



When you delete a snapshot, all associated data will be deleted along with it!

Manage Snapshots
⚙️ 6.1

Scan Date	Snapshot Name	Description	Domain Name	Deletable	Snapshot Cont.	Report
3/19/2013 10:59:30...	Inventory from 3/19/2013 1...		docusnap.internal	Yes	WMI	Report
3/19/2013 11:05:38...	Inventory from 3/19/2013 1...		docusnap.internal	Yes	AD	Report
3/26/2013 11:59:53...	Inventory from 3/26/2013 1...		docusnap.intern	Yes	XEN	Report
3/26/2013 3:25:34 PM	Inventory from 3/26/2013 3...		docusnap.intern	Yes	WMI	Report
3/27/2013 10:09:39...	Inventory from 3/27/2013 1...		docusnap.intern	Yes	WMI	Report
3/27/2013 10:19:49...	Inventory from 3/27/2013 1...		docusnap.intern	Yes	SQL	Report
3/27/2013 10:22:34...	Inventory from 3/27/2013 1...		docusnap.intern	Yes	EXCH	Report
3/27/2013 10:38:37...	Inventory from 3/27/2013 1...		docusnap.intern	Yes	SNMP	Report

Name:

Inventory is Deletable

Description:

16.3 System Groups

The purpose of system groups is to document individual portions of a network. When creating the [documentation](#), you can define the groups to be included.

To open the Manage System Groups dialog where you can create and manage



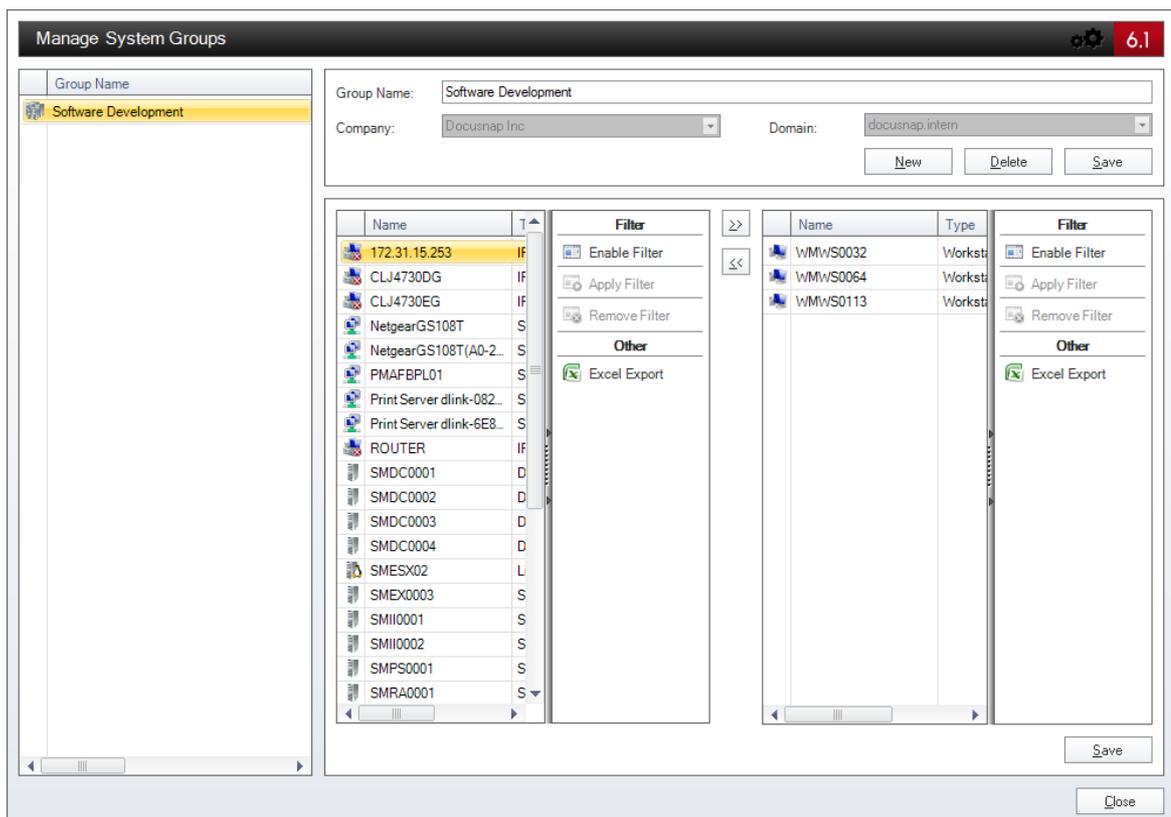
system groups, click the *System Groups* button on the *Management* ribbon.



To create a new group, click the *New* button. The group name can be chosen freely.

Then, select the company and the domain where the systems are currently located. Create the new group by clicking the *Save* button. If a group is no longer needed, you can remove it by clicking the *Delete* button.

All existing groups are listed in the left pane and may be selected for editing.



After the group has been saved, or an already saved group has been selected, all systems existing in the selected domain will be displayed in the table on the left of the dialog main pane. In order to find a certain system to be included in the system group, you can filter the list of systems.

To add systems to the current system group, select them in the left table and click  to move them to the right table. All systems listed in the right table belong to this system group. To remove one or more systems from the group, select them and click the  button to move them to the left table.

Save the changes made to the systems in this group by clicking the *Save* button at the top of the dialog. To close this dialog, click the *Close* button.

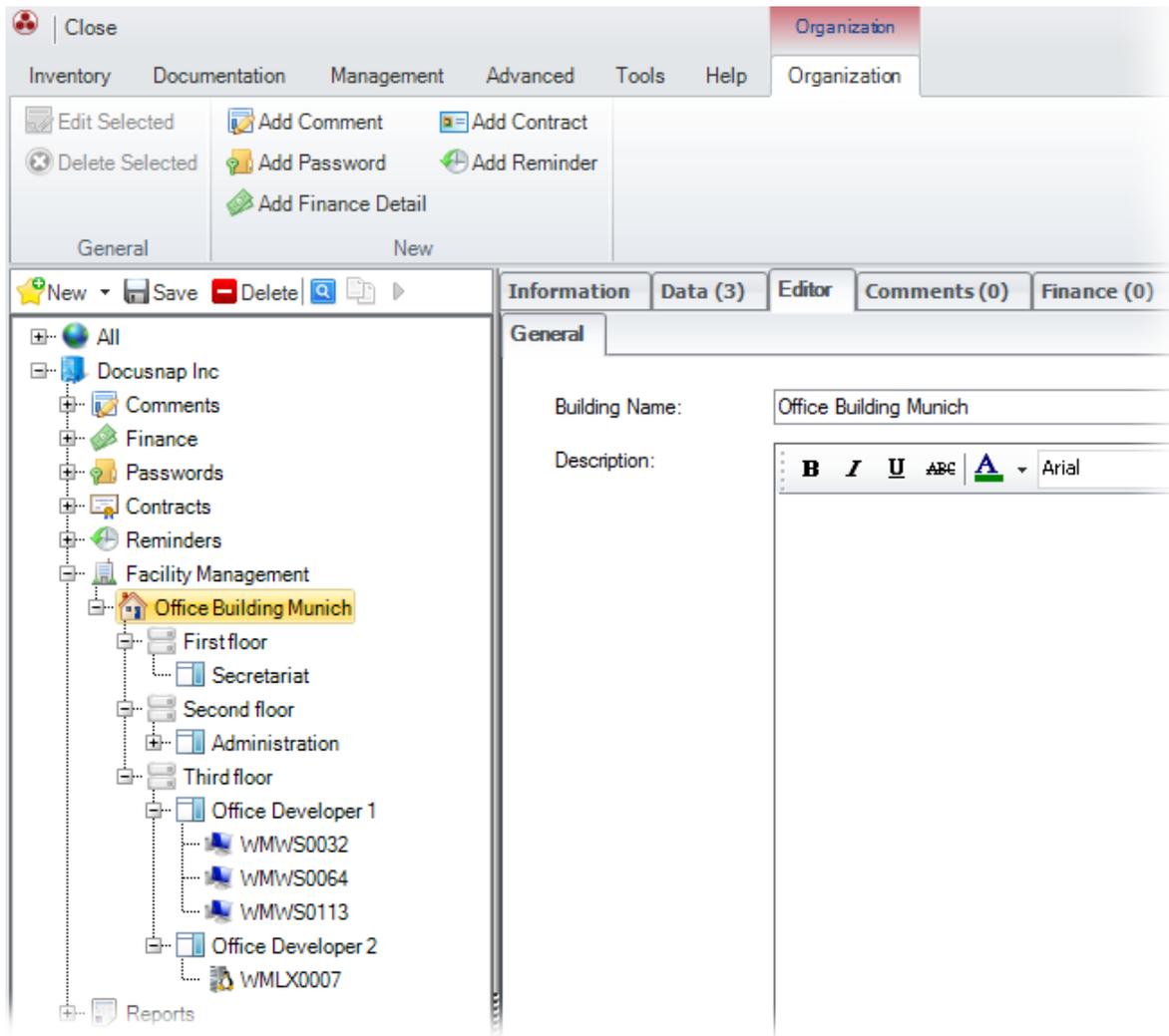
16.4 FaciPlan

FaciWare is a facility management software. You can manage any inventoried equipment from within Docusnap. FaciWare can access this data and integrate it into building plans. For more information on the integration of FaciWare into Docusnap, refer to the FaciWare documentation.

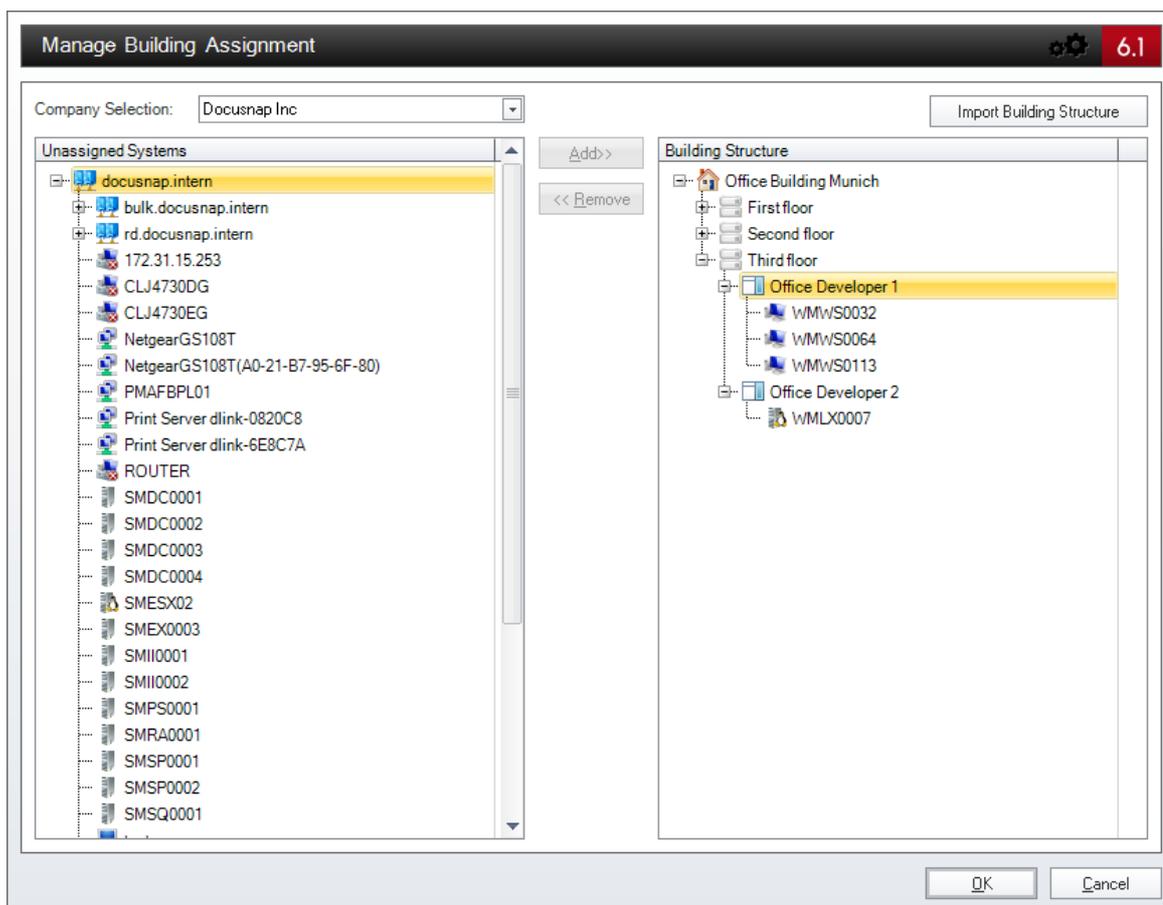
Managing Equipment in Docusnap

In Docusnap, you can create the buildings, floors and rooms. Then, you can assign the inventoried equipment to the previously created rooms.

To create buildings, floors and rooms, navigate to the *Organization* module. There, you can open corresponding data entry screens from the Explorer. When the *Facility Management* node is selected, you can create a building by clicking the *Building* option under the *New* button above the tree. Once you have added the building, you can create a floor. In the last step, you create the rooms to which you will later assign the equipment. For each building, floor or room, you can enter a name and a description.



Once you have created all required buildings, floors and rooms, you can assign the equipment to the rooms. To do so, open the Manage Building Assignment dialog by clicking the *FaciPlan* button on the *Tools* ribbon. In the drop-down list, select the company for which you created the building(s). The dialog displays all domains and equipment, as well as all buildings, floors and rooms created for the current company. To assign a device, highlight it in the tree and select the desired room in the Building Structure tree. Then, click the *Add* button.



16.5 ADS Comparison

The ADS Synchronization feature compares the inventoried systems with the systems existing in the Active Directory. When this process has completed, Docusnap will display the computers that are no longer present in the Active Directory system, but still listed in the Docusnap database. From that dialog, you can determine whether these computers are to be deleted from the Docusnap database as well or not. Docusnap will not modify the Active Directory system.

To start the wizard, click the ADS Synchronization button on the *Tools* ribbon.



Company Selection

In the first step, select the company where the domain to be synchronized is located. As this process consists in comparing data from an existing company, you cannot create a new company from the ADS Synchronization wizard.

Authentication

In the second step, you need to select the domain to be synchronized. Click the desired domain in the *Domain* combo box. Then, enter valid credentials for this domain in the *User Name* and *Password* fields. Next, you need to check whether the user is a member of the domain and the password is correct by clicking the *Check Credentials* button. Only if this check is OK, the *Next* button will be available. If you do not specify a user name, the authentication will be performed based on the current user's login data. If you enable the *Save Username and Password* checkbox, this information will be stored for the next synchronization process.

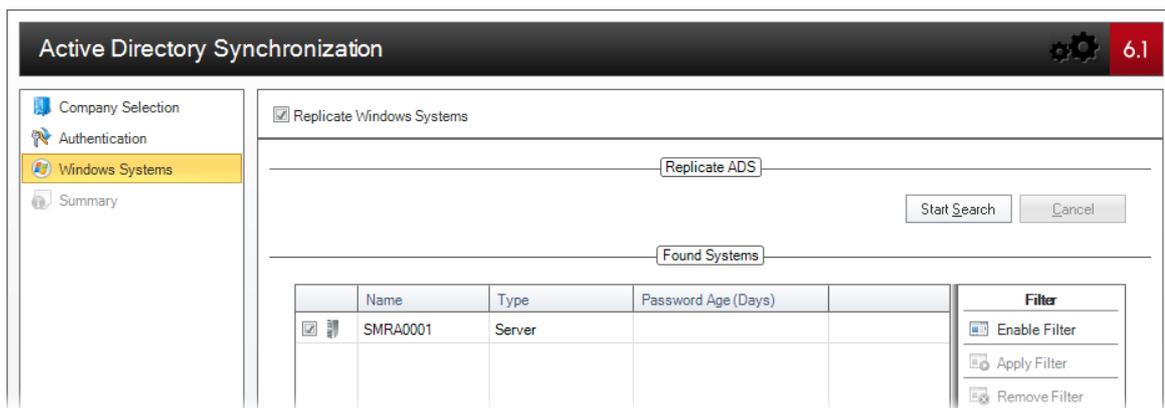
Windows Systems

When you click the *Start Search* button, Docusnap will compare the inventoried Windows computers with the Active Directory system. To abort this process, click the *Cancel* button.

When the search is complete, all Windows computers that have been scanned by Docusnap before, but no longer exist in the Active Directory system, will be displayed in the table. If the checkbox next to a system is enabled, this system will be deleted from the Docusnap database in the next step. By default, all systems are selected.

The table can be filtered using the Filter functions. For more information on filtering, see the [Filters](#) section.

Under *Select*, you can either select or deselect all devices.

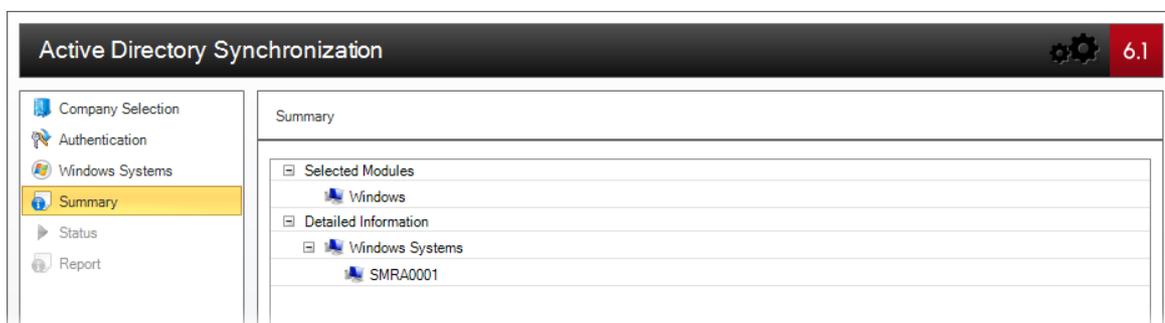


All systems of a domain that have been scanned during an IP Segment inventory process or that belong to a system group will also be deleted.

For this reason, it is recommended to create a separate domain for system groups if you do not want to delete them.

Summary

When you click the *Next* button, the next step displays where you can see all systems marked for deletion.



Scheduling

Through Scheduling, you can specify that the ADS Synchronization routine will start automatically at a later point in time. For this to work, you must have enabled the Scheduling feature in the [Options](#) dialog. In the Scheduler, you can define whether the ADS Synchronization routine will be a one-time or a recurring event. Please note, however, that this feature can only be used if the Docusnap Server is installed on a system in the network.

Status

Once you started deleting the devices, the dialog will display the progress of the deletion process. To abort this process, click the *Cancel* button. All systems with

the *Completed* status have been deleted from the database. Systems for which the deletion process has not been completed yet remain in the database.

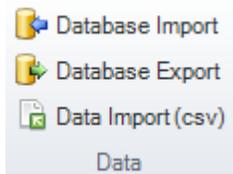
Final Report

On the Report page, you can see which computers have been deleted successfully. To close the wizard, click the *Close* button.

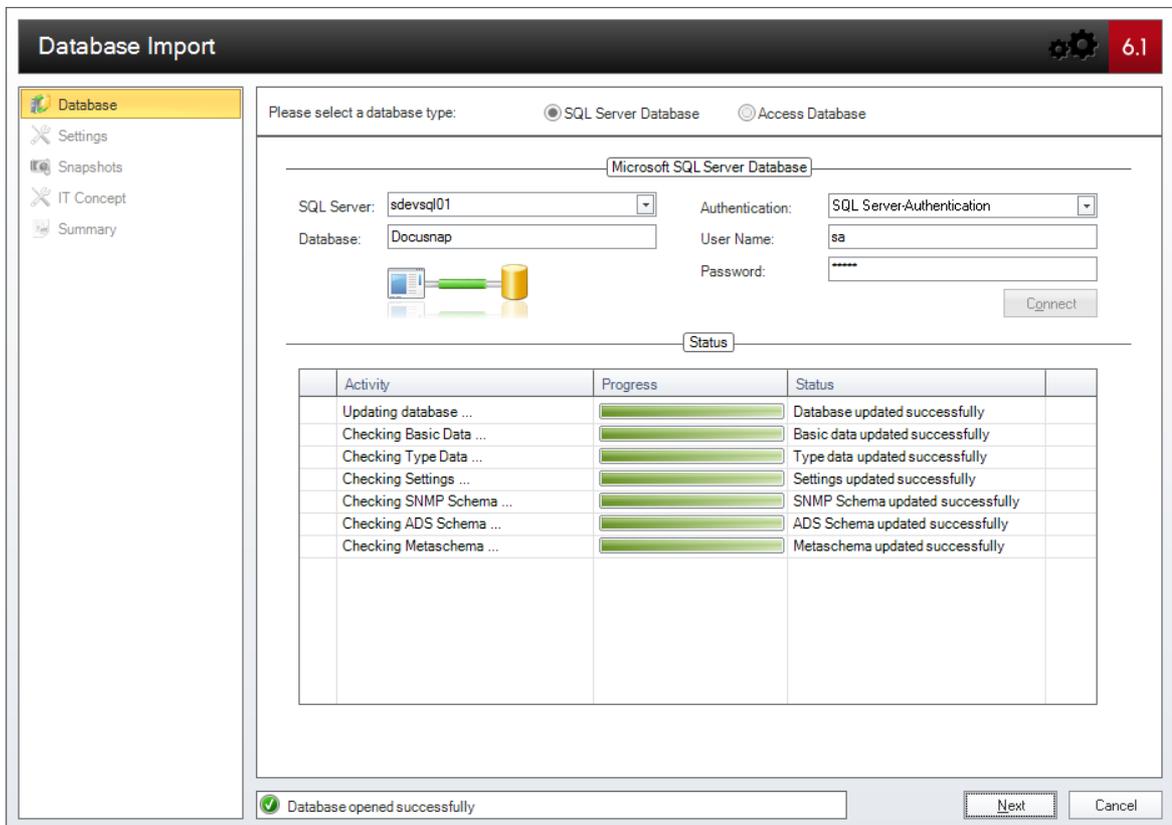
16.6 Database Import

DocuSnap allows you to export data for import into another database.

To open the Database Export dialog, click the Export button on the Advanced ribbon.



In the first step, select the target database to which the data is to be exported. For this purpose, you can select an SQL or Access database. These two database systems are fully compatible with each other. This means that data exported from an SQL database can be imported into an Access database, and vice versa.



In the next step, specify the export settings. The left column lists the companies



and domains that are found in the database to be exported. The companies existing in the target database are displayed on the right. You can export an entire company or an individual domain to the target database. As you go, you can either export the domain data to an existing company, or you can re-create the original company from the source database.



When assigning companies automatically, Docusnap does not compare by company name, but rather uses an internal GUID (Globally Unique Identifier). This may result in two companies existing with the same name after the export. The best method is to select a company in the target database explicitly.

For the target database, you can decide to re-create the company from the source database in the target database or to integrate the data into an existing company. If you select the *Integrate Company in Target Database* option, a new company will be created. If a company with the same name already exists, a second company with this name will be created.

If you select the *Integrate in an existing Company* option, the exported data will be integrated into the selected company.

During the export, Docusnap will check whether a specific snapshot was exported before. If this is the case, the corresponding snapshot will be excluded from the export. Furthermore, Docusnap will check for each system whether the number of allowed archives will be exceeded. The oldest snapshots will be deleted, if necessary.

To export existing [extensions](#) associated with source database objects, enable the *Export Extensions* checkbox in the Export Options group.

If you enable the *Overwrite existing Data* checkbox, the properties of static objects from the source database will overwrite those existing in the target database. Thus, for example, the street address of a company that has been selected in the source database would overwrite the street address in the target database. Please note that this feature will only affect static objects and not the snapshots.

If you wish to export the IT relations created in your database as well, enable the *Export IT Relations* checkbox.

What is more, you can export any passwords that have been created. For this purpose, an encryption file is required. Click the  icon and select the appropriate file. Its name will then be displayed in the Export Encryption File field.

If you want to exclude certain source database modules from the export, clear the checkmark for those which are not to be exported. If, for example, only the Windows checkbox is enabled, nothing but the workstation and server data will be exported. In addition, only snapshots containing data for the selected modules will

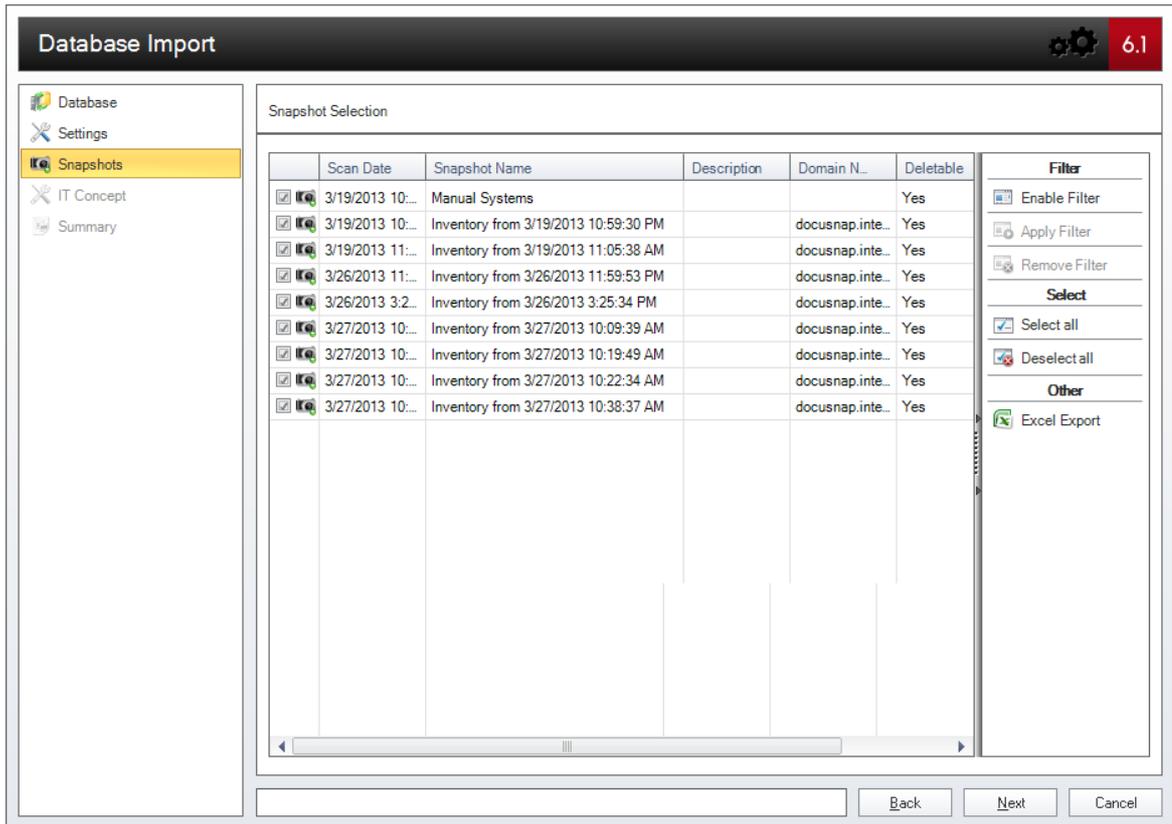
be displayed in the next step.

Here, a list of snapshots from the selected source database is displayed. To find snapshots more quickly, you can either [name](#) them when doing the inventory scan, or you can assign a name to them in the [Manage Snapshots](#) dialog. To the right of the snapshot list, a [filter](#) is available for easier selection of individual snapshots.

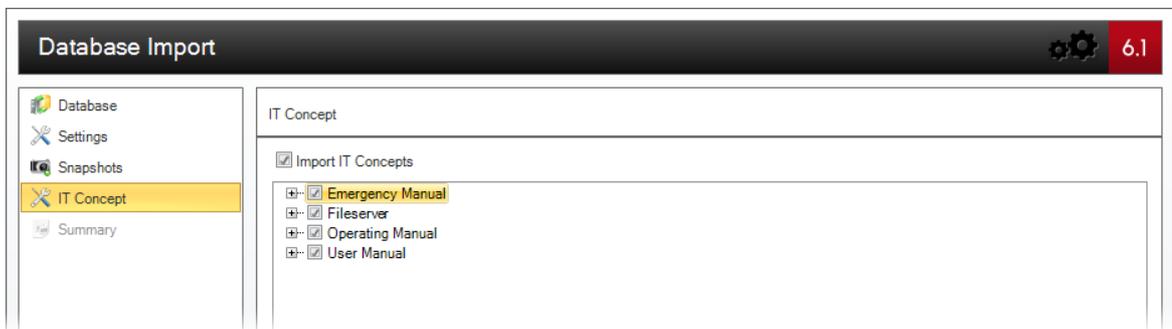


If the number of archives has been set to 4 in the Options dialog and the source database contains, for example, seven snapshots with WMI data, the 3 oldest snapshots will not be exported!

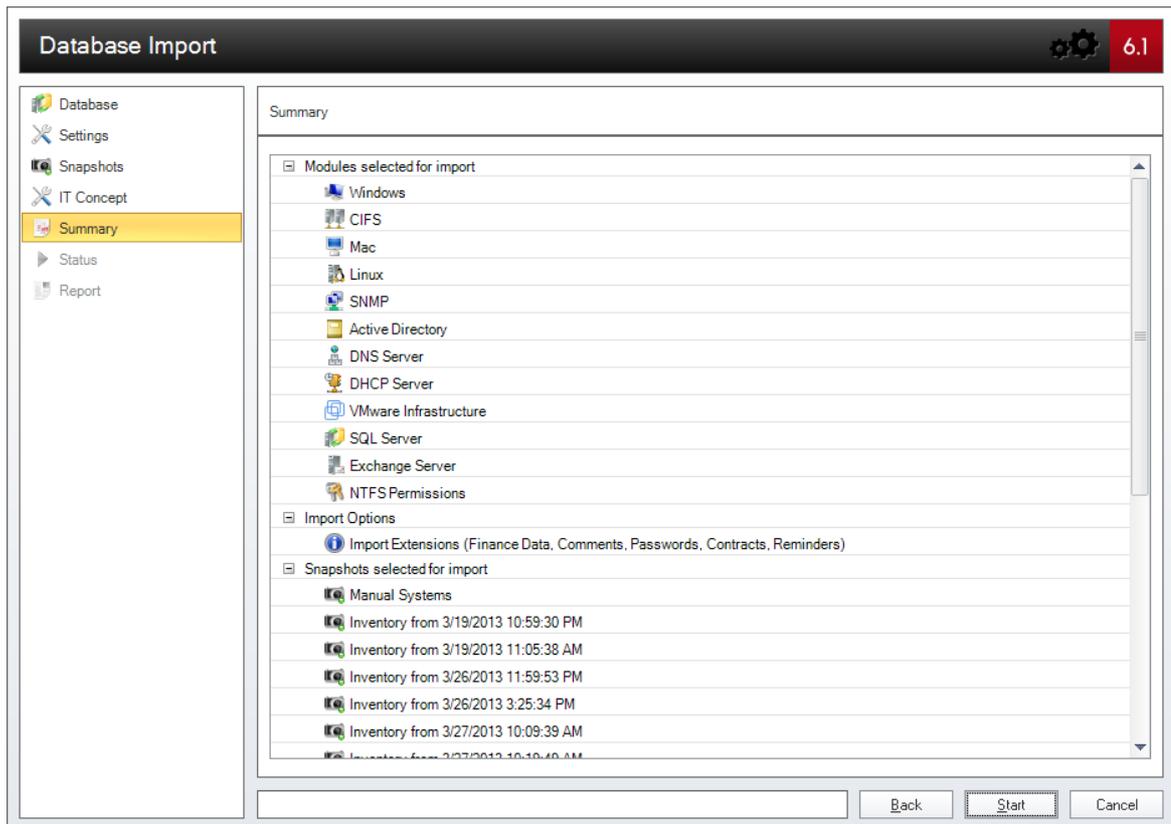




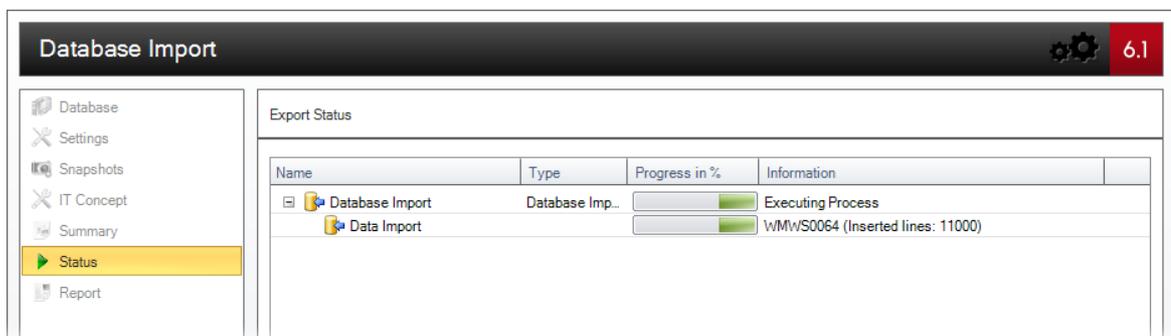
In the next step, you can specify existing IT concepts to be exported. By ticking or clearing the checkboxes next to the items in the tree, you can specify the IT concepts to be exported.



Finally, a summary page provides an overview of the modules and snapshots to be exported. If you want to change any of the data export settings, click the *Back* button. To start the export, click the *Start* button.



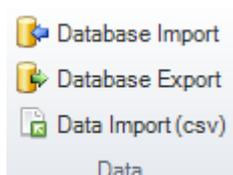
During the database export, its status will be displayed. To abort the export process, click the *Cancel* button. The data that has been exported up to that moment will be retained in the target database. Finally, the Report page will be displayed.



16.7 Database Export

With Docusnap, you can import data from another database. This way, it is possible to get the data from a temporary database on a notebook into a central database.

To perform a data import, click the *Import* button on the *Advanced* ribbon.



In the first step, you need to select a source database from which the data will be imported. For this purpose, you can select an SQL or Access database. These two database systems are fully compatible with each other. This means that data exported from an SQL database can be imported into an Access database, and vice versa.

Activity	Progress	Status
Updating database ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Database updated successfully
Checking Basic Data ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Basic data updated successfully
Checking Type Data ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Type data updated successfully
Checking Settings ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Settings updated successfully
Checking SNMP Schema ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	SNMP Schema updated successfully
Checking ADS Schema ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	ADS Schema updated successfully
Checking Metaschema ...	<div style="width: 100%;"></div>	Metaschema updated successfully

In the next step, select the import settings. The companies and domains that exist in the database to be imported are displayed on the left. The companies existing in the target database are displayed on the right. You can import an entire company, or an individual domain into the target database. As you go, you can either import the domain data to an existing company, or you can re-create the original company from the source database.



When assigning companies automatically, Docusnap does not compare by company name, but rather uses an internal GUID (Globally Unique Identifier). In some cases, two companies with the same name might exist after the import.

The best way to avoid this situation is to explicitly select a company in the target database.

For the target database, you can decide to re-create the company from the source database in the target database or to integrate the data into an existing company. If you select the *Integrate Company from Source Database* option, a new company will be created. If a company with the same name already exists, a second company

with this name will be created.

If you select the *Integrate in existing Company* option, the data will be integrated into the selected company.

During the import process, Docusnap will check whether a specific snapshot has already been imported. If this is the case, this snapshot will be excluded from the import process. Furthermore, Docusnap will check for each system whether the number of allowed archives will be exceeded. The oldest snapshots will be deleted, if necessary.

To import [extensions](#) associated with source database objects, enable the *Import Extensions* checkbox in the Import Options group.

If you enable the *Overwrite existing Data* checkbox, the properties of static objects from the source database will overwrite those existing in the target database. Thus, for example, the street address of a company that has been selected in the source database would overwrite the street address in the target database. Please note that this feature will only affect static objects and not the snapshots.

If you wish to import the IT relations that exist in your database, enable the Import IT Relations checkbox.

In addition, you can import any passwords that have been created. For this purpose, an encryption file is required. To select it, click the icon and select the file. Its name will then be displayed in the Import Encryption File field.

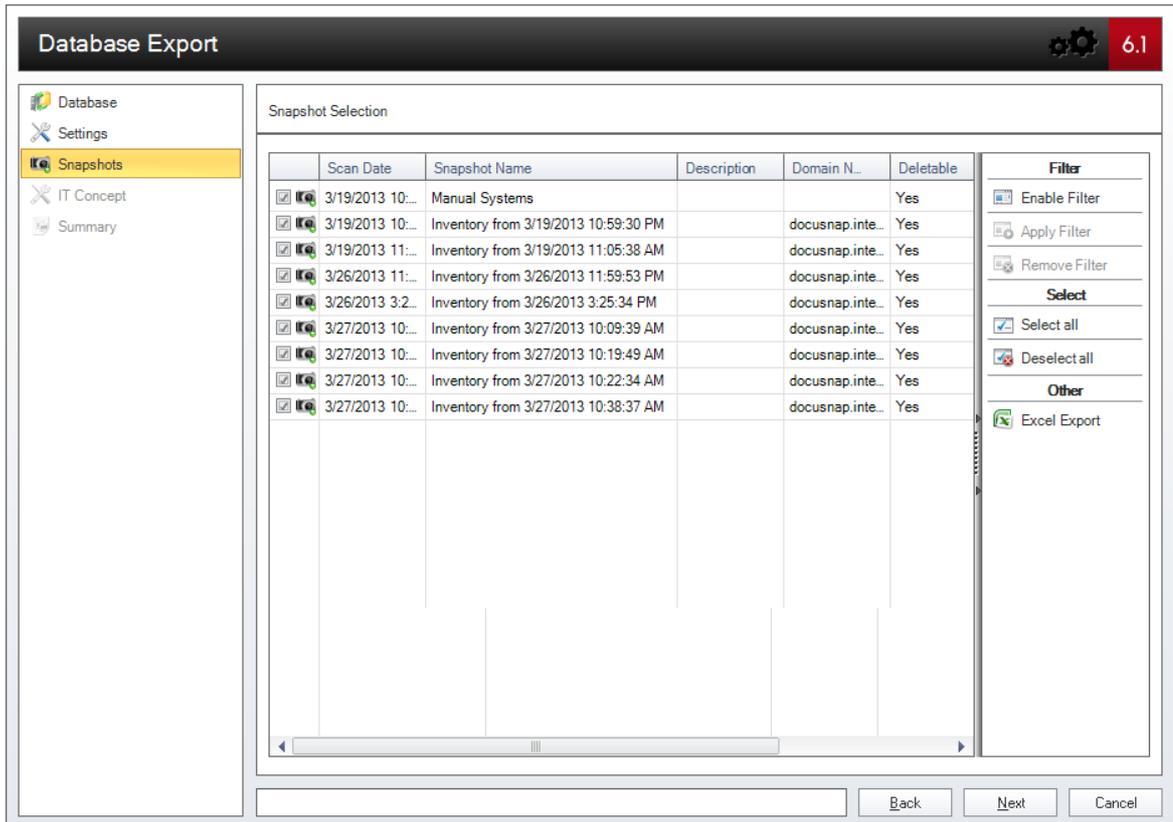
If you want to exclude certain source database modules from the import, clear the checkmark for those you do not want. If, for example, only the Windows checkbox is enabled, nothing but the workstation and server data will be imported. In addition, only snapshots containing data for the selected modules will be displayed in the next step.

The screenshot shows the 'Database Export' dialog box. The left sidebar has 'Settings' selected. The main area is titled 'Define Export Settings'. Under 'Source Database: Company / Domain Selection', a tree view shows 'Docusnap Inc' with sub-items: 'bulk.docusnap.intern', 'docusnap.intern', 'docusnap.internal', 'intern.local', and 'rd.docusnap.intern'. Under 'Target Database', there are two radio buttons: 'Integrate Company in Target Database' (unselected) and 'Integrate in existing Company' (selected). Below these is a list containing 'Docusnap Inc'. The 'Export Options' section has three checked checkboxes: 'Export Extensions (Finance Data, Comments, Passwords, Contracts, Reminders)', 'Overwrite existing Data', and 'Export IT Relations'. There is an 'Export Encryption File' field with a browse button. The 'Modules' section has a grid of checkboxes for various services: Windows, Linux, DNS Server, SQL Server, Hyper-V, Xen, SNMP, Mac, DHCP Server, Exchange Server, IIS, CIFS, Active Directory, VMware Infrastructure, NTFS, and SharePoint. At the bottom, there are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Here, a list of snapshots from the selected source database is displayed. To find snapshots more quickly, you can either [name](#) them when doing the inventory scan, or you can assign a name to them in the [Manage Snapshots](#) dialog. To the right of the snapshot list, a [filter](#) is available for easier selection of individual snapshots.



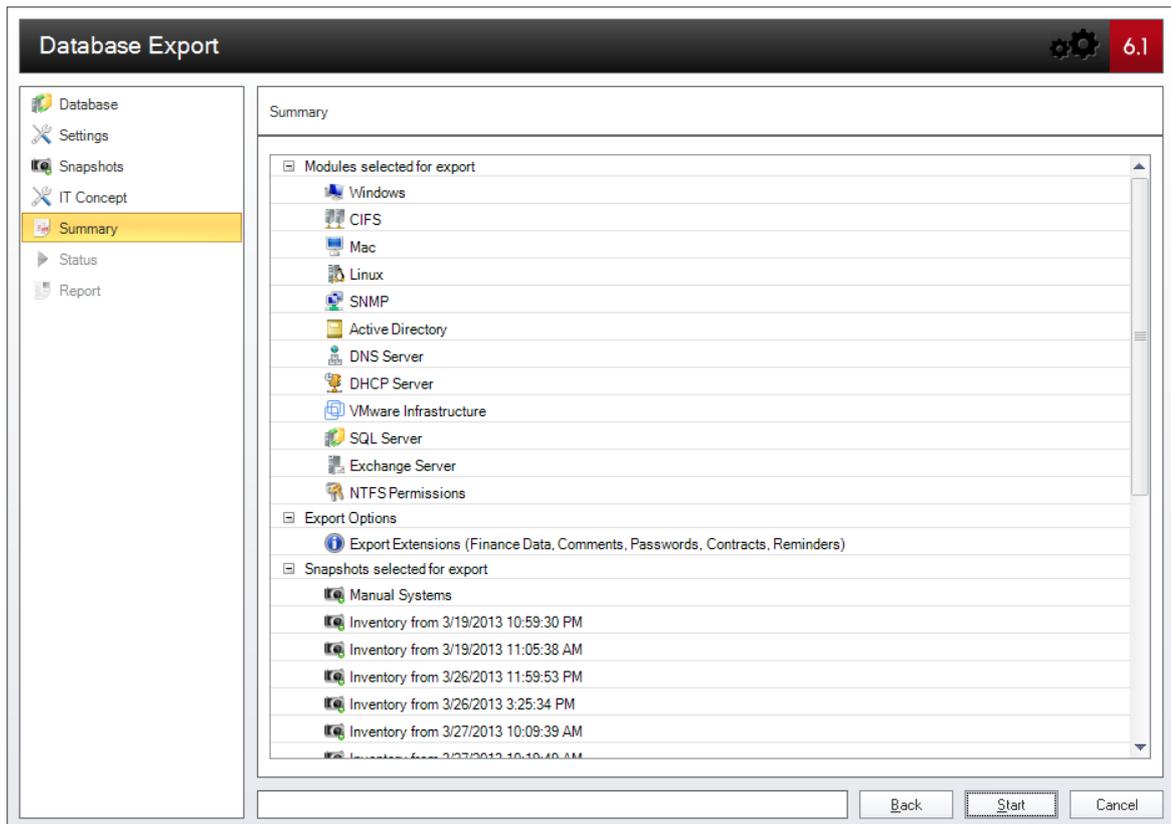
If the number of archives has been set to 4 in the Options dialog and the source database contains, for example, seven snapshots with WMI data, the oldest three will not be imported.



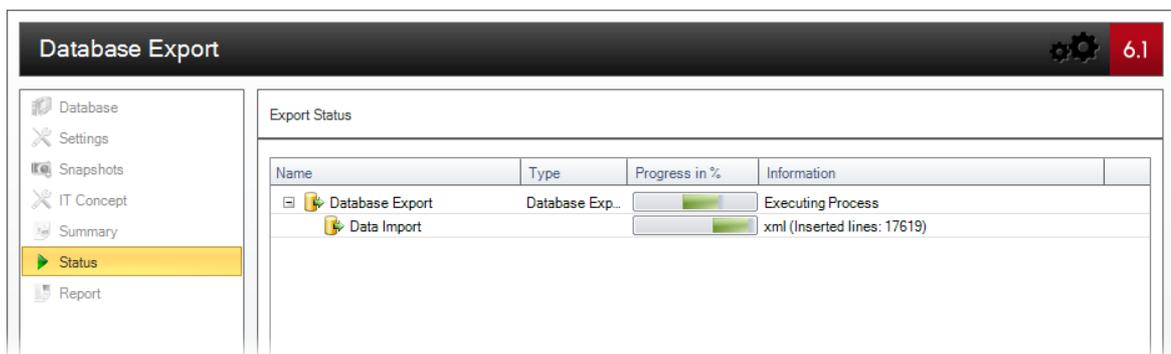
In the next step, you can specify the IT concepts to be imported. By ticking or clearing the checkboxes next to the items in the tree, you can specify the IT concepts to be imported.



Finally, a summary page provides an overview of the modules and snapshots to be imported. If you want to change any of the data import settings, click the *Back* button. To start the import, click the *Start* button.



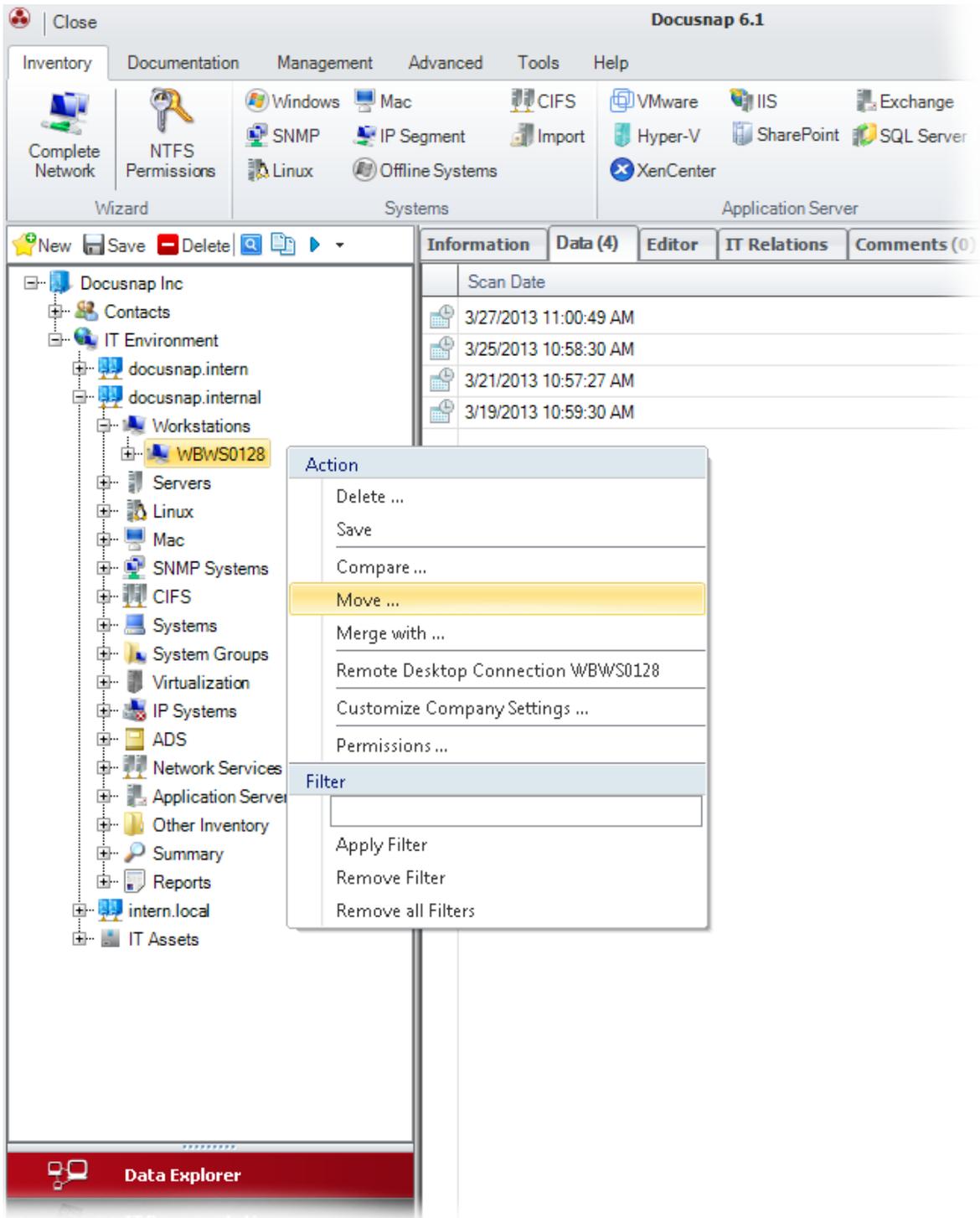
During the database import, its status will be displayed. To abort the import process, click the *Cancel* button. The data that has been imported up to that moment will be retained in the target database. Finally, the Report page will be displayed.



16.8 Move Systems

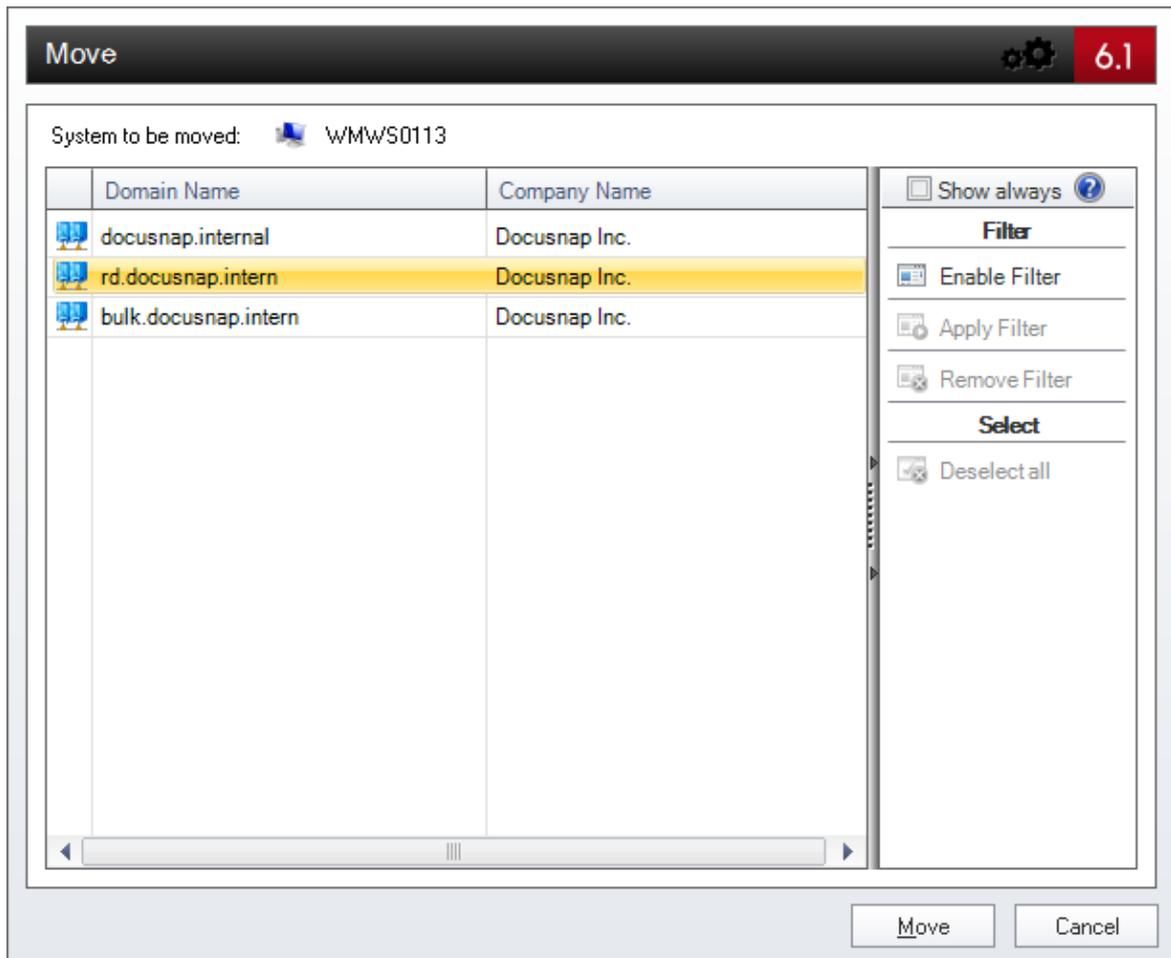
In Docusnap, you can move an inventoried system from one domain to another domain in the same or in a different company. This allows you to move in Docusnap also the inventory data associated with a system moved to another domain. When you move a system, all related data is moved with it. The data of the system you moved will also be displayed in the License Management and Permission Analysis for the domain the system has been moved to. You can move inventoried Windows, Linux, Mac and SNMP systems.

To move a system, right-click it in the Data Explorer and select *Move* from the context menu.



In the *Move* dialog, select the company and domain where you want to move the selected system. The system will be moved by when you click the *Move* button.

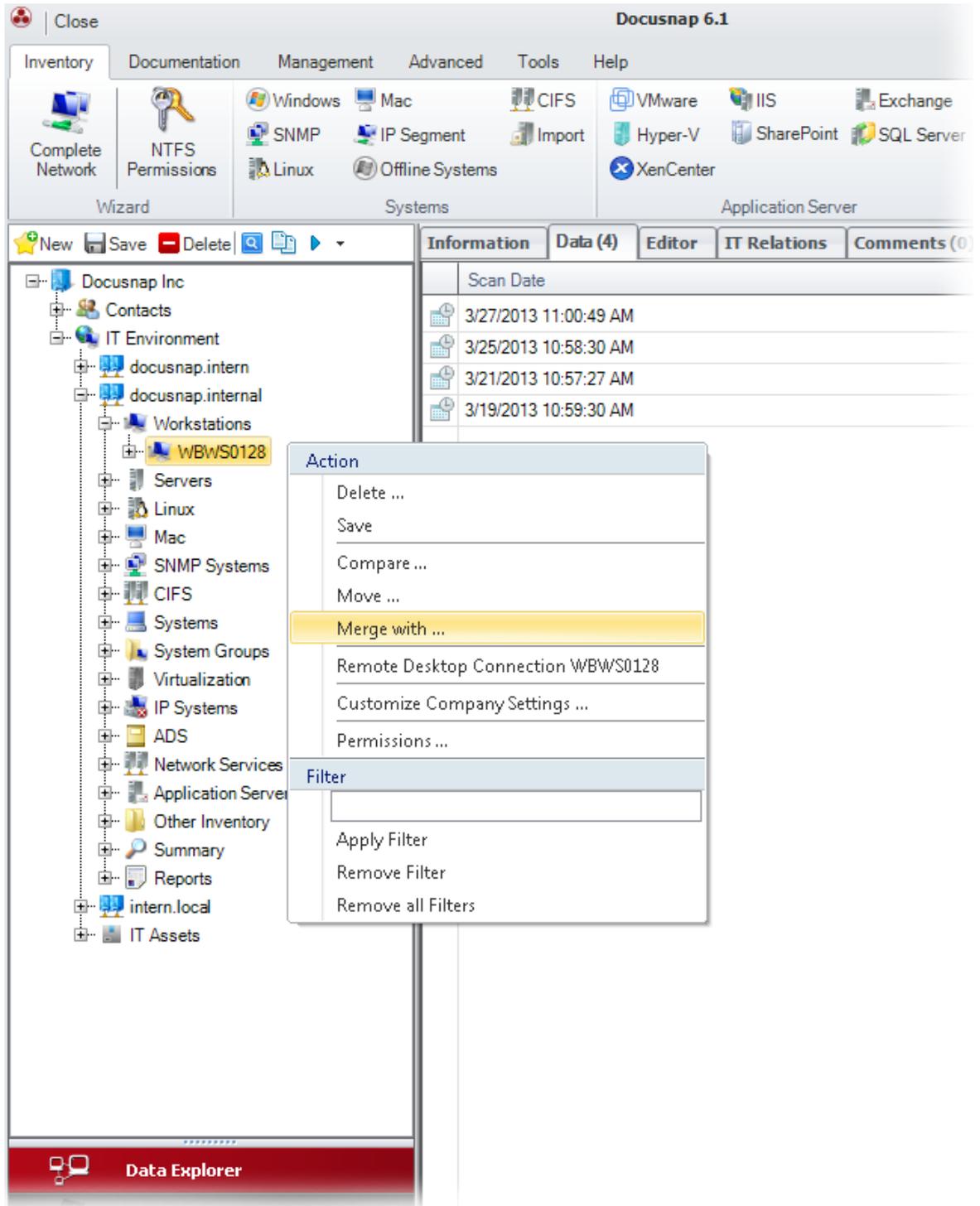




16.9 Merge Systems

In Docusnap, you can merge the inventory scans of different systems into one system. If the number of scans for the two systems to be merged exceeds the number of allowed archive versions, the oldest inventory scans will be deleted. A system can only be merged with another system in the same domain.

Right-click one of the systems to be merged and select *Merge with* from the context menu.



In the *Merge with* dialog, select the target system, i.e. the system into which the selected system should be merged. Click the *Merge* button to merge the two systems.



Merge with
⚙️
6.1

System to be merged: WMWS0113

	Merge with Object
	SMDC0001
	SMDC0002
	SMDC0003
	SMEX0003
	SMII0001
	SMII0002
	SMPS0001
	SMRA0001
	SMSP0001
	SMSQ0001
	STDC0001
	WMWS0254
	WMWS0333

Show always ?
Filter
 Enable Filter
 Apply Filter
 Remove Filter
Select
 Deselect all

Part



17 Advanced Topics

Management Tools

Using the Management Tools feature, you can embed external programs into Docusnap or start them from there. It is possible to specify additional parameters to be used when starting the program.

Merge Reports

If itelio provides new or improved reports, they can be added to the report directory using the *Merge Reports* dialog.

Notifications

Using the Notifications feature, Docusnap enables you to automatically send e-mail messages to users. These notifications are based on database queries. This way, it is possible to send warnings, for example, in case a contract is expiring.

Report Automation

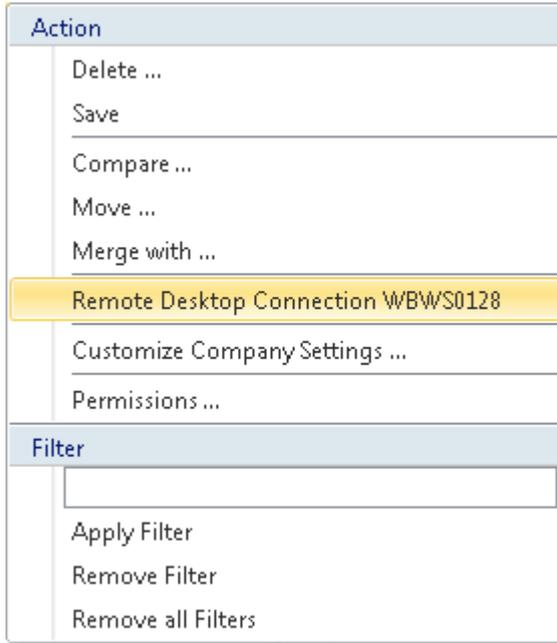
Using the automated reporting feature in Docusnap, you can schedule the automatic creation of reports and IT concepts.

17.1 Management Tools

Using the Management Tools feature, you can embed external programs into Docusnap or start them from there. It is possible to specify additional parameters to be used when starting the program.

During the Docusnap installation process, the Remote Desktop Connection has already been established.

The management tools are available from the context menu of items located in the tree at levels below the Workstations or Servers nodes.

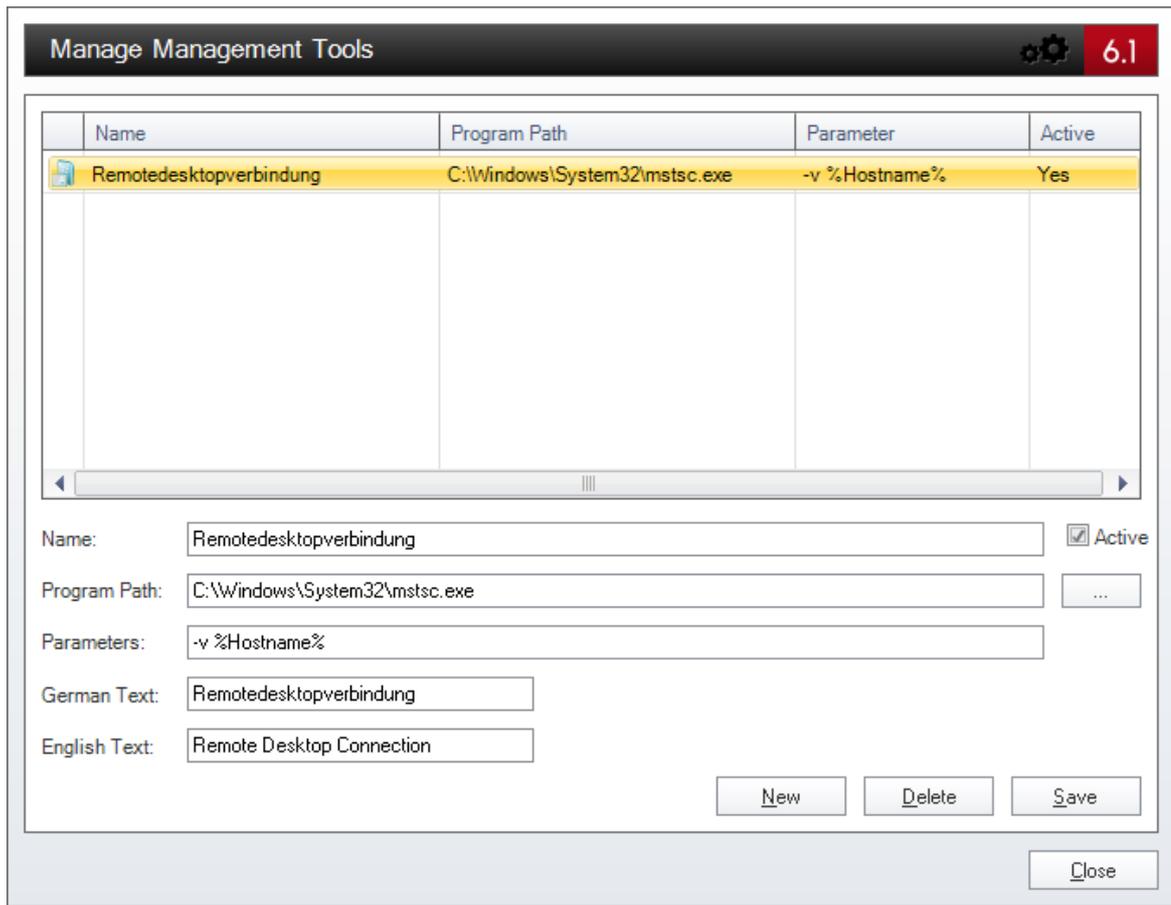


At the same time, the *Execute* button becomes available on the *Advanced* ribbon. The management tools can be started either from the context menu or using the options under the *Execute* button.



To open the *Manage Management Tools* dialog, click the *Management Tools* button on the *Advanced* ribbon.





For each tool, you must enter a name as well as an English and a German designation. This designation will be displayed in the currently active language in the context menu or in the Execute options available from the ribbon.

To specify the program path for the tool, either enter it directly in the text field or click the button to browse for it.

Enter optional call parameters for the external program in the *Parameters* field.

The following parameters are available:

%Hostname%	Computer name
%IPAddress%	IP address(es) for the system

The *-v* parameter is used for Remote Desktop connections and specifies the computer to connect to.

Please note that only tools for which the *Active* flag has been set will be displayed.

17.2 Merge Reports

The reports supplied with Docusnap are stored in the program directory. When you

start Docusnap for the first time, you will be prompted to specify the system paths for *Local Settings* and *Team Settings*. These paths can be changed later in the [Options](#) dialog. If a Team Settings path has been specified, it takes precedence, otherwise, the local path will be used. When you exit the start wizard or close the Options dialog, all reports will be copied from the program directory to the selected path.

The *Merge Reports* wizard will compare the report versions from the program directory and the report repository. This wizard opens when you click the *Merge Reports* button on the *Help* ribbon.

If new or updated reports have been downloaded during an update, they will be saved to the program directory. In the *Merge Reports* wizard, you can select the reports to be copied to the report repository. If a new version of a report has been added, the older version will be moved to the *Backup* folder. If an older version of this report already exists in the *Backup* folder, it will be overwritten.

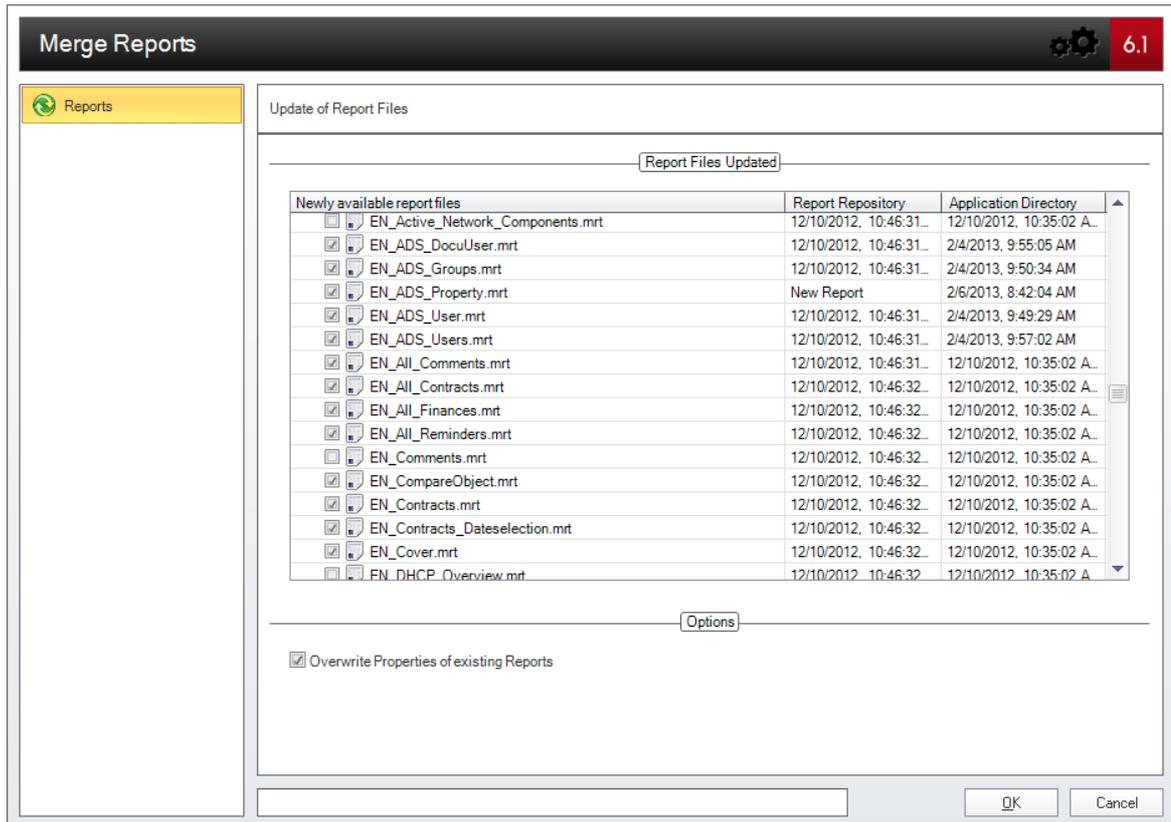
The *Manage Reports* dialog lists all reports that are stored in the report repository. If required, you can open and edit them in the Report Designer. If reports have been updated by the *Merge Reports* wizard, the reports in the reports repository will be replaced by the updated versions. This means that any user-defined changes that have been made to the reports will be lost.

The Merge Reports wizard lists all reports whose modification dates in the report repository and in the program directory differ. Using the checkboxes, you can specify the reports to be replaced by new versions. If the report in the program directory is newer, the checkbox is already ticked. When you click *OK* to start merging the reports, the selected reports found in the report repository will be replaced by the reports from the program directory. If you click the *Cancel* button, no reports will be copied.

If you abort the Merge Reports wizard by clicking *Cancel*, it will redisplay at the next start of Docusnap. If you closed the *Merge Reports* wizard by clicking *OK*, however, it will only redisplay after the next update has been downloaded.

If you enable the *Replace Existing Report Styles in Report Repository* checkbox, Docusnap will also overwrite the report properties. The properties are defined in the *Manage Reports* dialog. The properties determine the name and author of the report as well as its position in the tree structure.





17.3 Notifications

With this feature, you can have Docusnap automatically send an E-Mail when a license becomes invalid or an agreement expires on that day. To use the Notifications feature, the Docusnap Server component must be installed.

To define and transmit notifications, the *Define Notifications* dialog and the *Notification* wizard are required.

Define Notifications

Use the *Define Notifications* dialog to define the query statements for your notification. These statements determine which information will be sent in each e-mail and which criteria will trigger the transmission of a notification e-mail.

Notifications

Use the Notifications wizard to configure the intervals for checking the criteria.

17.3.1 Define Notifications

In the Define Notification dialog, you can set the name and the statement for the notification. An e-mail will only be sent if the the SQL statement returns a result set. If the query returns the same result as the previous query, nothing will be sent.

Some predefined notification types provided with the Docusnap installation.

You can choose the notification title as desired. If you work with the English user interface, the text you enter in the *English Text* field will be displayed when you select the notification from the wizard. If Docusnap has been set to German, the content from the *German Text* field will be used. You can optionally specify a description for each notification you define.

If the selected SQL statement returns at least one result row, an e-mail will be sent. The results will be submitted in an Excel file attached to the e-mail. All columns used in the SQL statement will be reflected in the Excel file. The SQL statement may use all tables available from the selected database.

You can use the company {ACCOUNT}, the domain {DOMAIN} and the current date {NOW} as variables in the SQL statement.

If you disable the *Active* checkbox, this definition will not be available for selection from the notification wizard.

Title	Statement	Active
InvalidLicenses	Select LicName, ValidTo, ServiceValidTo, AccountName fro...	Yes
OutdatedContracts	Select AccountName, CnTitle, CnDateEnd, CnDetail from tEx...	Yes
Reminder	Select AccountName, ReTitle, ReDetail, ReDate from tExRe...	Yes

Title: Active

Statement:

Now: {NOW} Domain: {DOMAIN} Company: {ACCOUNT}

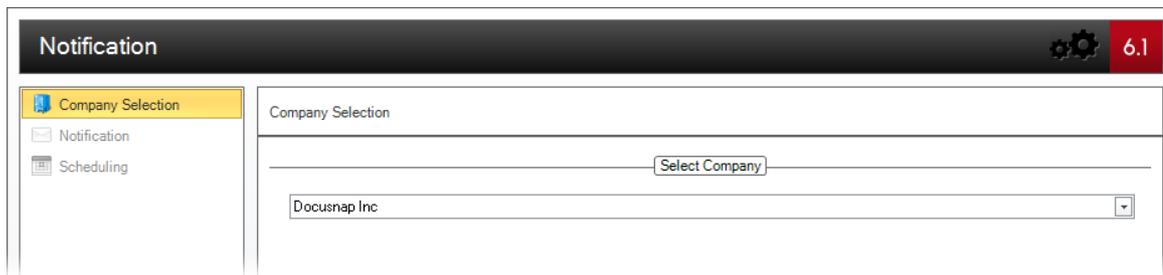
German Text: English Text:

Description: Description:

17.3.2 Notifications

The *Notifications* wizard allows you to set the interval for criteria checks and to specify the intended e-mail recipients.

The first step is to select the company. By selecting the company, you automatically determine the filters that will be available in the next step.



Here, you define the notification to be sent. The *Template* drop-down list offers some predefined notification types for selection. In the *SQL Query* field, you can see which SQL statement will be used for the selected notification type. If the {Account} or {Domain} variable is part of the statement, you must select a filter. A company must be selected for the {Account} variable, a domain for the {Domain} variable. Only the selected company and the associated domains will be displayed as filters.

Specify the e-mail address of the intended recipient in the *Recipient* field and the subject of the notification in the *Subject* field.

Then, enter the body text of the notification in the *Message* field.

The results from the SQL statement will be attached to the e-mail as an Excel file. If the execution of the statement does not return a result set, no e-mail will be sent. This could be the case, for example, if the program checks for invalid licenses and none of the license expiration dates is earlier than or matches the current date.

Notification

6.1

- Company Selection
- Notification**
- Scheduling

Define the Notification

Select Template

Template: Invalid licenses

SQL Query: `Select LicName,ValidTo,ServiceValidTo,AccountName from tSoftwareLicenses,tSoftwareProducts,tAccounts WHERE tSoftwareLicenses.SoftwareID=tSoftwareProducts.SoftwareID AND tSoftwareProducts.AccountID = tAccounts.AccountID AND tAccounts.AccountID = (ACCOUNT) AND tSoftwareLicenses.ValidInfinite=0 AND ValidTo <= (now)`

Filter: Docusnap Inc

Message

Recipient: info@docusnap.com

Subject: Invalid licenses

Message:

Back Next Cancel

In the next step, you can define scheduling details. Scheduling allows you to define the date(s) and time(s) for execution of the SQL statement.



Scheduling is only available if the Docusnap Server service has been set up properly and the connection between the server service and an SMTP server has been tested successfully.



17.4 Report Scheduling

With DocuSnap, you can schedule the creation of reports and have them generated automatically at a later point in time.

The scheduled report will be created in the selected format and saved in the DocuSnap Server documentation path. The following folder structure will be created in the target directory:

- Company\Reports
- Company\Domain\Reports

DocuSnap Server can only generate reports that the server can access, either using the path specified under *Team Settings* or the path under *Local Settings* in the *Options* dialog.

To start the report scheduling wizard, execute the corresponding report. Then, click the *Schedule as Job* button on the *Reporting* ribbon to start the wizard.

For Permission Analysis reports (*Users (Resources)*, *Directory (Resources)*) the wizard will be started by clicking the *Schedule* button in the corresponding dialog.

The settings you specify for your report will be saved and applied when the report is executed later.

In the first step, you can select the language of your report. All reports are available

in English and German. These reports have the same file names and are distinguished only by their prefix, "EN_" or "DE_". If you change the language while creating the job, the report will be created in the newly selected language. So when creating user-defined reports, make sure to provide them in both languages.

In case you do not create the report using the predefined directory (documentation path), specify an alternative documentation path. By default, the documentation path defined for the Docusnap Server will be used. If you specify an *alternative documentation path*, that path will be used.

The screenshot shows the 'Report Automation' dialog box, step 6.1, 'Company Selection'. The dialog has a dark header with the title 'Report Automation' and a version indicator '6.1'. On the left, there is a sidebar with three options: 'Company Selection' (selected), 'Report', and 'Scheduling'. The main area is titled 'Company Selection' and contains the following fields and controls:

- A 'Select Company' button above a dropdown menu showing 'Docusnap Inc'.
- A 'Documentation Path' label above a text field containing 'C:\Documentation' and a browse button ('...').
- A checked checkbox for 'Alternative Documentation Path'.
- A 'Language' label above a dropdown menu showing 'English' and a checkbox for 'Just HTML Documentation'.

At the bottom, there is a status bar with a green checkmark and the text 'A company is selected.', and two buttons: 'Next' and 'Cancel'.

In the next step, you can select the desired report format.

The following formats are available: docx, xlsx, html, odt and pdf.

Additionally, you can specify here whether to include a cover page, a header and a footer in your report. If you do not make any changes, the settings from the Options or the Define Company Settings dialog will be used.

If you tick the *E-Mail Distribution* checkbox, the report will be sent to the e-mail address(es) specified below. Even if *E-Mail Distribution* is enabled, the reports will always be saved to the *documentation path* specified.

In the next step, you can define scheduling details. This step determines when and how often the report will be created.

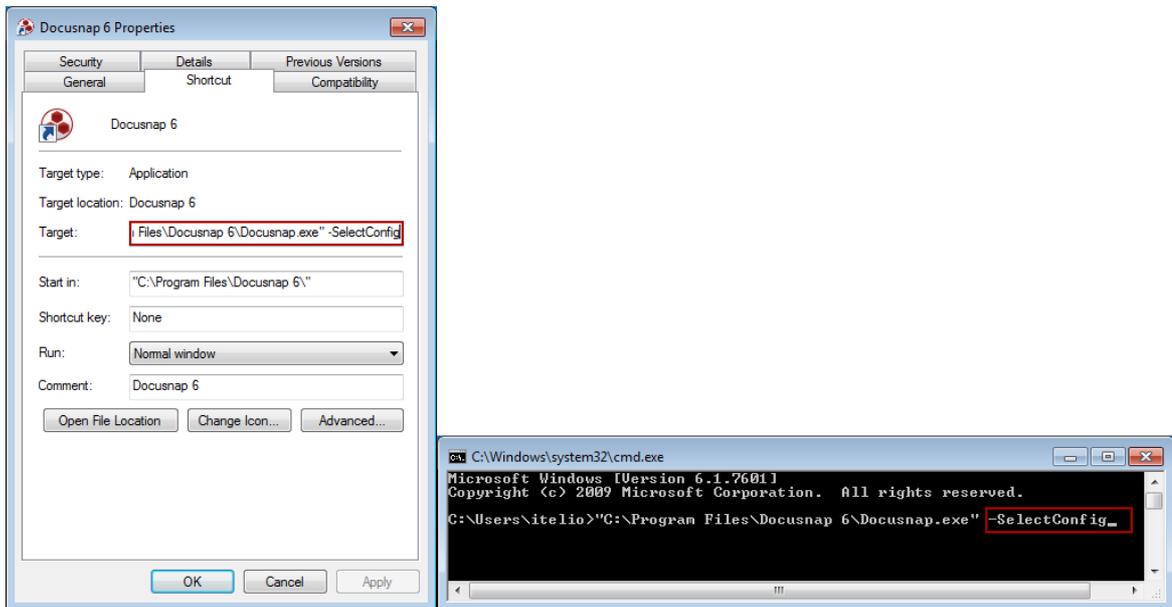


Scheduling will only work if the Docusnap Server service has been set up.

17.5 Options Configuration File

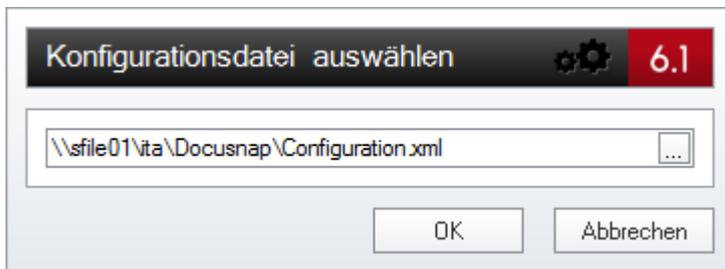
Settings you define in the Options dialog will be stored in a configuration file located on the computer where Docusnap is running. If multiple employees want to use the same settings when working in Docusnap, it is possible to start the program using a shared configuration file.

You can either directly append the corresponding parameter to the Docusnap.exe file or define it when starting Docusnap from the command line. The parameters are case-sensitive, i.e. they must be entered exactly as shown here: *-SelectConfig* and *-UseConfig*.



-SelectConfig

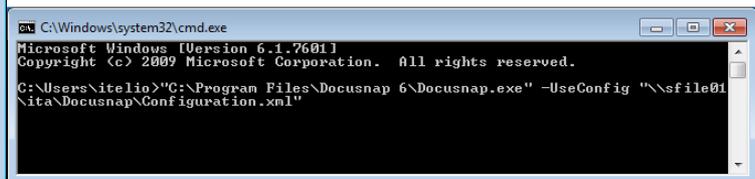
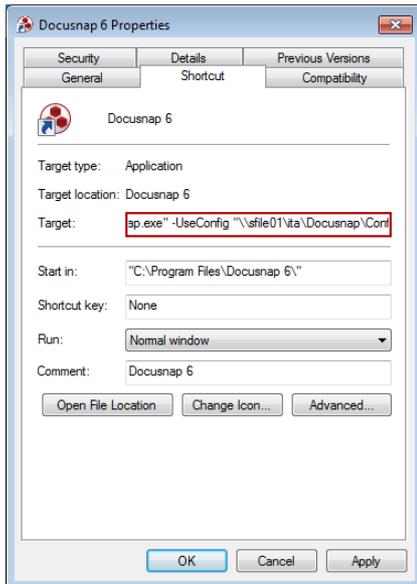
When you use the *-SelectConfig* parameter, a dialog appears before the Docusnap startup which allows you to select the path to the configuration file. Then, Docusnap will be started using the settings from the selected configuration file.



-UseConfig

The *-UseConfig* parameter allows you to specify a particular configuration file to be used each time Docusnap is started. When using this parameter, you specify the path to the configuration file.



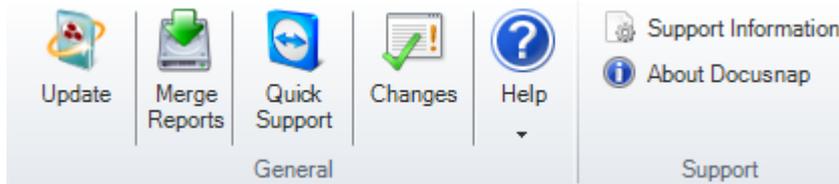


Part



18 Support & Help

The Help ribbon includes all features provided by the Docusnap Support Team to assist you with problems or questions.



General

To download an updated Docusnap version via an Internet connection, simply click the *Update* button. By clicking the *Merge Reports* button, you can synchronize your report repository. A Live Support feature is also available.

Manual / Online Help

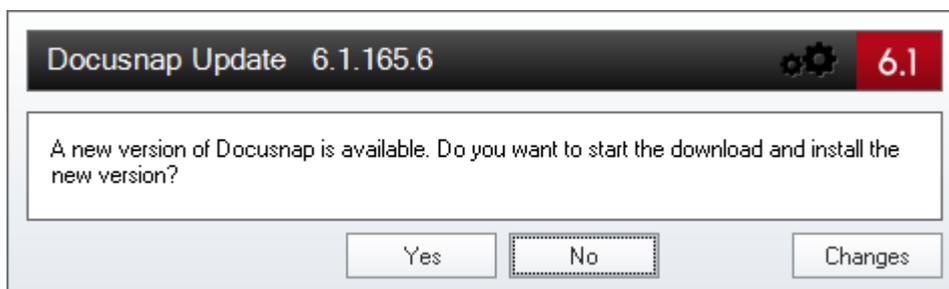
This group provides access the manuals and help systems both for Docusnap users and administrators.

Support

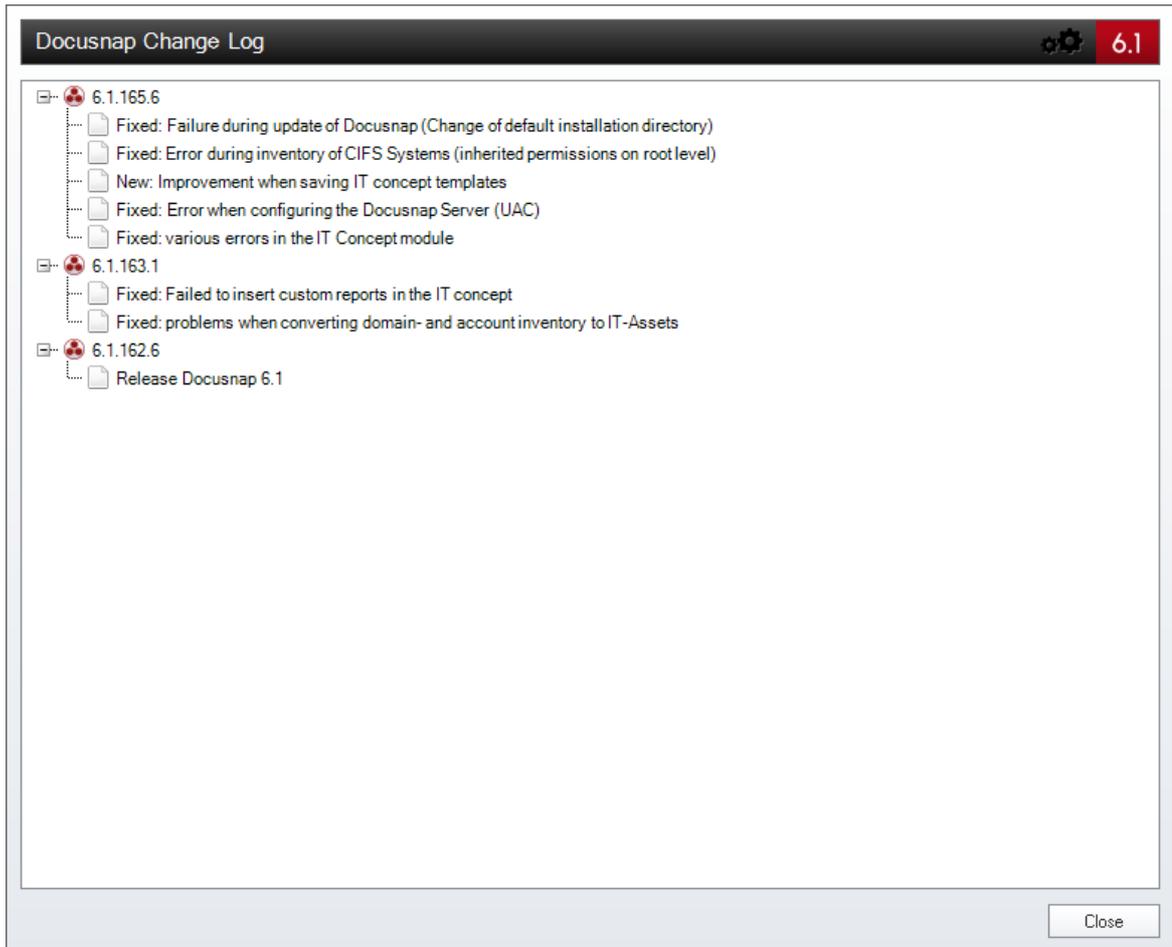
This group provides features for generating log files and displaying general information about Docusnap.

18.1 Update

The *Docusnap Update* wizard allows you to obtain updated versions and keep your Docusnap installation up to date. If a new Docusnap version is available, you will be prompted for an update upon startup, but you you can also click the *Update* button on the *Help* ribbon to open the update dialog.



To see a list of the new features and/or bugfixes, click the *Changes* button.



When you confirm to start the update process, Docusnap downloads the update set. The installation automatically starts once the download has completed successfully. Upon completion of the installation, you can start the new Docusnap version.



If Docusnap has been installed on multiple workstations, the update must be performed for all of the installations.

18.2 Problem Resolution

Enabling Debug Mode

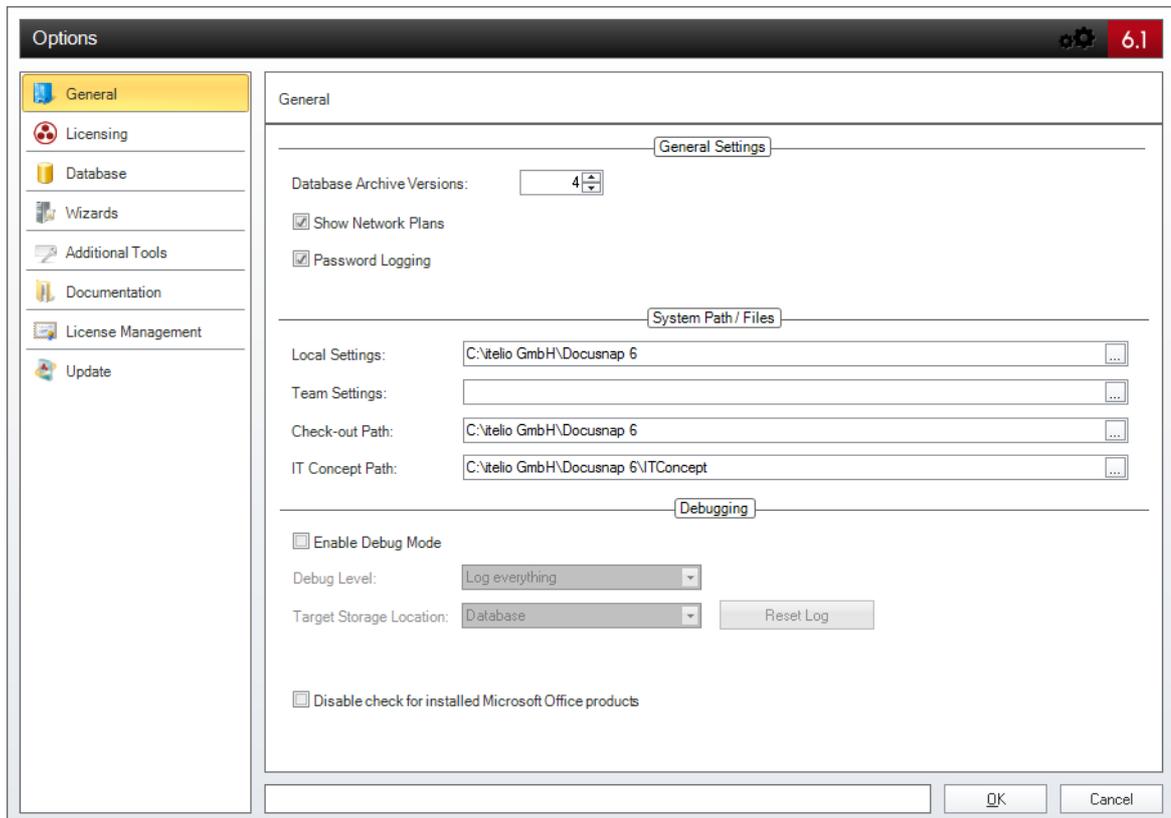
If errors occur while using Docusnap, you can trace them. Check the *Enable Debug Mode* option in the [Options dialog](#) to log errors in the database. You have the option to either log all program events or exceptions only.

By clicking the *Support Information* button in the Help ribbon, you can open a dialog where you can save the logged data to a file and send it to the Docusnap Support team.

To delete all existing debug information from the database, click the *Reset Log*



button on the General page of the Options dialog.



Enabling the Debug Mode for Docusnap Server

The Docusnap Server is required to schedule network scans, documentation creation processes, notifications, etc. to be performed automatically at a later time. To be able to analyze errors, the debug mode for the Docusnap Server component must be enabled.

You can do so in the Configuration wizard for the Docusnap Server. To set the desired level of debugging, you can select either *Log everything* or *Exceptions only* from the Debug Level dropdown list. To set the storage location, select *Database* from the Target Storage drop-down list. Clicking the *Reset Log* button will delete all existing error information from the database.

Configuration 6.1

Configure Docusnap Server:

General

Startup Type: Automatic

Change Server Login

User: intern\administrator

Password: *****

Remark: If no user and password is entered, Docusnap Server uses the local system account. If the system account doesn't have permissions for the database, Docusnap Server exits with an error.

Debugging

Enable Debug Mode

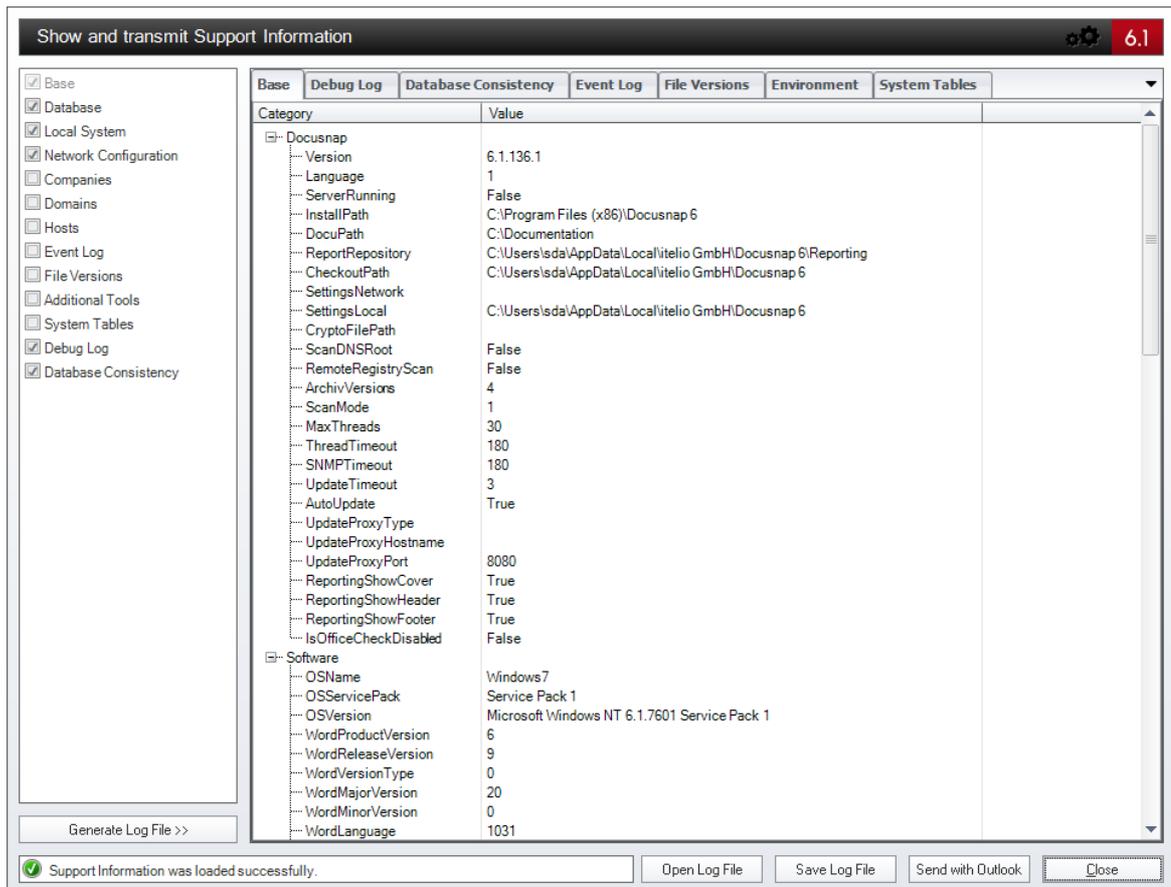
Debug Level: Log everything

Target Storage Location: Database

Communicating Support Information to the Support Team

The *Show and transmit Support Information* dialog, that opens when you click *Support Information* from the Help ribbon, allows you to generate log files and send them to the Docusnap Support team.





- **Generate Log File:** Generates a log file according to the selected options.
- **Open Log File:** Displays the generated log file content.
- **Send with Outlook:** Opens Outlook and creates a new e-mail. The recipient defaults to the Docusnap Support Team and the log file is attached automatically. This option only works with Microsoft Office Outlook. If you use a different e-mail client, you must first save the log file, manually create an e-mail addressed to the Docusnap Support team and attach the log file.

18.3 FAQ

Windows Firewall Configuration: Basics

To make sure that Windows systems with the firewall enabled can be scanned successfully, you need to check or configure two firewall exceptions. These settings can be set up and administered using group policies. To enable you to quickly check your environment, we will also describe how to manually configure your Windows firewall. The manual configuration examples were designed for Windows 7, Vista and XP.

Overview: Necessary Firewall Exceptions

The following is a brief description of the exceptions to be configured. Limiting



these exceptions to specific IP ranges can only be done by configuring group policy objects (GPOs).

File and Printer Sharing

To enable file and printer sharing, the Windows firewall opens UDP ports 137 and 138 as well as TCP ports 139 and 445. Enabling this policy setting causes the Windows firewall to open these ports so that the Windows system can receive print jobs and access requests for shared files.

Note: This setting lets inbound ICMP echo requests (messages sent by the Ping utility) pass through the Windows firewall, even if the “Windows Firewall: Allow ICMP Exceptions” policy setting would normally block them.

Security note: Make sure to define in advance the IP addresses or subnets for which these incoming messages will be permitted.

Allow Remote Administration Exceptions

The *Allow Remote Administration* Exception option essentially corresponds to the Windows 7 & Vista Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) exception and enables remote administration of the Windows system using management programs such as Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI). For this purpose, the Windows firewall opens TCP ports 135 and 445. Services normally use these ports for communication via Remote Procedure Call (RPC) and Distributed Component Object Model (DCOM).

What is more, this policy setting makes sure that the SVCHOST.EXE and LSASS.EXE programs may receive unsolicited incoming messages and open dynamically allocated additional ports for hosted services.

Security note: Make sure to define in advance the IP addresses or subnets for which these incoming messages will be permitted.

Windows 7

Windows 7: Starting the Windows Firewall Configuration from the Command Line

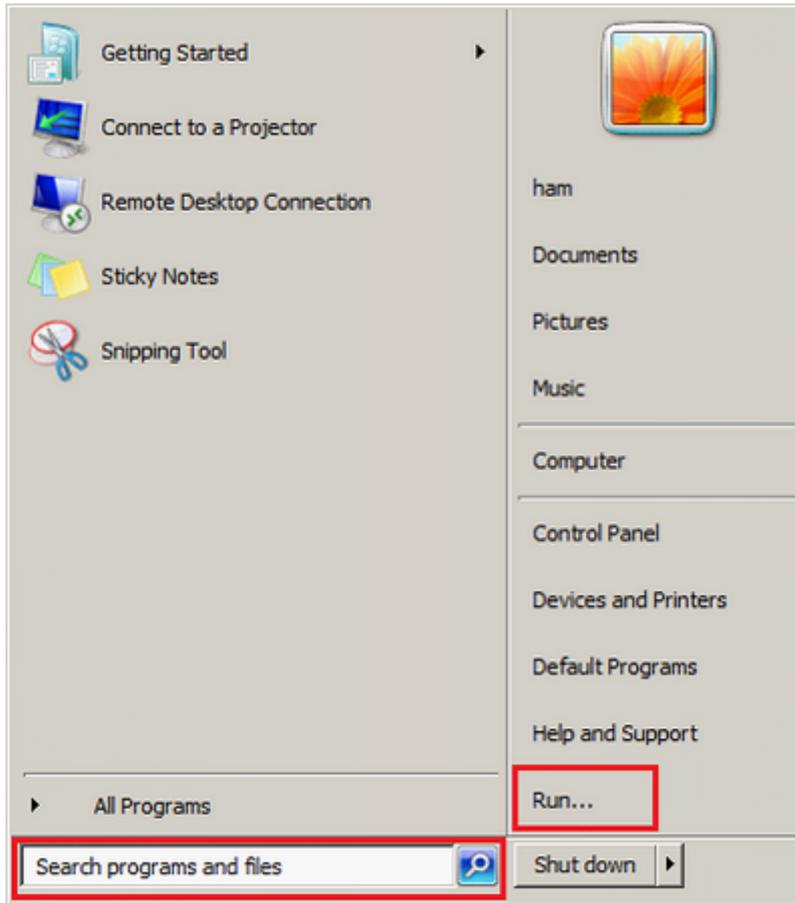
The easiest way to start the firewall configuration is by executing the `firewall.cpl` command.

There are several ways to enter this command:

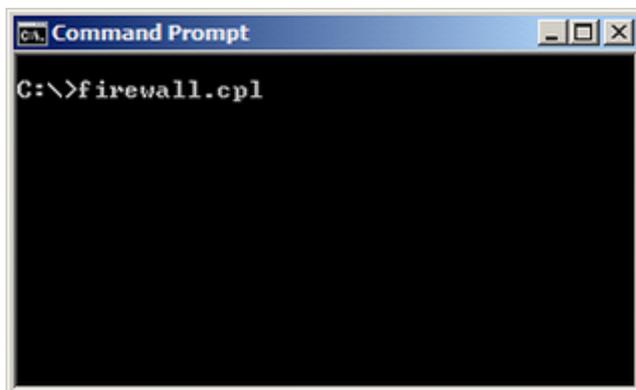


> Click *Search Programs and Files* and enter `firewall.cpl`

> Click *Run...* and enter `firewall.cpl`



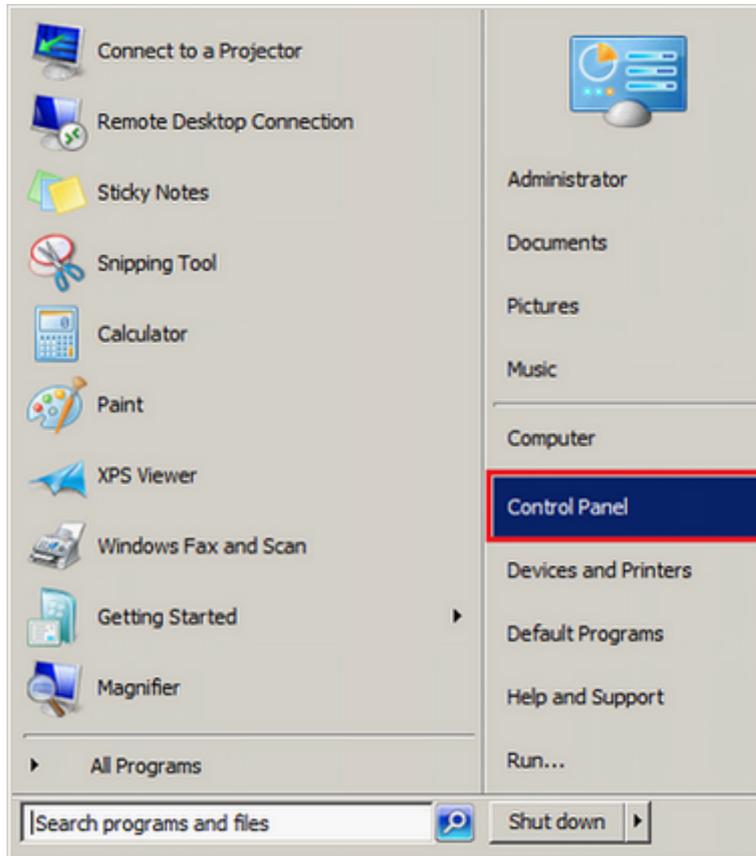
Alternatively, you can enter the command from a console window:



Windows 7: Configuring Windows Firewall Interactively



Click the *Start* button and select *Control Panel*.



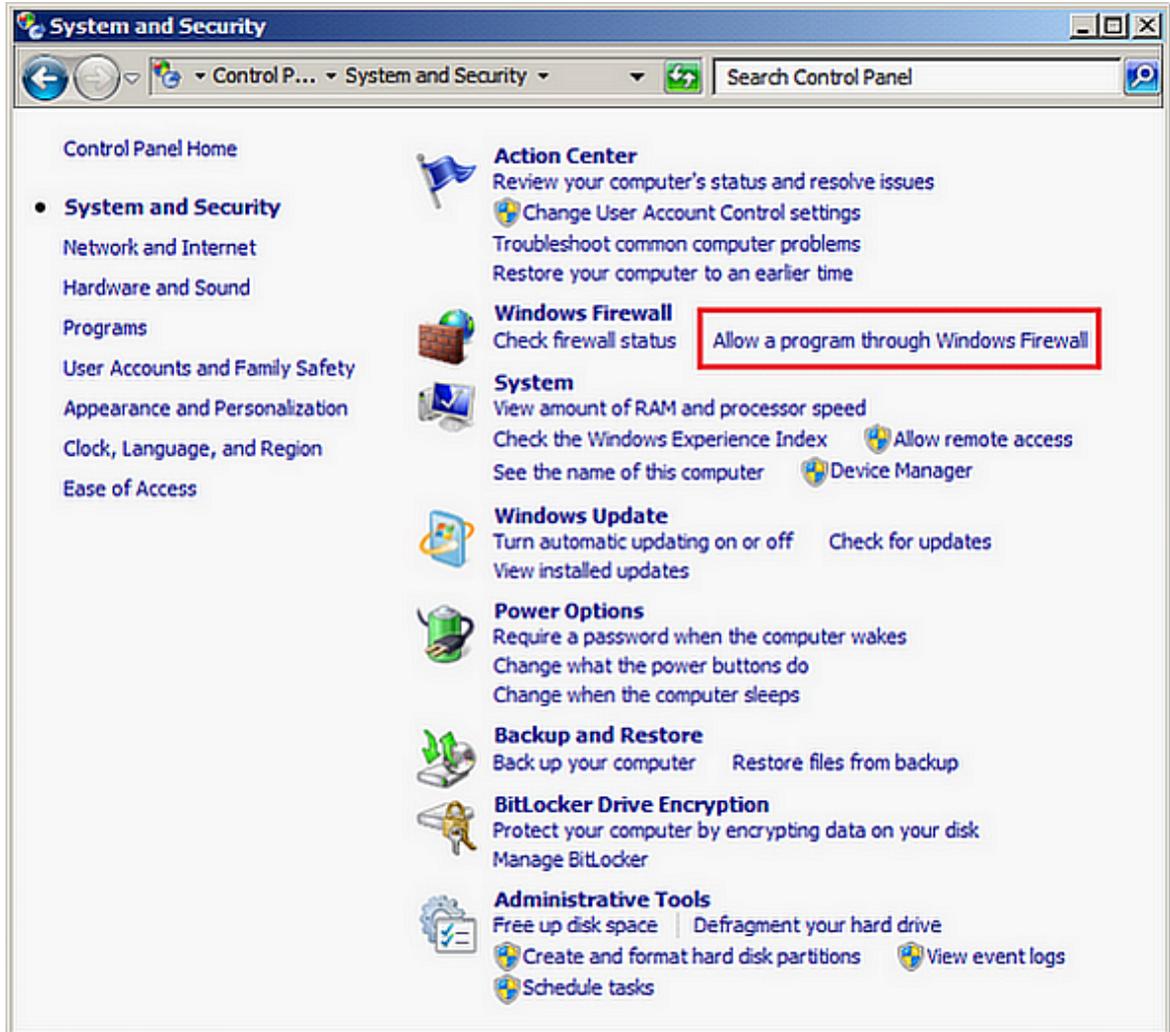
Click on *System and Security*.

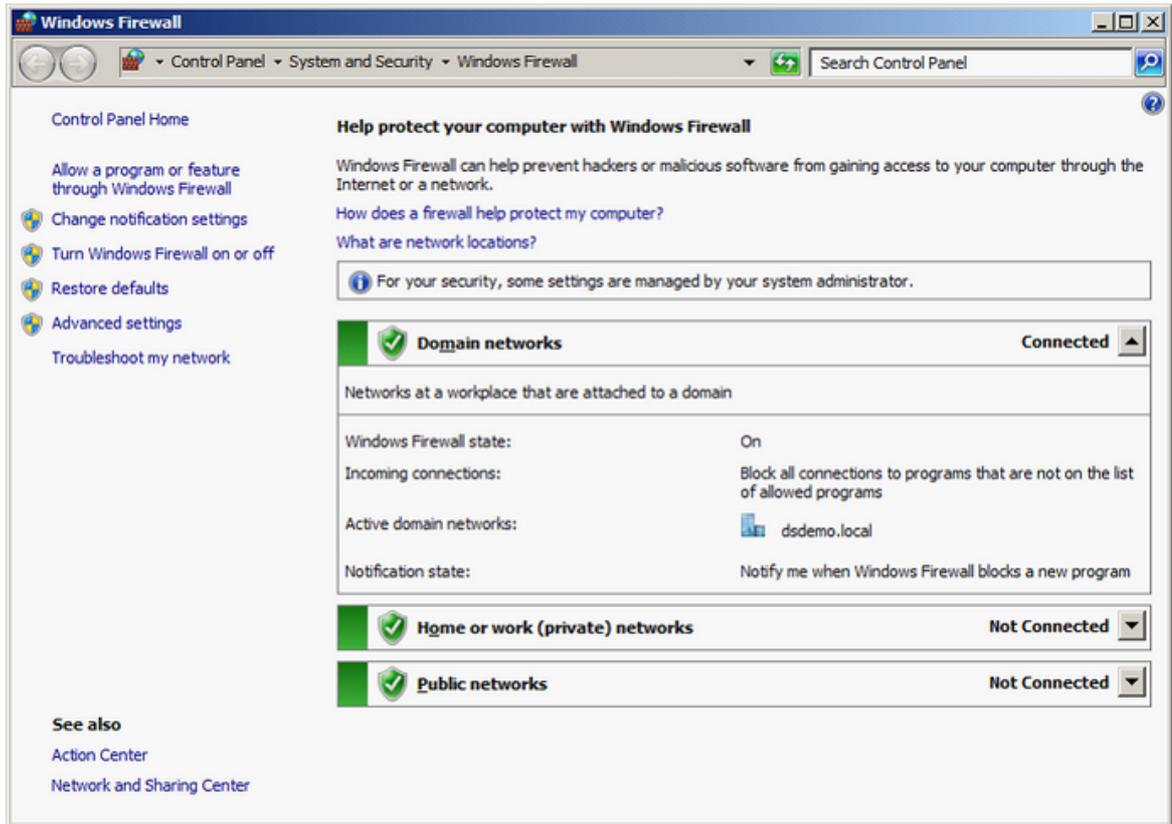


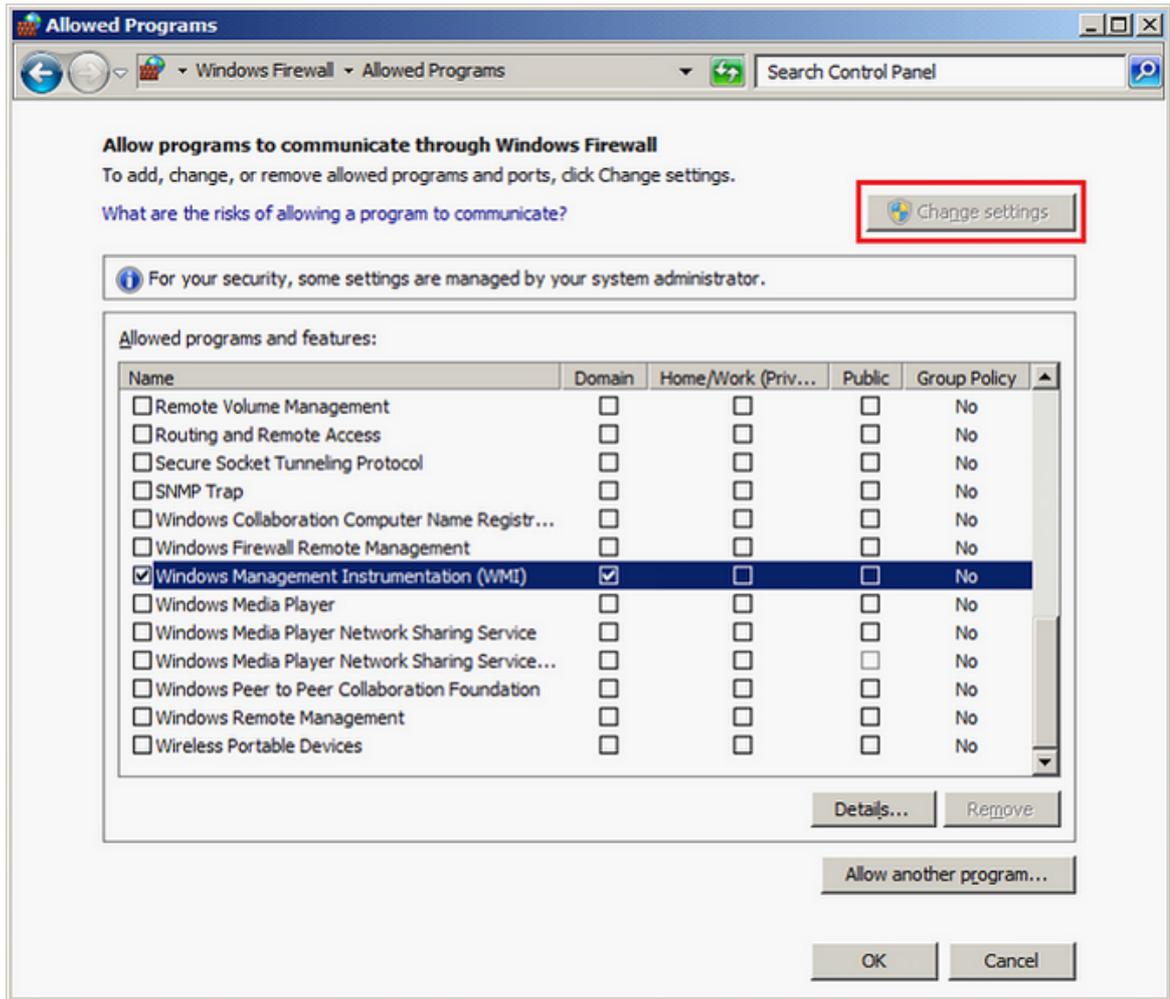
Click on *Windows Firewall*.

Windows 7: Setting Windows Firewall Exceptions

Click *Allow a Program through the Windows Firewall*.







Provided the corresponding user permissions have been set, *Change Settings* enables you to edit the settings for programs and features. Windows 7 manages three different types of networks (Domain, Home/Work, Public). You need to define the firewall exceptions separately for each type. Define the following exceptions by setting the corresponding checkmarks in the *Allowed Programs and Features* list.

- *File and Printer Sharing*
- *Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)*

Accept the new settings by clicking the OK button. These firewall settings enable Docusnap to scan the computer.

Windows Vista

Windows Vista: Starting the Windows Firewall Configuration from the Command Line

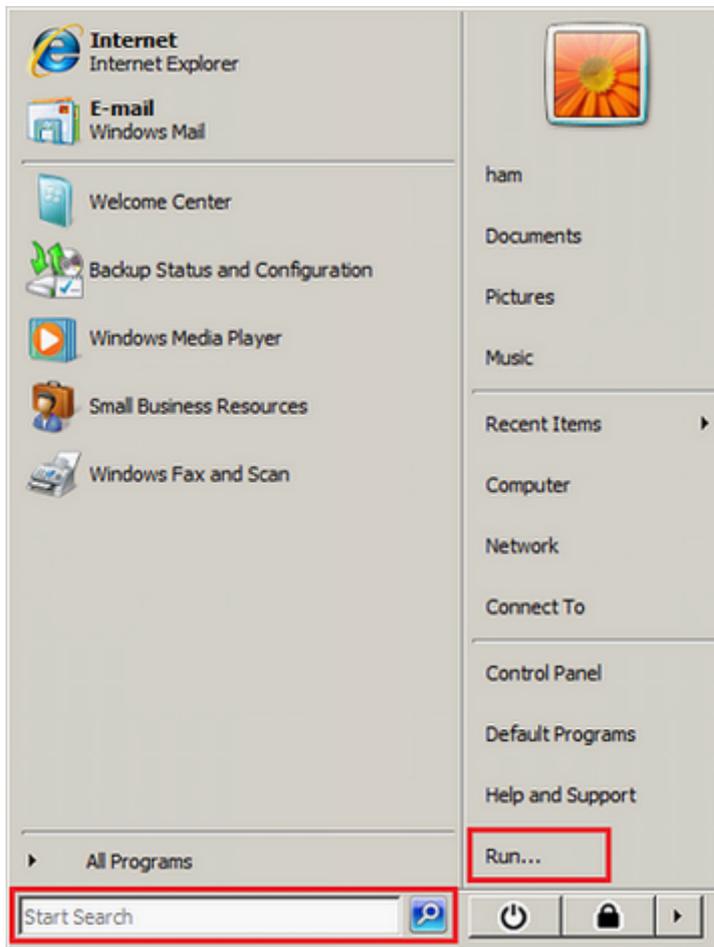
The easiest way to configure the firewall is by executing the *firewall.cpl* command.

There are several ways to enter this command:

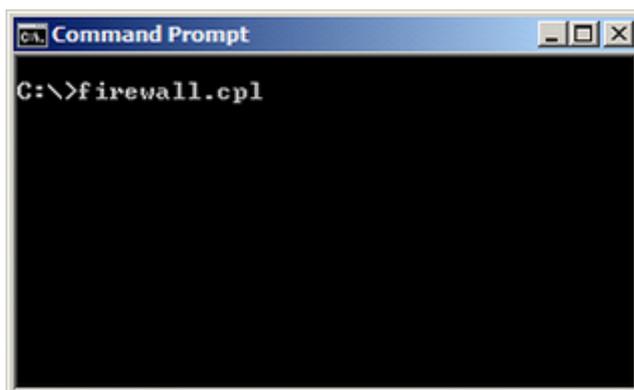


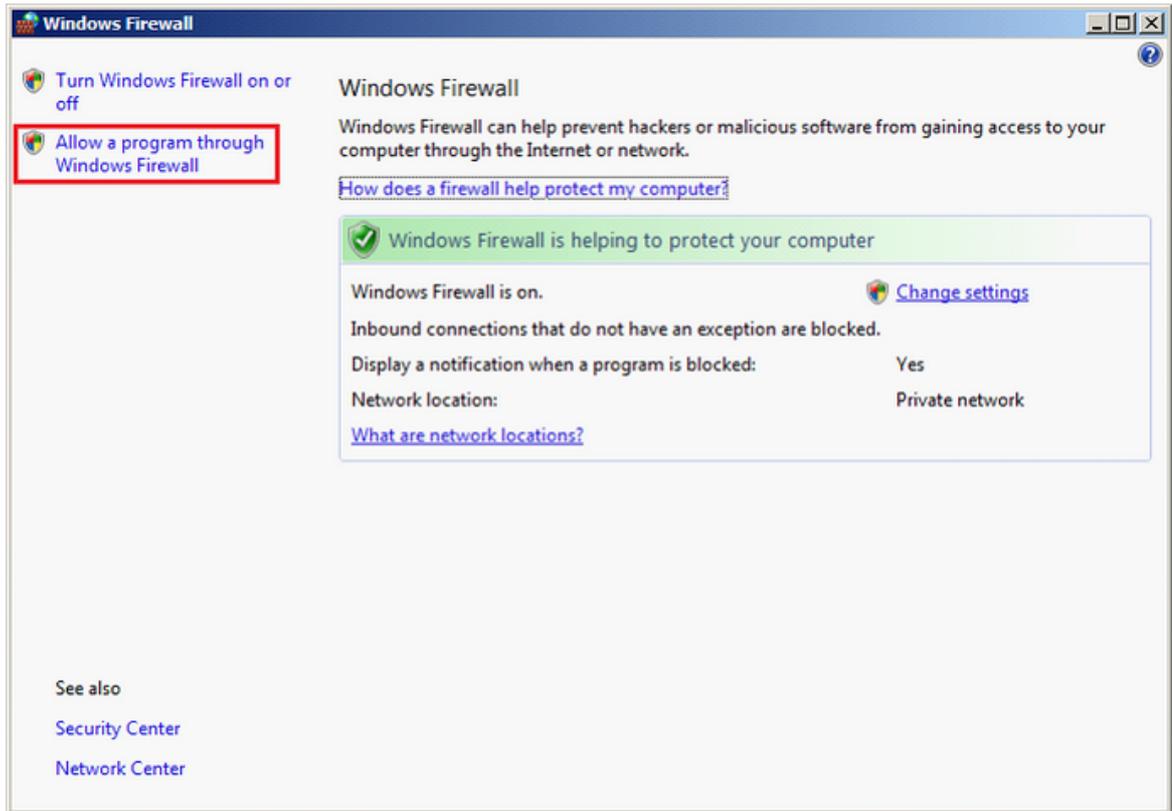
> Click *Start Search* and enter *firewall.cpl*

> Click *Run* and enter *firewall.cpl*



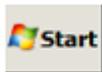
Alternatively, you can enter the command from a console window:





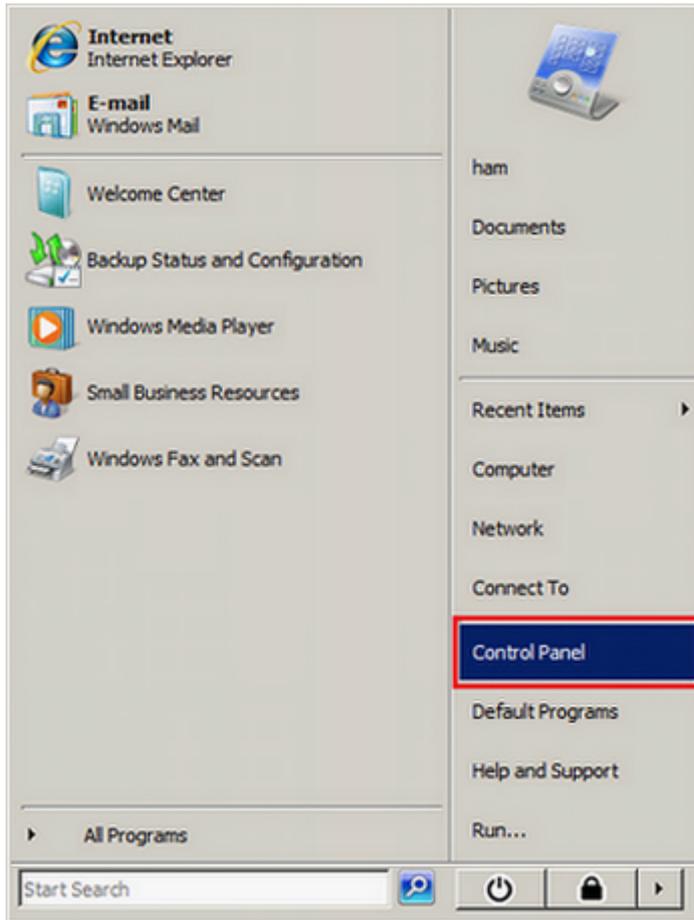
Clicking *Allow a program through Windows Firewall* takes you to the configuration dialog for exceptions.

Windows Vista: Starting the Windows Firewall Configuration Interactively

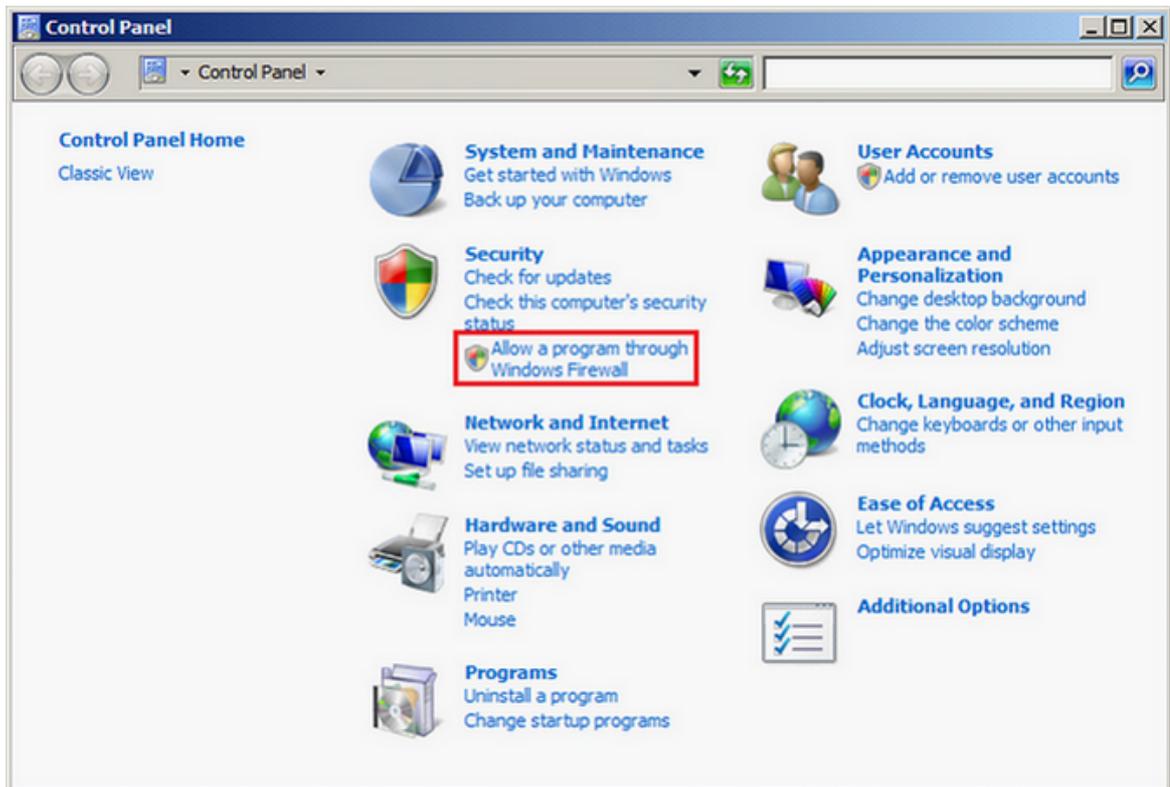


Click the *Start* button and select *Control Panel*:

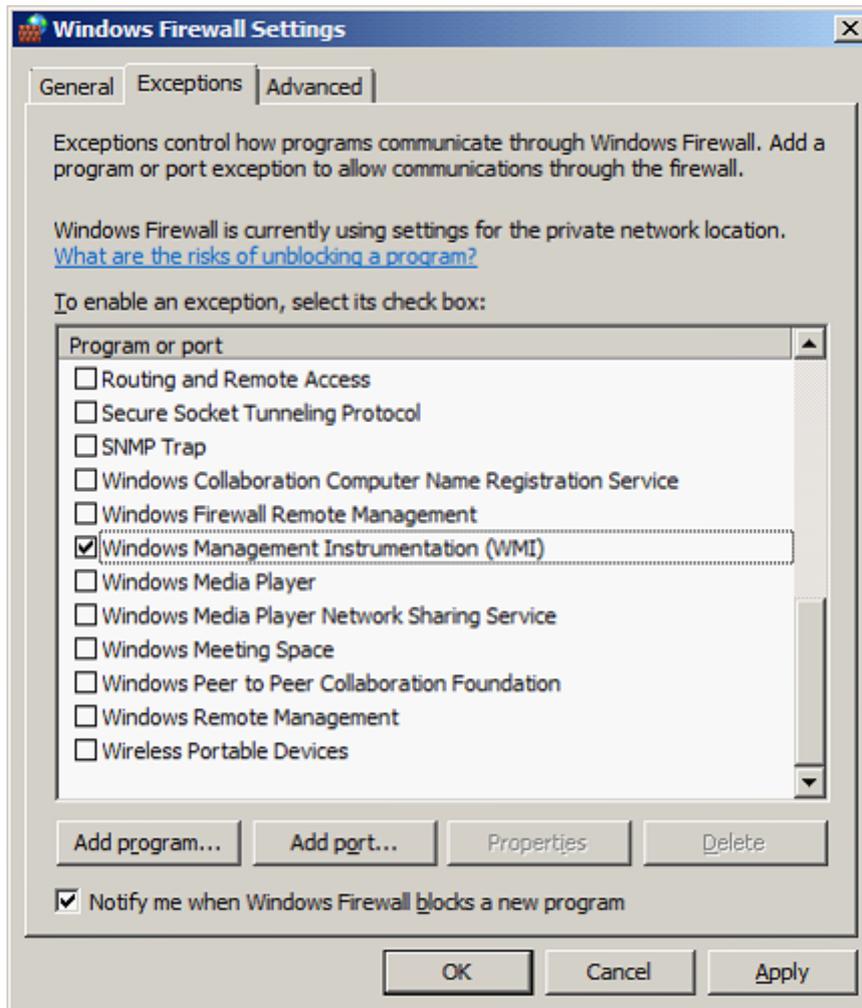




Click *Allow a program through Windows Firewall*:



Windows Vista: Setting Windows Firewall Exceptions



Define the following exceptions by setting each the checkmarks in the *Program or port* list:

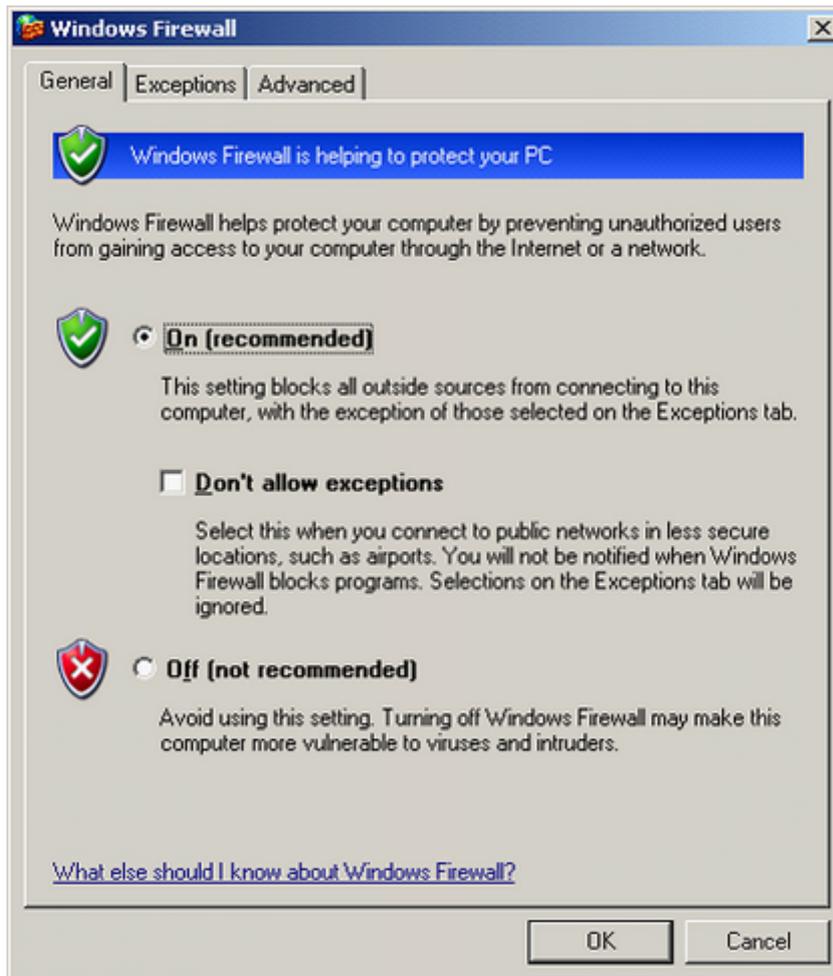
- *File and Printer Sharing*
- *Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)*

Now, confirm the selected settings by clicking the *Apply* and *OK* buttons. These firewall settings enable Docusnap to scan the computer.

Windows XP (SP2 and higher)

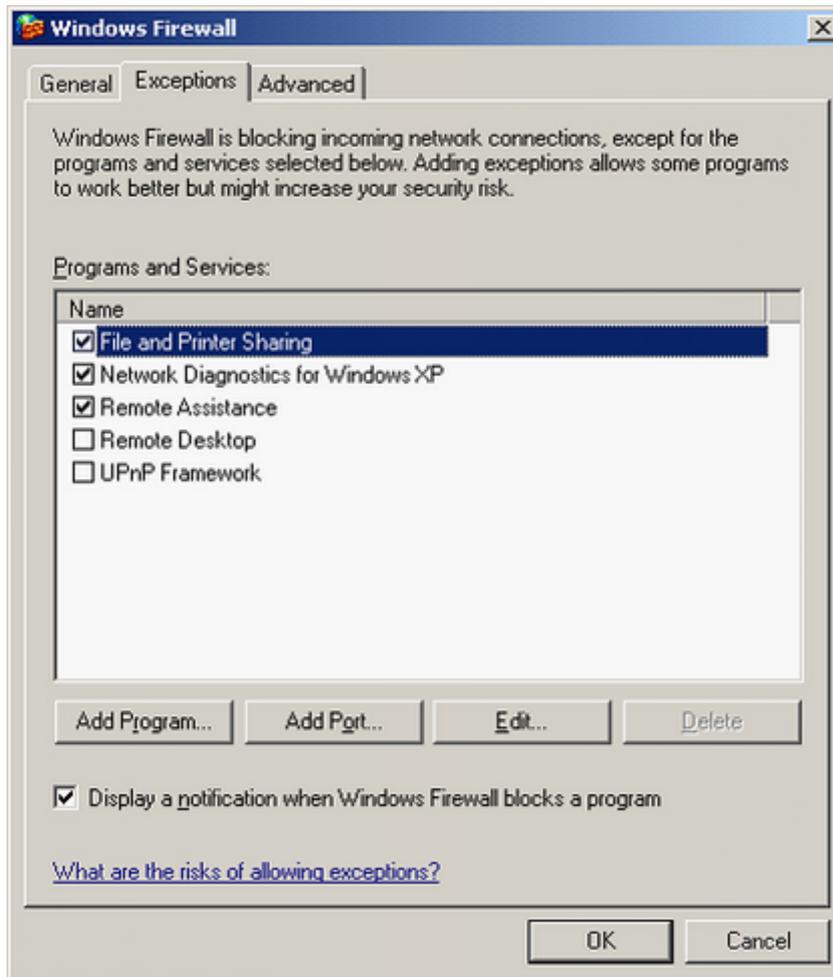
Windows XP: Starting the Windows Firewall Configuration

The quickest way to open the firewall configuration dialog is by using the *firewall.cpl* command (from the command line or through Start | Run).



Windows XP: Setting Windows Firewall Exceptions

Click on the *Exceptions* tab.



Define the following exceptions by setting corresponding checkmarks in the *Programs and Services* list:

File and Printer Sharing

Confirm your selection by clicking the *OK* button. Now, you can close the Windows firewall dialog.

Windows XP: Enabling Additional Exceptions using GPOs – Launching the GPO Editor

In the list of Windows XP exceptions, the *Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)* exception, available in the Windows Vista and Windows 7 firewall exceptions lists, is missing.

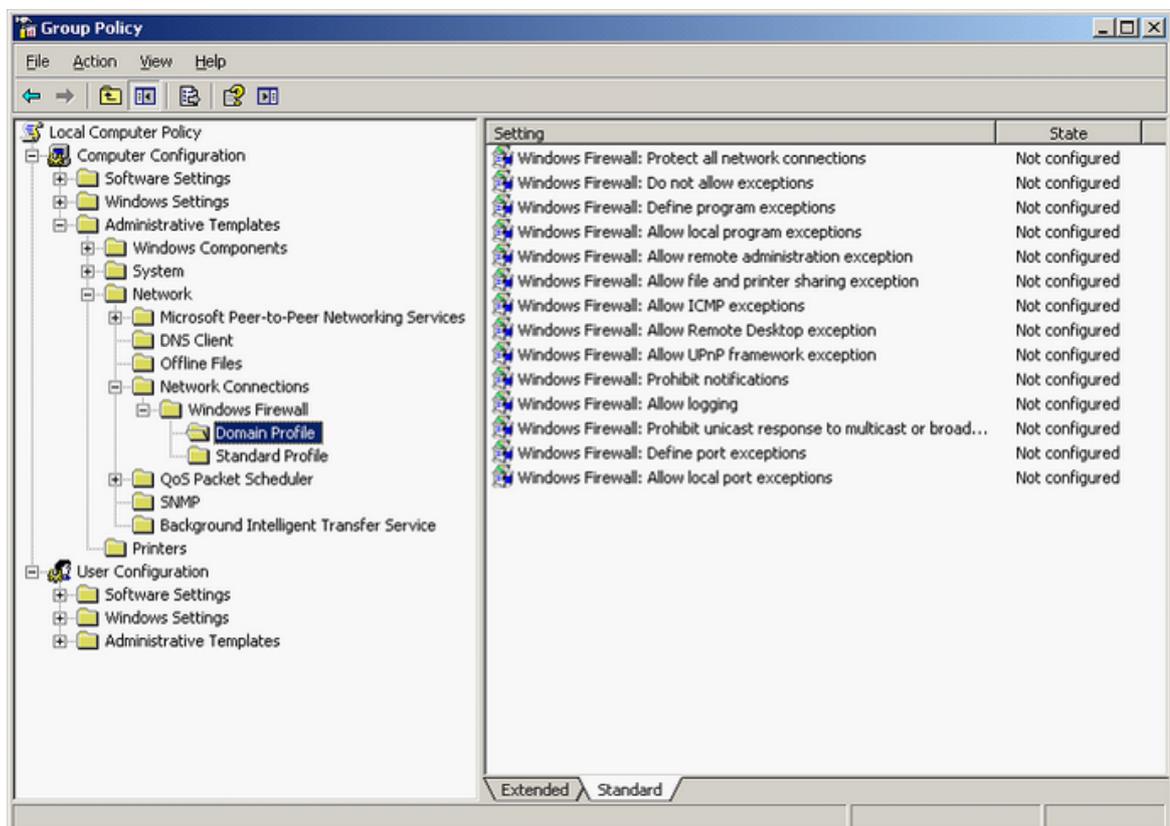
To enable this exception, define the following group policy setting in Windows XP: Set the *Allow Remote Administration* firewall exception in the local group policy settings. To start the group policy editor, enter *gpedit.msc*, either from the

command line or through Start | Run.

The group policy to be activated is located under:

Local Computer Policy

- *Computer Configuration*
 - *Administrative Templates*
 - *Network*
 - *Network Connections*
 - *Windows Firewall*
 - *Domain Profile*



Windows XP: Enabling Additional Exceptions using GPOs

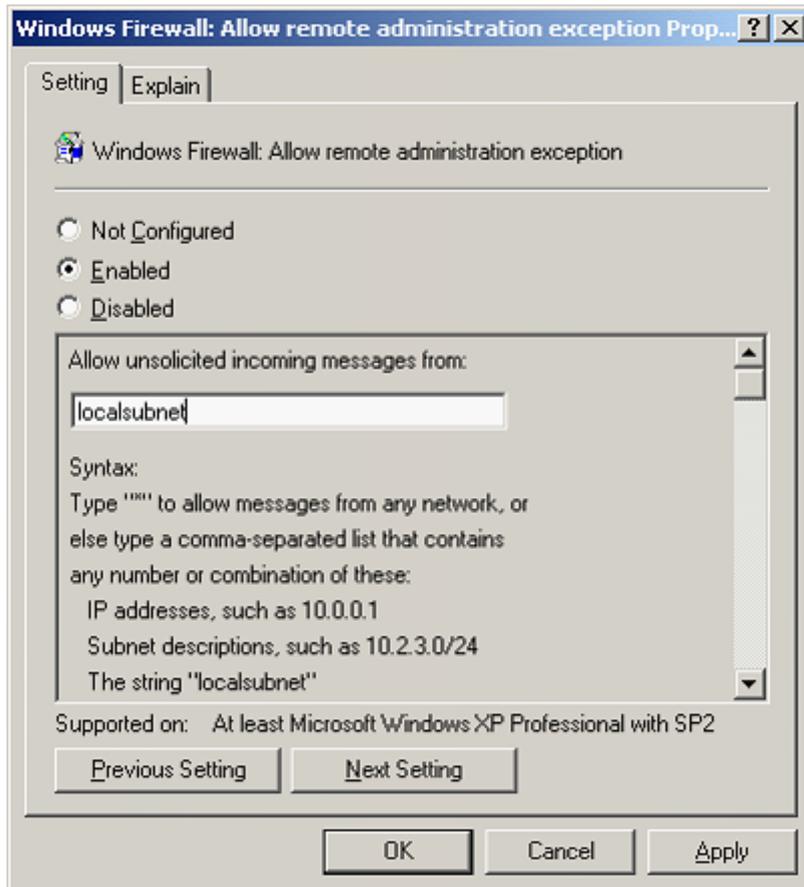
Windows Firewall group policy:

Enable the *Windows Firewall: allow remote administration exception* group policy and set the scope for the settings in the corresponding field. Then close the dialog by clicking the *OK* button.

Allow unsolicited incoming messages from:

- Entering an asterisk in the entry field opens the firewall for any computer.

- The exception applies to a specific subnet only (e.g. the entire class C network mask 192.168.100.0/24).
- Access to the local subnet may also be granted by entering the *localsubnet* string.
- It is also possible to restrict the exception to a specific computer (e.g. 192.168.100.10).
- Now, you can close the application. This completes the configuration of the Windows firewall exceptions for Windows XP.



Windows Firewall Configuration: Active Directory

Basics: Firewalls & the Group Policies Management Console (GPMC)

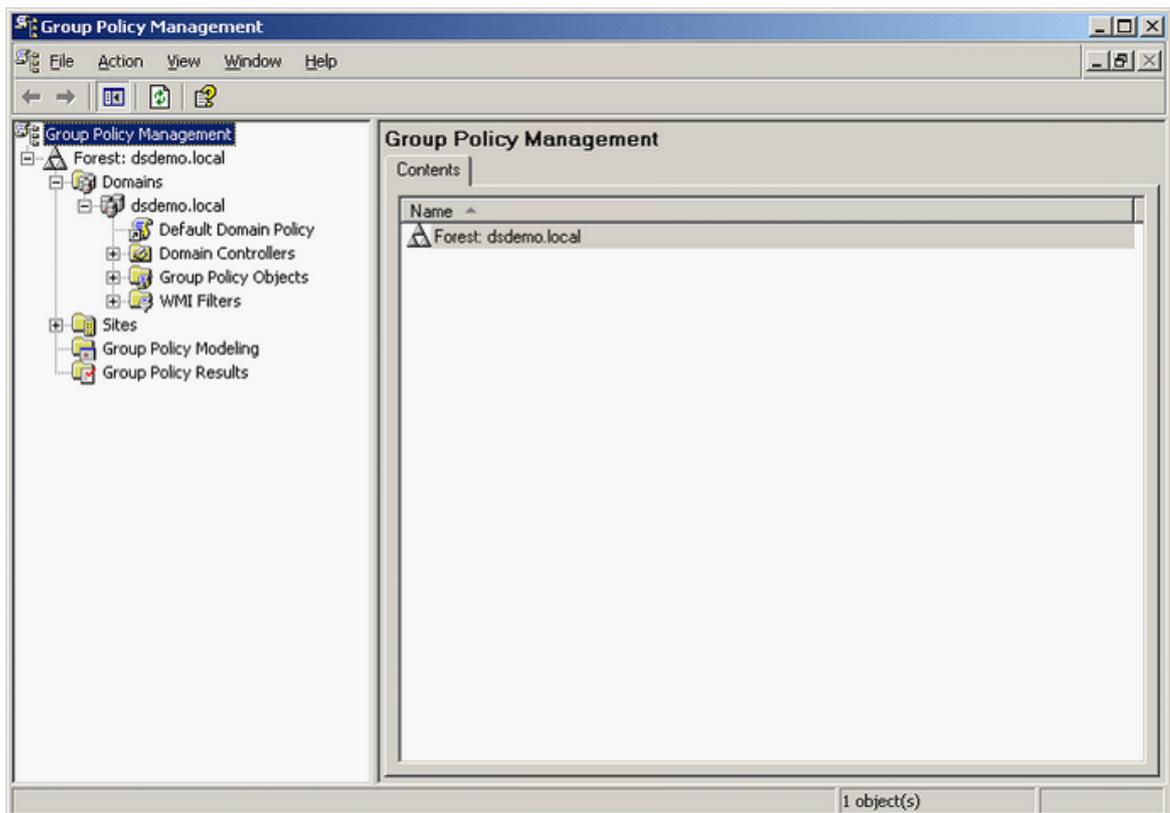
If you need to configure the firewall for multiple computers, it is recommended to use a GPO. The settings apply to Windows XP SP2 and higher. You do not need to define special Windows firewall exceptions for Vista or Windows 7 computers.

The following example shows how to define a domain-wide setting using the Microsoft Group Policy Management Console (GPMC) tool. GPO settings can be made at the local (L), site (S), domain (D) and organizational unit (OU) levels. Subsequent settings always overwrite the previously defined values. The hierarchy is L, S, D, OU.

You can download the Group Policy Management Console tool from the Microsoft website free of charge. In the following example, this tool will modify the firewall settings for all systems in the domain. For this reason, it should be used with caution.

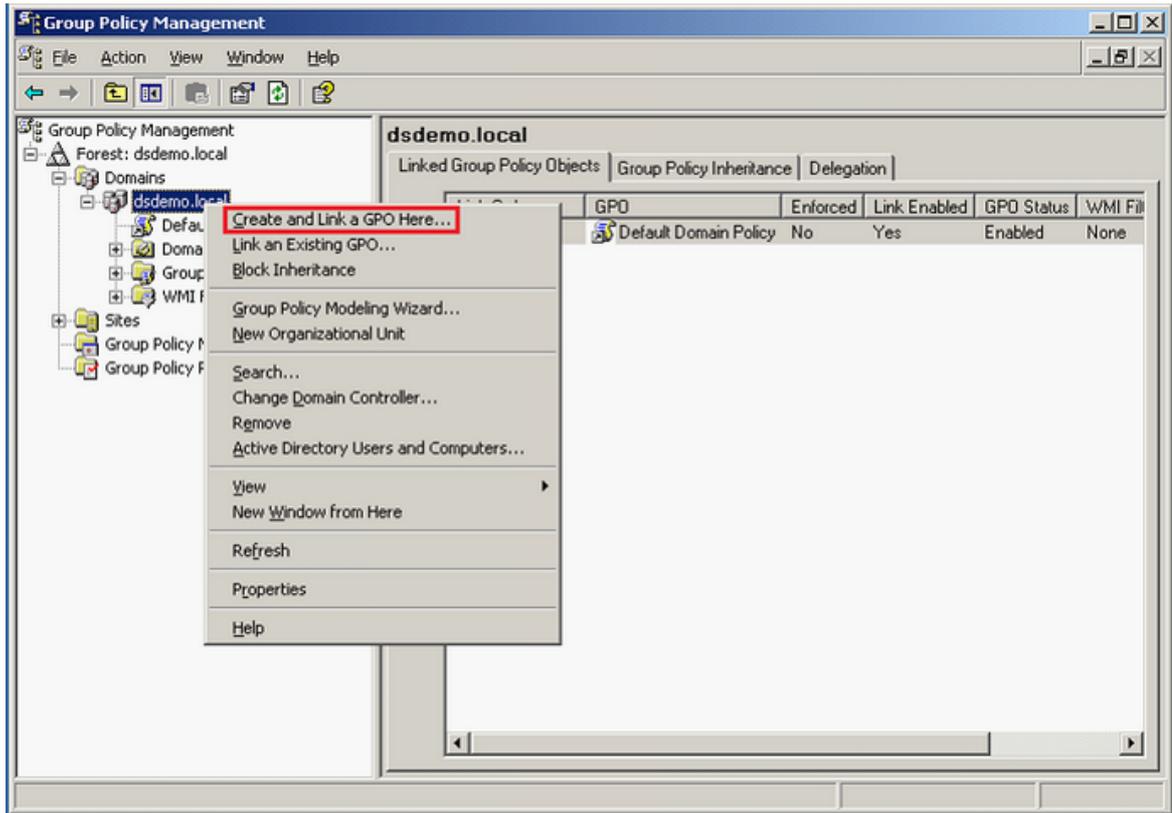
AD Windows Firewall Configuration: Launching GPMC

The easiest way to open the Group Policy Management dialog for firewall configuration is by entering the `gpmc.msc` command, either from the command line or through Start | Run.

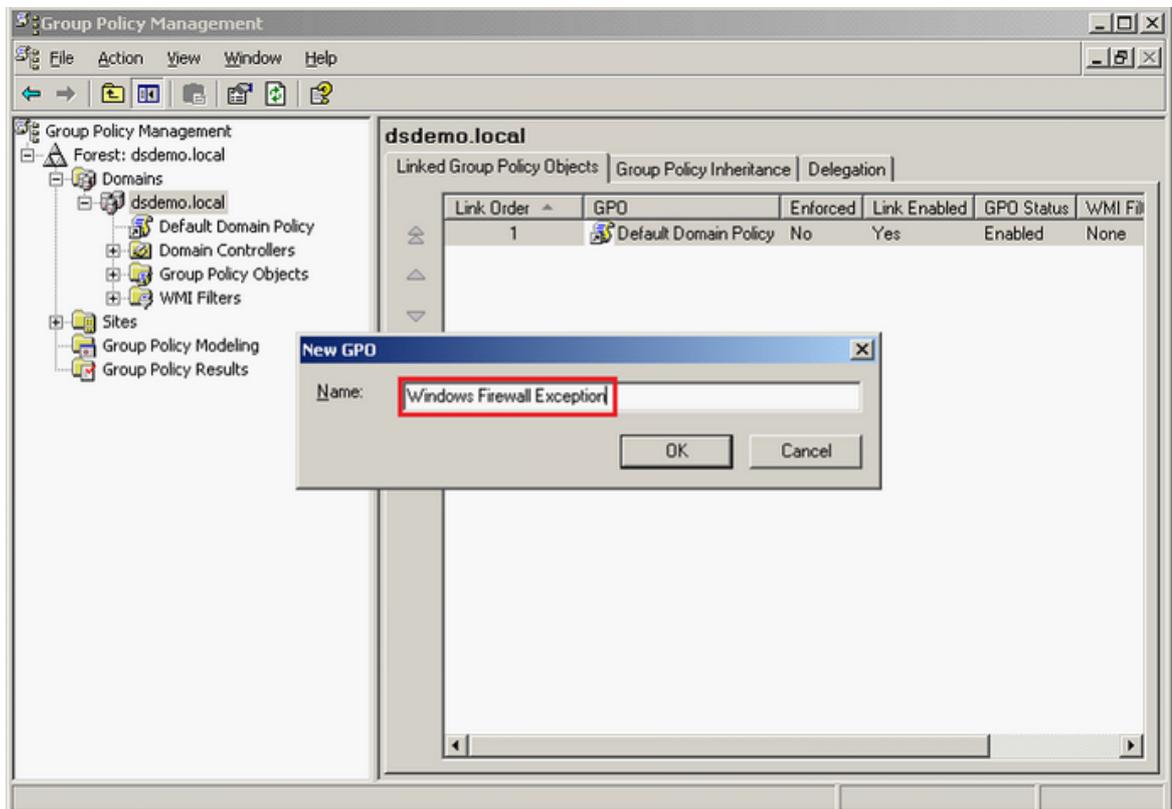


AD Windows Firewall: Creating Group Policy Objects for the Domain

Right-click the desired *domain* and select the *Create and Link a GPO Here...* option from the context menu.



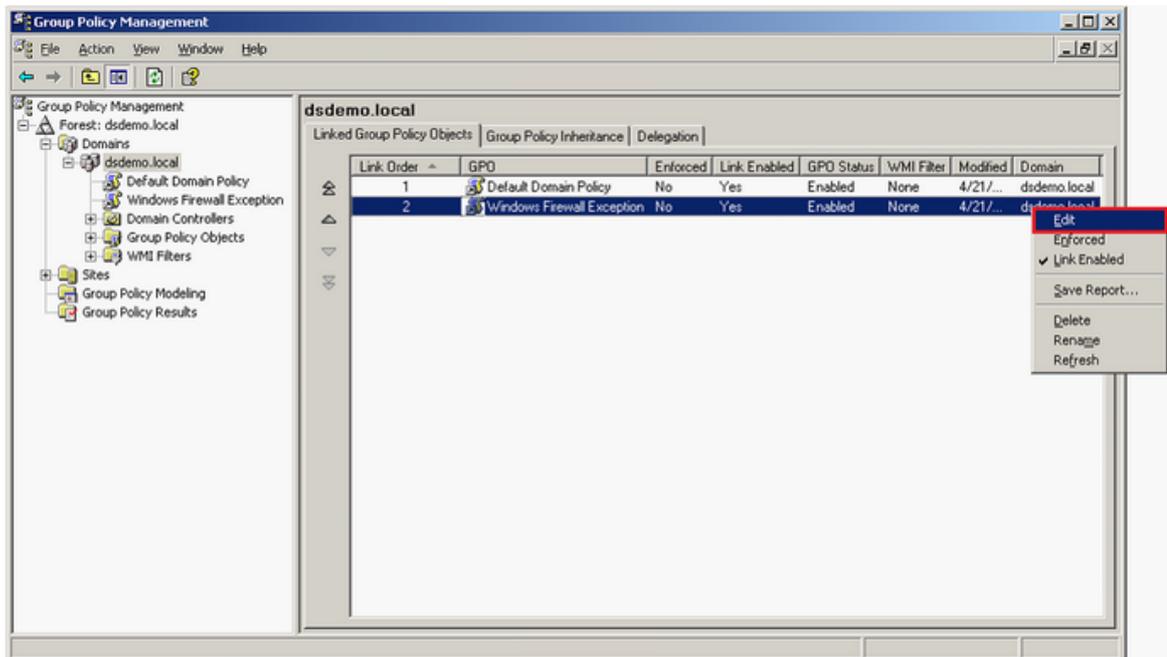
Enter a descriptive name for the GPO.



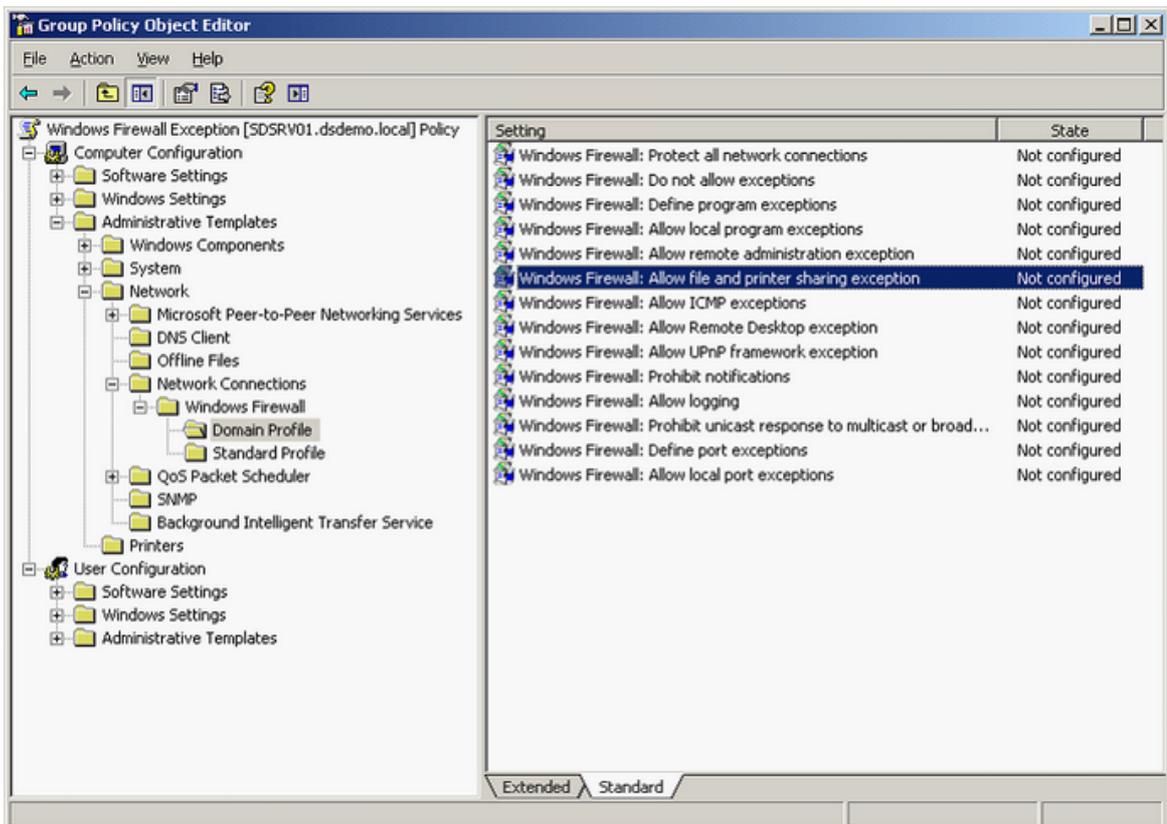
AD Windows Firewall: Editing a Group Policy Object



Right-click the previously created group policy object and then select *Edit*.



The Group Policy Object Editor dialog opens where you can edit your group policy object.



The group policy to be activated is located under:

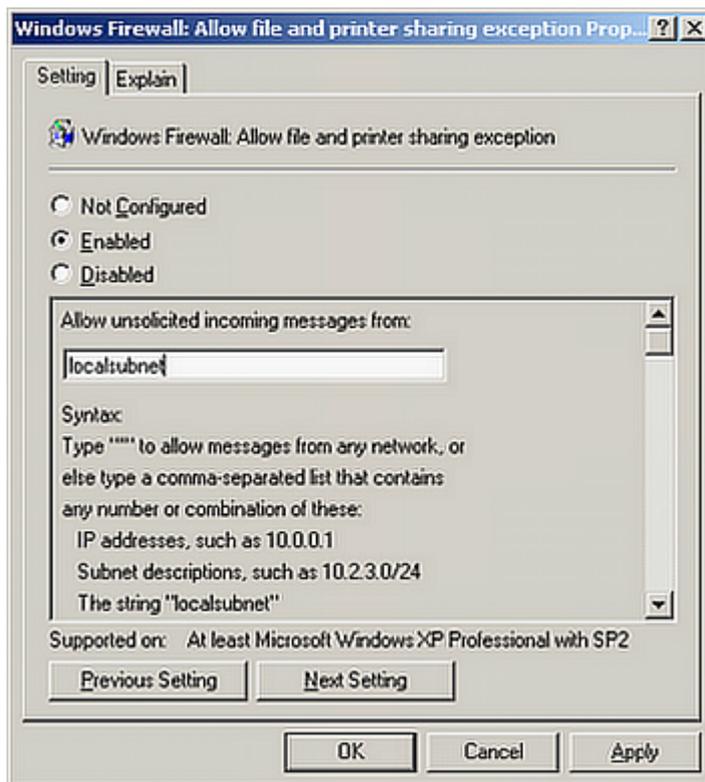
Local Computer Policy

- *Computer Configuration*
 - *Administrative Templates*
 - *Network*
 - *Network Connections*
 - *Windows Firewall*
 - *Domain Profile*
 -

AD Windows Firewall: Enabling the File and Printer Sharing Exception

Enabling the *Windows Firewall: Allow file and printer sharing exception*

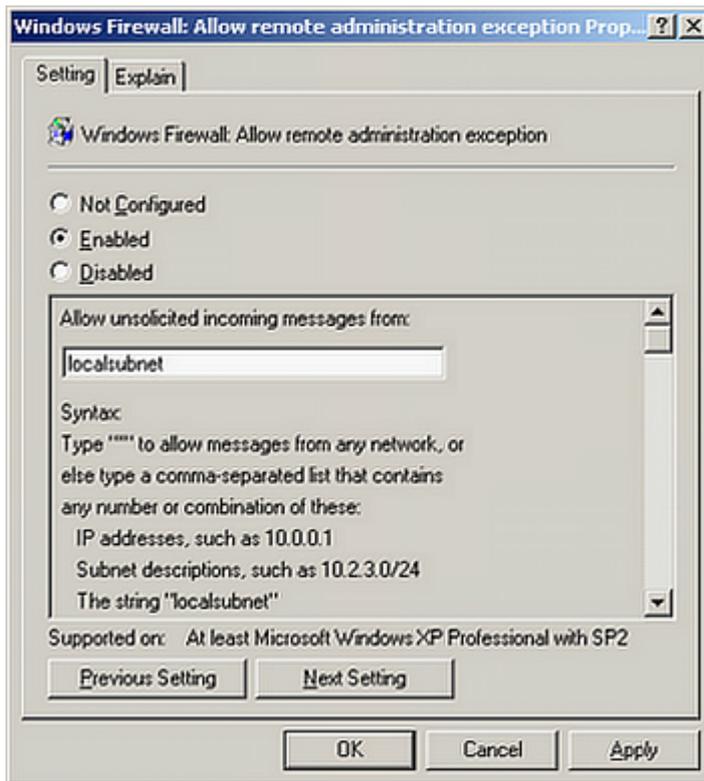
In this example, enabling the firewall exception is restricted to the local subnet.



AD Windows Firewall: Enabling the Remote Administration Exception

Enabling the *Windows Firewall: Allow remote administration exception*

In this example, enabling the firewall exception is restricted to the local subnet.



AD Windows Firewall: Enabling the ICMP Exceptions

Windows Firewall: Allow ICMP exceptions (inbound echo request). This exception is required for Windows Server 2008.

